W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 8649 Class No. 942

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

This Volume is presented *by the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury*

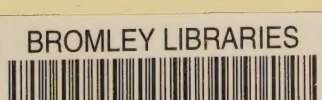
*to*_____

and will, in the event of the Library being broken up, be returned to the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Westminster.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

(8)

BROMLEY LIBRARIES



3 0128 01796 9406

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/chroniconhenrici0002jose

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

O 62014. Wt. 22955.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

HENRICI KNIGHTON CHRONICON.

CHRONICON

HENRICI KNIGHTON

VEL

CNITTHON

MONACHI LEYCESTRENSIS.

EDITED

BY

JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D.

LADY MARGARET PROFFSSOR OF DIVINITY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE,
FELLOW OF ST. CATHARINE'S COLLEGE, AND FORMERLY
FELLOW OF MAGDALENE COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,
BY EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE,
PRINTERS TO THE QUEEN'S MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, either directly or through any Bookseller, from
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C.; or
JOHN MENZIES & Co., 12, HANOVER STREET, EDINBURGH, and
90, WEST NILE STREET, GLASGOW; or
HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., LIMITED, 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

1895.

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL LS
CLASS
L65 4
ACC.
01796 9406
[942.037]

Printed by
Eyre and Spottiswoode, Her Majesty's Printers,
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

ERRATA IN VOL. I.

P. 26, line 22, *for* tonitrio *read* tonitruo.
P. 36, line 35, *for* probosum *read* probrosum.
P. 67, line 12, *for* Willelmus *read* Walterus.
P. 98, line 37, *for* Dunwaldam *read* Dunwaldum.
P. 104, line 17, *for* fluxis *read* fluxus.
P. 105, line 12, *for* ære *read* aere.
P. 115, line 32, *for* præcipuit *read* præripuit.
P. 122, line 1, *for* pedite *read* pedites.
P. 146, line 10, *for* hanc *read* hæc.
P. 150, line 11, *for* monachum *read* monachus.
P. 155, line 23, *for* Oxoniensis *read* Saxoniensis.
P. 157, line 31, *for* proterit *read* poterit.
P. 163, line 6, *for* conculatum *read* conculcatum.
P. 164, line 14, *for* ab *read* apud.
P. 177, line 5, *for* corpus *read* corporis.
P. 199, line 4, *for* frater *read* filius.
P. 209, line 28, *for* quantita *read* quantitate.
P. 219, line 5, *for* enaruit *read* exaruit.
P. 229, line 9, *for* ij *read* ix.
P. 234, line 14, *for* capto *read* capite.
P. 237, line 22, *for* est *read* es.
P. 267, line 5, *for* una *read* uno.
P. 278, line 5, *for* quum *read* quando.
P. 302, penult., *for* gentibus *read* in equis.
P. 310, penul., *for* loy *read* roy.
P. 337, line 23, *for* madatam *read* mandatam.
P. 344, line 21, *for* possunt *read* possent.
P. 344, line 25, *for* affugerant *read* aufugerant.
P. 347, line 31, *for* impartiri *read* impertiri.
P. 355, line 23, *for* susciperent *read* susceperunt.
P. 371, line 28, *for* Hinc *read* Huic.
P. 375, line 28, *for* nos *read* vos.
P. 384, line 6, *for* Berewyke *read* Alnewyk.
P. 387, line 31, *for* Dunelmum *read* Dunelmenses.
P. 395, line 3, *for* factus *read* facta.
P. 396, line 20, *for* prælucidas *read* præludia.
P. 398, line 18, *for* habent *read* habet.
P. 400, line 4, *for* damdnis *read* dampnis.
P. 411, line 10, fructos *read* fructus.
P. 422, line 23, *for* suo *read* suos.
P. 433, line 11, *for* aure *read* aura.
P. 437, line 21, *for* garrannt *read* garraunt.
P. 442, line 8, *for* consiliaros *read* consiliarios.
P. 442, line 24, *for* morti *read* morte.
P. 473, line 3, *for* viago *read* viagio.

O 62014.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

1337.

Embassy to France about the occupation of Gascony. The King claims the pre-emption of wool and sells it abroad at a high price. pp. 1—2.

1338.

Mediation for peace between England and France. Dunbar Castle besieged by the English. Property of foreign ecclesiastics seized. Peace discussed in parliament. Burning of Portsmouth. Aids for the king's expedition to Flanders. He sets sail. Parliament at Northampton. Further grants. King Edward goes to meet Louis of Bavaria near Cologne. Louis, as Emperor, appoints the king his vicar. A council at Malines. Embassies sent to France. The French burn Southampton. Guard to be kept at the Cinque Ports and elsewhere. A severe winter. Another attack on Southampton. Prices of corn. pp. 2—8.

1339.

The Cinque Ports attacked. The king marches toward France. English ravages in Normandy. Edward enters France. His claim to that crown. Various movements on entering France. Movements against the enemy. Scarcity of provisions. Boasting message from the French king. Movements of the English; King Edward takes up his ground on Saturday, waits all day and offers battle on Sunday, but the French retire. The allies depart, and King Edward falls back on Antwerp. Gascon nobles return to their allegiance. Naval league against England. English troops in Flanders. King Edward quarters the arms of France. Parliament in London. pp. 9–15.

1340.

Aids for the war. Nobles' appeal, met by concessions on the King's part. Weight of a sack of wool. French King intends opposing passage to Flanders; informs the Pope of his

intentions. Earls of Salisbury and Suffolk captured. Flemings summon King Edward. Victory over the Scots. King Edward sails for Flanders; his retinue. He sights the French fleet. Battle of Sluys, June 24th. Victory of the English. Siege of Tournay; a treaty concluded. Bad supplies from England. Terms of the treaty. Peace between the Emperor and the French King. David Bruce enters England. pp. 15–22.

1341.

The Emperor revokes King Edward's appointment as his vicar. Sickness in England. King Edward in Scotland; truce concluded. pp. 22, 23.

1342.

Death of Pope Benedict II. Sir W. Manny in Brittany. Pursues the Lord of Lyons; victory of the English; its details. Differences in Scotland. Another expedition into Brittany; Charles of Blois gives battle to the English; French defeated and many captured. King Edward enters Brittany. Aids granted by the clergy. pp. 23–27.

1343.

King Edward sends spies to Vannes; an attack resolved on. Rohan and Pontivy taken, Ploërmel and Malestroit surrendered. Attack on Vannes given up; King Edward returns to England; a stormy passage. Earl of Derby returns from Spain. French King executes nobles of Brittany. King Edward forbids the papal provisions; nobles join in the protest. Pope favours French King. pp. 27–29.

1344.

Charles of Blois invades Brittany. A clerk murdered at Leicester. Aids granted by Parliament. A new coinage. Protection for Scotch marches. Family of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester. Papal mandate to King Edward to lay aside the arms of France. pp. 29—31.

1345.

Expedition to Brittany and Gascony; success of the Earl of Derby. Death of Henry, Earl of Lancaster. pp. 31, 32.

1346.

Fines imposed on foreign clergy. War supplies. King Edward enters Normandy. Troubles in Scotland. King Edward

lands at La Hogue, passes Valogne, Carentan, and St. Lo; marches on and enters Caen; prisoners made. Disorders in Liege. Flemings invade France, under agreement with Terouanne and St. Omer. Captives from Caen brought to England. French propose an invasion of England, which is checked by the expedition to Normandy. King Edward marches from Caen; reaches Poissy. French King retreats to Paris; march on Amiens, its difficulties; activity of the English. King Edward reaches Cressy; prepares for battle; order of his troops. Progress of the battle; King Philip is wounded and flees; number of troops slain; battle not renewed. Earl of Lancaster invades Gascony. King Edward ravages St. Riquiers, Estaples, and Chateau-neuf; besieges Calais. Earl of Warwick plunders fair of Terouanne. Allies for the English. Siege of Aiguillon raised. Success of the Earl of Lancaster in Normandy. Philip encourages the Scots to invade England. The invading force. Battle of Nevil's Cross, October 17. English victorious. Captives made; losses of English. King of Scotland captured at Merrington.

pp. 32–44.

1347.

Ransom refused to the Scotch. The English plunder Scotland; even priests join the army; a righteous war. Rising in Ireland suppressed. Aids granted. Earl of Lancaster's successes in Saintogne. Capture of Poitiers. David Bruce imprisoned. Earl of Lancaster returns. Earls of Menteith and Fife punished. Supplies introduced into Calais. Abbeys asked for aid. Baliol's movements; English repulsed; Baliol kept at Caer-laverock. John of France approaches Calais, but retreats. Capture of relieving French ships; letter describing the condition of Calais sent to French King. Expulsion of citizens from Calais. John of France nears English army; war in Brittany. Capture of Charles of Blois and other prisoners. Rumoured approach of the French King; movements of the Earl of Lancaster. Cardinals treat for peace with King Edward; his answer. Proposal for a combat. King Edward offers facilities for a battle. The French retreat. Calais surrendered; manner of its surrender. Citizens kindly treated. Troops sent to Calais from Flanders. Length of the siege. The Prince of Wales in France. Aids requested; merchants taxed by the King. Misadventure of the Earl of Warwick. Spoils of Calais; outbreak of fire. King Edward remains there. Dearth in England. Custody of Calais; expenses of the Earl of Derby. English losses at sea on return from Calais. Action of the

Pope in the Emperor's election. The nobles offer the empire to King Edward. Lushburne, a spurious coinage. pp. 44–55.

1348.

Grants to King Edward. Charles of Blois brought to London. King Edward chosen Emperor; motive of the offer. He refuses it. Scots wish to ransom King David; their ravages. Tournament at Berwick. The French in Gascony; they are repulsed. Ladies at tournaments; their extravagances put a stop to by storms. The "Black Death," 1348–9; King of Tharsis and his proceedings; great mortality; earthquakes and storms. The Pope desires peace. Bruges attacked for siding with English. Truce agreed on. Great mortality in English ports. pp. 55–61.

1349.

Full remission to those dying of plague. Mortality amongst sheep. Low prices, farms deserted, high wages for labour. Scottish oath "by the foul death of England." Scotch invasion of England prevented by the plague. Bradwardine made Archbishop of Canterbury; his sudden death. Lack of clergy; candidates for orders. Statute about wages; a mediæval strike. Fines and imprisonment of labourers. pp. 61–64.

(1349.)

Pilgrimages to Rome prohibited; message of Pope; the King's reply. Earl of Lancaster reaches Toulouse; his ravages. Spanish raid in Esthonia; naval engagement with English; victory of English. pp. 65–67.

1350.

Translation of St. Thomas of Hereford. Results of the plague; cost of necessaries; remission of rents, &c.; general dearth. pp. 64–65.

(1350.)

Jubilee. Creation of Dukedom of Lancaster and Earldom of Stafford. p. 67.

1351.

Death of Thomas Dagworth. Duke of Lancaster and John de Beauchamp in North of France. Truce made. Duke of Lancaster arrested in Prussia. pp. 67–69.

1352.

David Bruce's mission to Scotland. Parliament in London. Duke of Brunswick meditates capturing the Duke of Lancaster. Anger of the latter; news of communicated to the Duke of Brunswick. Trial by combat proposed; the Duke of Lancaster accepts it; crosses to Paris: the honours paid him. A reconciliation attempted; its failure; they enter the lists. Duke of Brunswick submits, but the Duke of Lancaster insists on continuing the fight; humiliation of the Duke of Brunswick. Death of Pope Clement VI. Drought and storm. Battle of Mauron; valour of Walter de Bentley. Statute of labourers. Park for Leicester abbey. Woolstaple established in London. pp. 69–74.

1353.

Session at Chester. Scotch King's proposals for peace prove futile. Affairs at Chester; fines inflicted. Court of Traylbaston. Gift to the abbey of Dieulacres. Claimants of Scotch lands. Commissioners sent to Calais. Death of Count d'Eu. Cold and tempestuous winter. Tournament between French and Gascons. Charles of Blois seeks funds for his ransom. pp. 74–77.

1354.

Roger Mortimer made Earl of March. Earl of Warwick claims land in Wales. Truce between England and France; peace negotiations prove futile. Duke of Lancaster at Avignon; festivities there; attempt at his capture. Birth of Thomas of Woodstock. pp. 77–79.

1355.

The French aid the Scotch. Council in London; expedition to Gascony. King Edward visits France; touches at the Norman coast. Negotiations between King of France and Navarre. Troubles in Ireland. Scots propose invading England; a truce agreed on. Mysterious mental maladies. Friars Minor declare Pope John XXII. a heretic. Their arrest, examination, and answers. They are condemned to be burned. Confession maintaining their teachings; they are burned. English affairs; King Edward hears of the agreement between King of Navarre and King of France. Desires to attack French; they retreat. Returns to Calais and learns the capture of Berwick; details. Visits Newcastle. The Prince of Wales in Gascony. Scots offer to surrender Berwick to King Edward. Baliol resigns his claim to crown. King Edward reaches Edinburgh. Capture of the English in Ettrick Forest. pp. 79–86.

1356.

Aids demanded from the clergy are refused. Dukes of Lancaster and Brittany in Normandy; relieve Breteuil. Verneuil captured. Approach of the French king; his message; the duke's reply. Continuous success of the Duke of Lancaster. The King of France opposes the Prince of Wales; their movements; scarcity of food in the Prince's army. Arrangements for battle; no quarter to English; victory of Earl of Warwick's troops; severe fighting of the Prince's soldiers. King of France renews the battle; succour from the Duke of Warwick. List of prisoners and slain. English retreat towards Bordeaux. Duke of Lancaster besieges Rennes. pp. 86–93.

1357.

The Prince of Wales enters London with King John of France. Grants to the King. Disputes of clergy and Friars Minor. Appeal to withdraw the Duke of Lancaster from Rennes. The King agrees thereto. Cardinals sent to treat for peace. The King's reply. Charles of Blois offers to attack the Duke of Lancaster; alarm of the inhabitants. Terms for surrender of Rennes. The Duke does not enter the town. Message to raise siege. Capture of Honfleur; English maintain their position. Dispute between Abbat of Leicester and the people of Belgrave, referred to special tribunal; penalties inflicted, offenders resign their claims. The Scotch plunder English vessels; they are driven into, and captured at, Yarmouth. David of Scotland released. Exactions of the Cardinals; a papal bull. Demand of King John's grant; King Edward's answer. pp. 93–98.

1358.

Safe conducts to the festival of St. George; visitors thereto. Peace negotiations; ransom of the King of France. Robert Knolles ravages Normandy; citizens of Paris slay his troops. King of Navarre threatens English in Paris. Death of the King's mother; portion of his ransom brought to England. King of Scotland offers to accompany King Edward to his wars. Request for free intercourse and other privileges as between England and Scotland granted by King Edward. Concord between France and England; its insincerity. Further ravages in France, Orleans burnt and plundered; advance on Avignon. Knolles lays his captures before King Edward; his capture and release. Difference between Bishop of Ely and Lady Wake; inquiry, appeal, and sentences. King of England procures their remittance. Peace with France falls through;

merchants ill-treated in France and Flanders; consequent expulsion of foreigners from England. pp. 98–105.

1359.

King Edward prepares to enter France. Sir W. Manny ravages Calais. King Edward's coming delayed. Duke of Lancaster enters France. Arrival of King Edward; advance upon Rheims. Expedition against and attack on Tournay. English enter the town; it is surrendered and burnt. March on Autry, successes at Maure (?) and Cormicy. An armament gathered in Normandy to attack England. Engagement at Honfleur. French attack Winchelsea, but are repulsed. pp. 105–110.

1360.

Levy for the defence of the kingdom; grants of indulgences; contributions. The navy goes to Boulogne, thence to Honfleur. King Edward at Burgundy; a truce made. He approaches Paris; sets fire to the suburbs. Engagement. English victorious. Duke of Lancaster near Orleans. Engagement between Count de Armenak and Count de Foy. English losses by a storm. Grant of liberties to Leicester. Suit between John of Arden and Abbat of Leicester; success of the latter. King of France at Calais; treaty of Bretigny; its terms; towns to be yielded up. pp. 110–114.

1361.

Death of Henry, Earl of Lancaster. La grant companye; Count of Savoy refuses them passage; sack of his capital. Death of Fitzralph. Matilda Duchess of Zealand claims her inheritance. Henry Earl of Lancaster buried at Leicester. His endowments there. Marriage of the Prince of Wales to Joan of Kent. pp. 114–116.

1362.

Death of Duchess of Zealand and of John de Coupeland. pp. 116, 117.

1363.

Woolstaple at Calais, taxes on wool. Prince of Wales in Gascony. Terms of freedom of election at Leicester. King of Cyprus in England. King of France in Savoy; four kings together in London. Royal hunting party in Sherwood Forest. Death of the Duchess of Clarence, and of Edward Baliol. pp. 117–119.

1364.

Death of the King of France. His confession to King Edward. Cases of sacrilege; recovery of the head of St. Hugh of Lincoln; punishment of the thieves. Charles of Blois slain. Capture of Bertrand du Guesclin. pp. 119–121.

1365.

Marriage of Princess Isabella to Lord de Coucy. Justices punished. p. 121.

1366.

Victory of Dagworth over French. Prince of Wales and John of Gaunt aid Peter the Cruel in Spain. Battle of Nazara. Sickness among the English troops. Henry the Bastard in Gascony; he murders the King of Spain. John of Gaunt claims the kingdom of Spain. La grant companye in France. Marriage and death of the Duke of Clarence. pp. 121–123.

1377.

Death of Edward III., and of Edward Prince of Wales. Character of the latter; his victories; he aids Peter, King of Spain. Burial in Canterbury. Coronation of Richard II. Death of Clowne, abbat of Leicester; his character. Abbats sought from Leicester for other places; possessions gained for the abbey. Freedom obtained for the abbey confirmed by King Richard. The abbat's favour with the King. pp. 124–427.

1378.

Election of Urban VI. Letter from the cardinals to the Emperor announcing the election. Clement, Antipope, at Avignon. pp. 128–129.

1379.

Aid granted to King - - - - - p. 129.

1380.

Marriage of Henry, Earl of Derby. Aids granted. pp. 129, 130.

1381.

Commission of inquiry about the collection of aids; evil conduct of the same. Thomas Baker excites the men of Kent. They gather on Blackheath; attack the house of Archbishop of Canterbury. John Ball released from the Archbishop's prison.

The mob breaks into the Marshalsea, enters London, and proceeds to the Tower. They design to kill the Archbishop. The King invites the people to meet him, and grants them a charter, afterwards annulled by Parliament. The Archbishop and six others seized and beheaded. Attack on the Savoy Palace; it is burnt with its contents; no plundering allowed; death of some drunken rioters. Attack on the new church of Clerkenwell; destruction of Highbury manor. Attack on the representatives of law; murder of Richard Lyons. Quarrels among rioters. Next day they gather in Smithfield under Wat Tyler; their demands. Wat Tyler slain by John de Walworth. The King knights Walworth and others. An armed band surrounds the rioters; the King bids them disperse. Jack Milner's address, Jack Carter's, Jack Trueman's. John Ball's letter. Similar risings in Norfolk and at Peterborough. Rioters dispersed and punished; church avenged. Measures taken by the Bishop of Norwich. Violent demands at St. Alban's; general alarm. Report that the rioters were coming to Leicester; alarm at the news; preparations for defence. Alarm increases; treasures of the Duke of Lancaster brought to Leicester Abbey, but the abbat dare not receive them. Duke of Lancaster serving on Scotch border. The Duchess flees to Pontefract Castle; is refused admission, and goes on to Knaresborough. Report carried to the Duke, who refuses to be disturbed thereby; finishes his work in the North; obtains leave to enter Scotland; then makes known the doings in England. His followers desert him. Reports of further devastations. Earl of Northumberland invites the Duke, but eventually fears to receive him. He begins to fear lest the King should be set against him; a report to that effect spread by his rivals. He retires to Edinburgh, and is well received there; and is visited by Earls of Douglas and Dunbar. His reflections. He determines to put away his mistress, and does so. The King writes to the Duke; and commands the Earl of Northumberland to keep him safe; the duke declines aid. Safe conduct for the Duke; he comes to Reading, and is honourably received by the King. His generous behaviour. Inquiry into the insurrection by Tresylyon; stern punishments; John Ball hanged at St. Alban's. Marriage of the King. pp. 131–151.

1382.

The King grants a general pardon. An earthquake. John Wycliffe; his learning; foreshadowed by John Ball. Translates the Scriptures into English; criticism thereon. Prophecy

of William de Sancto Amore; his writings and prophetic utterances. End of the age near; eight signs thereof; first is change of the Gospel; others follow. Applied to Mendicant Friars, but better suited to Lollards. Dangers to the church from such men; how to be repelled. Wycliffe's opinions; he is summoned before the Archbishop of Canterbury. Aided by the Duke of Lancaster. Disavows the tenets ascribed to him; his confession. Heresies of Wycliffe; his errors. Summoned to appear before the Archbishop in Oxford; he attends. His form of answer. His opinions condemned. Procession through London in consequence. Sermon by Dr. Kynyngham. Its effect on Cornelius Cloune; he is afterwards convinced of the truth of Transubstantiation by a miracle, and confesses his former error. Commission of the Archbishop on this condemnation; form issued by the Bishop of Lincoln containing mandate of the Archbishop. Letter of the Bishop of London. Injunctions of the Bishop of Lincoln to his diocese. Condemnation of the heresy by the Chancellor of Oxford. John Ball a forerunner of Wycliffe. Confession of Nicholas of Hereford and others; of John Aston. Nicholas of Hereford goes to Rome; his opinions examined and condemned; he is imprisoned for life. The Romans take offence at the Pope and release Nicholas, who is afterwards imprisoned by the Archbishop of Canterbury. Lollard preaching; on prayers, &c., against begging friars, vows of poverty, sturdy beggars. Deceits of false preachers; the Scriptures full of heresies. Preaching of John Aston; he circulates the opinions of Wycliffe; preaches at Leicester; his teaching on various goints, *e.g.* apainst Transubstantiation, &c. Preaching of John Purvey; he had lived with Wycliffe; his opinions on the mass, religious orders, fees, &c. William Smith and other Lollards; character and effects of their preaching. Different from the teaching of Christ. Their threats, their profanity toward a sacred building, they mock at and burn an image of Saint Catharine. Verses on this subject. Their manner of dress; Scripture applied to them. Their teaching repugnant to Catholicism. Their method of making converts. Their abuse of their opponents; many perverted by them. They promote domestic discord. These are called Wycliffe's disciples and are like him; they may be called followers of Mahomet. Their abuse of other preachers, especially the begging friars. Their evil character; an invocation against them. William de Swyndurby, his preaching on the failings of women, who threatened to stone him, then against money-making. He turns hermit. Refuses offers of support. Returns to ordinary life, and is received

into Leicester Abbey. Joins William Smith. Attacks ecclesiastics; his views concerning tithes. Other errors of the Lollards. Swyndurby attracts a following; is suspended from preaching by the Bishop of Lincoln. Preaches in a mill, crowds flock to hear him; summoned before the Bishop and condemned to be burnt, but the Duke of Lancaster interferes for him. He is to make public recantation. Process of the Bishop of Lincoln against Swyndurby. His popularity wanes in Leicester; he goes to Coventry, but is soon driven away. pp. 151–198.

1383.

Crusade of the Bishop of Norwich; large contributions thereto for the sake of papal indulgences. He crosses into Flanders; successful at first. The King of France forces the English to surrender in Bourbourg. Duke of Brittany obtains terms for the English. Return of the Bishop. Damme taken by French. Flanders surrendered, excepting Ghent, which holds out expecting English aid. pp. 198–201.

1382.

The Bishop's ordinance for the preaching of the Crusade. pp. 201–203.

1383.

Scotch raid into England. John Duke of Lancaster enters Scotland. p. 203.

1384.

Severe frost. Combat at Westminster; Parliament there. pp. 203, 204.

1385.

French assist Scotland. King Richard marches against them, and they retire. Edinburgh burnt and Melrose Abbey destroyed. English standard set up there. English withdraw, and Scots invade England but retreat. Honours conferred by King Richard. Earl of Stafford's son slain by Sir John de Holand. Earl of Lancaster in Spain, to which he lays claim. Capture of French vessels. pp. 204–207.

1386.

King Richard ordains that the Duke of Lancaster shall be called King of Spain. His departure for Spain. Helped by King of Portugal. List of nobles accompanying him. Family of the Duke of Lancaster. pp. 207, 208.

1387.

Marriage of Duke of Lancaster's daughter to the son of the King of Spain. p. 208.

1389.

Return of the expedition - - - - - p. 208.

1386.

The Duke of Brittany besieges Brest. His siege works. The Duke of Lancaster proceeds thither and attacks them. The French commander offers to withdraw. Other conquests. Henry Percy harasses the French. Captures of vessels. Punishment of coiners. Charles, King of France, collects an army against England. Taxation for this purpose. Capture of ships by Sir W. Beauchamp. The French arrive at Sluys. English preparations; the enemy do not cross over. The English army disbanded; plundering by the soldiers. The King of France attempts to seize Ghent. Secret introduction of arms; the plot discovered; conspirators slain. The Earl of Oxford is made Duke of Ireland. The Commons and their demands; refusal of King. Rumoured plot. Address of the Commons to King, that there should be yearly parliaments; its objects; the King is not to estrange himself from it. His reply. Further remonstrance of Parliament. No aid obtainable from France; sufferings in previous French wars; heavy taxes and evil counsellors; they have a remedy and can depose the King—why should he cling to evil advisers? The King gives way, and the offenders are dismissed. Michael de la Pole accused; his property confiscated. Articles of his arraignment. Council of nobles to take the oversight of the Kingdom. Their names and powers. The King swears to abide by their ordinances. Six of them constitute a council, with three officers of the King. No one to advise limiting their powers. Grants to the King. Terms of appointment of commission. Subsidy granted to King; its terms. Capture of French ships. King Richard at Leicester on his road to York to mediate between the Archbishop and the chapter. pp. 208–234.

1387.

The Earl of Arundel captures French and Flemish ships; destroys French siege works at Brest. Hugh Despenser captured and taken to Paris. Court of King's Bench at Coventry; visit of King and Queen; grants to the city. Questions put to justices about the late parliament; their

reply. The King at Nottingham; the justiciaries assembled there. They are compelled to set seal to their answers. Speech of Robert Belknappe. The questions proposed and their answers. A council held at Nottingham. Harry Hotspur raises the siege of Brest. The King at Leicester. Suit at Melton Mowbray. The King returns to London; is met by mayor and citizens; slight shown to the clergy. The Duke of Gloucester's arrival near London; alarm there. Proclamation against supplying the Earl of Arundel. The three lords collect their forces, advance on London, and send messengers demanding the surrender of the King's evil favourites, who advise the King to seek aid from France. A message sent. The Governor of Calais ordered to surrender the fortress, which he declines to do. The King's party advise a fight; the Mayor is asked to provide forces; the populace refuse their aid. Answer of Basset and of Northumberland. Disturbances throughout the nation; the King is advised to send for the three nobles; he yields. The Duke of Gloucester fears the Londoners may be misled, and sends a letter to them. The letter. Messengers sent by the King to the lords. They will all do their utmost for the safety of the Kingdom. The lords agree to meet the King, who prepares to receive them in Westminster Hall. A plot suspected. Their reception; the King promises to bring the five persons accused before the next Parliament; also issues a proclamation in excuse of the lords. They are taken under the King's especial protection, and also the persons accused. Appeal of favourites to the King, and consequent delay in summoning Parliament. They take to flight, the Archbishop of York goes north, De Vere to Chester, De la Pole to Calais; he is brought back to London, but allowed by the King to depart. Steps taken to bring back the Duke of Ireland. The three lords gather their forces; fears about the action of the King. The Duke of Ireland in Oxfordshire, tries to cross Radcote Bridge, but is intercepted; swims his horse across the Thames, and so escapes. Many drowned in the marshes. Attack on the troops of the Duke. pp. 234–254.

1388.

Troops of the lords return to Oxford, thence to London. The Lord Mayor offers them the city keys. Conference with King at the Tower. He speaks favourably; consents to the arrest of the courtiers; desires the lords to remain, which the Earls of Derby and Nottingham do. Names of those who were arrested. They are placed under guard. pp. 254–257.

1387.

Names of those banished from the court. Strange appearances of fire. Quarrel at Oxford. Magic head and its predictions. pp. 257, 258.

1388.

Parliament at Westminster. Arrest of the justiciaries. The King's favourites summoned, and not appearing, outlawed. Challenge to a tournament at Calais. Increase of Wycliffites; their opinions on papal power, on confession, on images, on excommunication, on prayers to saints, on tithes, the obligation to preach, of church dignitaries. All things to be common among clergy. Opinions against musical services; oaths, Views regarding the Lord's Supper. Saints' days not to be kept. Clergy to be resident; negligent clergy to be removed. Against ecclesiastical luxury. The Lords and Commons appeal to the King against such teaching; the King enjoins the Bishops to proceed against it, also issues letters patent. The Royal Commission. Wycliffite books multiplied. They are to be seized, and their owners arrested and brought before the Commissioners. Appeal to King for a reform in Government from the Commons of the realm. Law unequally administered, taxes unfairly assessed and used. Decay of national defences; redress is asked for and remedies suggested. Justice for poor as well as rich. Honour of the Crown to be supported. Taxation ruins the nation; war expenses become unbearable. Commission asked for to carry out measures of relief. A petition from the Flemings. Demands of the English. The Flemings refuse to destroy the castle of Graveling. Serious outbreak in Flanders. Duke of Geldres does homage to the English King. Accusation brought against royal favourites. Form of the charges. Appellants have acted for the profit of King and realm. Names of the accused. Appeal made before the King at Westminster. The King meanwhile has taken the accused under his protection. Charges made. Three of accused take to flight. Chief Justice Tresilian hides but is betrayed, and summarily executed. Nicholas Brembul beheaded. Thomas Usk, John Blake, Simon Burley and others executed, but the chief men escape. They are outlawed and their property confiscated. Proceedings against the justices, who are condemned, but spared on the Queen's intercession. They are imprisoned, and injunctions laid on them. John Golofre and others pardoned. Scotch ravages; Harry Hotspur goes against them, and is taken prisoner. Episcopal promotions. Parliament at Cambridge. Subsidies for the Scotch war. Sumptuary legislation.

Statutes of the Parliament of Cambridge. Confirmation of the liberties of the church. Offices to be bestowed for desert. Restrictions on servants. Wages fixed by statute under penalties. Regulations concerning husbandry. Punishment for beggars and provision for the impotent. Statute of labourers to be enforced. Regulations concerning justices of the peace and their sessions. Punishment of those maligning peers and officers. Contributions to the expenses of Knights of Parliament. Punishment for polluting the air of towns. Measure of cloth regulated. Persons leaving the realm forfeit the King's protection. Staple removed from Middleburg to Calais. The Scotch ravage the north of England.
pp. 258–309.

1389.

English enter Scotland. Discord among the Oxford students appeased by the Duke of Gloucester. Council at Westminster. The King changes the chief officers, thanks those who have been his guardians, but will now be free. Plague of flies. Truces with continental nations. pp. 309–311.

1392.

Visitation of the diocese of Lincoln by the Archbishop of Canterbury. He confirms the excommunication of Lollards; an anchoritess summoned before him. Other Lollards recant. Penance of William Smith and others. pp. 311–313.

1390.

Hunting party of the Duke of Lancaster. Earl of Derby in Prussia. Dearth in England. Wool not allowed to be sold out of England. Wool sold cheap, corn not dear. Purchase of food by the citizens of London. pp. 313–315.

1391.

Parliament at Westminster. Statute of Mortmain. Method of escaping it; the King's licence required. A woman teaches her daughter to celebrate mass. The Bishop of London puts them to penance. Duke of Gueldres sends a letter to the King of England, urging him to continue the war against France. Subsidies granted. Negotiations at Amiens. Reception of the Duke of Lancaster; his return to England.
pp. 315–318.

1392.

Council at Stamford and at Nottingham. Mayor and sheriffs of London deprived of offices and imprisoned. Sir Edward

Balerynge made Warden of the City of London. Citizens appease the King by submission. He comes to London, and is met by a grand procession; decoration of the city; golden crowns offered to the King and Queen. They come to Westminster Hall. King's Bench and Chancery return to London. Embassy to Calais. pp. 318–321.

1393.

Truce agreed on. p. 321.

1394.

Death of Queen Anna. Expedition of the Duke of Lancaster to Aquitaine. Privileges of Londoners restored. Parliament in Ireland. pp. 321–322.

1395.

The King returns from Ireland, and the Duke of Lancaster from Gascony. Assembly of French clergy to decide between the rival Popes; they declare for Pope Clement, Oxford theologians for Pope Urban. p. 322.

INTRODUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

A SOMEWHAT fuller account of the MSS. from which this Edition of Knighton's Chronicle is edited was promised in the brief introduction to Volume I.

Claudius E. III. (distinguished in the notes as MS, and in which Knighton's work stands third among the contents) consists of 356 folio leaves of parchment, of which the Knighton occupies from 167a to 305a, and is written in two columns. The first two leaves are blank except for titles, and the contents are:

1. Epistolæ binæ inter Johannem Archiepiscopum Lugdunensem et Radulphum de Diceto decanum Lundoniensem de Britannia non numerata inter provincias et de præeminentia ecclesiæ Lugdunensis.
2. Abbreviatio Chronicorum, sive imagines historiarum, auctore Radulpho de Diceto, decano, Lundoniensi, cui ibi agit de commendatione et mirabilibus Britanniæ, de diversis auctoribus quo tempore scripserunt, de persecutionibus ecclesiæ: de scismatibus: de conciliis: de regum unctionibus: de privilegiis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ: de quorundam Archiepiscoporum Cantuariensium electionibus: de ducibus Normannorum: de comitibus Andegavorum: de controversiis inter regnum et sacerdotium: de dissensione quæ fuit inter regem Henricum secundum et tres filios suos, &c. Sequitur et quidam appendix ad tempora Henrici tertii.[1]
3. Historia eventuum in regno Angliæ et ejus confinibus per Henricum Knighton Lecestrensem a Willelmo Conquestore ad Richardum secundum.
4. Chronica regis Henrici tertii anno regni sui quadragesimo tertio.[2]

---

[1] Used by Dr. Stubbs for his edition of *Radulphus* (Rolls Series). Cf. his Preface, i. xc.

[2] This has been used by Mr. Riley in his edition of Rishanger. *See* his introduction, p. xxi., and his notes *passim*.

5. Invictissimi Anglorum Franciæque regis Henrici quinti et ejus filii Christianissimi Henrici sexti vita per Titum Livium Ferrariensem.
6. Encomium ejusdem carmine super Episcopum Bathoniensem et Wellensem.
7. Epistola domini Roberti Grosseteste ad pontificem et cardinales contra ipsorum Non obstantias legis naturæ et scripturarum.

The other MS. Cotton. Tib. c. VII. (called A in the notes) is of 240 folios written across the whole page, and contains Knighton's Chronicle only. This was the text from which Twysden printed, but it has been sadly damaged in the fire of the Cottonian Library, so that in many places the margins and parts of the text are entirely gone.

Both MSS. are in handwriting of the XVth century, but the former looks very like a copy of the latter. The misspellings in both are very frequently the same, and not unfrequently when a word has been written on the margin in A it is incorporated in the text of MS. But the scribe of the latter has sometimes been unable to read his text, and has left at times spaces for words which he could not make out. The notes in the first thirty pages of Volume I. will supply illustrations of what is here said.

In A at the bottom of folio 3a are some Latin lines, headed *Lamentum compilatoris*, running thus:

Sum cæcus factus subito caligine tactus,
Non opus inceptum jam corrigo forsan ineptum.
Me metuo dubium pro veris sæpe locutum,
Plus audita loquor quam modo visa sequor.
Lector velle meum penses componere verum,
Si minus est actum de me perpendite factum
Me Deus allisit, cum vult sanare valebit,
In Domino semper stat quum relevabitur [1] æger.

The last four lines are much damaged by burning, but it happens that in the Br. Mus. MS. Add. 4793 there is

[1] *var. lect.* revelabitur.

a series of brief extracts (fol. 81–85) made from this manuscript of Knighton before it had been in the fire, and among them is the full text of the Lament. The extracts in question occupy 4 folios of the MS. in which they are made. They are portions of Book I. capp. 10, 13; and Book II. capp. 3, 8, 9, and three passages which the writer marks by the folios of A, viz., 43ª, 59ª, and 70ª. Then quotations are made by years, from 1285, 1317, 1332, 1346, 1355, 1361, 1362, 1364, 1386, 1387, 1394, 1395. After this last is added on the margin "The last year of Knyghton's Chronicle." The copyist of the extracts notices that the spelling of the author's name is made to be, according to the initials of the chapters, *Henricus Cnitthon.*

Among the MSS. at Lambeth there is a copy, in a seventeenth century hand, of Book I. and a few lines of Book II. of Knighton's Chronicle. It extends over 33 pages. The MS. is No. 138, and the copying commences on page 78 with the "Lamentum Compilatoris." It is probable, therefore, that it was made from our A, but the orthography is modified. It ends at *tam multis validis congredi* (Book II., p. 55). It has the headline *Leicestrensis Chronicon*, and the title (as in A) *Compilatio Henrici de Knyghton Canonici Abbathiæ Leycestrensis de eventibus Angliæ.* In this copy too the spelling of the writer's name, as indicated by the capitals in Book I. was *Henricus Cnitthon.*

The only value of these extracts is that they supply us with the text of the "Lament." But it would seem from some corrections made by a later hand [1] on the margin of A, that there must have existed a better text than either of those here used, though such a text is not now to be found.

The text of the Chronicle is preceded by an introduction in most grandiloquent Latin, unlike almost

[1] See notes in vol. i., pp. 23, 53, 89, 291, 346, 432, 446, and many other places.

everything[1] else in the Chronicle, in which the author gives some account of the plan of his work. He draws from the seventh book of Higden, to whose work he gives unstinted praise. His own name he inserts in the Chronicle by making each of the sixteen chapters, into which the first three books are divided, commence with letters which combined form *Henricus Cnitthon*. Books IV. and V. are in the form of Annals and without this division into chapters. But there is some confusion in the statement with which the Introduction closes (pp. 3, 4). It is there said that this manner of indicating the chronicler's name is adopted only in the two first books, and that the work is divided into five parts. Yet it will be seen that in Book III. the chapters are made to commence with the same sequence of letters, and the omission of this mark of the authorship is not made in parts 3 and 4, as the Introduction states, but in parts 4 and 5. It seems impossible to reconcile the words of the Introduction with the facts.[2]

The sixteen chapters of Book I. consist almost entirely of extracts from Higden Book VII., and of passages interspersed, the substance of which may for the most part be gathered from Higden, but which are condensations of his matter. To this form of abridging his authority Knighton alludes at the close of the book (p. 53) where he tells us that he has given his preliminary notice of the history leading up to the times of the Conqueror *brevius sub tali compendiositate*.

The only exception to what has just been said occurs in Chapter V., where the story of Haveloc the Dane is alluded to as a ground for the Danish claim to the English throne. This leads on to a somewhat lengthy account of Guy of Warwick and his conflict and victory over the giant Colebrand in the reign of King Athelstan.

[1] A letter from the duke of Gueldres to King Richard (vol. ii. 317) is in the same florid style. I have not found a copy of the letter anywhere else. Can it be the Chronicler's own composition?

[2] But see for suggestions below Intro. pp. xxx. and xcvii.

After the same fashion the author proceeds in Book II. till nearly the end of the XIVth chapter. The main portion of the text is from Higden, and the four additional passages of any interest are on pp. 62–66, where Knighton gives an account of the family of Robert earl of Mellent, on whom the county of Leicester had been bestowed by the king, and whose family, by their benefactions to the religious foundations of Leicester, are naturally of much interest to Knighton. On pp. 78–86 he gives the Laws of Edward the Confessor which were confirmed by William the Conqueror in the fourth year of his reign. At pp. 88–91 he enlarges on Higden's narrative by a somewhat fuller account of Archbishop Lanfranc, and similarly on pp. 110–112 he expands the notice of the death of William Rufus.

But from Chapter XV. to the end of Book II. nearly all that now stands in larger type, and which is marked repeatedly as Knighton's by the word *Leycestrensis*, is drawn from the Chronicle of Walter of Hemingburgh. The same remark applies to a large portion of Book III., as will be noticed in its place. But this was not discovered till both books were in type as they now stand. Otherwise a great deal more of the text would have been in small type than is so at present. This wholesale appropriation of Hemingburgh commences at Vol. I., p. 185, *Cum ab iniquo rege Johanne*, in which first sentence a few lines are inserted to form a link, then for a dozen pages the text is all borrowed, being pp. 238–252 of Vol. I. of Hamilton's edition of Hemingburgh. On p. 197 the passage commencing *Et rex Johannes* is not in Hemingburgh. But two pages later, *Rex ipse Johannes*, the extracts begin again and continue with very slight variations to p. 207.[1] Then commencing *Iste Henricus* we have a page and a half of matter from some other source, as also are the

[1] Being Hemingburgh i. 252–262.

several small passages in large type down to page 225. After which all that follows down to p. 267 (*occidebantur Hybernici*) is extracted from the same author,[1] with only here and there a word of modification.

Thus the only matters which appear not to be borrowed are the statements (I. 197) about King John's employment of foreign troops and the establishment of the Cinque Ports, of the condition of England in the reign of Henry III. (I. 207–209) and notes (at pp. 222–223) on the battles of Evesham and Chesterfield and the surrender of Kenilworth Castle. The marginal notes that occur both in MS and A are all copied from Hemingburgh. When Hamilton in his notes on Hemingburgh (I. 247) speaks of Hemingburgh being *supported by* Knighton he cannot have discovered how nearly word for word the latter was a copy from the former.

A few proper names in Knighton may be collated, and in some cases corrected, from Hemingburgh. Thus for *Sayncheron* (p. 228, line 11) he gives *Saytheron*, which Mr. Hamilton identifies with St. Herie, near Taillebourg on the Charente. On p. 239, l. 22, for *Stonenay* he gives *Scotenay ;* on p. 243, l. 27, *Untevilayn* for *Boutevilayn,* and in the following line *Scriby* for *Bribi.* Similar variants are *Pilvesdon* for *Pilnesdon* (p. 246), *Hestelee* for *Henstelet,* and *Mandevile* for *Maundeble,* at the top of p. 255. A more important reading is *Palestrinam, i.e.,* the ancient Præneste, for *Palestinam* at the foot of p. 264. But in most of these places Mr. Hamilton records in his notes readings similar or nearly so to those of the Knighton MSS.

On the unintelligible passage noticed on p. 262 it is worth while to give Hemingburgh's text, which is: "et "erat ille nuncius de Alte nutritis qui nec mortem timent "nec Deum reverentur," though *Alte* is no easier to explain than *Alto.* Rishanger's explanation *sub terra* is only a guess. Another variation (p. 265) is, instead of *vinum*

[1] cf. Hemingburgh i. 289–341.

Libaninum Hemingburgh gives *vinum libaminum*, which is probably correct, though the former is intelligible. The allusion is to Deut. xxxii. 38, "De "quorum victimis comedebant adipes et bibebant vinum "libaminum."

On p. 203 Knighton corrects the Hemingburgh text, which makes King Henry to be crowned *Londoniis*, whereas the coronation took place at Gloucester, Westminster being at that time in the possession of the French. On the next page, at the beginning of Chap. XVI., in order to introduce the N, the final letter of his name, Knighton sets down *Nunc statim amici novi regis*, where the text he copied from had *Moxque consiliarii n.r.*

From this examination of the text of Book II. it will be seen that out of the 214 pages of which it consists there are not more than a score which do not belong either to Higden or to Hemingburgh. Beside the matters already mentioned as not derived from these authors, it remains to enumerate the few other scattered sentences in the book which appear to be taken from some other source. The language is so utterly unlike the grandiloquent introduction to Book I. that it seems hardly possible to think that it is Knighton's own. These are a notice how the monastery at Waltham was converted into an abbey of canons regular (p. 56); the existence of Harold's tomb at Waltham (p. 57). On the same page is an account of a voice heard by William of Normandy on the night after his landing; and on the next some mention of those who came over with him, and how the King of Denmark made a demand for homage, the refusal of which may have led to the subsequent Danish invasion. At page 67 the notice of the wars between William and Malcolm King of Scotland is but an abridgement of the narrative of Hemingburgh. At p. 103 is a story about one who prayed for the dead, which is not found elsewhere; at p. 128 are a few words

concerning Henry I.; at p. 130 a story about St. Patrick's purgatory; at p. 147 is a notice of the religious foundations of Robert, Earl of Leicester, where Knighton may be drawing from sources in the house to which he belonged. At the close of the reigns of Stephen and Henry II. there are short accounts of the character of these Kings, and in the midst of long extracts from Higden concerning Richard I. there are a few scattered sentences from some other authority marked constantly as *Leycestrensis.*

Turning to Book III. (Vol. I., pp. 269–479) we find it to be largely of the same character. For from p. 291 to p. 398 (*i.e.* from the beginning of Chap. III. to the end of Chap. XII.) nearly all that is not marked as Higden's is copied from Hemingburgh. And after examining carefully the places where the illuminated letters occur, which in this book also are made to form Knighton's name, I am inclined to think that the breaks in the book were here made by the scribe in imitation of what the author himself has done in Books I. and II. This supposition helps, in part, to make intelligible Knighton's words (Vol. I., pp. 3, 4.) about his own arrangement of the books. In *eleven* out of the *sixteen* places where the illuminated letters of the proper name are found in Book III. no mark of a chapter is given in either MS. The scribe appears therefore to have amused himself by searching for sentences at convenient intervals where the proper letter occurred in the opening word, and to have left these letters of the acrostic to be illuminated by another hand, as was usually done. At the seventh break, where the V of Henricus ought to have been displayed the illuminator seems to have thought he was one letter farther on in the name, for instead of *Videns,* both MSS. give *Sidens.*

Book III. begins on p. 269, and the direct copying from Hemingburgh (as has been said) on p. 291. The matter of these intervening pages is however in the

main drawn by way of abridgement from the same writer. In the note on the family of Henry III., p. 269, Knighton adds the name of Katherine, who died unmarried, to the ordinary lists of the children of the King. He gives no events of the two years after the death of Henry, but commences, as Hemingburgh also does, with the coronation of Edward I. in 1274, after his arrival from the Holy Land. The account which he gives of the feats and festivities of the coronation is different from the other records of that day's events. In close conjunction he notices briefly the King's desire for reforms and the passing of the first statutes of Westminster.

But when we come to the next events chronicled, the council of Lyons, the Gregorian constitutions, the earthquake, the blood-like rain, and the murrain among sheep in 1274, we see both by the order of events, and from the similarity of expressions, that we are reading a condensation of Hemingburgh. After this a short quotation from Higden is inserted, and then in language which does not resemble any of the other chronicles is noted the Welsh rebellion of 1276 and its suppression in the next year, though the words, which say of Llewellyn that *voluit se maritare sine licentia regis*, leave the reader ignorant of the details to which they allude. The next three clauses claimed for Knighton are a notice, out of place, of Edward's return from the Holy Land, of the dedication of Leicester Abbey in 1279, and of Edward's partiality for David the Welsh King's brother.

The narrative of the Welsh rebellion in 1282 (pp. 274–277) is substantially the same as Hemingburgh with the exception that Knighton ascribes the prompting of the war to David and not to Llewellyn. The details in Hemingburgh are much more full, especially about the varying fortunes of the English in the campaign.

The next nine pages, 278–286, are given as if nearly all by Knighton, and are occupied with the starting of the King to Gascony in 1285; then mention is made of troubles at home from Rees ap Meredith, of Edward's reception and stay for three years in Gascony; of the corrupt conduct of some English judges at this time, among whom, beside Thomas de Weland, Knighton gives the names of Adam de Stretton and Richard de Boyland; next is noticed the punishment of Jews for clipping coin, and the grants which were made to the King for war expenses.

Chapter II. opens with the disturbances which befel in 1288 at Boston in Lincolnshire, then comes a notice of the condemnation of heretical opinions (classed under eight heads) in the Court of Arches. This last passage seems to be entirely independent. The intention of Edward to go to the Holy Land, which was encouraged by successive Popes, but prevented by the death of Alexander King of Scotland, is next narrated, and followed by an account, of a very brief character, of the death of the heiress of Scotland, Margaret of Norway, and the various claimants to the crown, and how at the parliament of Norham they all agreed to submit their claims to the decision of the King of England and to abide by his judgment; the short narrative closing with the election of John Baliol, and his homage done to Edward at Newcastle-on-Tyne in 1292.

In substance the whole of these nine pages are to be found in Hemingburgh (II. pp. 11–39) though not precisely in the same order and words, though at times the language is somewhat close. It is difficult to suppose, after what we have seen in Book II. and shall presently see in this book, that the compiler of Knighton has not here adapted the chronicle, which he has laid under such large contributions elsewhere. This idea will be

greatly confirmed if the parts of pp. 289 and 290, which are marked as "Leycestrensis," and contain the story of the revolt of Madoc and Morgan in Wales with its suppression in 1295, be compared with Hemingburgh, Vol. II. pp. 57–59.

Chapter III. commences in the middle of p. 291 and Chapter XII. ends on p. 399, and the comparison of the following table with the printed text will make it clear that, with the exception of a few tags to make the narrative readable, all that is not derived from Higden in these chapters, is either copied or adapted from Hemingburgh.

KNIGHTON.	HEMINGBURGH.
Pages 291–292	Vol. II. 77
292–293	85–87
293–297	78–85
298	89
299–300	84 (in substance)
300	99
301–303	89–92
304	101–102
305	94 and 96
306	104
307	95
307–312	105–112
312–324	Edward's letter to Pope Boniface.
324–332	113–121
334–365	40–77
365–369	122–127
369–371	158–159
371–390	127–148
390–395	152–157
395–398	160–164
398–399	Extracts from pp. 170–182.

It is at once clear from a comparison of this list with the printed text that up to the end of Chapter XII. all that is not taken by Knighton from Higden is copied or adapted from Hemingburgh, the change of order made in Hemingburgh's material being due to a desire to make the narrative of Scotch affairs more continuous, and to range the events of continental history all into one narrative.

In Book III., as in the previous book, several proper names have been found in Hemingburgh with a different spelling. These have been inserted in brackets in the *Index Nominum* at the end of Volume II. The name which (p. 345) is not given in either MS. of Knighton is set down as *Bayon* in Hemingburgh.

On p. 350 Knighton intimates that he is copying from some authority, though he does not name it, only saying *quære eodem libro capitulo 3.*

At pp. 388, 389 he mentions the name of *Gisborne*, after the account of the fighting in Annandale, as the place at which the church was burnt, Hemingburgh speaks of it as *ecclesia nostra*, as was natural for him who was canon of Gisborne.

The reading *Oxoniæ* on pp. 433, 434 should be *Exoniæ*. But both MSS. have the word clearly written, and Twysden printed *Oxoniæ*. But it is manifestly a mistake. The same error occurs in the text of the *Chron. Angliæ*, p. 15, under the year 1343.

On p. 398 it is difficult to see why Knighton makes the note which he places at the close of the extract there given from the Ordinance of Pope Boniface about the differences between the kings of England and France. He represents himself as having diligently sought for the remainder of the document, but been unable to find it. The Papal award is given entire in Hemingburgh, II. 161–170.

From the commencement of Chapter XIII. Knighton ceases to incorporate Hemingburgh, though it is plain

that in the period from 1299–1315 (where a gap of 12 years occurs in Hemingburgh) he still draws on the earlier authority, but abridges what he finds there.

In 1299[1] he only slightly mentions the peace between France and England, of which Hemingburgh gives the full conditions. Knighton corrects the mistake which is made under this year by Hemingburgh, who (Vol. II., p. 185) gives London as the place of King Edward's marriage. The marriage took place at Canterbury on Sept. 12th. The other events of the year which he notices are the parliaments held at York[2] and the march to Berwick with a view to the relief of Stirling Castle a purpose which was abandoned on account of the cold weather; and the death of Henry of Newark, archbishop of York, who was succeeded by Thomas Corbridge.

Under 1300 the first event mentioned is the Papal jubilee, which observance was at this time first instituted; the King's march into Scotland, and the truce agreed upon till Whitsuntide 1301, and the birth of the King's eldest son Thomas of Brotherton, afterwards earl of Norfolk. The confirmation of the Forest Charter, which took place in this year, Knighton only mentions under the following year, and gives Stamford (p. 401) as the place where the Parliament was held for the confirmation. Stamford is an error for Westminster, the confusion has arisen because in 1301 in a Parliament at the former place an arrangement was made for the perambulation of the forests (*cf.* Hemingburgh, II. 188).

In 1301 was born Edmund of Woodstock, afterwards earl of Kent, and here Knighton has set down the claim made by Pope Boniface that Scotland should be made a fief of the Holy See. This claim belongs to the events

---

[1] It is curious that the mistake of the MSS. of Knighton about this date, which they give as 1290, occurs also in the *Eulogium Historiarum*, p. 170.

[2] Wrongly stated to have been held in London by *Eulog. Hist.*, p. 170.

of 1300. For the Parliament held at Lincoln to consider the Pope's demand was assembled on Jan. 20th, 1301. The reply given by the whole baronage was emphatically against the Papal claim. After the close of the parliament the King marched into Scotland in June, and stayed there there till after Christmas. After this in the early part (January 26) of 1302 he concluded a short truce and came home again. He had appointed Sir John Segrave guardian of Scotland. Knighton makes the barest allusion to the differences between the Pope and the King of France and between the same king and the count of Flanders. But in 1303 there was another rebellion of the Scots, under Wallace (whom Hemingburgh does not mention in connexion with this outbreak), and at this time Sir John Segrave was defeated. In consequence Edward himself went up to Scotland and extended his uninterrupted march through the land as far as Caithness, and on his way back Stirling Castle was surrendered to him. In the same year Philip of France restored Gascony to King Edward. But of these events, and of the accusations made against Pope Boniface, and of the proceedings which brought about the Pope's death, Knighton makes but the briefest mention.

It was in 1304 that Scotland became so much subdued that the king could leave Sir John Segrave again in charge. And in the same year the Justiciaries of the King's Bench and the Exchequer were restored to London, having been for seven years in the northern capital at York.

The events noted under 1305 are the expulsion of the Flemings from England at the request of the French King, and the capture and execution of William Wallace. In the account of the latter, the meaning of the words *ductus apud Conderet*[1] *et suspensus*, is difficult to see. In the *Eulog. Hist.* Wallace is said to have been

[1] Perhaps *Conderet* is a scribe's blunder for *Londonias*.

" seductus per unum de armigeris suis *juxta villam* " *Sancti Dominici.*"[1] By this is meant Sir John Menteith, who was governor of Dumbarton. Wallace was taken prisoner at Robroystown (sometimes written *Robrastoun*), in the neighbourhood of Glasgow, and his execution was in London. Under 1306 all that Knighton records is the murder of John Comyn, with the subsequent sending of an English army against Bruce and his escape to Cantyre. The movements against Bruce also are nearly all that Knighton mentions for 1307, except the espousal of Prince Edward with Isabella the daughter of the French King, and the death of Edward I. at Burgh-upon-Sands. With a mention of the recall of Piers Gaveston, and the imprisonment of the Bishop of Chester for his efforts against the Prince's favourite, the chapter closes, its contents being merely the heads of the history which is given at greater length in Hemingburgh, II. pp. 185–273, with the exception of the proceedings against the Bishop of Chester, of which Hemingburgh makes no mention.

In the next two chapters (XIV., XV.) the incidents not drawn from Higden are very few. For the Chronicle of Hemingburgh has no records between 1315 and 1327. In the events selected for notice Knighton seems to follow Trokelowe and Murimuth. But all is given in very scanty fashion. Thus he records the commencement in 1307 of proceedings against the Knights Templars, and alludes to the council held concerning them in London in 1311, but of the wider movement against the Order by the King of France and the Pope there is no mention.

The story of Edward's infatuation for Gaveston is taken from Higden, and in all the accounts of the dis-

---

[2] So in the Wallace papers (Maitland Club), p. 147. *Mais en la veille Seint Dominik . . . . fust le dit William Waleys pris.* In the Scottish Chronicles it is described as a single lonely habitation where he often lay hid.

sensions between the King and the nobles led by Thomas earl of Leicester, there is no original matter, with the exception of certain articles (pp. 413–421) which form a part of the agreement between the Earl of Leicester and those prelates who were sent to bring about a reconciliation between him and the King. The events which preceded the defeat, capture, and execution of the earl of Leicester afford no addition to Trokelowe, except in the matter of reflections (pp. 426-427) on the evil fate which dogged those who had a hand in the earl of Leicester's overthrow.

The rest of the story of the reign of Edward II. adds nothing to what is told by either Murimuth or Trokelowe and Blaneforde, in greater detail, except the name of the agent in Mortimer's escape from the Tower, which is given as Gerard de Alspaye, and the arraignment of Hugh Despenser, which is given *in extenso*, pp. 437–441.

Chapter XV. concludes with a note, apparently not by Knighton, marking this point as the end of Higden's chronicle, but noting that there were some additions made thereto in connexion with the reign of Edward III., and that from these quotations have been made in what follows. The termination of Higden proper will be seen to be here by reference to Vol. VIII., p. 324, of the Polychronicon as published in the Rolls Series, where *Explicit Historia* marks the conclusion, but is followed immediately by a short notice of events of importance down to the 26th year of Edward III. The allusion in Knighton is to these.

With chapter XVI. (p. 443) of Book III. Knighton's narrative becomes more independent, and his matter consequently more deserving of consideration. He gives the day [1] of Edward III.'s coronation as the first of February, and mentions, what is quite true, that that day was a Sunday. He also discusses how it came to pass that

[1] By Avesbury and others the date is given as January 25th, the feast of the Conversion of St. Paul. In the *Eulog. Hist.* February 3rd is given.

there was a variation in the date given. The surrender by the son of the younger of the Despensers of the Welsh possessions which came to him from his uncle, and the plundering of the abbey of Abingdon, are mentioned only by Knighton.

In the account (p. 444) of the imprisonment of Edward II. he mentions Thomas de Berkeleye as one of the persons put in charge of him, whereas Murimuth gives Thomas de Gorney. The mistake in Knighton may be due to the fact that Berkeley Castle was the place of the King's last imprisonment. A slip of the scribe may well be the cause of the insertion of the wrong name.

That Edward treated for peace with the Scots at Newcastle-upon-Tyne, and the reason why his endeavours were in vain, is not mentioned in the contemporary accounts, while Knighton has some details of his own (p. 445) about the conflict between the English and the Hainaulters at York. He relates the adventure of Sir James Douglas in the camp of the English, which Hemingburgh also mentions, but the two stories differ considerably, while Knighton alone mentions the sorrow of King Edward at the ill success of this his first expedition.

The Parliament held at Lincoln, at which the death of Edward II. was made known, is not mentioned by Hemingburgh or Murimuth, nor the details of the subsidy asked at the queen-mother's advice from the clergy (p. 446), nor do they mention the return of the troops to Hainault, laden with gifts from the queen and Mortimer. Knighton next adds to the details of King Edward's marriage that the princess Philippa came to England on Christmas eve, and that the royal marriage was celebrated at York, and that subsidies were granted to the king at the instance of Henry earl of Lancaster.

The parliament, which Knighton (p. 447) says met at York and concluded peace with Scotland, was really at

Northampton in 1328, and arranged the marriage between David Bruce and Johanna the king's sister, who is named *de Turri* from her birthplace, the Tower of London.

The narrative of the usurpation of power by the Queen-mother and Mortimer is in accord with Hemingburgh, and so is the account of the opposition offered by Henry earl of Lancaster, and its frustration by the desertion of the most influential of his party, the uncles of the King, the earls of Norfolk and Kent, but Knighton gives more of detail, and there are many touches which show that we are reading the account of one who lived amid the events. Besides Mortimer's round table (p. 449) we have the story of the death of Sir Robert Holand, who had played false to Thomas the late earl of Lancaster, and the account of the ravages committed by the queen's party round about Leicester, with all which doings Knighton must have been well acquainted. The names of those concerned in the earl of Lancaster's effort at resistance, and the result both to him and them, are mentioned in the manner of one to whom the events were familiar (p. 450).

To the account of the homage done by Edward to the French King for Gascony, Knighton adds (p. 451) the story of the attempt that was devised for arresting the English monarch, and its discovery and frustration by the Bishop of Lincoln, who was attending on Edward. And his notice of the death of Robert Bruce is enlarged by a mention of the ill he wrought for England, and how want of good rule had brought it about that two Englishmen were at this time hardly a match for a weak Scotchman (p. 452).

Under 1330 there is considerable detail given about the arrest and execution of Edmund earl of Kent, the King's uncle, and about other arbitrary proceedings which led to the great unpopularity of Isabella and Mortimer, so that in a council at Nottingham it was resolved to arrest them. This was effected in the night

time, and with them were taken also Mortimer's two sons and Oliver de Byngam[1] and Simon de Berford. One of the king's servants, Hugh de Tryplington,[2] was slain by Mortimer before he was taken. After her arrest the queen was confined to one place of residence, deprived of her lands, and allowed 3,000 marks a year for her support (p. 454).

In the narrative of this year Knighton differs from Murimuth in his estimate of the character of the earl of Kent. The latter relates that he was not much regretted,[3] while Knighton tells how an executioner for him could hardly be found "propter pietatem quam habebant de eo" (p. 452). The articles of accusation against Mortimer are given almost in full by Knighton (pp. 454–458). He was sentenced by the Parliament of Westminster on 26 November (Monday) and executed on the following Thursday. His follower and adviser, Simon de Berford, was executed by the sentence of the same parliament.

At this point (p. 459) Knighton inserts a passage from Higden, containing an abstract of the movements of Edward Baliol to recover the Scottish crown, but later on he gives in his own words the details of the several conflicts, occupying with them nearly all the rest of the chapter.

Before this, however, he tells (p. 460) of the erection of a new hostel at Leicester by Henry, Earl of Lancaster, and of certain foreign wars between Christians and infidels, in the course of which the adventurous Scotchman Sir James Douglas came by his death. Knighton tells too how terrible this hero had made himself to the English invaders of Scotland.

In 1331 he mentions a court of Trailbaston, held through all England, and how in consequence of the

[1] Correctly *Oliver d' Ingham.*

[2] Called *Turpyntone* in Murimuth.

[3] Murimuth, p. 60. Comes eo minus a populo conquerebatur, quod malam habuit familiam.

severities thereof a judge was seized by one of the sufferers and made to pay ransom. The parliament of 1332 took these proceedings into consideration, and a sentence of excommunication was also pronounced by the Archbishop and bishops against those who had taken part in this assault upon a justiciary.

Mention is made at the same time of the birth of a daughter of King Edward, and the marriage of his sister Eleanor to the duke of Gueldres (p. 461).

After this Knighton enters on his own fuller account of the various expeditions made into Scotland. He tells us that the movement began from the complaints of English nobles because they had lost their Scotch possessions. He gives a list of these claimants, and foremost stands Edward Baliol, who laid claim to the Scottish kingdom. The list is more full than those given by Hemingburgh and Murimuth. They landed at Kinghorn (p. 462) in Fifeshire, and routed the Scotch forces which came against them. Next day they marched to the Abbey of Dunfermline, where they waited for the enemy to attack them. A battle was fought on the eve of St. Lawrence [August 10] at Glaidsmuir[1] where the Scotch were defeated with great slaughter. In all the notices of this victory there is a record that it was gained not by numbers but *divina clementia mediante,* or some similiar expression referring the result to the help of God. Knighton, in agreement with Hemingburgh, mentions (p. 463) the 40 mounted "Alemanni" who had come to help the English, but he gives a more complete list of those nobles who fell on the Scotch side, and mentions by name two English nobles, who fell, viz., Lord John Gurdon and Lord Reginald de la Beche. Next day the English (p. 464) took St. Johnstown, (*i.e.* Perth) and fortified it. Here there came against them a large force led by Patrick and Archibald Douglas,

[1] Variously named *Gledmore, Gaskmore,* and *Dupplin Moor.*

who sent to Berwick for a seaman named John Crabbe with some Flemish ships to attempt the destruction of the English shipping in the Tay. Here Knighton adheres very closely to the substance, not the words, of Hemingburgh, and relates the story of the defeat of the Scots both by water and land, and how Perth was given into the charge of the Earl of Fife, and Edward Baliol crowned King at Scone (p. 465). The Scotch asking for a truce, that they might consider how peace might be made, treacherously began to attack Baliol's adherents, and he was forced to flee to England. He was well received by Sir Ralph de Acre in Carlisle, and later on was helped much by the Lady de Geynes at Morholme (p. 466). The latter incidents are all peculiar to Knighton. After the English Parliament of 1333, held at York, the English nobles take up the cause of Baliol and march on Scotland and ultimately lay siege to Berwick. Meanwhile Archibald Douglas ravages North England about Gilsland, and Englishmen retaliate upon Scotland and take prisoner William Douglas and many others. Further raids were made about Haddington. Knighton alone tells the story of the earl of Ulster's (p. 467) intention to go to the help of the English at Berwick, and how he was murdered by some one who favoured the Scots. He also alone records the statute settling the place of the staple of wool and the price at which it should be sold.

Hemingburgh is followed in the account of the attempt of the Scots to raise the siege of Berwick (pp. 468, 469) and of their defeat in the Battle of Halidown Hill, but the lists of names are much more fully given in Knighton, who tells of the surrender of Berwick, and the terms granted to the besieged, and of Edward Baliol's return to Scotland.

In 1334 Knighton tells us that it was at the Parliament at York that Baliol did homage to Edward for his Scotch possessions. Murimuth mentions that Baliol

was summoned to this Parliament, but did homage at Newcastle-upon-Tyne. The latter part of this statement is in Hemingburgh, who does not say anything about the Parliament of York. Returning to Scotland, Baliol finds the country in arms against him under the leadership of the earl of Athol, and he is obliged to go back again to Berwick (p. 471) while some of his supporters are imprisoned. After the autumn gathering of a Parliament in London, King Edward marches to Berwick and onward to the Firth of Forth, to help Baliol, at which time Edward de Bohun, a kinsman of the King, is drowned in the Solway. With English help Roxburgh is fortified. The English King returns to Newcastle-upon-Tyne in the beginning of February to receive some messengers from the King of France, who had espoused the cause of the Scots, and after a council held at Nottingham Edward declines to make peace with both France and the Scots (p. 472).

Several matters of this year relative to Pope John XXII., to a quarrel among the students in the University of Oxford, and to the severity of the winter of this year, are only mentioned by Knighton.

In 1385 Knighton gives the history of the Scotch campaign in a different form from the other records. According to him Edward advanced from Carlisle and crossed the Solway. A plundering party, at the head of which was earl Montague, went in the direction of Caerlaverock and brought back much booty. The march of the army was through Annandale, and King Edward conferred signal honours on Lord Montague (p. 473). A fortress belonging to the Earl of Athol is taken by Baliol and Earl Warenne; and in the place were found several persons of importance. The English army came to Perth, and there several of the Scotch magnates made submission to the English monarch. Hemingburgh mentions the earl of Athol among the number. Knighton only says that those who submitted had authority from

the earl of Athol to do so, and that they made terms in his name, which terms he gives at full (pp. 473–475).

These persons, now liegemen of Baliol and King Edward, were sent northward to check rebellion, but their submission was not popular, and the earl of Athol was presently slain near Kildrummie Castle, while the earl of Moray and the Douglases attacked some troops who were returning to England. At the same time some Scots advanced toward Bamborough, where the queen was, but they were stopped by English troops, and the Earl of Moray taken prisoner, and the attempt thus made to draw the English King from Scotland did not succeed.

The King of France, who sided with David Bruce, obtained the agency of the Pope to bring about peace, and to engage King Edward in a proposed Crusade. The English King answered that his hands were full through the French King's policy in aiding the Scotch rebels ; and to David Bruce he sent an answer to the same purport (p. 476).

Knighton naturally notices in 1335 the burning of Cockerham manor and chapel with its books and muniments as being a possession of Leicester Abbey. In this year the Scots proposed to submit to England, and David Bruce and his wife were to reside in England till the death of Edward Baliol. But through the interference of the King of France, they held back and did not present themselves at the Parliament at the appointed time (p. 477).

In consequence, the English King passed again into Scotland in 1336, and strengthened the fortifications of Perth, and also the fortresses of Stirling, Roxburgh, and Bothwell. The King's brother, John of Eltham, died at Perth at this time. Edward is said to have made this expedition because troops from France were expected in Scotland, but after much marching and plundering, meeting with no resistance, he came back, and at

Nottingham a new grant of subsidies was liberally made to him. There are several matters here mentioned which are supplementary to Hemingburgh, while his account of the expedition of 1336, though differing, can be worked in with all that Knighton records.

Under 1337 he only gives (p. 478) a list of honours conferred by King Edward, Hemingburgh says *six* earls were created. Knighton gives the same list, but adds to them Hugh Courtenay, made earl of Devonshire.

It will be seen from this sketch of the subjects of Chapter XVI. that we have now entered upon a different kind of material, and one which is of much interest, and which adds largely to the story of our country's history.

Knighton, or the scribe, adds that now the whole matter of Higden is worked out, and the Leicester Chronicler proceeds alone for the rest of the book.

Knighton opens Book IV. with a notice of King Edward's embassy relative to his claims in Gascony. This was unsuccessful,[1] the French King being enraged about the events in the Scotch War. A desire for retaliation led the French to ravage Gascony. King Edward's claim in England to the pre-emption of wool is mentioned by Murimuth, who also speaks (p. 79) of a previous statute forbidding the export of English wool, but providing for free[2] admission of foreign artisans to make it up. This, he says, was followed by certain sumptuary laws, which the chronicler tells us were never observed. According to Knighton, Edward employed the wool in sale abroad to gain him foreign support which the prohibition of its export had alienated.[3] He laments, in common with other contempo-

---

[1] *Hemingb.* (ii. 313) says that the ambassadors heard at Boulogne that they would not succeed, and so went no farther, but turned aside into Hainault.

[2] Cf. also *Galfr. le Baker* (Thompson), p. 59, on the whole transaction.

[3] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 6) says of the Flemings *plus saccos quam Anglicos venerabantur.*

raries, the cost of the visit to England of the two cardinals[1] who came to mediate between France and England.

In the notice of the siege of Dunbar he gives the name of the Earl of Arundel as one of those entrusted with that unsuccessful effort. The incident of the capture of the Bishop of Glasgow when bringing over supplies from France to Scotland is told with somewhat more detail in Hemingburgh, who does not however supply the name of the captor, Sir John Ros, and while Knighton says the bishop died of grief, Hemingburgh says he was fatally knocked on the head.

The foreign ecclesiastics whose property was confiscated are said to have been Cluniac and Cistercian monks. But there seems to have been unusual efforts made to raise money from every class, and Edward having received large subsidies felt himself able to send to the Pope a refusal[2] of the French King's proposals. In consequence, the Normans made a descent on Portsmouth, and set the town on fire. Knighton adds to the records, that they were able to do this because they wore the arms of Englishmen and so deceived the inhabitants.

He opens the year 1338 with Edward's further exactions for war expenses, and records the popular discontent thereat, which he says the King appeased by adopting wise counsel. But before the war was actually declared there had been sent[3] from England, along with the cardinals, the Archbishop of Canterbury (John Stratford), and the Bishop of Durham (Richard de Bury) to try for peace "si posset fieri bono modo". At the

[1] *Murimuth* (p. 81) gives their names as *Petrus Ispanus* and *Bertrandus de Monte Favencio.*

[2] The text of Edward's answer to the Papal mediation and of the Papal bull in reply are given in full, *Hemingb.* ii. 316–336.

[3] Sir Geoffrey Scroope is joined with them in the narrative of *Galfr. le Baker* (p. 61). On the names of the rest of the envoys, see Rymer, *Fœdera*, ii. 1043.

same time the siege of Dunbar had been raised, and Edward sent agents[1] before him to the continent to make ready for his own crossing. He set forth on the day of the Translation of St. Thomas, with a large retinue, among whom Knighton mentions the Earl of Norfolk where Hemingburgh sets down the Earl of Northampton, and came safely to Antwerp.[2]

In the King's absence, a parliament was held by commission at Northampton, by the duke of Cornwall, and liberal grants were made again for the war service. Knighton makes special mention of the wool which went to the King from the three counties of Leicester, Lincoln, and Northampton, viz., 1211 sacks.[3] The statement which he makes, that on his arrival, Edward found that there was only the duke of Gueldres on whom he could rely, finds explanation from Murimuth, who mentions that the allies whom he had looked for, asked at the outset a large sum of money for expenses, more than the royal treasury could afford.

From Antwerp Edward hastened to have a meeting, at Coblenz,[4] with the duke of Bavaria, who had made himself Emperor of Germany, and was living not far from Cologne. About their meeting Knighton preserves an elaborate account, of which we have nothing elsewhere. The narrative of the ceremonial might have come from an eye-witness, so minute is it in numbers and detail. The Emperor named[5] the King his Vicarius, and in the Cathedral at Cologne there was much taking

---

[1] These were William Bohun, Earl of Northampton, and Sir Geoffrey Scroope, Lord Chief Justice.

[2] The place of embarkation is said by *Hemingb.* (ii. 315) to have been Orwell, by *Murim.* (p. 83) Ipswich.

[3] Much of the information about the produce of wool in the country, and the way in which the King made exactions upon it, is found most fully in Knighton; but see *Murim.* (p. 85), and the note there.

[4] Edward was at Coblenz, Aug. 31st.

[5] On the papal indignation at these proceedings cf. *Murim.*, p. 88, and *Heming.* (ii. 331).

of oaths, and liberal promises made to Edward of aid in his war with France. Which all came to very little. After this the king returned to Brabant, and called a council at Malines, to which all the magnates gathered except the bishop of Liége ; who also declined to attend a second council held in his near neighbourhood. Of this conduct Edward complained to the Emperor, who promised to come to his help.

The Flemings at this time banished the Count of Flanders and put most of his kindred to death.[1]

That no efforts might be spared to obtain peace the two prelates, who had been sent at the opening of the year to negotiate, made visits to two French parliaments, one held at Compiègne, the other at Arras. But the King of France had in secret made accord with the Emperor,[2] and instead of peace he sent a fleet to do all the harm they could on the coast of England. In their first attack they burnt a great part of Southampton, and came again later in the year to complete the devastation, but were prevented from landing anywhere. A curious offer and challenge was made to them by the English, but not accepted. The Parliament took steps for making the Cinque Ports secure, and also the Coasts of Norfolk and Suffolk, in expectation of the descents of the French. Knighton preserves a record of the price of grain and pulse in this year. The events of next year (1339), shew that the precautions for guarding the seaboard were very necessary. For Hastings was partly burnt down, and attacks were made on Sandwich and Rye[3] ;

---

[1] Of all these doings we have no notice in contemporary records.

[2] Knighton (p. 22) next mentions the Emperor in 1340 as appealing to Edward on behalf of the French King.

[3] *Murimuth* gives (pp. 88–89) evidence of the activity of the French in this matter, telling that attacks were made also on Harwich, Southampton, the Isle of Wight, Dover, Folkestone, Plymouth, Bristol, and the coasts of Devonshire and Cornwall, where they were resisted by the aged Hugh Courtenay, Earl of Devon. Cf. also *Galfr. le Baker*, p. 63.

the French at the same time inciting the Scots to make inroads from the north, and themselves invading Gascony. The English retaliated by setting fire to Boulogne.

King Edward began his march into France, leaving William de Pole as a hostage at Antwerp. At the same time Sir Walter Manny made an independent raid in the direction of Picardy. Edward's first halt was at Valenciennes,[1] thence he went forward and entered French territory on Tuesday 21st September. The English admiral Sir Robert Morley was at the same time busy ravaging the coast of Normandy. The King went forward, devastating [2] and burning on every side, through Cambresis, then to Markonne, and was led to expect that King Philip would meet him near Peronne. Therefore in that direction he made his way, crossing the Oise, and then waiting for what might happen. At this time his allies, the duke of Brabant, the marquis of Juliers, and the duke of Gueldres began to complain of scarcity of provisions, and of the cold weather. From the boastful tone of the French King, they had expected to find him in a short time, and had come out scantily provided. By a letter [3] from the master of the French crossbowmen the English were assured that if they chose a fit place for the fight, they would be met in battle. Hence Edward on the Friday (Sept. 24) advanced to Flamengerie, but he and his troops waited all the next day to no purpose. Then he sent to offer battle on the Sunday, but the French took fright and retired, and on the Monday the allies of the English King went back into Brabant, he and his men going to Antwerp.

The nobles of Gascony who had taken the French King's part returned to their allegiance to Edward, and

---

[1] The whole story of this march and the return to Brabant is given in *Avesb.* (p. 304), in a letter from King Edward to his son, which Knighton appears in the main to follow.

[2] *Murim.* (p. 102) is somewhat more full on these devastations.

[3] The text of this, and of the other letters which followed it are in *Hemingb.* (ii. 342 seqq.).

a navy, which had gathered on the coast of Flanders with a view to descents on England, was scattered by a storm soon after setting sail. Thus their threats came to nought. Knighton takes notice of the scanty[1] number of English troops which were with Edward in Flanders, and states that it was at the suggestion[2] of the Flemings that he assumed the arms of France.[3] They then did homage to him, and the queen remained at Ghent,[4] where John of Gaunt was born at this time, while her husband returned to England and held a parliament in London after Eastertide in 1340.

For the year[5] 1340 Knighton begins his record with an account of the liberal grants made to King Edward by the unanimous voice of Parliament, although an appeal had been made by some of the nobles that the grant should be of a less abundant character. In consequence of this liberality many easements were bestowed by the King, of which Knighton's notice is not so full as are some of the other accounts.[6] He, however, mentions the care taken that no one departing from the kingdom should go till he had given security that his share of the customs should be paid.

The activity of the French King during Edward's absence in England, and his preparations for intercepting him as he crossed to Ghent, are noticed, as well as his instigation of the Scots to give trouble, and his own invasion of Flanders, during which he made prisoners at Lisle of the Earls of Salisbury and Suffolk, whom

[1] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 8) says Edward sent many of them home again, especially the Welsh who were proving troublesome.

[2] *Chron. Angl.* says *consilio Brabantinorum. Murim.* (p. 103) puts it that the states of Flanders submitted to Edward because the Pope had placed their country under an interdict. So too *Galf. le Baker*, p. 66.

[3] For his manifesto on the occasion, see *Hemingb.*, ii. 337.

[4] Others give wrongly Antwerp as the place of the queen's stay.

[5] *Hemingburgh* gives the bull of Pope Benedict offering his mediation before the King set out for Flanders, and Edward's reply thereto (ii. 348).

[6] See *Hemingb.*, ii. 354. Also *Eul. Hist.* (p. 204).

PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

Edward had left in charge there. The Flemings sent word to England that unless speedy help came they must surrender to the French. Hence Edward set forth with all possible dispatch,[1] attended by the Bishop of Lincoln (Burgwash) and several of the nobility, and, on the eve of St. John the Baptist, arrived on the coast of Flanders. There he found the French fleet waiting for him in full force, and next day was fought the decisive battle of Sluys,[2] in which Knighton says the French lost 25,000 men. He tells us also the names of two of the French commanders.

Edward with the Flemings proceeded to besiege Tournay.[3] It was thought the French King would attempt to raise the siege, but the Countess of Hainault on her knees begged for a peace, and the Duke of Brabant also came forward as a mediator. Thus a truce for a year was concluded of which Knighton records the terms, though not quite so fully as *Avesbury*. Probably Edward was the more inclined to this course, because his supplies from England came in with much uncertainty.[4]

---

[1] The English King sailed from Orwell on 22nd June 1340. *Murimuth* says (p. 105) that he kept his Whitsuntide at Ipswich. There was clearly some trouble in getting the fleet together, and the ships were few in number (see *Hemingb.*, p. 355). *Murimuth* says there were 260 vessels large and small in the French fleet, and Knighton's numbers are nearly the same.

[2] The details of the engagement are given with some fulness by *Hemingb.*, who says the Flemings watched the battle prepared to join whichever side should win. He also gives the text of King Edward's letter ordering a public thanksgiving in England for the victory. *Avesbury* has the letter also (p. 312). *Murimuth* has more detail concerning the battle (p. 106), and enumerates the losses on both sides. In *Eul. Hist.* the battle is said to have lasted from 9 in the morning till sunrise the next day. The *Chron. Angl.* has a curious story of how the defeat was announced to the French King by the court jester.

[3] *Murimuth* mentions the siege of St. Omer as going on at the same time with Tournay, and that the latter lasted till 27th Sept. *Avesbury* (p. 316) has a long list of the other English conquests in this interval.

[4] *Murim.* says he was *expectans pecuniam de Anglia quæ non venit.*

The Emperor, too, who with so much parade had made Edward his Vicar is now reconciled to France, and uses his intercession also. We can easily understand the annoyance of King Edward at this change of face, and can see why the title of *Vicarius* was soon afterwards[1] withdrawn. Knighton makes no mention of Edward's challenge[2] of the French King to single combat, but records the inroad of the Scots under David Bruce, which extended as far as Durham. Knighton is alone in mentioning a grievous sickness which prevailed throughout England at this time, but specially in Leicestershire. The sufferers are said by him to have barked like dogs.

Of the troubles of 1341 between the King and Archbishop Stratford in connexion with the exaction of taxes from the clergy other than had been conceded, Knighton has no word. The King after desisting from the siege of Tournay, suddenly returned to England, and no doubt grieved at the remissness which had been shown in sending him supplies, removed all his ministers who were clerics,[3] and put laymen in their place. He also removed many of the judges and other official persons, and no doubt the zeal of the newly appointed officers was somewhat excessive. Hence the troubles. Knighton mentions King Edward's visit to Scotland, which was

---

[1] The letter of Louis, the Emperor, revoking the title is in *Hemingb.* (ii. 388) and in *Avesbury* (p. 336). The revocation was made in 1341.

[2] The challenge and King Philip's reply are in *Hemingb.*, p. 361–2, and *Murim.* (pp. 110–114).

[3] *Hemingburgh* has given the text of the Archbishop's remonstrance, which brought on him the royal displeasure; also of a letter which he wrote to the new Lord Chancellor on the exactions made upon the clergy; and of another letter to the King and Council about the seizure and imprisonment of some of the Clergy; and to the Bishop of London directing him to oppose the levying of these taxes in his diocese. The Archbishop also published an excommunication on the infringers of the Church's liberty, which document *Walsingham* (i. 240) says was sent to all the Bishops. A commission was appointed to deal with the Archbishop, but at the intervention of the bishops and nobles peace was made. The thread of the story can be best gathered from Murimuth.

really made because of the return of David Bruce from France. Edward spent Christmas of 1341 at Melrose, and tournaments[1] between Scots and English were held both there and at Berwick. Knighton tells here also of difficulties between David and the Scots, of which we have no notice in the other chronicles.

The death[2] of Benedict XII., and the election of Clement VI., who had been Bishop of Rouen, took place this year.

Knighton, like Murimuth, tells of two expeditions[3] sent in 1342 into Brittany, one under Sir Walter Manny, the other under the Earl of Northampton, before Edward crossed to Brest just before All Saints day. But Knighton is the fuller in both cases of detail both about places and the persons concerned. It was in consequence of news of the straits[4] of the English in the second expedition that Edward sailed from Portsmouth to Brest, which he reached on October 30th. Matters had become more settled[5] between the King and the Archbishop before his sailing, and on his arrival at Brest he rested a while, during which his scouts were exploring in preparation for future movements. They brought a report which led to the resolve to attack Vannes. In the meantime the Earl of Northampton reduced Rohan and some other places, and in consequence of these successes[6] several towns surrendered to King Edward. The meditated assault on Vannes was interrupted by the arrival of mediators from the Pope, through whose intervention a truce[7] was concluded for three years, and the King returned to England.

---

[1] On these tournaments *Murimuth* (p. 123) has a fuller notice.

[2] He died 25th April 1342.

[3] These were undertaken on behalf of the Duchess of Brittany against Charles of Blois, who claimed the dukedom.

[4] *Murimuth* (p. 127) tells us that the English were victorious.

[5] After a council held in St. Paul's, Oct. 19, 1341.

[6] *Avesbury* (p. 340) gives a letter of King Edward to his son, recounting these successes.

[7] This was on Jan. 19th, 1343. *Murimuth* gives the text of the treaty (p. 129) as does *Avesbury* (p. 344).

Edward experienced severe storms before he reached England,[1] and Knighton says he met the Spanish fleet, and they were about to attack him until they learned who he was. This is not mentioned by any one else. He also is alone in his notice of an earthquake in England in this year (Feb. 1343).

Henry, Earl of Derby, who had been helping the Spaniards at the siege of Algesira,[2] came back to England towards the close of the year, and was presently employed to arrange a truce between England and Scotland.

The French King puts to a cruel death such of the nobles of Brittany as had sided with the English.

In this year the large demands made by the Holy See roused both King and people. Their message[3] to the Pope was that the nation would bear such burdens no longer. Ecclesiastics holding English benefices must either come and reside or be deprived. The King issued a royal mandate[4] to this effect in all the counties of England, and the nobles were at one with him, and made their opposition to Papal provisions for their benefices. The Pope was alarmed, and gave up his demands; but it was no doubt in consequence of what had happened in England, that he secretly bestowed his influence on the side of the French.[5] Of these important movements Knighton gives the barest notice.

[1] *Murimuth* (p. 135) tells how the various parts of the English fleet were scattered, and that the King made a pilgrimage to Canterbury, Gloucester, and Walsingham after reaching England. *Avesbury* (p. 352) mentions the storm.

[2] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 16); *Wals.* (i. 262). But neither notices the Earl of Derby.

[3] The document is given in French in full, *Mur.* (p. 138), *Avesb.* (353), and in Latin, *Hemin.* (ii. p. 403), which latter also gives the letter of the Barons to the Pope (p. 401).

[4] The text of the letter to the sheriffs is in *Heming.* (p. 411).

[5] Negotiations for peace between England and France were proceeding all this time. *Heming.* (p. 407) gives the text of the Commission of the English Ambassadors sent to Rome to have the Pope's judgment about Edward's claim to France. The envoys (*Chron. Angl.*, p. 15) were Henry, Earl of Derby, Hugh le Spenser, Ralph Stafford, with the Bp. of Exeter and others. The papal decision is given by *Murim.* (p. 148) on three grounds.

In 1344, Henry, Earl of Derby goes to France, for Charles of Blois was invading Brittany. This is a matter of interest for Knighton, as is also the murder of a clerk at Leicester, who was, it may be noted, a married man. The year was a fruitful one, and the Parliament gave the King liberal aids to be used for the good [1] of the realm, and to send an army against the Scots. Knighton notices the new coinage. In accordance with the wish of the nation a force under Edward Baliol was sent to protect the Scotch marches.

A tournament [2] at Leicester, on the marriage of Matilda, daughter of the Earl of Derby, is noted by Knighton, who turns aside here to give an account of the family of Gilbert, Earl of Gloucester.

The Pope sends a message that Edward shall cease to wear the arms of France, shall not disturb any ecclesiastics who have been appointed by provision from Rome, and makes a large demand for money. The bearers of the message are sent away with a short answer.

The Duke of Brittany, who had been the French King's prisoner, escapes some time after Easter and comes to England.

The events [3] which Knighton records for 1345 are the two expeditions, first of the Earl of Northampton, along with the Duke of Brittany (John of Montfort) into Brittany. Towards the end of the year John of Montfort died. The second expedition was of Henry, Earl of

---

[1] *Murim.* (p. 156) is severe on the way in which royal promises at such times are frequently forgotten.

[2] Tournaments appear to have been the order of the day. *Murim.* mentions joustings at Windsor (p. 155), at Hereford (p. 159).

[3] *Mur.* (pp. 160 *seqq.*) makes mention of several interchanges of communication between England and the papal court in the early part of this year, in which the demands of Rome were in no wise abated, and in the end the English envoys leave Rome suddenly, and soon after (p. 165) comes a declaration from Edward that the French King has broken the truce. Edward crosses to Flanders but soon returns to Sandwich (26th July). Later on come other communications from the Pope, which *Murimuth* (p. 188) says, show the partiality of the Pope for the French. Henry, Earl of Derby had been engaged in these communications. See *Mur.* (p. 158).

Derby into Gascony, where he was very successful, seizing much treasure[1] at Bergerac, and many distinguished captives at Auberoche.[2] During his absence news comes of the death of his father, the Earl of Lancaster, at Leicester, and by this he becomes himself Earl of Lancaster. The Count of Hainault was killed at this time by the people of Friesland.

Knighton's narrative for 1346, after the mention of the levies and preparation of war supplies, proceeds at once to the embarkation[3] of the King for Normandy, which took place on 11th July. In the meantime the English[4] on the northern marches enter Scotland but soon agree to a truce, while the Scots in retaliation devastate the English country round about Carlisle.

The landing at La Hogue (13th July) and the advance, after the capture of Barflete, through Valognes, Carentan, St. Lo, and the march on Caen are briefly noticed.[5] Caen was soon taken and many prisoners, some of much distinction. The English are said to have lost but one man. Knighton notices some disturbances in Liége, in which many are said to have been killed.

The Flemings enter France to support the English movements. The prisoners, to the number of 300 or more, taken at Caen, are lodged in the Tower of London. Had not the English crossed to France, the French king meditated a descent on England.

From Caen[6] the English troops advanced with much trouble as near to Paris as Poissy, but on the French

---

[1] His munificence to his soldiery is much lauded (*Chr. Angl.* 19).

[2] Other towns which submitted at this time are mentioned in *Avesbnry* (p. 356).

[3] He sailed from Portsmouth.

[4] *Murim.* (p. 189) says the King himself went to the north country. *Heming.* (ii. 420) gives a letter from the King of France inciting David Bruce to invade England.

[5] Much more is said in *Murimuth* (pp. 200 *seqq.*) who preserves four letters describing the events to the capture of Caen, and another (p. 215) relating the story of the campaign from that point to the victory at Cressy. A part of these letters is given in Avesbury.

[6] *Eul. Hist.* (p. 209) mentions a letter sent to Edward by the French King at this time, but does not gives its contents.

taking a northward direction towards Amiens, the English pursued and were forced, because the bridges were all destroyed, to pass in fording the Somme through a marshy spot between Abbeville and Le Crotoy,[1] before thought impassable, and so came to Cressy,[2] where a most decisive battle was fought (26th Aug. 1346) in which the French King was wounded [3] in the face and fled. From Cressy [4] the English marched towards Calais, ravaging several places on the way, while the Earl of Warwick turned aside to do the same at Terouanne, but joined the main army again at Calais, the siege of which was now begun and lasted till the 4th of August in the next year.

This success of the English won many to their side, and to this there was added in the meantime the raising of the siege of Aiguillon [5] in Aquitaine, which John, the son of the French King, was attacking, and which Henry (now Earl of Lancaster) was able to relieve, and afterwards to reduce some other places [6] in Saintogne, which Knighton mentions under the history of 1347.

Knighton says that it was after the battle of Cressy that Philip incited the Scots [7] to invade England, which they did in great force, expecting to find no resistance, but they were defeated [8] at Nevil's Cross (17th Oct.), and Knighton

---

[1] Crotoy was taken by Hugh de Spencer (*Chr. Angl.* 22).

[2] *Hemingb.* (ii. 423) gives letters interchanged between the Kings of France and England a few days before the eve of Cressy (Aug. 14 and 15). These were proposing and accepting arrangements for a battle on a field not far from Paris.

[3] *in gutture et femore* (*Chr. Angl.* 23). See also *Eul. Hist.* (p. 210), but adds *portans in maxilla sua unam sagittam.*

[4] A letter preserved by *Murim.* (p. 217) makes out the English losses at Cressy to have been very trifling, and *Galf. le Baker* (p. 85) says *non quadraginta de toto exercitu regis.*

[5] *Avesbury* (p. 372) preserves a letter of the Earl of Lancaster describing this campaign.

[6] *Murim.* (p. 217) gives a list of places which in this time submitted to the English.

[7] There had been an unsuccessful inroad under William Douglas in 1345 (*Chr. Ang.* 21).

[8] The leaders of the English forces were Zouche, Archbp. of York, Lord Percy, and Lord Ralph Neville (*Mur.* 218).

gives a long list of distinguished[1] persons who were taken prisoners, while King David[2] was taken at Merrington and kept in Bamborough Castle till next year, when he was transferred to the Tower of London (2nd Jan. 1347).

In the events of 1347 there are many details given by Knighton, of which there is no notice in the other contemporary chronicles. Such are the accounts of Edward's refusal to allow any prisoners taken at Nevile's Cross to be ransomed, and of the plundering of Scotland by the English immediately after the victory, in which proceeding he makes special mention of priests and people at Beverley and York as eminently active. He alone tells of the Irish rising prompted by the French and Scots, and of the aids granted to the King of England both now and at later period of the year (p. 52). Of the latter he speaks from personal knowledge of what had been taken from Leicester Abbey and similar foundations.

In the report of the campaign of the Earl of Lancaster in Aquitaine, down to the taking of Poitiers, Knighton has something in common with the *Chron. Angl.*, and partly with Walsingham, only that Knighton's story implies some treacherous dealing from within at Poitiers while Walsingham[3] speaks of an ordinary capture by storm.

After this follow several incidents peculiar to Knighton. The doings at David Bruce's coming to London[4]; the storm-tossed return of Henry, Earl of Lancaster; the death of Eustace de Folville; the execution of the Earls of Menteith and Fife; the introduction of some supplies

[1] Almost the whole army of Scotland was captured or destroyed (*Chr. Angl.* 24). Knighton's list is the fullest record we have.

[2] With the battle of Neville's Cross Murimuth's Chronicle terminates. He tells us that the reason why David was not sent to London at once was because he had received two wounds on the head.

[3] *Wals.* i. 271, *civitatem potenter cepit per insultum.*

[4] *Avesbury* (pp. 377 *seqq.*) gives a letter from the Pope to Edward, urging him to make peace with France, and also King Edward's reply. The Pope's letter bears date January 15th.

into Calais by the French, which was rendered impossible for the future; the movements of Baliol into Scotland with the support of the English, though there are some recalled to go to Calais.

Next come events noticed elsewhere; the approach of John,[1] the son of the French King, towards Calais, but not near enough for any engagement. Knighton (p. 48) makes mention of a repetition of this conduct by Prince John, of which no other record appears. Some French ships bringing supplies to Calais are captured,[2] and a letter is intercepted from the captain of Calais to the French King, telling of their sad condition in the besieged city. This King Edward causes to be forwarded to Philip. The expulsion of certain citizens from Calais, and the refusal of the English to receive them is recorded by Knighton only.

While giving, in respect of the prisoners[3] taken in Brittany by Sir Thomas Dagworth, more particulars than are found elsewhere, Knighton is not so full as Avesbury on the history. But he is alone in telling of the sally of Henry Earl of Lancaster into the surrounding country while the army of England lay before Calais; from which he was recalled by the rumour that the French King was coming near.

The sending of two cardinals[4] with conditions from Philip, and the other proposals which they made, fit in

[1] *Avesbury* (p. 384), says it was at Cassel, on the borders of Flanders, that John showed himself, and was driven off by the Flemings. He gives 8 June as the date.

[2] The account of this capture, and the letter in full, is given in *Avesbury*, p. 384-386.

[3] Charles of Blois was among these prisoners. *Avesb.* dates his capture 20th June, and gives Dagworth's letter describing the victory. The *Chron. Ang.* (pp. 24–26) makes a double mention of Dagworth's prowess, and calls the second *aliud bellum*. It was in the latter that Charles was taken prisoner. Dagworth is praised as *alter Machabeus*.

[4] *Avesb.* (p. 390) calls them *Ambaldus episcopus Tusculanus et Stephanus presbyter cardinalis*, and places their coming at the end of July. The same ecclesiastics are named in the letters of Jan. 15, alluded to in a previous note. They are parties in the treaty after the surrender of Calais (*Avesb.* 396).

with Avesbury, but are supplementary to his narrative. When the negotiations failed a battle was expected, but the French King withdrew, burning his tents and the supplies which he could not carry away. Hence Calais surrenders, and Knighton gives some details of the submissive manner in which the representatives both of the army and the burgesses came before Edward.[1] This was on Aug. 3rd, and Knighton (p. 53) mentions that there was great suffering for a whole month in the English army from the heat and want of water. Troops were sent from Flanders[2] to help the English at this time, and the prince of Wales committed great ravages in France and brought the spoils to Calais.

Of the subsidies asked for from the abbeys and priories by the King at this time Knighton has personal knowledge, and tells what was paid in wool from Leicester and from Derby. But the demand was general; and the merchants too were summoned and taxed according to their means.

Knighton reports a misadventure of the Earl of Warwick and his troops at St. Omer: tells how the treasures of Calais were gathered and safeguarded; how prisoners were sent to the Tower of London from Calais; how a fire broke out in Calais and caused much destruction, but the tent of the King escaped; how in consequence it became necessary to send for supplies from England, where there was for a short time a dearth of corn. Troops were left for the guardianship of Calais.

Nor does he omit to mention the magnificence of his hero, Henry of Lancaster, who spent large amounts of his own wealth in addition to his allowance from King Edward.

---

[1] In *Eul. Hist.* (p. 212) it is mentioned that the truce after the surrender of Calais was for nine months. *Avesbury* (pp. 396–402) gives the full text of the treaty, which is dated 28th Sept.

[2] *Avesb.* (p. 383) tells of the endeavours of Philip before this to win over the Flemings, but they refused his proposals.

In the return of the English, they suffered great losses [1] at sea. Knighton closes the year with a notice of the Parliament summoned after the Epiphany; of the efforts made by the Pope to secure a candidate of his own (the son of the King of Bohemia, who was killed at Cressy) to be chosen emperor, while the nobles of the empire invited Edward to accept the honour. The price of wine and the prevalence of spurious coin (Lushburne)[2] are the entries with which the year's chronicle ends.

For 1348 and 1349 Knighton is largely an independent authority. He first makes mention of the subsidies for the year; then of the marriage of Princess Joanna to the son of the King of Spain; then follows the notice of Charles of Blois' imprisonment in the Tower, and a register of the number of captives and slain in the war in Brittany. At the Pope's request a truce for three years was granted, on which followed a series of tournaments, in which the prisoners from France took part. A further notice is given of the offer of the empire to King Edward, and his discovery that this was done to divert his attention from his claim to France. Hence his utter refusal.

The Scots were anxious to redeem King David, and when their request was refused, proceeded to ravage the borderlands and to kill and take prisoners. This caused a challenge to a tournament from Berwick, and after the tournament, in which the Scots had the worst, the English made reprisals and ravaged the county [3] of Carrick.

The French marauders, called *Gentes sine capite*, invade Gascony but are repulsed by the English governor.

[1] These are noted in *Eul. Hist.* (p. 213) and in *Chron. Angl.* (p. 25), which both record Edward's appeal to the Virgin Mary. The later vaguely dates the return about Michaelmas. It was on Oct. 12th.

[2] The name is a corruption of *Luxemburg*, from which place this coinage was said to be brought in.

[3] The southern part of Ayrshire.

The King's son Thomas, of Windsor, was born this year. It was at this period that a complaint arose about the presence of ladies at tournaments, a custom which led to great extravagances and excesses. Knighton sees God's hand in the heavy rains which put a stop to these encounters. Incidentally he mentions the payment of those cardinals who had been intermediaries in the truce negotiations at Calais, and of a papal grant of sixpence in the mark to the Bishop of Lincoln from the clerical incomes of his diocese.

Then follows the account of "the Black Death"; of its origin in India,[1] and its progress westward; of its influence on the heathen people in turning their thoughts for a time to Christianity. Knighton tells specially of mortality in the monasteries of France. The plague came to England in the autumn of 1348, and earthquakes happened at some places on the continent at this time, causing much destruction.

The Pope became urgent for peace, and negotiations were begun by sending the Earl of Lancaster, and the Earl of Norfolk to Calais,[2] but an outbreak among the Flemings, who attacked the people of Bruges for siding with the English, put an end to peaceful thoughts. Edward would have gone over to chastise these rebels, but was prevented by information which the Earl of

---

[1] *Avesbury* (p. 406) say the plague appeared in England, near Dorchester, about the beginning of August 1348 and ceased about Michaelmas 1349. He notes the mortality in London. The *Chron. Angl.* (p. 26) connects the plague with the previous rainy season, and speaks of the number who died in the monastery of St. Alban's. He says the whole Moorish people had their thoughts turned to Christianity, not (as Knighton) the King of Tharsis only. The *Eul. Hist.* mentions Melcombe in Dorset as the place where it first appeared in England, and notices specially its ravages at Bristol. This record places the duration of the disease at two years and more. *Knighton* (p. 59) makes its duration about a year.

[2] There was an attempt made to recover Calais, of which Knighton makes no mention, which shows how weak the hold of the English was thought to be. See *Chron. Angl.* (p. 27), *Avesbury* (p. 408).

Lancaster gave him. A truce, however, was agreed on for a time.

There was a great mortality in the English ports, and Knighton records the number of deaths in Leicester. In consequence of the difficulty of visiting the sick a general remission was proclaimed for those dying of the plague. The evil extended to the flocks;[1] all things fell in price, there were none to look after the crops, so that wages rose, and the affliction was so terrible that 'By the foul death of England' became a common[2] Scottish oath. The disease had the effect of checking invasion from Scotland. But out of it came a lack of clergy, and unqualified candidates began to seek ordination. The difficulty about wages became so great that legislation on the subject was deemed necessary. For men refused to work for the usual rates, and their refusal was punished by fine and imprisonment. The effects of the plague were disastrous: for houses fell into decay, there were no servants to be had for farm labour, provisions increased in price, a remission of rents became general, and the services legally due from tenants attached to the soil lapsed; and as a consequence came dearth.

The general absolution which the Pope offered would have drawn pilgrims to Rome, but the King forbad their going, and in consequence received a message from the Holy See, the tenor[3] of which and the King's reply show that there was much friction between the King and the Pope at this season.

The Earl of Lancaster was at this time ravaging in France, and specially the country about Toulouse. The Spaniards had with their fleet made a descent in Esthonia, and in returning attacked ships belonging to England.

---

[1] *Knighton* gives an interesting price list (p. 62) and another of wages (p. 63).

[2] Cf. *Galf. le Baker* (p. 100). *Scoti gavisi* &c.

[3] Besides being urged to permit pilgrimages, Edward was asked to check the Earl of Lancaster's campaign in Aquitaine, and not to interfere with papal provisions to benefices.

In consequence, the English fleet went against them, and in an engagement[1] off Winchelsea conquered and destroyed many of them, and brought spoils to England. The victory was gained on Sunday, Aug. 14, 1350.

The other events which Knighton chronicles in 1350 are the papal Jubilee, with which, in other records,[2] is connected the coming of the Flagellants into England; next that Henry Earl of Lancaster was advanced to the rank[3] of Duke of Lancaster, and that, on the death of his father, Prince John was crowned[4] King of France. His next notice, after the grant of subsidies, is of the death[5] of the brave Sir Thomas Dagworth, which he includes among the events of 1351. Then, after another mention of subsidies, he speaks of the taking of Guisnes[6] but mentions this again subsequently as it belongs to Jan. 1352. Similarly he mentions here the betrothal, and next year the marriage, of Matilda, the daughter of the Duke of Lancaster, to William Duke of Zealand. The Duke of Lancaster in this year commits great ravages in the north of France, and his conduct is emulated by John de Beauchamp, Captain of Calais. But after a truce had been made with the French the restless duke passes over into Prussia, and is there arrested and made to pay a ransom.

In 1352 is noted the mission of King David Bruce from the Tower, that, if possible, he might arrange terms

[1] See *Chr. Angl.* (p. 28), *Avesbury* (p. 412), who says that the English attack on the Spaniards was because of assaults by the Spaniards the year before on English ships near Bordeaux.

[2] See *Chron. Angl.* p. 29. *Avesbury* (p. 407) places their arrival in 1349, and gives somewhat full notice of their dress and the manner of their self-scourgings.

[3] This the *Chron. Angl.* places in 1353 (p. 31).

[4] King Philip died in Aug. 1350 (wrongly placed in *Wals.* (i. 279) under 1355, and also by *Chron. Ang.* (p. 32), and John was crowned *ex modico intervallo*, *Avesb.*, p. 411.

[5] This is placed by *Avesbury* (p. 411) in 1350, about the feast of St. Margaret (July 20th).

[6] *Avesbury* (p. 414) gives an account of the surprise of the castle of Guisnes by John de Doncaster, who had leave from the Captain of Calais to sally forth in search of adventures.

between Scotland and England. In this he failed, the Scots being willing to redeem their King, but not to become liegemen of England. So he came back to his prison. Next [1] follows a curious episode in the adventures of the roving Henry of Lancaster. Being in Cologne he is informed that the Duke of Brunswick intends to capture him. On learning this he is very angry, which when the Duke of Brunswick hears of, he sends to England a challenge to single combat, which the Duke of Lancaster at once accepts, and passes over to Calais and thence to Paris, being received with much honour in France. Attempts are made to bring about a reconciliation, but in vain. When however the combatants are in the lists, the Duke of Brunswick in fear makes submission. Lancaster prefers to engage in the combat, but, after his opponent has been thoroughly humiliated, he forgoes this. A long list of his friends is given by Knighton, and we are told how all that the triumphant duke would accept from the French King was a thorn from our Lord's crown. He returned to England and found the King keeping Christmas at St. Albans, by whom he was much congratulated. The next events noted are the death of Pope Clement VI., the drought [2] and stormy weather, and the valiant conduct of Walter de Bentley at the battle of Mauron.[3] Then is mentioned a statute of labourers, which must refer to some modification of the previous law, which was certain to prove unworkable.[4]

---

[1] Briefly noticed in *Chron. Ang.* (p. 32) as being in 1354.

[2] In *Chron. Angl.* (p. 31) the drought is mentioned in 1353 as lasting from March to July, and adds that the Duke of Zealand sent several shiploads of corn to England to relieve the necessity.

[3] The battle of Mauron was fought on Aug. 14th, 1352, and *Avesb.* (p. 416) has preserved a letter of Sir Walter giving an account of the engagement and of the slain and the prisoners.

[4] *Knighton* speaks of this legislation with disfavour, and so does, even more fully, *Chron. Ang.* (p. 30). It was all *ad communium detrimentum*.

The Duke of Lancaster bounteously grants land for a park for Leicester abbey, and bestows on that foundation the livings of Humberton and Hungerton, himself settling matters with the Pope about the presentations. The staple of wool was established in London[1] to the great advantage of the royal revenue.

Knighton opens the year 1353 with a notice of some resistance at Chester to the circuit of the judges, to check which the presence was needed of the Prince of Wales and others of the nobles. A fine was paid to the Prince of Wales by the offenders, and in a subsequent court of Trailbaston the judges appear to have inflicted penalties with great severity. A second note is made of David Bruce's vain endeavour to bring about terms between England and Scotland, and (p. 76) the names are recorded of some who were to accompany him in his mission. The gift of 500 marks by the Prince of Wales to the Abbey of Dieulacres was thought to be as a tithe of what had been exacted from Chester. An expedition to Gascony, and a commission sent to Calais for the discussion of terms of peace are mentioned, as well as the laudation which was given to England by the Count d' Eu, for the kindness he had received as a prisoner there which brought suspicion upon him in his own country and he was seized and put to death. There is a notice of the severe winter and of a tournament between 20 French and 20 Gascons, in which the latter had the better.

The circumstances connected with the ransom of Charles of Blois are the only part of this year's events found in the other contemporary chronicles, and here Knighton is not so full as Avesbury.[2] He gives no

[1] *Avesbury* (p. 419) says that the staple was set up not only at Westminster but in other places. *Wals.* (p. 278) names Canterbury, Chichester, Bristol, Lincoln, and Hull, as does *Chr. Ang.* under 1354.

[2] *Avesb.* (p. 418) says that the terms of Charles' ransom were agreed on, and a son of his was to marry a daughter of the English king, and Charles to be confirmed in the dukedom of Brittany, which all came to nought.

intimation that the islet which Charles seized was held by Englishmen.

In 1354, the creation of Roger Mortimer as Earl of March; the claims of the Earl of Warwick to lands in Wales; the truce between England and France; and the sending of envoys, among which Henry of Lancaster was principal, to Avignon, where the Pope was resident, to discuss terms of peace, which in the end come to nought,[1] are the first events noticed. And here Knighton turns aside to glorify the Duke of Lancaster, on whom honours of every kind were heaped at Avignon, though an attempt was made to arrest him as he was on his way home.

Under this year is entered the birth[2] of the King's son Thomas of Woodstock, afterwards Earl of Gloucester.

In 1355 the French King sent a force to aid the Scots, and after Easter the Prince of Wales is sent[3] over with an army to Gascony, where (p. 84) he is everywhere peaceably and honourably received. After relating a portent of two standards contending in the sky, Knighton tells of King Edward's passage to the Norman coast, where he learns that the King of Navarre[4] is being won over to the side of France. In Ireland the Scots and Irish invaded the Englishry, and the Scots at the same time prepared to enter England from the border, but

---

[1] The English had agreed to the terms (*Avesb.* 420) that England should possess Aquitaine without doing homage to the French king for it, and that Edward should give up his claim on France. These terms the French refused.

[2] In honour of his birth the King made a great feast and a tournament at Woodstock on the first Sunday in Lent (*Avesb.* 422).

[3] He only sailed on Septr. 8th from Plymouth (*Chron. Angl.* p. 33, *Avesb.* p. 424). A letter of the Prince containing an account of his progress after his arrival in Gascony is given by *Avesb.*, p. 434, followed by two other letters of Sir John Wingfield describing the same operations. They are all dated about Christmastide.

[4] The King of Navarre had been negotiating before for help from England against France. This had been promised and was about to come when he changed sides. (*Avesb.* 426).

concluded a truce when they found the English prepared to fight.

King Edward was at Calais in Michaelmas, and the King of France with the help of Navarre proposed to come against him there. At this period Knighton mentions the prevalence of a terrible mental malady, and also relates the trial and burning of some Minorite [1] Friars in the Papal dominions for declaring John XXII. to have been a heretic. This was because of certain decrees of his against the Franciscan order.

Edward marched [2] to meet King John, who retired to Paris and the English returned to Calais. Here they learnt that Berwick had been taken [3] by the Scots, so the King hastened back, first going up to Newcastle, then to Berwick. Upon his arrival the enemy surrender (Jan. 24th) Edward Baliol resigns [4] his claim to the crown of Scotland. Edward marches forward into the country, first to Roxburgh, then to Edinburgh, Sir William Douglas refuses to submit, and on this account the King laid waste a large district. But the Scots had, in withdrawing, carried all provisions [5] away, so the English were compelled to retire. The King, however, tarried at Melrose with a few troops, while some Englishmen who tried to get back to England were [6] captured by Douglas in Ettrick forest.

---

[1] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 31) where the punishment is merely said to be *pro quibusdam erroneis opinionibus*, and the persons burnt to have been two in number.

[2] Cf. *Chron. Angl.* (p. 33) *Avesb.* (p. 427). The English were back in Calais by Nov. 11th; subsequently a challenge was sent to the English by the French, but the latter failed to keep their appointment (*Avesb.* p. 430).

[3] The castle of Berwick was still in English hands (*Avesb.* p. 431) (*Chron. Ang.* p. 34).

[4] The resignation was made at Roxburgh (*Chr. Ang.* p. 34). The act of resignation is given in full (*Avesb.* 451).

[5] The English victualling ships were dispersed by stormy weather (*Avesb.* p. 455).

[6] In *Avesb.* (p. 456) we learn that the party was of 20 men under Sir Robert Herle. Cf. *Chr. Ang.* (p. 34) which does not mention the locality.

Beginning the year 1356 with a notice of the subsidies asked by the King from the clergy, which were not granted[1] to the full, Knighton tells of the expedition of the Duke of Lancaster into Normandy. In the account of this circular tour he leans upon the journal[2] of the duke which is given in Avesbury. The French King who had retired before the force of Lancaster, now goes against the Prince of Wales, who starting from Bordeaux[3] had ravaged a large district of France, and had arrived in the neighbourhood of Poitiers. Overtures for peace had been made, but refused[4] by the French King, and supplies were running short among the English. It was therefore a necessity to fight, and the battle was joined on the 19th of September. The French King had given orders to spare no one but the Prince of Wales. However, largely by the bravery of the Earl of Warwick, the victory was gained by the army of England, with the great glory of the capture of the French King and his son. Knighton gives a list of prisoners and slain which is clearly from the same[5] source as that in Avesbury. The fortress of Romorentyn had been reduced the fifteenth day before the battle, and the list of captives there made is added to the others as well as a notice of some persons taken on the Saturday previous to the battle. The English army moves towards Bordeaux.[6] The army of the French had been nearly double that of the English.

---

[1] *Avesb.* (p. 459) notices the same matter.

[2] *Avesb.* (p. 462 *seqq.*). The journal is dated 16th July 1356.

[3] The itinerary of the Prince is given in full, *Eul. Hist.* (p. 215–222).

[4] This refusal is Knighton's account (p. 88), the other authorities tell of the appeals of the Cardinal of Perigord and others to Prince Edward, and represent the refusal as his (*Eul. Hist.* pp. 221, 223, *Chron. Ang.* p. 35).

[5] Cf. *Avesb.* pp. 469 *seqq.*, which is the conclusion of Avesbury's chronicle. For the numbers cf. *Eul. Hist.* p. 225.

[6] The Prince of Wales arrived at Bordeaux on Sunday Oct. 2nd (*Eul. Hist.* p. 226).

The ever-active Henry of Lancaster, that he may do something in the winter time, lays siege to Rennes.[1] The Pope begins to be instant about mediation.

In 1357, the Prince of Wales brings his royal prisoner to London where a grand reception is made on the Tuesday before Whitsunday, and a grant of revenue is made to the King. King John was lodged at Windsor the other royal prisoner, David Bruce, being kept at the Tower.

Knighton next makes brief mention of the case the Bishop of Armagh against the Friars Minor, but gives no details, except that the Pope, to whom appeal was made, was always on the side of the French.

An appeal is made to King Edward to withdraw the Duke of Lancaster from Rennes, but before the King's message reached him the town had surrendered, the hope of help, which appeared to be coming from Charles of Blois, having failed. The duke, however, never entered Rennes. While these matters were proceeding, certain cardinals[2] arrived in London to treat for a general peace.

At this time some of the soldiers left in Gascony and Brittany gathered together and seized the town of Honfleur, and were helped to keep possession against the Marshal of Flanders by Robert Knolles and his company.

A matter of dispute about roads which arose between the abbat of Leicester and the people of Belgrave is included in Knighton's record. It was settled in favour of the abbey.

The King[3] of Scotland is set free, and a truce made with Scotland for ten years.

---

[1] Cf. *Chron. Ang.* p. 36 and *Avesb.* p. 468.

[2] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 37) gives the names *Talirandus episcopus Albanensis et Nicholaus tituli Sancti Vitalis.*

[3] *Chron. Angl.* (p. 37) mentions Odiham Castle as the place of his confinement. The ransom was to be paid in the course of 10 years.

A notice of the sums demanded from England by the Cardinals[1] and of the Papal claim for the grant of tribute made to Rome in the days of King[2] John, which the English King refuses, brings the year's record to a close.

In 1358 Edward invited foreigners to a tournament at the feast of St. George,[3] to which many came, and when it was over negotiations went on so far that a treaty was agreed on for the ransom[4] of the French King.

The year is made notorious by the ravages of marauding companies in various parts of France, in which the men led by Robert Knolles[5] were most conspicuous. They advanced upon Paris, burnt Orleans, and terrified the Pope and his court in Avignon.[6] In the end Robert Knolles placed all he had taken at the service of King Edward.

Other events noted are, the return of the cardinals; the death of King Edward's mother[7]; the friendly attitude of the Scotch King towards England, for which he offers to join in the war, and with which he makes terms of friendship.

When the terms of peace with France were sent for ratification to the Pope, it was found that the King of France had no thought of abiding by them. Hence he and his son also were placed under stricter custody. The messengers to the papal court returned with news

---

[1] They had stayed in England two years, *Chr. Ang.* (p. 37).

[2] The *Eul. Hist.* (p. 239) mentions this demand as made by Urban V. in 1366, and refused by the English parliament.

[3] It was at Windsor 23rd April 1358 (*Eul. Hist.*, p. 227).

[4] *Chron. Angl.* p. 38 states the ransom at 600,000 florins. On p. 44 it is put at three million florins. The demand for hostages as security was refused by the French.

[5] *Chr. Angl.* 39. Where, however, there is no mention of the patriotic side of Knolles' character.

[6] *Eul. Hist.* (p. 229) mentions that in 1362, the Pope fortified his palace at Avignon through fear of the companies.

[7] She was buried 27th November, Archbishop Simon officiating, *Eul. Hist.*, p. 227.

of the delight which the prospect of peace had given at Avignon.

At the same time they brought the Pope's absolution for some of the judges who at the instance of the Bishop of Ely had been excommunicated. This causes Knighton to mention the quarrel between that prelate and Lady Wake, which caused much trouble at this time. This lady, who was connected [1] with the blood royal, had charged the bishop with some encroachment on her property which adjoined his, and with being accessory to the burning of a farmhouse of hers. The judges decided in favour of Lady Wake. The King gave leave for a new trial. But in the meantime one of the Bishop's men had killed a servant of Lady Wake's. The Bishop was unfortunate in this, and had also, it appears, spoken of the partiality of the Court. He found himself in such evil plight, and circumstances so much against him, that at last he fled to Avignon, and the Pope issued a sentence of excommunication against his judges. It was the revocation of this sentence which led Knighton to mention some details of the history.[2]

Outbreaks on the part of the people of Paris and the Flemings put an end to the prospect of peace with France, and foreigners were expelled from England.

King Edward in 1359 prepares to cross into France. Before this could be done, Sir Walter Manny [3] and his party seized on Calais and expelled (*ejecerunt*) the English. As Edward could not go at once, Henry of Lan-

---

[1] She was a daughter of Henry, Earl of Lancaster, which is a reason for Knighton's notice of her.

[2] Other features of the history will be found in *Chron. Angl.*, p. 39.

[3] This must be the meaning of Knighton's text. The explanation must be what is told us in Froissart that the multitude of mercenary Germans, Bohemians, Brabanters, Flemings, and Hainaulters (the last coming with Sir Walter Manny) filled every part of the town, so that there was no room for the English, and even if the King had arrived they would not have known where to lodge him (Johnes' Froissart, i. ch. 203.)

caster[1] is sent over and does much mischief throughout Picardy and Artois. After a time the King arrives,[2] and together they advance without much misadventure to Rheims,[3] which opened to them, and the duke, with others, went forward to attack Cernay. The English gain the walls and enter the town, and in like manner capture several other places in that district.

The French meantime gather in Normandy for an attack on England, but part of their expedition is met by Sir Thomas Fogges and much of it captured. They did, however, attack Winchelsea,[4] with much brutality, but were in the end driven away. Knighton notices, as though it might be a consequence of this, that the French King was now confined in the Tower.

In 1360 a supreme effort was made by the English against France; there was a general levy; the bishops offered indulgences to those who would go to the war; and those who were not able to go were to give of their means. The navy, when ready, went to Boulogne first, then to Honfleur, while King Edward went by way of Rheims and Chalons into Burgundy, and toward Paris,[5] where matters were settled with the duke. First the suburbs[6] of Paris were burnt; then a challenge brought out 60 soldiers to fight half the number of English. The duke of Lancaster is stationed near Orleans, and disputes between the parties of England and France go on in Gascony; and the English losses are not a few; so negotiations for peace are not unwelcome.[7]

Here Knighton remembers Leicester; how the King this year made certain grants to the town at the instance

[1] *Eul. Hist.* (p. 228) says he stopped three days in Calais.

[2] He embarked at Sandwich October 27th (*Eul. Hist.* p. 228), and he too stayed some time in Calais.

[3] *Chron. Ang.* (p. 40), which mentions no other place but Rheims.

[4] *Chron. Ang.* (p. 41) gives a fuller account.

[5] He reached Paris April 12th (*Eul. Hist.*, p. 228).

[6] A slightly different story is told in *Chr. Angl.* (p. 42).

[7] Cf. *Eul. Hist.* (p. 229).

of Henry of Lancaster, and how the abbat recovered a manor and a church, of which one John of Arden was striving to deprive the Abbey.

The King of France is allowed to cross to Calais for peace negotiations,[1] and the famous peace of Bretigny is at last concluded, and kings and nobles pledged themselves to observe its terms.

The next year is saddened for Knighton by the death of his noble Duke Henry,[2] who died and was buried at Leicester, the abbey of which owed so much to his liberality. Fitzralph the Archbishop of Armagh also died at this time. France was suffering from the ravages of marauding [3] bands, who, in Savoy, went to the length of sacking the capital.

Matilda, Duchess of Zealand, claims the inheritance which was hers from her father, but dies next year, and it was suggested she was poisoned, that there might be no disruption of the Lancastrian possessions. The Prince of Wales was married to Joan of Kent.

The year was marked by a severe storm and much mortality,[4] in which eleven of the canons of Leicester abbey died.

In 1362 Knighton only notices a court of Trailbaston at York and the death of John de Coupeland, the captor of David Bruce.

Next year the settling [5] of the wool staple at Calais; the crossing of the Prince of Wales into Gascony; [6] and the obtaining of many privileges for Leicester abbey, which were confirmed by Richard II., make up the chief

---

[1] *Chron. Angl.* pp. 44–45, where an abstract of the terms of the peace is given more at length than in Knighton.

[2] Henry Plantagenet died in the second pestilence. He is described (*Ann. de Burmundesia*, p. 477) as *vir nobilis et strenuus*.

[3] These plunderers, known as "Gentes sine Capite," are frequently noticed at this time. Cf. *Chron. Angl.* (pp. 37, 50).

[4] Known as the second pestilence. *Chron. Ang.*, p. 50.

[5] *Non obstante sacramento regis. Chr. Ang.*, p. 51.

[6] See also *Eul. Hist.* (p. 231).

part of the year's record. To which is added that four[1] Kings were at this time in London, on whose account, it would seem, the King made a grand hunting party in Sherwood Forest and other places. The Duchess of Clarence and Edward Baliol died this year, which was also remarkable for a severe frost[2] and in 1364 the French king died in the Savoy. Knighton is alone in the mention of a large amount of silver and arms prepared by this King to be sent into France, of which he made confession before his death.

The year was noted for many cases of sacrilege, and also for the death[3] of Charles of Blois, and the capture of Bertrand du Guesclin.[4]

In 1365 there is noticed only the marriage of the King's daughter, Princess Isabella, and the punishment of certain judges who had been corrupted.

Next year Nicholas Dagworth with his company had a successful encounter with a French force in Anjou. The Prince of Wales and John of Gaunt go to the help of Peter the Cruel. They win the battle of Najara[5] in Castile, but lose the greatest part of their forces through disease. The defeated Bastard Henry of Spain made his way into Gascony before the Prince of Wales could get back again, and did much harm. Then he returned to Spain and murdered[6] the King. Knighton alludes here to the claim to the Spanish throne made subsequently by

---

[1] *Eul. Hist.* (p. 233) says the King of Cyprus brought with him *unum regem Paganum*, and so makes out five kings together.

[2] Both the *Chron. Angl.* (p. 54) and *Eul. Hist.* (p. 232) date the beginning of the frost as 7th December, but the latter makes it end on March 10th, the former says it was March 19th before it was over.

[3] The *Chron. Angl.* (p. 55) gives a notice of this encounter but differs widely from Knighton about the number of the slain.

[4] He cannot have been long a prisoner, for in 1365 (*Cont. Eul.*, p. 333) he was invited by the Bastard Henry in Spain to help him against his brother. See also *Chron. Angl.*, p. 60.

[5] Fought on April 3rd, 1367.

[6] Bertrand du Guesclin was accessory to the crime (*Chron. Angl.*, p. 60).

John of Gaunt. He closes the year with a notice of the marauding bands in France; of the marriage and sudden death of the Duke of Clarence;[1] and of the passage of Prince Edmund into Gascony to help the Black Prince.

Between Books IV. and V. there is a gap[2] of ten years, the latter opening (p. 124) with a simple mention of the date of the death[3] and burial of Edward III., on which follows a short account of the Black Prince, praising his character and achievements which made him worthy to be named among kings.

After mentioning the date (16th July, 1377) of Richard IInd's coronation[4] and whom he married, the Chronicler turns to give a long notice of Abbat William Clowne[5] of Leicester, who died Jan. 22nd 1377. He had been a most influential head of the house, and had gained for it many privileges and possessions.

A brief notice of the election[6] of Pope Urban VI. comes next, with a copy of the letter sent to the Emperor by the Cardinals announcing their choice After a few months, Clement, the Anti-pope, was set[7] up at Avignon, and the great schism commenced, France, Spain, and Scotland taking the side of Clement.

The narrative then proceeds to notice the grants of revenue and the evil consequences which grew out of them, only interjecting a mention of the sending of Thomas[8] of Woodstock to the help of the Duke of

---

[1] *Contin. Eul.*, p. 333. He died on 17th October 1368.

[2] A similar gap occurs in Hemingburgh's Chronicle between 1315 and 1327, the latter part commencing with the Coronation of Edwd. III.

[3] Edwd. III. died 21st June 1377 at Shene.

[4] A full account of the Coronation ceremonies is given in *Chron. Angl.* pp. 156–162 and *Fœdera*, iv., pp. 9–10.

[5] He had been mentioned before (p. 117), and the notice of him throws interesting light on monastic life.

This was on April 8th, 1378. Gregory XI. died March 27th. Further details are given (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 341).

[7] This was on Sept. 21st.

[8] For a full account, cf. *Chron. Angl.* p. 266. The notice in Knighton is only made because of the marriage connexion between

Brittany. First of all is mentioned the grant of a groat a head; next, that afterwards two shillings was granted[1] for every married couple, and 12 pence for each one unmarried; while the clergy were taxed at the rate of six shillings and eight pence. Yet it was found that the larger impositions did not bring into the Treasury as much money as the previous year's groat had done.[2]

The collection of the tax had been farmed by one John Leg and others, and they had roused popular wrath by their grossness in the work. First the Kentish people were stirred to resistance[3] by one Thomas, a baker, and the events in Knighton's record follow each other thus. There was first a gathering[4] of the people on Blackheath, who proceeded to Maydestone, where they attacked the Archbishop's house, and released John Ball, known as a popular preacher, who was in prison there. Next they proceeded to London[5] and wrecked the Marshalsea, and made their way to the Tower where the King was, and along with him other persons against

---

Thomas of Woodstock and Henry Earl of Derby. The comment of *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 351) on the Earl's expedition is *nihil magni fecit.*

[1] This is said (*Chron. Angl.* p. 281) to have been granted by the parliament of Northampton in 1380, and collected *non sine diris imprecationibus.* The groat tax is called *anni præcedentis* (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 351). There had been imposed for the first time in 1377; poll-tax of a groat (*Wals.* i. 323); cf. *Monk of Evesh.* p. 11, on the taxation of 1379.

[2] Cf. *Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 351, for the way in which an inquiry into the subject originated. Of the collection it is said *Pol. Poems,* i. 224, "The King thereof had small."

[3] The outbreak commenced in 1381. The baker is said (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 351) to have been employed as a collector of the tax at first.

[4] Knighton intended to give the date, but it is impossible to make out what he means. For the feast of Trinity was not in the month of May. The 4th day after the feast of Trinity was June 13th.

[5] They reached London on June 13th, Corpus Christi day (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 353). But this was not *dies Veneris* as Knighton (p. 132), but Thursday. They wrecked the Marshalsea before they crossed London Bridge; so that took place on the Wednesday.

whom the people were infuriated. They specially determined to kill the Archbishop. The King [1] met them and granted them a charter,[2] which was subsequently annulled by Parliament. But the violence of the mob was not to be restrained. The Archbishop and others were killed; the Savoy, the Duke [3] of Lancaster's house, was wrecked, and everything in it destroyed; for no plundering was allowed.[4] The priory of Clerkenwell, and the manor house of Highbury shared a like fate.[5] The anger of the mob was greatest against lawyers; also one Richard Lyons,[6] who had formerly been imprisoned for frauds, was seized and put to death.

Then followed the gathering in [7] Smithfield, to which the King came. Knighton here makes Jack [8] Straw to be only another name for Wat Tyler. He tells the story of the demands of the rioters, the manner of Wat Tyler's death,[9] the honours conferred on those who took part in the suppression of the insurrection; and finally describes how the rioters were surrounded and forced to disperse. He has also preserved several forms of what must have been popular literature at the time in the

---

[1] The meeting here mentioned is unnoticed by the other Chroniclers, and seems incompatible with the speed with which all the events occurred.

[2] The *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 353) describes this as *literæ patentes libertatis generales.* The revocation is given in Rymer, *Fœdera,* iv. p. 126.

[3] The Duke is represented (*Chron. Angl.* 289) as the object of intense popular hatred. The *Cont. Eul.* does not make mention of this, but it is strongly expressed *M. of Evesh.* pp. 22, 25, 26.

[4] *Nolumus esse jures* was their cry. (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 352.)

[5] In the *Annal. de Bermundeseia,* p. 480, these outbreaks of popular rage are called "Le Hurling."

[6] Lyons had been an agent of King Edward, and acted most fraudulently and extortionately (*Chr. Angl.* pp. 76–79). He was condemned in the Parliament of 1376.

[7] This was on the Saturday, June 15th (*Chron. Angl.* p. 295).

[8] There is the same confusion in the *Chron. Adam de Usk* (Thompson), p. 1. In *Pol. Poems,* i. 224, the outbreak is called "The rebellion of Jack Straw."

[9] Knighton calls the slayer of Tyler *John de Walworth,* M. of Evesh. (p. 29) and Usk (p. 2) *William Walworth.*

addresses of some of the leaders, and a letter of John Ball.[1]

He mentions also similar risings[2] in Norfolk; at Peterborough, where it was speedily put down by the war-loving Bishop of Norwich, Henry le Spencer. He tells of the large demands of the rioters at St. Albans, and the fears entertained in his own neighbourhood of Leicester, lest they should come thither too, and of the preparations which were made to withstand them if they did appear.

Amid the alarm the wardrobe treasures of the Duke of Lancaster were brought to the abbey of Leicester, but the abbat durst not admit them. The mention of this incident leads to a digression on the doings[3] of John of Gaunt at this time, and no more is said of the insurgents and their fate till (at p. 150) we find Sir Robert Tresilyan trying the prisoners, and that John Ball was hanged at St. Albans, with the mention of which Knighton takes leave of this portion of the history.

The Duke of Lancaster was in Scotland at this period, and the duchess fled northward,[4] and not being admitted to Pontefract Castle, she went on to Knaresborough to wait for her husband. He heard of all that had been done in England, but quietly finished his negotiations[5] with the Scots, and got permission to pass into Scotland.

---

[1] A much fuller history of these doings is given in *Chron. Angl.* pp. 285–299.

[2] On all these cf. *Chron. Angl.* pp. 299–316. The story is compressed into half a dozen lines in *Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 359.

[3] Knighton is most important from the favourable estimate which he gives us of the character of John of Gaunt. Of course we must take into account the duke's connexion with and liberality to Leicester Abbey in judging the Chronicler's language. But the duke is hardly ever named but as "pius dux" or with some laudatory words as here (p. 143) "pacificus dux Lancastriæ."

[4] For protection "sub alas domini" according to this Chronicler (p. 144). Hard to understand side by side with notices of Catharine Swynford.

[5] He concluded a truce for two years before the news of the outbreak in England became known to the Scots (*Chron. Angl.* p. 327.)

The Earl of Northumberland had offered him some hospitality, but durst [1] not in the end receive him. His rivals reported that the King was hostile to him, and of this he was afraid, and retired to Edinburgh. He was well received by the Earls of Douglas and Dunbar. Here Knighton gives an account [2] of the duke's self-examination, and his determination to amend his life.

The King got information of the duke's sadness and alarm, and not only wrote to him, but bade the Earl of Northumberland give him help. The like order was sent forth generally, and at last the duke came [3] to the King at Reading. Knighton begs none to be surprised at his laudation of John of Gaunt. His virtues deserved all the praise that can be bestowed.

After a mention of the King's marriage,[4] and of a general pardon granted at the Queen's request, and of the earthquake [5] on May 21st, 1382, Knighton begins a notice of Wycliffe and his teaching, naming John Ball as his forerunner. He calls the translation of the Scriptures into English a casting of pearls before swine, and applies to the followers of Wycliffe certain prophetic language which William de Sancto Amore had used of the Mendicant Friars.

After this for about 40 pages the Chronicler treats only of Wycliffe and his followers. But he does not pay much regard to chronology in his record. He mentions

---

[1] The *Chron. Angl.* p. 328, represents them as at variance, and tells of the accusation of the earl by the duke before the Parliament.

[2] The contrast presented here to the hatred with which he was generally regarded is one of the most striking parts of Knighton's record.

[3] Cf. for the account of the duke's return, *Chron. Angl.* p. 329. The King's letter on behalf of the duke is given, *Rymer*, iv. p. 126.

[4] *Solutis pro ea* 22 *m. marcis sine consensu regni* is the note on the queen's arrival in *Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 355. In the *Chron.* of Usk she is spoken of as *magno pretio redempta.*

[5] A poem on this catastrophe, setting out how it "was a warnyng to be ware," yet the people disregarded it, is found in *Political Poems* (Rolls Series), i. 251.

first how Wycliffe was summoned before the Archbishop [1] of Canterbury in London, an event which took place in 1378. The Duke of Lancaster's help and Wycliffe's confession about Transubstantiation [2] are all that is recorded. Then follows a list [3] of Errors and Heresies on the ground of which it is said the Reformer was cited to appear in Oxford before the Archbishop [4] and other bishops, where he gave another form of answer to the charges against him. His opinions were condemned [5] and a procession of clergy and laity went in London to hear a sermon by one Dr. Kynyngham [6] in which the Wycliffite conclusions were denounced. A story follows showing how a follower of these new doctrines who had heard Dr. Kynyngham's sermon was convinced of his error by a miracle. After this the Archbishop issued to the bishops his mandate in condemnation of Wycliffe, and this was appointed to be circulated in every diocese. Knighton preserves the form as sent forth by the Bishop of Lincoln, and with it a condemnation of the heretical teaching by the Chancellor [7] of the University of Oxford. The narrative continues with notices of some adherents

[1] This was Archbishop Sudbury, slain in the insurrection of Wat Tyler.

[2] The writer of the Chronicle can have understood little of what he was putting down, or he would not have called this confession a recantation. As little so is the other form which he gives on p. 161.

[3] These are given in a slightly different order in *Fasc. Ziz.* p. 277. They are 24 in number, and formed the indictment against Wycliffe at the provincial council at the Blackfriars in London in 1382.

[4] This was Archbishop Courtenay promoted from London in 1381. That Archbishop Courtenay came to Oxford is not supported by other records. In *Chron. Angl.* p. 344, we find that a mandate issued by him to the Chancellor of Oxford to publish a condemnation of Wycliffe's errors was disregarded, until pressure was brought to bear upon the University authorities.

[5] This was at the Council of May 19, 1382. It was during their session that the earthquake took place, *Fasc. Ziz.* p. 272. A Latin poem on this council, taking the side of the Lollards, is given in *Polit. Poems*, i. 253 *seqq.*

[6] John Kynyngham was a member of the London Council which condemned Wycliffe's 24 conclusions (*Fasc. Ziz.* p. 286).

[7] This was William Burton who had succeeded Robert Rugge as Chancellor.

of Wycliffe and their opinions. John Ball[1] is again mentioned as his forerunner, and some confessions are given as made by Nicholas of Hereford and John Aston[2] before the Archbishop of Canterbury. The former went to Rome after his condemnation in England, and there was condemned to be imprisoned for life, but in the unsettled conditions of the Papacy he was liberated; but afterwards imprisoned in England.

Next there is given a list of the opinions set forth by one of the Wycliffite preachers who is not named, then the similar preaching of John Aston,[3] among whose subjects of special animadversion was the crusade of the Bishop of Norwich against the supporters of the Anti-pope.

Next the preaching of John Purvey,[4] who had been a close friend of Wycliffe, is noticed: then a preacher of a more humble kind, William Smith, but such men won adherents.[5] Knighton tells of some of their actions as indications of their profanity. He specially dwells on the burning for fuel of a wooden image of St. Catharine which had stood in one of the churches.[6] He also pre-

---

[1] Ball in his confession (*Fasc. Ziz.*, p. 273, calls himself a *discipulus* of Wycliffe, and names (p. 274) Wycliffe, Hereford, Aston, and Laurence Bedenam as the chief of the Lollard Teachers.

[2] These are acceptances of the doctrine of a real presence in the Eucharist, and Aston's confession is a translation of the Latin form given *Fasc. Ziz.* p. 330, which was objected to because he only used the words *vere et realiter*, whereas he was expected to say, *Corpus Christi est in sacramento identice, vere et realiter in propria presentia corporali*, which words he did use afterwards. Hereford did not yield so far.

[3] It is said (*Chron. Ang.* p. 350) that in Aston's trial before the Archbishop the people of London interfered and broke in the doors of the council chamber.

[4] For an account of the heresies and errors laid against Purvey see *Fasc. Ziz.* p. 383–407, where is also given his form of abjuration at St. Paul's Cross.

[5] Knighton gives (p. 181) a list of names of some soldiers who joined the Lollards, and some of the names, with others, are found in a similar list in *Chron. Ang.* p. 377.

[6] A zealot against images is mentioned in the *Chron. Ang., u. s.*

serves, though with some imperfections, certain rhyming verses written on that subject.[1]

After this follows a general recitation of the iniquities of the Lollards, their dress, their manner of making converts, their language against their opponents, their evil influence on home life. They might be called followers of Mahomet, and no tongue can tell all their iniquity. Then the Chronicler frames against them a malediction, in scriptural phrases slightly modified, praying that they may perish for ever.

After this general condemnation we have the history of one William Swyndurby, whose doings came under the personal observation of the Chronicler, as he was a priest in Leicester. He begun his work [2] as a reformer by attacking the failings of women, then he preached against the rich. For a while he turned hermit, and subsequently was received into Leicester Abbey. But joining himself to the William Smith before mentioned, he began to abuse the ecclesiastics, and to follow in the courses of the rest of the Lollards. He was suspended by the Bishop [3] of Lincoln but still continued his preaching. In consequence the bishop condemned him to be burnt, but the "pius dux" of Lancaster interposed, being (says the record) deceived as many others were, and the offender was allowed to make a public recantation [4] of his errors. The process of the Bishop of Lincoln against Swyndurby is given in full, with a list

---

[1] For an abusive poem on the Lollards, in which several names of persons prominent at this time are mentioned, see *Pol. Poems*, i. 231–249. There, even more iniquities than are noticed by Knighton are ascribed to them.

[2] For a time the popular favour upheld him against the opposition of the clergy and the authority of the Bishop, *Chron. Ang.* pp. 339–340.

[3] The process of the Bishop of Lincoln against Swyndurby is given in *Fasc. Ziz.* pp. 334 *seqq.*, with a form of his recantation. It is also mentioned that he made an appeal to the King and the Duke of Lancaster. The 'conclusiones' of Swyndurby are given in a different form in *Chron. Ang.* p. 338.

[4] This was to be read in eight churches of the diocese of Lincoln. *Fasc. Ziz.* p. 336.

of the errors which he abjured. Of course the man's popularity in Leicester was gone, and he removed to Coventry, but was soon driven away.

With the exception of a general notice [1] (pp. 260–265) of the spread of Wycliffite opinions, which caused the Lords and Commons to appeal to the King for a remedy, whose royal commission to seize all Lollard books and punish the teachers of Lollardism is given in full, we hear nothing more of the Reformation movements, only that in 1392 all that had been done against the Wycliffites by the Bishop of Lincoln received confirmation from the Archbishop (p. 312).

Of secular history in 1383 the Chronicle notices the crusade of the Bishop [2] of Norwich in Flanders against the supporters of the Anti-pope. His success was at first considerable, but after the English troops in Bourbourg had been forced to capitulate to the French King, the bishop came home to England. As a sequel to their other successes, the French captured Damme and a large part of Flanders, Ghent surrendering only after all hope of help from England had expired.

Here are added the Ordinances [3] issued by the Bishop

[1] This is put under the year 1388. In *Walsingham* (ii. 159) great activity is said to have been shown on behalf of the Lollards in the previous year; the outcome of which may well have been the appeal which Knighton mentions.

[2] Knighton dwells much on the power 'multipliciter dispensandi' as it is called in *Chron. Ang.* (p. 355) which the Bishop had received from the Pope. He does not mention that the Bishop was subsequently deprived for a time of his temporalities, and some of his officers imprisoned, as does *Chron. Ang.* (p. 358). The *Cont. Eul.* (pp. 356–7) is very bitter against the Bishop, and tells of the intervention of the Duke of Brittany on behalf of the English. On the restoration of the Bishop's temporalities see *Chron. Angl.* (p. 367). A royal proclamation giving licence to the crusade and to those who would join it is in *Rymer* iv. 157, and several others connected with the enterprise are on pp. 164–169.

[3] *Wals.* (ii. 76) enumerates the privileges granted by the Pope to the Bishop for the promotion of the crusade, and adds, besides, the Bishop's mandate to his clergy about the publication of the Bull, and a form of absolution for all who would join the Bishop's expedition.

before the crusade, about the preaching of it, and the means to be used for inducing men to join in it, or support it with their money.

The inroad of the Scots [1] in 1383, followed by the march of the Duke of Lancaster against them in the following year, are the events of most importance in the Chronicler's view. Indeed his admiration for the 'pious duke' comes out here at every point. He mentions a combat [2] in the lists at Westminster, because it was in the presence of the King and the duke, and when help was sent to Scotland from France in 1385, it was the duke, with others, who was sent to guard the marches till Richard's forces could be in readiness. An account of this expedition, which embraced the burning of Edinburgh and the destruction of Melrose [3] and Newbottle abbeys, is next given and it is mentioned that while the English were on the East of Scotland, the Scots on the west came down on Carlisle and Penrith, and only were disturbed in their ravages by an apparition, said to be the Virgin Mary, the special patroness of Carlisle.

Many honours [4] were bestowed by the King after this campaign, and it is mentioned that while the troops were near Bishopthorpe in Yorkshire the son of the Earl of Stafford was killed by Sir John de Holand, and it was the intervention of the pious duke which helped to save the offender from the King's sentence,[5] and to secure for him the father's forgiveness.

---

[1] *Cont. Eul.* (p. 358) says the French were united with the Scots in this invasion. On the losses in the Duke of Lancaster's invasion cf. *Chr. Ang.* p. 358.

[2] On this cf. *Chron. Ang.* (p. 361).

[3] Over Melrose burnt the *Chron. Angl.* (p. 364) sighs 'quod dolendum fuit.' Knighton's notice of these movements is fuller than the others.

[4] Cf. *Chron. Ang.* (p. 367) and *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 358). This was after the parliament held at Westminster 20 Oct. 1385.

[5] *Chron. Ang.*, p. 365, says that Sir John took sanctuary at Beverley. It is interesting to think he may have sat on the *frith-stool* still existing there.

In the Parliament of 1385, the duke obtained permission to go to Spain [1] in order to prosecute his claim to the kingdom which was made in right of his wife.

The year was notable for the large number of French vessels, more than 80 in all, which were captured [2] by the English.

Ere the duke set out on his voyage he took leave of the King and received costly presents, and it was by royal command that men were bidden to call him King of Spain, and pay him royal honours. The fleet sailed from Plymouth, and Henry his son, along with many other nobles, joined the expedition, which was also to receive help from Portugal.[3] But by a marriage between the daughter of the duke [4] and the son of the King of Spain, war was avoided, and the expedition came home. Though the story is thus compressed by the Chronicler into a very few sentences, the return was not till the year 1389. He does, however, mention a great incident of the voyage out to Spain. This was the relief of the castle of Brest, which was then besieged by the Duke of Brittany. The works raised about it were thrown down, and it was said that their dead were cast into the sea by the French and Bretons, lest the English should know the greatness of the disaster they had inflicted.[5] Several other sucesses are noticed as occurring in the great duke's voyage, and the

---

[1] *Chron. Ang.* (p. 368), where the termination of the expedition is described as much less of a success than by Knighton.

[2] On these captures, cf. *Chron. Ang.*, p. 371, where the wooden wall is mentioned of which Knighton tells (p. 212).

[3] One of the duke's daughters (Philippa) was married to the King of Portugal in 1387.

[4] Catherine of Lancaster married Henry, prince of the Asturias, in 1393. The duke received 200,000 crowns and a pension for the lives of himself and his duchess (cf. *Adam de Usk*, p. 7). Knighton knew of these payments, but his figures are somewhat vague.

[5] This is not mentioned in other Chronicles. The fortifications of Brest were soon restored, and were again destroyed by the Earl of Arundel in 1387 (Wals. ii. 155).

Chronicler ends the account saying he will record nothing more of the duke till further news reaches him. Nor does his name again appear till p. 313 under the year 1390.

Affairs in connexion with France are next noticed; how from Calais Henry Percy and others made frequent raids; and how the English effected many captures, some of which Michael de la Pole, the chancellor, having been bribed (as was said) caused to be restored.[1] Incidental mention is made of a trial and punishment of coiners.

Meantime, Charles the King of France was making great preparations for a descent on England, but the Captain of Calais was able to take some of the French ships beforehand, and the rest, which gathered [2] at Sluys, were prevented from crossing by contrary winds.[3] English troops which had been assembled to resist the invaders were disbanded, and did much harm by plundering on their way home. The Chronicler has personal knowledge of these outrages.

The disappointed King of France next made a treacherous attempt to get possession of Ghent, but the plot was discovered and the Frenchmen concerned in it were put to death.

The Earl of Oxford (De Vere), a favourite of the King was made [4] Duke of Ireland this year, at which time began the demands of the nobles and commonalty for the dismissal of De la Pole from his office of chancellor, and of the Bishop of Durham from that of Treasurer.

---

[1] The matter is put in a more favourable light for the chancellor: *Chron. Angl.* (p. 371). It was on appeal that certain Genoese were granted compensation for their vessels. Still the Chronicler murmurs.

[2] *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 358) says the fleet was prepared 'propter ligam cum rege Hispaniæ.'

[3] Deo regnum Angliæ protegente, non homine, *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 359).

[4] In the Parliament of Westminster, 1 Oct. 1386. *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 359). It was known as the 'Wonderful Parliament.'

The King at first refused to accede to these, and there is given a sketch of the address of the parliament to King Richard, in which it is pointed out that in the last resort, if the King will not meet his parliament nor grant redress, he may be deposed. After this the King yielded, new ministers [1] were appointed, and articles of arraignment drawn up against the chancellor, which are given in full.

The next step was the appointment [2] of a council of nobles to take oversight of the affairs of the kingdom, and the King swore to abide by their ordinances. After this a revenue was granted to him. The terms of the commission, and the conditions on which the grant to the King was made, are recorded from the original documents.

The other incidents chronicled for this year 1386 are the capture of 14 French ships by William Beauchamp, and the northward journey of King Richard to settle some disputes in which the Archbishop of York was concerned. The King and Queen were lodged at Leicester abbey on their way north. In 1387 the expedition of the earl of Arundel, in which he captured some Flemish and French vessels and destroyed the French siege-works at Brest,[3] and in returning found and took more Flemish and some Scotch vessels in the harbour of Sluys, is the first event noticed. Then the moving of the King's Bench to Coventry, and the coming thither of the King and Queen. Later on, by appointment, some of the justices of the realm met the King and his favourites

[1] The *Chron. Angl.* (p. 374) describes Bp. Arundel, the new chancellor, as "vir qui justitiam præferret auro," but says of Bp. Gilbert, the treasurer 'vir qui plus 'lingua quam fide vigebat.'

[2] The list in *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 360) and that in Knighton do not accord, but Knighton's is correct and complete if we add the three principal officers of state: Arundel bp. of Ely, chancellor; Gilbert, bp. of Hereford, treasurer; and John de Waltham, keeper of the privy seal. *Johannes de Eurose*, in Knighton, is John Devereux.

[3] On the whole of the earl's expedition, cf. *Chron. Ang.* (p. 375).

at Shrewsbury, and were questioned by them concerning the validity of the Acts of the late Parliament. From the nature of their answers they were commanded to meet the King in Council [1] at Nottingham, where certain questions were put to them, and they were forced to put their seals to answers such as pleased the King and his party. The questions and answers are given at length [2] (p. 237) with names of the royal favourites as witnesses to the signatures.

An expedition of Henry Percy (Hotspur) to raise the siege of Brest took place [3] this year, and was successful, though, in returning, the fleet suffered from stormy weather. On the 16th September 1387 the King and Queen were lodged in Leicester abbey, and with them were some of the King's friends. A suit involving local interests is mentioned because it was tried at Melton Mowbray.

On Sunday, November the 10th, the King reached London accompanied by his favourites (*auricularibus reprobis*) and they were met by the authorities in state, but they gave great offence, by neglecting a clerical procession which came forth to join in the welcome. News was soon brought that the Duke of Gloucester and his friends were near London, and both the King's party and the citizens' were disturbed thereby. A proclamation was issued that none should furnish supplies of any kind to the Earl [4] of Arundel. The lords occupied positions on the outskirts of London, and sent messengers asking that the King should dismiss his

[1] This was 25th Aug. 1387.

[2] So are they also in *Chron. Angl.* (p. 380) and *Cont. Eulog.* (iii. p. 361). In the latter it is added that one of the signatories said, "Jam "meruimus cordas quibus sus- "pendamur, quia timore mortis "hæc dicta fuerunt et non de "veritate."

[3] In *Chron. Angl.* (p. 376) it is said he was sent out improperly supplied, and this through jealousy of his past successes.

[4] *Chron. Angl.*, p. 383, records an order to Lord Henry Percy to arrest the Earl of Arundel, but he did not dare to execute it, because of the troops attending on him.

evil counsellors. The favourites meantime are said to have suggested that Richard should seek help from France, and rumour[1] said that a messenger had been sent to the French King, and an order to the governor of Calais that he should give up that fortress to the French, which he refused to obey.

Other reports are that the favourites counselled[2] a struggle and that the Lord Mayor of London was requested to gather a force, but people and nobles alike declined to serve against those whom they saw to be the real friends of king and people. In this strait the Earl of Northumberland and others advised the King to send for the three noblemen, who, to make the people of London fully aware of their position, had sent a letter to them, setting forth their allegiance to the King, and that their sole wish was to remove his evil counsellors.

The King's messengers are well received, and the Duke of Gloucester, the Earl of Arundel, and the Earl of Warwick consent to meet the King, though there was a rumour[3] of a plot to kill them. Richard promised to bring the five persons accused before the next Parliament, and in the meantime by proclamation[4] (of which the Chronicler gives the text) he took both the three Lords and the accused under his special protection.[5] Through the influence of the King's favourites there was delay made in summoning a Parliament, and the Archbishop of York, the Duke of Ireland, and De la Pole[6]

---

[1] *Chron. Angl.*, *u.s.*, says it was reported that Richard intended to sell Calais and Guisnes to the French.

[2] *Chron. Angl.*, p. 384, makes the Archbishop Neville to have been the chief counsellor of resistance.

[3] The *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 364) makes it to have been more than rumour. The noblemen with their supporters were near Harringay.

[4] Issued on Tuesday November 19th: *Chron. Angl.* (p. 384) says the Parliament was to meet on 3rd February following. Cf. also *Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 364, as to how this date was fixed on.

[5] Cf. *Chron. Angl.* p. 384.

[6] The flight of Archbishop Neville and De la Pole are mentioned (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 365) as following on the defeat of the Duke of Ireland. And the same order of events is given in *Chron. Angl.* p. 386.

took to flight. But the King cannot be without De Vere, and steps are taken to bring him in safety to London.

The three Lords therefore gathered their forces, and attacked those who had come to the support of the Duke of Ireland near Radcote-bridge, and the Duke himself only escaped by swimming his horse across the Thames, while a great number of his supporters were drowned in the marshes.

Then the troops of the Lords go first to Oxford,[1] and afterwards to London,[2] where the Lord Mayor, Nicholas Exton, offered them the keys of the City.[3] It was then agreed that there should be a conference between the Lords and the King, and for this object they came to the Tower,[4] and the King was induced to consent to the arrest of his favourites, and a great number of persons were arrested and consigned to custody in various places, and others were removed from their positions about the King.

At the close of this very eventful year, the Chronicler mentions some singular appearances of fire, which were specially noticed in Leicestershire and Northamptonshire. He describes something very like magnified Will o'the Wisps. He also mentions a quarrel between [5] the Welsh and Southerners in Oxford on one side, and the Northerners on the other, in which there was some blood shed, and in consequence the chancellor of the University was deposed.

In 1388 the Parliament was assembled at Westminster,[6] and the justiciaries who had given answer to the King's

[1] *Adam of Usk* (p. 6) saw the troops of the five lords pass through Oxford.

[2] They were offered all hospitality and necessaries by the Lord Mayor in the name of the city, *Chron. Angl.*, p. 387.

[3] Cf. *Adam of Usk*, p. 6.

[4] The confederate lords entered London on December 26th, and immediately invested the Tower. Then Richard submitted.

[5] See *Adam of Usk*, p. 7, who was mixed up in the disturbances, and who calls the occurrence "magnum infortunium," and supplies a large amount of detail concerning it.

[6] According to the request of the confederate lords (*Cont. Eul.* iii. p. 366).

questions at Nottingham in the previous year were arrested and placed in the Tower. The King's favourites were summoned to appear, but they had made their escape, and were therefore declared outlaws. The increase of Wycliffites here recorded (p. 260), has already been noticed, and the means taken for their suppression.

There is next given a petition presented to the King in this Parliament for the suppression of many abuses. The perversion of justice, the corruption of the judges, the inequality of taxation, and the decay of the national defences are among the topics of complaint, and a commission is asked to carry out suggested measures of remedy.

The Flemings seek for peace with England, but terms are not agreed on, and serious outbreaks arise in Flanders. The Duke of Geldres pays homage to the English King at this Parliament.

And there then began[1] the accusation of the King's favourites, the Archbishop of York, the Duke of Ireland, Michael de la Pole, Robert Tresilyan and Nicholas Brembre, and the articles of their wrong doing are given at length (pp. 272–292). De Vere,[2] Archbishop Nevill, and De la Pole had fled. Tresilyan's hiding place was betrayed by a servant, and he was seized and executed, and Nicholas Brembre was beheaded on a block which he was reported to have prepared for others. Several others of the King's retainers were executed, and those who had fled were declared outlaws.[3] The justices too,

[1] Cf. *Cont. Eul.* iii. (p. 366).

[2] De Vere was killed while hunting at Louvain in 1392. His body was brought to England and buried at Colne priory in Essex. Archbishop Neville retired to a small cure in Louvain, where he died in 1391. Pope Urban had given him the bishopric of St. Andrews, but he, for safety, continued to live abroad; and Scotland, holding with Clement VII., would not have accepted him as bishop. De la Pole died in Paris in 1389.

[3] This parliament, known as the *merciless*, sat for 122 days (*sine misericordia*, ii. p. 249).

were condemned to death, but the Queen appealed for them, and their sentence was commuted to an imprisonment, each within certain definite limits, not be passed upon pain of death.

Against the Scotch, who had come into England by the Western Marches, Henry Percy is sent and is taken prisoner. The battle was not far from Carlisle, and among the Scotch prisoners was James Lindsay, the brother of the Scottish Queen.

A new Archbishop of York, in the place of Alexander Nevill, was appointed, and several other episcopal changes were consequential thereupon. Then followed an important Parliament[1] at Cambridge, where grants were made for the war with Scotland, and several enactments passed for the welfare of the realm; the liberties of the church were safeguarded; public and court offices were not to be obtained by bribery or favour, but by desert: servants were not to wander away without license; a regulation of wages was fixed: and other orders for the behaviour and life of labouring people, for the suppression of beggary, and the relief of the needy; also for the numbers of the justices of the peace, and the regulation of their courts. The Parliament also decided that those should be punished who imperilled in anywise the sanitary condition of cities or great towns. Other statutes dealt with the length and breadth of manufactured cloths; with illegal procuration of benefices, and with the place of the wool staple.

In that year, 1388, the Scotch made a raid into England, for which the English retaliated in the year following. A riot among the scholars[2] at Oxford was appeased by the intervention of the Duke of Gloucester.

---

[1] From Sept. 9th to Oct. 17th, 1388.

[2] The parties to the disturbance are described exactly as those in the previous year. This seems to be, if not the same, only a continuation of the former riot.

The King removed from office in this year the chief ministers of State, as a token of his own freedom [1] from tutelage.

Truces were made with all the nations of the continent at this time. The next event noticed is the visitation of the diocese of Lincoln in 1392 by William Courtenay, Archbishop of Canterbury, who proceeded against the Lollards, and put many of them to penance.

Two years before this the Duke of Lancaster had returned from Spain, and made a great hunting party in the parks round Leicester, while his son Henry went with a band of men to do service in Prussia. But England was in sore distress. Food and money were both scarce, so that the aldermen and citizens of London contributed for the purchase of food for the needy.

The Parliament of 1391 dealt with the law of Mortmain, for the evasion of which means were soon discovered.

The Duke of Gueldres urged the English King to go on with the war against France, but it was agreed that the Duke of Lancaster, with others, should first go to Amiens (in 1392) to confer with the French about peace, which was done next year (p. 321), and in the following year [2] a truce was agreed upon for four years and four months (1393).

In a council at Nottingham [3] the mayor, sheriffs, and aldermen of London were summoned and deprived of their offices for offences which are not recited. Sir

---

[1] It was on May 8th that the King issued letters to the sheriffs declaring what he had done. And the people were rejoiced.

[2] Cf. *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 369) where the terms proposed by France are mentioned and the opposition shown to them by the Duke of Gloucester, and the Earls of Arundel and Warwick.

[3] The *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 367) mentions Woodstock as the place to which the mayor and sheriffs were summoned, and that Richard, having asked them for a loan of money and being refused deprived them of their privileges. It is added also that owing to the large sums necessary to be raised for getting back their position some men fled away from London.

Edward Balerynge[1] is made warden of the City of London, but by submission the city was restored to the royal favour, and on the King's return to London a grand reception[2] was given to him and to the Queen, and they were conducted in state to Westminster Hall, and the King's Bench and the Court of Chancery again resumed their sessions in London (A.D. 1393). The Chronicle[3] concludes with a few disconnected entries, viz., the death of Queen Anna (1394); the expedition of the Duke of Lancaster to Acquitaine,[4] and King Richard's to Ireland (1394). The holding of a Parliament in Ireland and the return of the King and the duke from their respective journeys (1395). And last of all a notice of the still enduring schism of the papacy in which the French, in the University of Paris, adhered to Pope Clement, and the University of Oxford, consulted[5] by King Richard, declared for Pope Urban.

From this comparison of Knighton's work with other contemporary records it will be seen that the independent, and therefore the valuable, portion of his Chronicle commences only with the last chapter of Book III. In the IVth and Vth Books, published in this volume, there is much that is important, especially in regard to the

---

[1] The name is given elsewhere as *Dalengrig*.

[2] A long elegiac Latin poem on this reconciliation, by Richard de Maidstone, is printed in *Polit. Poems* (i. 282, *seqq.*), and is full of interest as a picture of the life and manners of the time.

[3] The *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 369) says no record is given by its author of the years 1393–4 "propter varietatem regni Angliæ," by which is meant, probably, the instability of everything. A similar entry for 1391 adds "quia regnum Angliæ fuit in malo statu."

[4] Cf. *Cont. Eul.* (iii. p. 370). The dukedom of Acquitaine had been granted to the Duke of Lancaster by the King in 1390, but the gift to John of Gaunt was opposed by the people of Bordeaux and other towns. The crossing of the King to Ireland is also noticed on the same page. Some of the Irish princes (*puri Hibernici*) were brought to England by the King.

[5] No doubt the consultations of the Universities both in France and in England were with the hope of bringing the schism to an end.

domestic history. With reference to Book V., I incline to the opinion, expressed by Dr. Shirley in a note to page 524 of the *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, that it is not by the same hand as the rest. Knighton, according to the Lament prefixed to his introduction in A, was growing blind towards the end of his work. Such a calamity would account for the abrupt way in which Book IV. is brought to an end (*see* p. 123), and for the gap which occurs between Books IV. and V. The accession of Richard II., with which Book V. opens, would form a fair starting point for a new writer, who would not feel called upon to notice the events of the closing years of Edward.

This new writer (who appears, like Knighton, to have known a great deal about Leicester Abbey and the country round about) may have belonged to the same fraternity. If this hypothesis be accepted, it helps us to an explanation of the difficult sentence in the Introduction (vol. i. pp. 3–4) where Knighton describes the division of his book. That work (as we are supposing) consisted of four books. The addition, made as is here assumed, raised the number to five. The words of the introduction had at first been IV. or *quatuor*, where we now twice over read *quinque* or V. This was noticed by a copyist (for we have not in these MSS. the original writing) and, having *five* books, he made the alteration of IV. into V., but did not see that he was leaving a difficulty for time to come in the words *tertiam* and *quartam*, which still stand, as though the work were in four parts and no more.

Dr. Shirley has also noted a difference of style in the language of the two books, and a very slight comparison is needed to see that the manner of arrangement is different. In book V. the writer deals with his matter almost *en bloc*. He says what he has to say on each subject in a connected narrative and then leaves it, and

passes to something else.[1] He also has not as much zeal for noting details of prices, taxation, the assembling of parliament, and such matters, which are constantly recorded in the previous book. There is in both books the same interest shown in all which concerns the fortunes of the house of Lancaster, and in the prosperity of the religious foundations of Leicester. But this interest would exist in all the members of the monastic body whose fortunes were so closely bound up with the Lancastrian family.

In the notices of continental history this Chronicle needs to be largely supplemented from other narratives. The campaigns of Edward III. in France and of the Black Prince in France and Spain are recorded only in a general outline, and it is seldom that we find, as we do in the story of the meeting of Edward with Louis the Emperor (vol. II., p. 5), more of precise detail in Knighton than occurs elsewhere. On the contrary, when he writes of the conflicts so constantly occurring at this time between the English and the Scots, he has often some particulars to record which are peculiar to himself. This probably comes to pass because the head of the house of Lancaster though more than once changed during the period covered by the Chronicle, was almost always concerned in what was doing.

And in this connexion the Vth book is specially remarkable for the laudatory estimate which the writer gives us of John of Gaunt, so much differing in this respect from nearly every other record of the time, but showing that the reputation which Shakespeare has

[1] The book is mainly occupied by four subjects treated in this fashion:—i. The rebellion of Wat Tyler. ii. The character and doings of John of Gaunt. iii. Wycliffe and the Lollards. iv. The proceedings against king Richard's ministers in 1386–1388, to the conclusion of the Merciless Parliament. The other events which are noticed receive only very brief mention.

embodied in his 'time-honoured Lancaster' was accorded to the duke by some in his own day.

In book IV. Lancaster comes into no great prominence and is simply mentioned by name or title, but the writer of the Vth book omits no opportunity of laudation. He is well aware of Gaunt's unpopularity. He says (p. 146) that, at the time of Wat Tyler's insurrection, he was hated *super omnes mortales.* But *dux pacificus, dux pius,* are the epithets which the Chronicler himself applies to him on the same page. The latter of these terms occurs almost at every allusion to him.[1] He is *pacis amator et reformator* (p. 146) and is several times spoken of as being under special care of divine providence.[2] He is *pietatis robore fundatus* (p. 148) and in his dealing with an enemy also he is *pius, ut semper pius erat* (p. 209).

The duke's departure for Spain, whither he went to claim the kingdom, affords a special occasion for glorifying him. He sets out on his expedition *in nomine Domini* (p. 207), and after the arrangements were made on account of which the claim was waived, the Chronicler tells with much pride (and his knowledge is gained from one of the duke's own retinue), how the King of Spain met him with seven and forty mules bearing chests full of gold, as part payment for foregoing his claim.

The only thing which the writer finds to regret in the duke's doings is that he was always ready to stand by the Lollards (p. 193). But for this he has an apology. The pious duke believed them to be saints of God, by reason of their bland words and looks, whereby he, like many others, was deceived.

For the Chronicler hates Wycliffe and his followers with a bitter hatred, and spends all the powers of his language in painting their evil character (pp. 181–187),

[1] Cf. ii. 143, 144, 148, 149, 157, 193, 203, 204, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, the words occurring sometimes twice or thrice on the same page.

[2] Cf. ii. 147, 148.

winding up with declaring them no better than followers of Mahomet. He knows little or nothing of the signs of the times or the meaning of the Lollard movement. Nor has he eyes to see that Gaunt, who heartily desired to break the power of the clergy, found in Wycliffe and his preachers very useful weapons for his purpose.

But it is for the light which he sheds upon the condition of England in his time, and on the changes therein which then began, that Knighton has a special value. And this remark applies very particularly to the matter contained in Book IV. We learn much from him about the fluctuations of prices[1] and the causes thereof; of the great importance of the wool crop of the country, and the privileges attached to those places where the staples[2] were fixed for its purchase and sale. He records the prices of various kinds of grain, of wine, and of cattle, and gives a tragic account of the effects produced by the pestilential visitations of the time not only on the value but on the supply of food of all kinds.[3] We gather much from him about the rate of wages, and the vain attempts that were made to regulate these by the artificial aid of legislation. On this subject he is rich in information, and we can see clearly how at this time the conditions of society were becoming entirely altered, largely in consequence of the devastations of the plague; how the labourer found that he could demand and obtain high pay for his services, and how for lack of population other results came about, cattle were untended, crops unreaped, and a general recklessness prevailed.

The workers who had been *adscripti glebæ* secured a different position, and attained their freedom. Rents on every side fell, the owners of land making any sacrifice, if only they might keep it in cultivation. Relations which had grown up under the feudal system were

[1] ii. 2, 8, 15, 233, 235, 236.
[2] i. 467; ii. 74, 117, 308.
[3] ii. 61–65.

broken through, and the arrangement came in whereby the lands of the nobles and the monasteries were let to tenants at a yearly rental.

Nor was it only in the classes of labourers, tenants, and owners of land that the effects of the pestilence made itself felt. There was in the Church first a dearth of clergy, and then a flood of ill-educated candidates came forward to fill the vacant places. This was about 1350, and 40 years later he paints for us a desperate picture of the condition of the country.[1] A poor harvest in 1390 was enough to reduce the people to the verge of starvation in spite of good years which had gone before. The money of the country had been drained away: the laws forbade merchants to carry their wool abroad for sale, and the prices they could obtain for it at home were miserably low. Food, he tells us, was not dear, but that was small consolation when there was no money wherewith to purchase it. And this was the case to such a degree that the Corporation of London found it needful to contribute for the purchase of corn to be supplied at low rates to the people, so that the needy might be saved from perishing.

Yet in the midst of these terrible narratives we have records[2] of increased extravagance among the wealthy, and of the need of sumptuary laws[3] to restrain the humbler sort from aping the manners and dress of their superiors in station. And we find a very graphic confirmation in another Chronicle[4] of Knighton's remarks about this rage for apparel. There the writer describes various newfangled garments which had come into vogue, and tells us of their materials and their cost, and adds thereto that such display had very evil effects on the character of their wearers, so that the writer declares he trembles lest there come again upon the land a terrible scourge of the Lord.

---

[1] ii. 314.
[2] ii. 58.
[3] ii. 299.
[4] *Eul. Hist.* iii. 230.

Knighton tells us much too about the taxation, granted by the Parliaments, or demanded by the King, for the various wars, destined to be all fruitless in the end, by which the national resources were being exhausted. Mostly the demands are for subsidies of war but at times for other needs, as when a princess to be married is to be supplied with a dowry. And the complaints [1] which found utterance in Richard's reign prove that the sums drawn from the people at that time were often squandered upon royal favourites. The language in which taxation is spoken of is also instructive. Grants of Parliament are made, not always without demur, and then the phrase is *concessa est.* But now and again we have traces of other procedure in such expressions [2] as *rex multavit, rex fecit capere, rex misit clericos,* and these, we may be certain, were agents who did not readily accept a refusal.

A minor, but by no means trifling, drain on the resources of the nation was the cost of the visits of such Cardinals [3] as were sent from time to time from the Pope to treat for peace between France and England. Of the statute of *Provisors* (first passed in 1351) we have not much notice in Knighton, and the brief record of events at the end of Book V. omits any mention of its re-enactment in 1390, and also of the statute of *Præmunire* of 1393, though mention is made (p. 316) of attempts to evade the Mortmain Act, and of the legislation against them in 1391.

The Chronicle closes in a time of comparative peace and good government, and of these years we are supplied by Knighton with very little history. But in the times whose events he has recorded more fully we see how the excessive war taxation, together with the loosening of the bonds of society by the Black Death in Edward's reign, led up to the revolt under Richard when the poll

[1] ii. 223.
[2] ii. 32 ; ii. 3 ; ii. 52, 53.
[3] ii. 58, 95.

tax affected every class of the people, and how the events of the earlier reign shaped the utterances of the rebels in every part of the Kingdom when they arose to demand their freedom.

And the troubles of which Knighton speaks so much in the middle of Richard's reign had their causes partly in the youth and weakness of the King, but were also largely the result of the rivalry and ambition of the nobles, some of them members of, and some very closely allied to, the royal line, and contributing weakness rather than ministering support to the occupant of the throne.

J. RAWSON LUMBY.

Cambridge, 25 May, 1895.

LIBER QUARTUS.[1]

Wals. i. 198. Chron. Ang. 6.

Cum rex Franciæ, ut supradictum est, occuparet terras regis Angliæ in Vasconia, rex Edwardus misit nuncios ad regem Franciæ petens ab eo terras suas in Vasconia[2] quæ sibi jure hereditario incumbebant, et quas progenitores sui de generatione in generationem juste[3] occupabant, et pro quibus, ut supra patet, ipse homagium regi Franciæ eidem fecerat. Brevi responso accepto, nuncii nihil in his profuerunt. Nam rex Franciæ Philippus juraverat et votum voverat, quod aut regem Angliæ penitus destrueret, aut ipsum ditissimum regem Christianitatis efficeret, aut pauperrimum redderet, et hoc totum pro causa quod rex Edwardus tantum insudaverat ad humiliationem Scotorum; et ideo miserat rex Franciæ gentem robustam in Vasconiam, et destruxit et occupavit quasi totam terram paucis castellis exceptis; sed idem rex Franciæ multos[4] perdidit de populo suo. Tunc fuerat senescallus Vasconiæ dominus Olyverus de Dygham, probus miles, elegans et audax, et secundum suum posse bene se habens[5] erga Francos.

A.D. 1337. An embassy sent to the French king.

Twys. col. 2570.

Murim. 80.

In æstate sequenti rex cepit lanas[6] de tota terra[7] Angliæ per tallias corulinas et parvula brevia scripta, imposito pretio ix. marcarum ad saccum per manus mercatorum in quolibet comitatu; et de domo nostra

Pre-emption of wool claimed by the king.

---

[1] In the marginal notes the references to Walsingham, Chronicon Angliæ, Ad. Murimuth, and Rob. de Avesbury are all made to the editions in the Rolls Series.

[2] Here on margin of both MSS. is *De guerra Vasconiæ et Franciæ.*

[3] justi, MS.

[4] *totam terram* wrongly inserted here in MS.

[5] *habens*, from A.; *habentes*, MS.

[6] On margin of A. only is *Rex habet lanas.*

[7] *terras*, MS. wrongly.

A.D. 1337. Leycestriæ habuit xviij. saccos. Et circa festum omnium sanctorum rex misit Henricum de Borugwas episcopum Lyncolniensem et comitem de Northamptona et comitem de Suthfolk cum x.[1] mille saccis lanæ in Brabantiam pro[2] retentione facienda de alta Almania, et vendiderunt ibidem quemlibet saccum pro xx. libris.

A.D. 1338. Two cardinals sent to mediate for peace.

Quinto die ante natale Domini venerunt[3] duo cardinales in Angliam pro concordia facienda inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ, et quolibet die ceperunt de ecclesia Anglicana l. marcas pro suis expensis, unde levata est summa iiij. denariorum de qualibet marca totius ecclesiæ[4] Anglicanæ tam exemptæ quam non exemptæ. Post Epiphaniam fecit rex obsidere castellum de Dounbarre per comites de Arundell et Salusbury, sed post longam moram in obsidione[5] ibidem factam relicta obsidione recesserunt abinde in eorum opprobrium non modicum. In eodem tempore episcopus de Glascoue venit de Francia cum apparatu multo de armis, equis, auro et argento in auxilium guerræ Scotiæ ex providentia regis Franciæ ad valorem xv. mille librarum. Et captum est totum super mare per dominum Johannem Ros, et ductum ad portum de Sondewiche,[6] et idem episcopus cito post mortuus est præ dolore.

Chron. Ang. 6. Murim. 81.

Siege of Dunbar castle.

Wals. i. 200.

French help for the Scots intercepted.

Confiscation of the property of foreign ecclesiastics.

Eodem anno rex cepit omnes thesauros per totam terram de alienigenis religiosis et similiter de secularibus, et fecit attachiare[7] bona eorum[8] terras et tenementa donec facerent gratum regis. Itaque terras[9] eorum fecit extendi ad valorem. Et ipsi dederunt regi certam summam de anno in annum prout potu-

Wals. i. 222.

An aid.

---

[1] Murimuth says *thirty thousand.*

[2] *protentione,* MS. as one word.

[3] Here in margin of A. only is *Venerunt duo Cardinales in Angliam et habent l. marcas in die.*

[4] On margin of MS. only is *Ecclesia taxabatur.*

[5] *obsidionem,* MS.

[6] *Sandewyche,* A.

[7] *atthachiare,* MS.

[8] *eorum,* bis in MS.

[9] *terræ* in both MSS.

erunt concordare. Rex rogavit de auxilio[1] ex toto regno de quolibet qui habebat xl. solidos in bonis et catallis; et quæsitum est a singulis per ministros regis præstito sacramento quantum possent bene dare. Et cum rex multa in hunc modum recepisset tam de ecclesiasticis personis quam de secularibus, rex[2] celebravit parliamentum apud Londonias, et tractaverunt de adventu cardinalium pro pace habenda et de aliis negotiis regni. Sicque responsum est cardinalibus in principio quadragesimæ quod rex non se concordaret cum rege Franciæ nisi sub conditione quod redderet ei terras suas quas ultra mare nequiter et injuste ei detinuerat et adhuc occupaverat. Unde cito post Normanni[3] intraverunt cum magna potentia in Portusmuth,[4] et miserunt in flammam[5] ignis totam villam, et multos Anglorum interfecerunt, et ceperunt quicquid invenire potuerunt, et subito sine mora abierunt. Nam intraverunt sub armis Angliæ et sic deceperunt illos de villa, sed tamen supervenerunt quidam Angli, et in recessu eorum multos ex eis occiderunt.

A.D. 1338.

Parliament in London to deliberate on peace.

Wals. i. 200.

Portsmouth burnt.

Twys. col. 2571.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXXXVIII. Rex Edwardus fecit capere de quolibet comitatu[6] certam summam quarteriorum frumenti, avenarum et baconum, in qualibet villa prout extiterat major vel minor. Deinde de abbathiis vestimenta, vasa argentea, et alia ornamenta[7] in auxilium passagii sui ultra mare. Ex qua re ortus est ingens clamor in populo, et majus[8] malum exinde provenisset si sanius consilium rex non accepisset.

A.D. 1338.

Aids for the king's expedition.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Omnes habentes xl. solidos in bonis contribuunt regi.*

[2] *rex* repeated in both MSS.

[3] *Normania*, MS.

[4] *Portusmouth*, MS.

[5] Here on margin in A. only is *Portusmuth incenditur per Normannos.*

[6] *comitate*, MS.

[7] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex capit blada, et ornamenta ecclesiæ.*

[8] *najus*, MS.

A.D. 1338. An embassy sent to France.

Citra festum Pentecostes misit rex Johannem episcopum Cantuariensem et episcopum Dunolmæ cum cardinalibus ad regem Franciæ pro pace habenda si bene posset adipisci.[1] Eo tempore capta est treuga inter Angliam et Scotiam per unum annum duratura. Et tunc soluta est obsidio de Dunbarre, et rex Edwardus medio tempore misit ultra mare dominum Willelmum Bowne comitem Northamptoniæ, et dominum Galfridum Schrop[2] justiciarium capitalem Angliæ et plures alios, et applicuerunt apud Andewerp in Brabantia, et die translationis sancti Thomæ cunctis rebus dispositis et provisis, quæ ad passagium pertinent, rex misit se in mare cum grandi potentia, habens secum comites et magnates regni, scilicet comites Derbeyæ,[3] de Salysburye, de[4] Northfolk et multos proceres cum eis et copiosam multitudinem sagittariorum et Walensium, et applicuit apud Andewerp ad uxorem suam et filios, in festo sancti Kenelmi. Flandrenses læti de ejus adventu promiserunt ei auxilium suum. Nam satisfecerat eis pro quibusdam navibus quas Angli ceperant de eis et destruxerant.

Murim. 83.

King Edward sails to Antwerp.

Wals. i. 200. Chr. Ang. 7. Avesb. 302.

Murim. 84.

Parliament at Northampton grants aids.

In crastino sancti Jacobi dux Cornubiæ tenuit parliamentum[5] apud Northamptoniam per[6] commissionem regis cum cæteris magnatibus regni, ubi ordinatum est quod rex in subsidium guerræ suæ haberet de qualibet villa, ubi taxa se extendebat de vicesima ad xx. solidos, rex haberet x. petras[6] lanæ; et sic per totum regnum de qualibet villa secundum suum posse, et sic rex[8] habuit de comitatu Leycestriæ

Murim. 85.

---

[1] *adipiscere*, both MSS.

[2] *Schorp*, A. The name intended is *Scrope*.

[3] *Derbieæ*, MS.

[4] *de*] et, MS.

[5] Here on both margins is *Parliamentum apud Northampton.*

[6] *permissione*, MS. as one word.

[7] On the *petra*=xiv. pounds, see below p. 16.

[8] Here on the margin of A. only is *Rex habet lanas.*

ccc. et xj. saccos, de comitatu Lincolniæ vj^{c} saccos, de comitatu Northamptoniæ ccc. saccos; summa totalis saccorum trium comitatuum mccxj. sacci. Et præter hæc rex habuit auxilium de episcopis, abbatibus,[1] prioribus, rectoribus, vicariis, justiciariis et aliis magnatibus qui non poterant profiscisci cum eo in guerra sua, de quibusdam c. libras, de aliis cc. libras prout poterant effundere. Ad festum sancti Michaelis sequentis concessa est regi decima biennalis a clero ad lanas tertii anni donec se extenderet ad decimam unius anni ultra, scilicet ubi ante non ceperat lanas. Et cum rex venisset in illas partes[2] non invenit in quo confidere posset, excepto duce de Gerle solo, et exinde dixit Lyncolniensi episcopo et aliis secretis suis, non sibi bene consultum fuisse. Et capitose cepit iter versus ducem Bavariæ qui se Imperatorem fecerat, qui habitavit in alta Almania per vij. diætas a Colonia. Et cum Imperator intellexisset de adventu regis Edwardi, movit se de loco suo rediens in occursum regis, per iiij. diætas occurrens ei, et ad quandam villam nomine Colonence, et ibi recepit regem cum magno honore, ubi parata est una cathedra Imperatori et alia regi, et ditissime strata in communi foro[3] extra omne domicilium; ubi Imperator sedebat et rex Edwardus juxta eum; et assistebant eis iiij.[4] duces, tres archiepiscopi, et vj. episcopi, et xxxvij. comites, de baronibus et baronettis et militibus et aliis advenientibus bene ad æstimationem dez heroudes xvij. millia. Imperator tenuit in manu sua dextra sceptrum[5] imperiale, et in sinistra manu pilam auream rotundam quæ totius mundi denotat gubernaculum. Quidam miles ultra caput suum unum[6] gladium evaginatum:

A.D. 1338.

Money grant by the clergy.

Murim. 85.

A.D. 1338.

Meeting with Louis of Bavaria.

Wals. i. 223. Chr. Ang. 7.

Twys. col. 2572.

[1] *abbatis*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of both MSS. is *Rex Edwardus tendit in Alemaniam.*

[3] Here on both margins is *Imperator et rex simul sedent in foro.*

[4] *quatuor*, MS.

[5] *septrum*, both MSS.

[6] *unum*, om. MS.

A.D. 1338. et ibidem Imperator coram omni populo congregato ostendit et notificavit omnibus innaturalitatem et inobedientiam ac improbitatem quam rex Franciæ ei fecerat, et ibidem regem Franciæ diffidebat, et in forisfactura ipsum et omnes suos adhærentes promulgavit.

A.D. 1338. Louis appoints Edward his vicar. Deinde Imperator fecit regem Edwardum suum vicarium[1] et dedit ei plenam suam potestatem de Colonia et citra. Et super hoc dedit ei cartam suam vidente omni populo. In crastino vero convenerunt ad matricem ecclesiam Imperator et rex Angliæ cum cæteris magnatibus et archiepiscopis Coloniæ, celebrarunt missam, et post missam statim juraverunt tam Imperator[2] et omnes cæteri magnates regi[3] Angliæ, quod ipsum juvarent et manutenerent contra regem Franciæ ad vivere et mori per vij. annos proxime integraliter sequentes si guerra inter dictos reges tanto tempore duraret. Et similiter fuerunt jurati omnes regi Angliæ quod omnes magnates de Colonia et citra cito venirent ad regem Angliæ, et semper debent esse parati venire ad eum omni tempore quo fuerint præmuniti contra regem Franciæ cum eo seu in quo loco rex Angliæ ipsos voluerit assignare. Et si contingeret aliquem illorum regi Angliæ non obedire in præmissis, cæteri omnes de alta Alemania insurgerent contra ipsum et eum destruerent. His itaque contractis et stabilitis rex cepit licentiam ab imperatore et rediit in Brabantiam.[4] Et deinde infra breve[5] rex Edwardus fecit vocare omnes magnates a Colonia et citra ad unum concilium[6] apud Malyns, ubi convenerunt dux Brabantiæ, comes Hunaldiæ, comes

Wals. i. 201. Murim. 88.

Compact between king Edward and the emperor.

Council at Malines.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Imperator facit regem Edwardum suum vicarium.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Imperator jurat regi Angliæ.*

[3] *regis* in both MSS., *regi* must be the true reading. See six lines below.

[4] The MSS. write this word without the *t* always.

[5] *brevi*, MSS.

[6] *consilium*, MSS. as always.

de Gerle, dominus de Facunberge et cæteri magnates omnes excepto episcopo de Legys; et rex ibi ostendit eis cartam Imperatoris[1] quam ei Imperator confecerat et cætera Imperatoris in hac parte promissa. Et omnes annuerunt ei obedire secundum illud quod ligius eorum dominus in hac causa ordinaverat, et etiam eos libenter velle vacare[2] ejus negotiis secundum suum posse. A.D. 1338.

The king holds another council.

Rex Edwardus celebravit aliud concilium in marchia super terras episcopi de Legys,[3] et fecit summonere episcopum de Legys, sed noluit venire, et sic pro ejus inobedientia et aliis negotiis rex Edwardus misit episcopum Lincolniæ ad Imperatorem conquerens de episcopo de Legys et petens ejus auxilium. Et dictum erat quod Imperator in propria persona voluit venisse ad regem Angliæ in ejus auxilium, quia credebatur quod magnum campestre bellum foret futurum inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ circa festum Pentecostes proximo sequens.

Count of Flanders banished.

Eodem tempore Flandrenses fugaverunt[4] dominum suum comitem Flandriæ extra terram suam, et plures affines suos et consanguineos acriter peremerunt.

Infra breve post rex Edwardus misit archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et episcopum Dunelmensem ad parliamentum regis Franciæ apud Compyn celebratum, et iterum ad aliud parliamentum apud Aras pro pace habenda; sed rex Franciæ pacem renuit, sed cum intellexisset contractum[5] inter Imperatorem et regem Edwardum, statim viis et modis quibus potuit se dedit Imperatori, et clam concordatus est cum eo, et super hoc congregavit populum multum et adunavit classem undique non modicam, præcipiens eis terram Angliæ cum omni audacia attingere, et malum quod possent,

Embassies to France.

Policy of the French king.

Twys. col. 2573.

---

[1] *imperator*, MS.
[2] *vocare*, MS.
[3] *Legis*, MS. et infra.
[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Comes Flandriæ fugatus de Flandria.*
[5] *intractum*, MS.

A.D. 1338. tam per terram quam per mare, absque ulla pietate
Southampton burnt. exercere. Et sic applicuerunt apud Suthamptoniam et Wals. i. 221.
interfecerunt in ea quos repererunt[1] et rapuerunt et Murim. 87.
plures de nobilioribus villæ in domibus propriis suspenderunt, et in flammam[2] ignis totam villam in circuitu immani crudelitate dederunt; sed accurrentibus[3] compatriotis naves ascenderunt et altum mare petierunt. Eodem anno post Purificationem filius regis Edwardi, dux Cornubiæ, tenuit parliamentum apud
Parliament in London. Londonias, et ibi ordinatum fuit habere securam custodiam in quinque portubus,[4] scilicet lx. naves de viris armatis ad plenum stuffatas. Comes de Huntyngdonia, constabularius[5] Angliæ, factus est gardianus de Suthfolk et dominus Robertus de Morleya gardianus de
A.D. 1338. Northfolk. Eo anno fuit hiems dura et aspera, gravis Murim. 88.
et ultra mensuram perlonga. Iterum circa Pascha Wals. i. 223.
redierunt Normanni cum xij. galeis[6] et viij. spynachiis Chron. Ang. 8.
cum manu bene armata circiter iiij^{or}. millia virorum, et petierunt villam de Suthamptonia[7] ad opus ducis Nor-
Another attempt on Southampton. manniæ, et cum vidissent audaciam Anglorum sic paratam et defensionem resistibilem, non audebant terram Angliæ pede suo attingere, sed altum mare Murim. 89.
tenuerunt præ timore ne Anglici eis insequerentur. Nam Anglici proferebant eis opportunum ingressum in terram Angliæ ad refocillandum se et suos per duos dies, eo pacto quod post biduum pugnarent decem cum x., vel xx. cum viginti, aut aliquo alio modo per assensum partium; et noluerunt sed absque opere abierunt. Isto anno quarterium frumenti valuit xl. denarios et aliquando minus, hordeum[8] x. denarios, fabæ et pisæ xij. denarios, avenæ x. denarios.

---

[1] *receperunt*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Franci incendunt Suthampton.*

[3] *occurrentibus*, MS.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *v. portus custodiuntur.*

[5] *constabulare*, MS.

[6] *galeys*, MS.

[7] Here on the margin of A. only is *Iterum redeunt Normanni apud Suthampton.*

[8] *ordeum*, MSS.

Murim. 89. Anno gratiæ MCCCXXXIX. circa festum Trinitatis venerunt inimici ad portum de Hastynges, et[1] incenderunt[2] magnam partem villæ, Scoti per excitationem regis Franciæ remiserunt treugas et convenerunt in marchiam Scotiæ parati intrare terram Angliæ, sed supervenerunt Angli et plures illorum ceperunt cum præda etiam mille bestiarum. Rex Franciæ videns se frustratum de malo sic inferendo in terram Angliæ, misit exercitum in Vasconiam ad destruendum confinia ejus; ibique perdidit de suis, et cæteri redierunt vacui absque expeditione sicut deus voluit. Citra festum sancti Jacobi iterum[4] venerunt Franci cum grandiori potentia ad portum de Sandewyche, scilicet cum xxxij. galeys et xx. magnis navibus et xv. minoribus navibus, sed non audebant egredi in terram propter Anglicos paratos, sed diverterunt aciem ad portum de Rye et ibi multa mala fecerunt, et Anglici de mari[4] supervenerunt, at Franci consuluerunt sibi de fuga, et Anglici insequebantur eos usque Boloniam de Nostredame et posuerunt in flammam ignis magnam partem villæ, et suspenderunt laqueo xij. de capitaniis navigii, et redierunt in Angliam cum navibus captis apud Boloniam. Eodem tempore rex Angliæ movebat se cum exercitu suo versus Franciam[5] de Hunaldia, et Willelmus de Pole morabatur[6] in hostagio apud Andewerpe medio tempore pro expensis regis non solutis. Dominus Walterus de Mawnee cum multis aliis Anglicis, ac etiam cum multis Flandrensibus, arripuit iter versus Picardiam cum magna potentia, et villam Morteynye incenderunt et ceperunt unum castellum ad iij. leucas de Caumbreye. Comes Salysbury intravit partes de Legys mille stipatus militibus, rex

A.D. 1339. Hastings partly burnt.

Attacks on Sandwich and Rye.

A.D. 1339. King Edward marches toward France.

Murim. 101. Avesb. 303.

---

[1] *etiam*, MSS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Villa de Hastynges incenditur.*

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Franci iterum venient apud Sandewiche.*

[4] *mare*, MSS.

[5] *Francorum*, MS. wrongly.

[6] *morebatur*, MS.

A.D. 1339. Edwardus morabatur in Valencia quasi per v. leucas de marchia Franciæ.

English ravages in Normandy.

Eodem tempore Robertus de Morleye marisarchus[1] perrexit in Normanniam cum classe sua et cum classe quinque portuum et[2] incenderunt v. villas, scilicet tres portus, videlicet Austr. Rye, Rynele,[3] et alias tres quarum nomina non habeo, scilicet unum portum et duas alias villas, et incenderunt de classe Normanorum ibidem scilicet octoginta naves. Twys. col. 2574.

King Edward enters France.

In festo sancti Mathæi apostoli rex Edwardus cum duce Brabantiæ cum grandi fortitudine intravit[4] in Franciam, vendicans jus regni sibi incumbere jure hereditario ex parte matris suæ Isabellæ filiæ regis Franciæ qui masculum non habuerat, et ideo de jure consanguinitatis hereditas coronæ Franciæ regi Edwardo debebatur. Et est notandum quod rex Franciæ duas habuit[5] filias, quarum seniorem rex Naverniæ duxit in uxorem, et rex Angliæ Edwardus secundus nupsit juniorem, de qua genuit istum Edwardum tertium. Et quia iste Edwardus primo posuit clameum in regno Franciæ, et tale regnum non debet dividi inter sorores, ideo totum jus coronæ Franciæ cecidit super secundum, Edwardum regem Angliæ. Ingressus[6] rex Edwardus in Franciam, in festo scilicet sancti Mathæi, eodem die misit in flamma et igne tantam patriam de Chaumbrezyne, et tota hebdomada sequenti non cessabat ab incendio et flamma undique in illis partibus, ita quod illa patria fuit omnino destructa de bladis, bestiis et aliis quibusque similibus bonis. Sabbato sequenti venit rex Edwardus apud Markonnam

Edward's claim to the crown of France.

His proceedings on entering France.

Wals. 1, 201.

Avesb. 305. Murim. 101. Wals. 1, 216.

---

[1] *marisarcus*, MSS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Angli incendunt in Normannia v. villas.*

[3] The names are of this form in both MSS. I have not been able to discover what places are meant.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Ut cæperunt bella contra Franciam primo.*

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ habet ij. filias.*

[6] The whole story of these movements is given in Avesbury in a letter from king Edward.

quæ est inter Caumbrezyne et Franciam, et præcipit populo suo flamma comburere et dare incendio illas partes Franciæ. Et datum est intelligi Edwardo quod Philippus rex Franciæ disponeret se obviare illi apud Peronn antecedens illum. Edwardus tendit iter rectum versus eundem locum, semper præcedens populum suum destruendo et inflammando undique patriam ad spatium xij. ad minus vel xiiij. leucarum in die. Et sabbato ante festum sancti Lucæ transierunt aquam de Oyze, et hospitati sunt ibidem die Dominica sequenti, semper[1] habentes alienigenas[2] coram eis, scilicet marchiatum de Branburgh filium imperatoris, et marchiatum de Mysa filium suum legalem cum v°. armatis, ducemque Brabantiæ marescallum de Julers, et dominum de Facumberge ducem Gerle,[3] et multi alii. Et hi omnes dixerunt regi Edwardo quod eorum victualia fuerunt quasi fere consumpta et[4] expensa et hiems appropinquans esset aspera, nec se posse in tanto frigoris algore demorari; et ideo eos oportere se retrahere super marchias pro recuperatione victualium cum forent eorum victualia expensa: nam pauciora victualia secum sumpserant credentes celerius bellum ingruisse cum Philippo de Valoys qui se prætendebat regem Franciæ. Quia quotiens rex Edwardus miserat[5] nuncios ad parliamentum regis Franciæ pro pace offerenda, aliud responsum reportare non poterant nisi hoc unum, quod rex Angliæ Edwardus nunquam gauderet spatio bipedali de toto regno Franciæ; propterea credebant omnes ipsum Philippum bellum campestre eis voluisse obicere; sed non ita evenit. Et sæpius nunciis juraverat, quod rex Edwardus non moram faceret per spatium unius diei infra[6] terram regni

A.D. 1339.

Movements to meet the enemy.

Murim. 102.

Scarcity of provisions felt.

Avesb. 304.

Boasts of the French king.

[1] *super*, MS. wrongly.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *alienigenæ habent primam aciem.*

[3] *Gerle*, om. MS.

[4] *et expensa*, om. MS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Edwardus mittit ad regem Franciæ pro pace habenda.*

[6] So MSS., but probably *intra* is the true reading.

A.D. 1339. Franciæ cum suo exercitu quin[1] ei occurreret in bellum. Die Lunæ sequenti magister albalistarum Franciæ misit literas[2] domino Hugoni de Geneve facientes mentionem quod diceret regi Angliæ ex parte regis Franciæ quod eligeret sibi talem locum campestrem qui non esset vallatus bosco, marisco aut aqua, et procederet ei in bellum citra diem Jovis proximo sequentem. Deinde venit nuncius ad dictum Hugonem ex parte regis Boemnyæ et ducis Loryngiæ habens literas sigillis eorum pendentibus munitas et continentes, quod quicquid dictus magister albalistarum ei nunciaverat ex parte regis Franciæ quoad bellum promissum, ipse rex Franciæ servaret conventionem. Igitur rex Edwardus videns dictas literas, statim mane in crastino cepit iter versus Flenymgerie,[3] ubi moram traxit tota die Veneris. Et circa vesperam capti sunt tres exploratores Franci, et sigillatim examinati dixerunt, quod die Sabbati sequenti Philippus rex Franciæ daret eis bellum in campo, et quod hospitatus est ab eis nisi per unam leucam et dimidiam. Die Sabbati rex Edwardus elegit locum suum in campo sibi et suis multum habilem in quo pugnaret; et mane eodem die capti sunt quidam discooperatores Francorum, qui dixerunt Francos in aciebus dispositos in campo, et ad congrediendum cum Anglis paratos. De quo nuncio multum læti facti sunt Anglici, et inmensa voluntate ad pugnandum exhilarati.[4] Et medio tempore quidam de nostris discooperatoribus capti sunt, inter quos miles quidam de Almanya,[5] qui arrayamentum et concupibilem voluntatem Anglorum pugnare desiderantium Francis per ordinem retulit. Qui statim primam aciem se retrahere compulerunt, et fixerunt tentoria et circumcluserunt exercitum cum fossura, et

A message comes from him.

Twys. col. 2575.

Daily movements of the English.

Edward takes up his ground on Saturday.

[1] *qui*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ mittit per literas regi Angliæ.*

[3] Sic MSS.

[4] *exhillarati*, MSS.

[5] *Almania*, MS.

magnas arbores coram eis succiderunt ad tollendum viam Anglicis ne eis accederent. Anglici vero tota die in campo steterunt ad pedes, semper expectantes licet frustra adventum Francorum, in aciebus dispositi. Appropinquante vero vespere videbatur sapientioribus nostris quod satis de die expectaverant inimicos, et salubrius fore per lumen diei locum hospitii quærere. Sicque equos ascenderunt et iter ceperunt versus Davaneys ad unam leucam et dimidiam a rege Franciæ Philippo. Et rex Edwardus misit regi Franciæ nuncians ei quod tota die Dominica sequenti ipsum expectare vellet moram faciens in eodem loco. Quod et fecit. Et alios rumores Anglici non habuerunt de Francis quin quod die Sabbati, quando[1] Angli ceperunt equos suos recedentes de loco suo ad petendum nocturnum hospitium, crediderunt Franci ipsos velle se invadere, propterea cum tanta festinatione ad securiorem locum cum veloci cursu se dederunt, quod una vice in suo transitu per unum mariscum irrecuperabiliter unam magnam partem exercitus perdiderunt, altero super alterum irruente. Die Dominica Anglici ceperunt quendam magnum dominum, dominum de Flanyolys. Die Lunæ sequenti nunciatum est regi Edwardo quod Franci dispersi sunt et recesserunt[2] cum celeri[3] transitu singuli ad propria festinando. Tunc Marchiatus filius imperatoris cum suis sociis et dux Brabantiæ cum suis repedare se disponunt ad propria propter hiemis asperitatem. Et rex Edwardus cum suis rediit ad Andewerp.[4]

A.D. 1339.

Waits all day to no purpose.

Offers battle on the Sunday.

The French had retired.

Murim. 103.

The allies depart, and Edward goes back to Antwerp.

Eodem tempore nunciatum est regi Edwardo de Vasconia quod dominus de la Bret et alii proceres terræ qui se dederant regi Franciæ, jam pro defectu auxilii redic-

Gascon nobles return to their allegiance

[1] *quum*, MS.

[2] Here on the margin of A. only, and scarcely legible, is *Franci redeunt a fugiendo.*

[3] *sceleri*, MSS.

[4] *Andewerk*, MSS.

A.D. 1339. rant[1] ad fidem regis Angliæ, et equitaverant super terras regis Franciæ usque ad portum Thobse. Eodem tempore

Naval league against the English.

omnes galeyæ de confinibus Franciæ cum reliqua classe convenerunt apud Swyne in Flandria, et coram Flandricis ibidem juramentum præstiterunt[2] cum solemni voto adjecto, quod ad propria prius non redirent quam centum naves de Anglicis caperent, et quingentas villas in Anglia incendio conflagrarent; sed deo negotium aliter disponente evanuerunt in cogitationibus suis. Nam die Sabbati proximo post festum sancti Michaelis arripuerunt alta maris itinera, et superveniente tempestatis molestia perpessi sunt immoderata discrimina, confractisque navibus eorum et pro majori parte populis submersis,[3] reliqua pars reagitata est ad partes terræ Flandriæ. Et sciendum quod rex Edwardus non habuit secum in illo tempore de Anglicis nisi mille ducentos de viris armatis, et octingentos viros armatos, et ij. millia sagittarios. Deinde post breve, scilicet rex et regina anno Domini MCCCXXXIX. cum cæteris Anglicis venerunt in Flandriam, ubi propter nobilitatem et audaciam regis ac ferocitatem, locutum inter Anglos et Flandros, mediante quodam vassallo nomine Jacobo de Artyngfeld Flandrico, rex Edwardus[4] cepit arma Franciæ et cum armis suis Angliæ immiscuit.[5] Et statim post hæc Flandri homagium ei fecerunt sicut domino suo recto regi Franciæ, et reddiderunt ei totam terram[6] Flandriæ. Et comes Flandriæ cum cæteris omnibus suis se dedit regi Edwardo. Sicque regina moram fecit in Flandria apud Gaunt, et

Twys. col. 2576.

English troops with king Edward in Flanders.

A.D. 1339.

King Edward quarters the arms of France.

Chron. Ang. 8. Wals. i. 215, 223. Murim. 103. Avesb. 308.

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Dominus le Bret redit ad fidem regis Angliæ.*

[2] *quam centum,* wrongly inserted here in MS.

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Navigium Franciæ submersum.*

[4] Here on both margins is *Rex Edwardus cepit arma Franciæ per assensum Flandrorum.*

[5] The sentence stands thus in both MSS., but though the sense may be gathered, the construction is greatly confused.

[6] *totam terram*] tutam totam, MS.

rex rediit in Angliam cum suis, et celebravit parliamentum suum post Pascha apud Londonias. A.D. 1339.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXL. ubi in subsidium guerræ regis concessa est taxa per ij. annos duratura, scilicet nonus agniculus,[1] nonum vellus, nona garba, de civibus et burgensibus veram nonam de omnibus bonis suis et catallis. Et verisimiliter de mercatoribus forinsecis[2] qui non morantur in civitatibus et burgis; etiam de his qui morantur in forestis et vastis, et omnibus aliis qui non vivunt sub labore agriculturæ quintadecima, solum exceptis mendicis et cottariis et laborariis ad prædictam quintamdecimam non taxatis. Proceres regni rogaverunt regem annuere et stabilire quod deinceps non caperetur de custuma pro uno sacco lanæ nisi dimidia marca; nec de plumbo, stanno, coriis,[3] pellibus, lanis nisi antiqua consuetudo; verumtamen non obstante eorum rogatu, ad instantiam regis ex unanimi consensu parliamenti concesserunt regi de quolibet sacco[4] xl[a] solidos et de quolibet tricentenario numero pellium lanearum xl. solidos et de[5] qualibet lasta coreorum iiij. libras et de aliis mercationibus quæ mare transferebantur[6] secundum suæ[7] mensuram proportionationis, incipiendo ad festum Paschæ in anno regni regis Edwardi iij. præsentis xiiij°. et usque ad festum Pentecostes anni sequentis duratura. Et sic rex concessit quod a prædicto festo et deinceps, nec ipse, nec heredes sui peterent, sumerent nec sumi permitterent de custuma magis quam duas marcas ad saccum lanæ de Angligenis, et de pellibus, coriis et aliis mercationibus secundum antiquam consuetudinem. Et saccus lanæ

A.D. 1340.

Aids for the war.

Wals. i. 224. Murim. 104. Chron. Ang. 9.

Appeal of the nobles on this subject.

Concessions on the king's part.

---

[1] *agnillus*, MS.
[2] *forincesis*, MS.
[3] *correis*, MSS.
[4] Here on both margins is *Rex habet de sacco xl[a] solidos.*
[5] *de*] om. MS.
[6] *transfretabantur*, MS.
[7] *suam*, MSS.

A.D. 1340. Weight fixed for the sack of wool.

continere[1] debet in pondere xxvj. petras, petra vero xiiij. libras. Et quod quilibet Angligena vel alienigena egrediens Angliæ fines in transmarinas partes inveniat bonam et sufficientem securitatem ad custumas solvendas ante eorum egressum, scilicet secum reportare platam argenti vel auri ad valorem duarum marcarum pro quolibet sacco lanæ, et sic pro reliquis prætactis in suo primo reditu. Et eandem platam ferre deberet ad escambium regis, et ibi recipere suos denarios. Pro hac autem concessione rex vicissitudinaliter ad eysiamentum communis populi multa concessit, scilicet delicta forestarum, et catalla felonum, et multa alia quæ in hac carta ibidem de his facta continentur condonando.

Twys. col. 2577. Wals. 1, 224.

Easements granted by the king.

The French king means to hinder Edward's passage to Flanders.

Rex Franciæ medio tempore imaginatus est quomodo regem Edwardum præpediret et refrænaret et a suo proposito veniendi in Flandriam finitus defalcaret. Insuper venire fecit maximam et nobilissimam copiam navium qualem nemo superstes viderat retroactis diebus, et nobiliter instuffavit de viris armatis et albalistis, et applicuerunt in Flandriam in portu de[3] Swyne,[4] ut regem Edwardum adventantem ad uxorem suam reginam tunc degentem apud Gaunt absque ulla impeditione raperent. Super quo idem rex Franciæ Philippus miserat papæ certificans ei, quod rex Angliæ Edwardus mare non transmearet nisi occideretur, vel saltem a suis caperetur; insuper etiam ex alia parte excitavit Scotos surgere et bellare in Anglia, similiter in Flandriam circiter xxx. millia virorum armatorum et xl. millia peditum nobiliter arraiatorum destruere insulam Flandriæ, quia

Sends word to the pope of his intention.

Avesb. 311.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Saccus lanæ continet in pondere xxvi. petras.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ parat se contra regem Angliæ versus Flandriam tendentem.*

[3] *de*] om. MS.

[4] *Swyn*, A.

nobiles Flandriæ juraverant fidelitatem regi Edwardo. A.D. 1339.
Eodem tempore comes de Salusburgh et comes de Earls of Salisbury and Suffolk taken prisoners.
Chron. Ang. 10. Wals. i. 226. Murim. 104. Suthfolc[1] fuerunt custodes Flandriæ nomine regis; qui se propter nimiam strenuitatem suam et audaciæ nobilitatem in tantum se ultro interposuerunt super inimicos, quod pedem cum honore retrahere non poterant; idcirco ambo capti[2] sunt et Parisius abducti, in magnam desolationem regis Angliæ. Interim Flandrenses mandaverunt regi Angliæ quod cum omni celeritate subveniret eis cum forti auxilio; sin autem, oporteret eos se reddere regi Philippo et comiti Flandriæ, et sic caperetur regina Angliæ Philippa cum liberis suis quæ moram traxit[3] illis diebus apud villam de Gaunt. Edward summoned by the Flemings.

Medio tempore Scoti venientes in Angliam victi A.D. 1340, sunt, capti, et plures occisi. Igitur rex Edwardus intellecto proposito regis Franciæ, sub omni festinatione fecit accelerare classem in expeditionem itineris sui versus Flandriam, sicque congregato navigio, rex iter maris arripuit cum Henrico de Borugwas episcopo Lincolniensi, viro utique nobili, et sapienti consilio, eleganti audacia, præpotenti viribus, et retentione virorum[4] fortium perspicuus. Aderat quoque nobilis[5] Henricus juvenis[6] comes Derbeyæ, qui postea factus est primus dux Lancastriæ, comes Northamptoniæ, comes Gloucestriæ, comes Huntyngdoniæ, cum multis magnatibus regni; et in vigilia sancti Johannis Baptistæ circa horam tertiam, die scilicet Veneris, rex Edwardus cum suis applicuit super oras Flandriæ apud Blancburgh, et ibi viderunt omnes
Victory over the Scots.
Wals. i. 227. Murim. 105.
King Edward sails for Flanders.
Murim. 106.
King Edward sights the

[1] *Suthfolke* MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Comes de Salusburgh et comes de Suthfolc capti sunt.*

[3] *traxit*] om. MS.

[4] *et retentione virorum*] om. MS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Hic fuit postea primus dux Lancastriæ.*

[6] *comes Northamptoniæ* inserted here in MS. wrongly.

A.D. 1340. French fleet. naves classis Franciæ in portu de Swyn quiescentes; et rex Edwardus misit dominum Reginaldum de Cobham, dominum Johannem de Cundy, et dominum Stephanum de Laburkyn[1] ad explorandum et videndum de arraiamento dicti navigii: qui per terram equitantes ita prope venerunt ad dictas naves quod de earum apparatu discernere bene ad visum possent, et viderunt ibi præstantiores naves et grandiores quales non prius viderant circiter xix., quarum una Christofora vocabatur præ sua excellentia. Similiter viderunt cc. naves de guerra prope terram in aqua in tribus aciebus distinctas, cum aliis minoribus navibus et bargiis; et in crastino, scilicet in die sancti Johannis Baptistæ, prædictum navigium divertit se de portu de Swyne apud[2] Grongne per acies dispositum, ut supra dictum est. Et rex Edwardus captato opportuno tempore, eodem die sancti Johannis circa horam nonam, cum suo navigio cœpit sulcare maris ardua, tendens versus dictum navigium Franciæ, non veritus eorum ferocitatem aut popularem nimietatem. Commissoque navali bello et hinc inde egregie et fortiter pugnato, tandem Christus concessit victoriam Edwardo regi, sicque Franci protriti sunt quod fugerunt in magnas[3] naves vocatas sanctus Dionisius, et sanctus Georgius, cum domino Hugone Cyret qui fuerat marisarchus navigii, et domino Nicholao Bychet, eodem die facto milite et occiso cum prædicto Hugone. Et, ut dicebatur, interierunt de Francis cum suis complicibus,[4] inimicis nostris, circiter xxv. millia. Et circa mediam noctem sequentem evaserunt xxiij. naves a nostris gentibus et bargiæ de classe Normannorum quæ nondum victæ fuerant a nostris.

Scouts sent out by the king. Chron. Ang. 11.

Twys. col. 2578.

Battle of Sluys. 24th June. Murim. 106. Avesb. 312.

Great victory for the English.

---

[1] *Loburkyn*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Bellum apud Grongne.*

[3] *magnum*, MS.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Franci victi sunt per Anglicos.*

Wals. 1, 228, 230. Murim. 107. Chron. Ang. 12.

Interea rex Edwardus cum Flandricis et toto exercitu suo divertit se ad villam[1] de Turneye, et viriliter eam obsedit. Et tamdiu in obsidione laboravit quod in magnam penuriam omnes inhabitantes villam præ defectu victualium quasi penitus adduxit. Et Philippus rex Franciæ cum exercitu suo approximavit quasi per iiij. leucas ab obsidione, et cum rex Edwardus cum suis se disponeret ad pugnam cum rege Franciæ et exercitu suo, venit comitissa[2] Hunaldiæ ad regem Angliæ genu flexo rogans quatinus vellet ad sui instantiam sustinere tractatum de concordia et pace inter ipsum et regem Franciæ. Sed durum erat revocare animum ejus ab inceptis ad prætacta. Verumtamen quia plenam fiduciam erga ducem Brabantiæ qui se fidelem amicum regi Edwardo finxerat eo tenus non gerebat, cum idem dux quasi medius staret inclinatus ad partem Francorum, ac etiam non esset ei ministratum de pecunia de communibus regni Angliæ illi hactenus concessa, præ defectu ministrorum suorum in[3] sua absentia, tandem cum magna difficultate concessit[6] treugas usque ad festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ proximo sequens sub forma[4] quæ sequitur.

A.D. 1340. Siege of Tournay.

A treaty concluded at the instance of the Countess of Hainault.

King Edward badly supplied from England.

Murim. 115. Avesb. 317.

A touz ceux que cestez presentez lettres verront oue oyerount John par la grace de Dieu roy de Beawme et conte de Lexenburgh, Adulf eveske de Leges, Roynels duc de Loreyne, Annis conte de Sauveie, John conte de Ermyngnat saluz. Savoire facoms a touz que lez trewes sont donez et outroyez entre lez halx princes et puyssances lez roys de France et de Engleterre pur eous et lour amys totez par assent dez lez haltez hommez et puissancez le duc de Brabane, le duc de Gelure, le marchis de Juler, e my sire Johan de Henaude, sir de Beawmont, dune parte, et

Terms of the truce.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Edwardus obsedit villam de Turneye.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Comitissa Hunaldiæ tractat de pace.*

[3] Here on both margins is *Rex Edwardus concedit trewgas.*

[4] In Avesbury the whole document is given with some variations of language.

A.D. 1340. nous et chescune desuz dys daltre parte par pouare a nous et a eoux desouth nomez done par lez dys roys, issint que nous attroiames affiantasmes par noz fors de mayne et et de par les deux roys lour amys et le lour allyes queux qils soyent chescune de sa partie de jour de huye dekes la nativite seynt Johan la Baptistre procheyne envenant et le jour tote lendemayne jeskes a solayl levant en ceste manere, cest assavoyre,

Primerment que durant la dyte trewe nule mauvealte ne mespressure se face dun parte ne de aultre en prejudice de dit trewe et respyte.

Ensy lez ditz seigniours lours aherdancz coadjutours et lours allyez queux qils soyent demouront en tiele possession et seysyne qils soyent al dit jour de huye dez touz lez bienz, terrez et possessiones qils teignent et ount conquis en quecunque manere que se soyt lez trewes durantz. Twys. col. 2579.

Ensy accorde est que lez trewes duranz lez ditz seigniours lours coadjutors et allyez purront aler saufement del un pays en lautre et tous marchantz ove touz lour marchandes et tote manere de lours gentz ove lours biens et purvyancez tant par terre come par mere et par ewe franchement come ils soleynt venir a temps des anauntiers de diz royz en payant le passage de viage au coustomes auncienement horpris lez bayns qe sount bayns des diz realmes oue ascune de eux pur altre cause que pur la guerre de diz roys. Mes lez barons de Gascoyne, de la duche de Gyenne, et altres parsonez de Gascoyne, et de la dite duchee que sont bannys ou altres soyent compris en lez diz trewes, et purront aler et venir del une pays en lautre durantz lez ditez trewez.

Ensy accorde est qe lez deux rois ne procuront ne ferront procurer par eaux ne par altrez qe nul novealte ne grevance se facent par leglyse de Rome oue par altres de seint eglyse queux qils soyent sur ascunez dez diz roys, coadjutours oue alliez, ne sour lour terrez oue de lours sugettez pur laccacion de la dit guerre, oue par altre cause, ne pur servycez qe lez ditz alliez oue coadjutours eyent faitez al ditz rois oue a ascune de yceux. Et si nostre seint piere la pape oue altre le voet faire, lez deux roys lours destourbront a lour pouare sanz male engyne lez ditz trewez endurantz.

Ensy maintenant soient criez en lez deux citees touz qe lez savoire purront oue oyront serront tenuz de lez tenyr et garder. A.D. 1340.

Ensy accorde est qe dedeinz les vynt jours, de acomencer le jour de huy, chescune dez roys lez fra crier en Gascoyne, en la duche Dacquitaigne, en la terre qils tiegnent, et issi soient sceux et conuz.

Ensy accorde est qe si par ascune dez roys, par lour gentz, oue lours alliez, oue coadjutours ascunes soient misez en Gascoyne, en la duche Dacquitaine oue en altres yles de mier, en Gerneseye, et en Geneseye[1] oue ayllours, lez segez se leverount si tost come lez trewes vendront a lour conysance. Et quatrusze persones, cest assavoyre seept par chescune de ditz vyles entront en viles, chasteles oue forcelettes oue lez sieges serront, et verront lez garnisours tanuz dez gentz come dez vitailles qe deenz serront al fyn qe le jour de ceo trewes faile, issi qe ditz viles chasteaux oue forcelettes qe serront assigneez demorrent et soyent myses en tiele nombre et quantite dez vyuers e dez personnes come ils serront trovez par lez ditez quatorse[2] personez.

Ensi est accorde qe lez bannys et futifs del pais du Flandrez qe ont este de la partye le roye de France deinz le realme et son piere en affray de luy serront forfetz touz cez biens qil avera en Flandrez.[3]

Ensi accorde est qe durantz lez ditez trewees touz les prisones pris en cest guerre serront relessez de lour prisons a revenire en y ceoles sour lours foith et sermentz, si ensi ne fuist qils fusent rechatez devant la date dez cestez presentez trewez. Sauve ensi qe lez ditez prisones renent pur lours foitz recreanncer de revenyr en lour prisone, lez ditz trewes faylance, et sil avynt qe ascunez dez prisonez fuist rebell de venir in lour prisone, le sir de Southfolc luy constreynderont de venir al prisone. Ensi qe lez leves qels qils soient faitz devant lez ditez trewes en temps de guerre tut soyent ils dez benez espirituels oue altrement demourent sanz faire restitucion, la trewe durant.

Twys. col. 2580.

Ensy accorde est qe une trewe se pregne meyntenant entre lez Engleys et lez Escozs lours aerdauncz et allyez tanqe a la feste seint Johan susdite. Et qe certeynes personez soyent deputeez par lez ditz parties destre al certeine

---

[1] *Gerseye*, Avesb.

[2] *quatrusze*, A.

[3] Here Avesb. has an additional clause.

A.D. 1340. jour sour lez marches Dengleterre et dez Scozse, pur lez trewes affermer, issint qe durant la trewe ils ne serront enforcez en nule manere par lez Fraunceys.

Ensy accorde est qe cestez trewes serront notyfies en Engleterre et en Escoce deinz lez xxvj. jour apres la date dez cestez lettres.

Ensy accorde est qe cestez trewes soyent compris ly Espaynol, ly Chastelyne, ly Genevoyse, le Provyncial, lesveke du chapitre de Caumbreye, luy chastels en Cannbresyne, et auxi ly sire de la Brette, le vysconte de Fronsake, Gascon de Lyle, et le seigniour de Triculeonn,[1] Johan de Vernyll, [et] [2] le seigniour de Rye.

Peace between the emperor and the French king.

Eodem tempore facta est concordia inter imperatorem [3] et regem Franciæ; quam ob rem imperator misit regi Angliæ petens ab eo et rogans quatinus faceret sibi sufficientem commissionem cum plenaria potestate inire concordiam inter ipsum et regem Franciæ: quod rex Edwardus renuens rescripsit imperatori, dicens, se nolle jus suum, tanta efficacia veracis claritatis effulgens, sub dubio alienæ arbitrationis supponere; pluraque imperatori de conventionibus superfactis et effractis opposuit. Wals. i. 253.

David Bruce enters England.

Eodem tempore David le Bruz cum xl. mille Scotorum intravit[4] in Angliam prope Novum castrum et etiam Dunelmum, et exercuerunt multa mala, et in regressu eorum perdiderunt sex milites et xj. alios valentes.

A.D. 1341. The emperor revokes Edward's power as his vicar.

Eodem tempore Imperator revocavit potestatem quam contulerat regi Angliæ ut esset vicarius imperatoris, prout superius patet anno Domini MCCCXXXVIII. Wals. i. 247.

Great sickness in England.

In æstate scilicet anno gratiæ MCCCXL. accidit quædam execrabilis et enormis infirmitas in Anglia quasi communis, et præcipue in comitatu Leycestriæ adeo quod durante passione homines emiserunt vocem

---

[1] *Tieban*, Avesb.

[2] [*et*] from Avesb.

[3] Here on both margins is *Rex Franciæ concordatus est cum imperatore.*

[4] Here on both margins is *Scoti intrant in Angliam.*

latrabilem acsi esset latratus[1] canum; et fuit quasi intollerabilis pœna durante passione. Exinde fuit magna pestilentia hominum. Rex Edwardus transivit in Scotiam circa festum sancti Andreæ, et celebravit natale Domini apud Meurose; et Henricus nobilis comes Derbeyæ apud Rokesburgh. Interea venit Willelmus Duglas cum tribus aliis Scotis militibus ad hastiludiandum[2] sub foro guerræ cum comite[3] Henrico prædicto et suis. Qui letali vulnere attriti in Scotiam sine honore redierunt. Interim capta est treuga inter regem Angliæ et regem Scotiæ. Post treugam captam statim venerunt xij. optimi milites de Scotia electi ad hastiludiandum apud Berwicum.[4] Quorum duo occisi sunt, et similiter unus miles comitis Derbeyæ, Johannes Twyforde nomine. Comes Derbeyæ ita gratiose in omnibus operibus humanitatis se gerebat, quod omnes de eo audientes gloriam et honorem deferebant.[5] Anno isto MCCCXLII.[6] papa Benedictus edidit novas constitutiones de statu religiosorum, scilicet canonicorum regularium et monachorum; quas constitutiones Benedictinas vocant.

A.D. 1341.

King Edward in Scotland.

Murim. 123.

Truce between England and Scotland.

A.D. 1342.

Twys. col. 2581.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXLII. data est regi decima ecclesiæ. Mortuus est papa Benedictus. Robertus Bruz rediit in Scotiam, qui subductus fuerat in Franciam. Papa Clemens papa creatus est, qui fuerat episcopus Rotomagensis.

A.D. 1342.

Death of Pope Benedict XII.

Murim, 122, 124. Wals. 1, 250. Chron. Ang. 13.

Eodem anno rex Edwardus misit Walterum de Moun in Britanniam cum centum xx. armatis et mille sagittariis in auxilium Britonum contra regem Franciæ qui eos oppresserat. Cumque dictus Walterus venisset in Britanniam, audivit quod dominus de Lyons, qui post ducem Britanniæ major extiterat totius terræ, manebat in quodam forciletto parvo, nomine

Sir Walter Manny in Britanny.

Murim. 125.

---

[1] Here on both margins is *Homines latrant ut canes.*

[2] *hastyludyandum*, A.

[3] *comite*] milite, MS.

[4] *Berwycum*, A.

[5] *defferebant*, MSS.

[6] This date is added on the margin in A.

A.D. 1342. Tresgalentenk, et distat a villa de Brest quasi per xxiiij. leucas. Idemque Walterus equitavit tota nocte et circa solis ortum applicuit cum suis ante dictum forcilettum, quasi omnibus inibi in lecto dormientibus præter duos vel tres; et fuerunt l. viri armati in prædicto forciletto. Statimque Anglici insultum fecerunt, et alii se fortiter defenderunt et ignem ad portam miserunt; et cum una porta combusta esset, quidam Anglici introgressi per medium ignis in castrum, eos omnes bene armatos cum elegantibus dextrariis bene coopertis [ceperunt,[1]] qui capere proponebant iter per medium ignis opprimere nostros qui pedibus laborabant sub conculcatione pedum equorum suorum. Interim dictus Walterus cum cæteris suis intravit et cepit prædictum dominum de Lyons, et fratrem ejus, et plures milites, et xxx. armatos viros cum prædicto loco. Interim marescallus Franciæ et Carolus de Bloys, qui se ducem Britanniæ nominavit, cum cccc.[2] viris armatis obviam se dederunt Anglicis et in fugam attriti sunt. Et in toto isto itinere et aliis multis quæ medio tempore contigerunt, quæ propter brevitatem[3] reticentur, Anglici non perdiderunt nisi duos sagittarios et unum pagettum. Isti fuerunt capti in dicto forciletto, dominus Henricus de Lyons, dominus de Lyons, dominus Alardus frater ejus, dominus Oliverus consanguineus, dominus Eymerus de Pownte, dominus Eymerus de Charnelles,[4] dominus Eymerus de Plontplanttoyt, dominus Radulfus de Rosemadek, dominus Johannes de Joye, et multi armigeri et alii pedestres. Quorum vij. nobiliores prædictus Walterus[5] Moun secum duxit in Angliam, et posuit in turri Londoniensi custodiendos.

His pursuit of the lord of Lyons.

Victory of the English.

English losses and French prisoners.

---

[1] *ceperunt* om. MSS.

[2] *ccc* MS.

[3] *non* wrongly added in MS. It is written above the line in A.

[4] *dominus Eymerus . . . . Rosemadek*] om. MS.

[5] *Radulfus* in both MSS., but *Walterus* must be intended.

Eodem anno orta est discordia in Scotia inter David regem, qui se regem præfecerat, et Johannem de Orgayle et plures alios de regno. Sed rex David se aptavit eorum voluntati, quod si non fecisset regnum perdidisset. Eodem anno ordinati sunt custodes de marchia Scotiæ, comes de Arundell et comes de Huntyngdon, et capta est treuga per annum duratura. A.D. 1342. Differences in Scotland.

Post festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ missi sunt in Britanniam mandato regis comes Northamptoniæ, comes de Artoys, comes de Devenschyre ly Courteneye, dominus Radulfus de Stafforde, qui postea factus est comes Staffordiæ, senescallus regis, dominus Johannes Darcy camerarius regis, dominus Willelmus de Gaddesby clericus regis, cum multis aliis magnatibus; et obsederunt quandam villam cum castro; et nunciatum est ei quod dominus Carolus[1] de Bloys cum xx. mille viris appropinquaret ad removendum obsidionem. Et videns paucitatem Anglicorum reliquit obsidionem, et tota obscura nocte dedit se in occursum inimicorum suorum. Et mane ceperunt locum suum quasi per unam leucam ab inimicis prope unum boscum, et foderunt foveas et fossas circa eos, et cooperuerunt eas de feno et herbagio; et post solis ortum paraverunt se ad bellum. Et inimici se paraverunt in tres acies divisas. In quarum prima fuit dominus Galfridus Charnys cum multis galletis; qui statim victi sunt ab Anglicis et missi in fugam; et cæteri inimici in pace steterunt consulendo quid facere vellent. Tandem videntes Anglicorum paucitatem et suorum multitudinem, ferocitate animi ducti, opprimere Angliæ gentes moliti sunt; et equorum suorum validorum pedibus conculcare volentes capitose irruerunt in eos, sed antris decepti obturatis, ut prædictum est, ceciderunt quilibet super alium in foveis abinvicem confusi. Et

Another expedition into Britanny.

Twys. col. 2582.

Charles of Blois approaches to battle.

The English go to meet him.

Attack of the French.

Murim. 129.

[1] *de*] om. MS.

A.D. 1342. Many Frenchmen captured.

prædictus dominus Galfridus Charnys captus est cum multis valentibus. Et occisi sunt ibidem l. milites cum magna multitudine ejusdem populi. Anglici autem absque mora se receperunt in quendam boscum prope adjacentem, propter metum multitudinis inimicorum, qui undique catervatim accurrebant, et Anglici ibidem aliquamdiu obsessi magnam penuriam[1] præ defectu victualium sustinebant. Cumque prædicta ad aures regis Edwardi pervenissent, statim se misit in mare cum suis apud Portusmewe, et applicuit apud portum[2] de Breste in Britannia ante festum omnium Sanctorum.

King Edward comes into Britanny.

Murim. 128.

Aids granted by the clergy.

Medio tempore archiepiscopus Cantuariensis celebravit concilium[3] cum clero apud Londonias, in quo concessa est regi una[4] decima de spiritualibus; in quo tempore archiepiscopus Eboracensis et episcopus Lincolniensis venerunt de curia Romana consecrati a papa. Comes de Artoys mortuus est de infirmitate antequam rex applicuisset apud Breste. Dominus Walterus de Mawne venit ad regem apud Breste, ducens secum episcopum de Cornewayle. Et prædictus episcopus fecit fidelitatem regi Edwardo die Lunæ sequenti. Recepit se rex Edwardus in[5] quodam manerio ducis Britanniæ situato infra parcum quendam ad spatium xv. leucarum muro lapideo in circuitu munitum et ibi moram traxit per[6] dies, feris et damis pro se et suis abundanter[7] affluens. Deinde rex misit dominum Walter Mawne, dominum Johannem de Strivelyne, dominum Willelmum de Warenna filium, et alios ad explorandum villam

A.D. 1343. King Edward rests for a time.

He sends spies to Vannes.

---

[1] *penuariam* MS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Rex tendit in Britanniam.*

[3] *consilium* MSS. as always.

[4] In a somewhat later hand on margin of MS. is *una decima a clero concessa.*

[5] *in*, om. MS.

[6] There is no number in MS., and the place where it may have been in A. has perished by the fire.

[7] *habundanter*, MSS.

de Vanys si esset captabilis per insultum; qui re- A.D. 1343.
deuntes referebant regi, dictam villam esse valde habilem et multum dispositam ad capiendum per insultum. Tunc rex disposuit se mittere insultum Resolves to attack Vannes.
ad villam de Vanys; et eodem tempore comes de
Murim. 129. Northampton fecit insultum ad villam de Rowan
Avesb. 340. bene muratam, cives vero ejusdem villæ cum vidissent Rohan taken,
ejus fortitudinem et se ei resistere non posse ullatenus crederent, in fugam se ex adverso direxerunt; et sic cepit villam, et spoliatam dedit flammæ et incendio; et idem comes cepit aliam villam quæ[1] vocatur Pounteneye; quæ ambæ villæ fuerunt vicecomitis de Rowan.[2] Eodem tempore reddita sunt regi duo castella fortissima, videlicet Franc. et Richeperone,[3] et duæ villæ, videlicet Plaronelle et Malegrayte. Eodem tempore fuit dominus Lodowicus de Peyters gardianus in villa de Vanys habens secum ccc. Et rex Edwardus disposuit se insultum dare ad prædictam
Twys. col. 2583. villam; et cum præparasset machinas et cætera quæ in tanto negotio requirebantur, et ipse cum suis præsto esset insultum facere ad villam de Vanys, statim Attack on Vannes prepared, but stopped by mediation.
supervenere duo cardinales missi a latere papæ, et
Mur. 129. tantam instantiam supplicando fecerunt penes regem Edwardum, quod concessit eis treugas[4] triennales, scilicet inter reges Angliæ, Franciæ, et Scotiæ. Et exinde multi Angligenæ et Francigenæ transierunt ad Spruciam ad bellum campestre assignatum die Parasceues proximo sequenti inter regem Hispaniæ et paganos. Rex Edwardus redit in Angliam et patie- King Edward returns to England.
batur maris fluctus per quinque septimanas quasi tempestatibus inevasibilibus circumpulsus, adeo quod
Murim. 135. Avesb. 352. solum mortis metas sibi et suis imminere repentino fine præstolabatur, et multos perdidit de populo suo.

[1] *quæ . . . . fuerunt*] om. MS but the words are inserted after the next sentence.

[2] *Rowham*, MSS.

[3] Perhaps *Rochebernard* is intended.

[4] Here on the margin of A. only is *Trewga triennalis inter regem Angliæ et Franciæ.*

A.D. 1343. He is tempest-tossed.

Et agitatus[1] est super maritima Hispaniæ, ibique classis Hispaniensis occurrit obviam regi Edwardo ad rapiendum eum, ignorans quis esset; sed viso ejus vexillo submiserunt se in ejus gratiam; et hoc evenit super fluvium de Unglancia. Tandem vero per dei gratiam per multa pericula et innumera damna populi sui, armorum atque victualium, venit in Angliam, et celebravit parliamentum[2] apud Londonias xx.° die post Pascham proximo sequentem. Eodem anno xv.° die Februarii quasi in meridie fuit terræ motus magnus[3] per universas plagas regni.

Return of the Earl of Derby from Spain to England.

Cum nobilis Henricus comes Derbeyæ moram traxisset super obsidione de Calgeserz, et bis pugnasset cum paganis et strenuissime se haberet, in Angliam rediit anno gratiæ MCCCXLIII. circa festum omnium Sanctorum, et statim mittitur in Scotiam pro treuga firmanda inter Anglos et Scotos. Chron. Ang. 16.

A.D. 1343.

Nobles of Britanny executed by the French king.

Eodem anno rex Franciæ misit in Britanniam et magnates terræ, qui adhæserant regi Angliæ in sua guerra et ipsum foverant, fecit distrahi et suspendi, videlicet dominum de Clyssones et alios plures. Eodem anno papa[4] institit[5] habere de provincia Cantuariensi mille marcas pro sustentatione unius cardinalis, et similem summam de provincia Eboracensi, in grave præjudicium et oppressionem totius regni. Unde de communi consilio regni missum est papæ, gentem Anglicanam deinceps nolle talia onera quoquomodo de curia Romana subire; et si quis aliquod beneficium ecclesiasticum auctoritate curiæ Romanæ possideret in regno Angliæ, ad beneficium suum repedaret et super eo viveret, cujuscunque conditionis esset vel gradus, nec thesauros regni extra mare asportaret in depaupera- Wals. i. 255.

King Edward forbids papal provisions.

---

[1] Here on both margins is *Rex in periculo in mari in redaundo.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex tenuit parliamentum apud Londonias.*

[3] *magnas*, MS.

[4] Here on both margins is *Papa petit mille marcarum pro sustentatione ii. cardinalium.*

[5] *instituit*, MS.

tionem, sed ubi bona ecclesiæ perciperet ibidem eadem expenderet; super quo rex misit in singulos comitatus regni, ne quis ab eo tempore et deinceps admitteretur per bullam ad aliquod beneficium, nec reciperetur sine licentia speciali regis. Insuper magnates et proceres regni Angliæ oblocuti sunt et minati, quod si papa conferret beneficia ecclesiæ talibus provisoribus, sive indigenis, sive alienigenis, quæ quidem beneficia antecessores sui contulerant viris religiosis et ecclesiasticis in eleemosynam ut pro ipsis et animabus suis orarent, ipsi ea beneficia in manus proprias repeterent sicuti antecessores habuerant, et de eis ad placitum disponerent. Unde papa cum curia multum sibi timuit de tali responsione; et quædam alia grandia quæ in regno Angliæ attemptare proposuerat, absque detentione prætermisit, verumtamen regem Franciæ in quantum potuit, prout dictum est, secreto tamen modo, fovebat et auxiliatus est.

A.D. 1343.

Avesb. 352. Chron. Ang. 14.

The nobles join in the protest.

The Pope favours the French king.

Twys. col. 2584.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXLIIII. nobilis Henricus comes Derbeyæ transivit in Franciam, et comes de Arundell cum eo. Eo tempore dominus Karolus de Bloys venit cum fortitudine grandi in Britanniam, et cepit dominum Johannem de Hardeshill, et duxit eum Parisius: et occisus est ibidem filius ejus Johannes, et multi de sagittariis nostris ibidem perierunt. In hebdomada Paschali occisus est Johannes de Alythewerk[1] clericus apud Leycestriam in domo propria per Emmam uxorem suam et famulum suum, et alios de eorum conventione, et portatus est et positus sub abbathia super ripam Sore, et dicta Emma combusta est, et famulus suspensus, et cæteri evaserunt. In festo sanctorum Prothasii et Gervasii grandinis abundantia.[2] Rex Edwardus tenuit parliamentum apud Londonias, in quo concessæ sunt duæ quintadecimæ de communibus, et de civitatibus de decimis, et de burgis, ad levandum

A.D. 1344.

Charles of Blois invades Britanny.

Murder of a clerk at Leicester.

[1] *Alythewerl*, A.

[2] *habundantia*, MSS.

A.D. 1344. Aids granted to king Edward by Parliament.

modo simili quo ultima decima levata fuit, et solvendum ad duos annos, videlicet ad festa omnium Sanctorum et Paschatis pro primo anno, et in casu quod rex transeat mare, ad solvendum quintas decimas et decimas ad eosdem terminos in secundo anno, et non aliter; ita quod pecunia levata sit expensa ad profectum regni per avisiamentum procerum certorum ad hoc parliamentum assignatorum, et quod fortitudo virorum bellatorum ultra Trentam sit missa in auxilium contra Scotos.

A.D. 1344. A new coinage.

Eodem tempore nobile,[1] et obolus, et ferthing[2] de auro cœperunt florere in regno; unde in eodem parliamento ordinatum est quod nullus de communibus arctaretur capere de nova moneta auri, quod rex ordinaverat de novo transire per medium, in quacumque solutione, citra solutionem et summam xx. solidorum. Et quod moneta auri et argenti fiat consimili modo, et forma, et pondere apud Eboracum et alias civitates ubi solet fieri, sicut ad turrim Londoniensem; et quod[3] excambium monetæ esset in magnis civitatibus et villis.

Chron. Ang. 16. Murim. 242. Wals. i. 262.

Protection for the Scotch marches.

Rex tenuit concilium[4] apud Londonias circa festum sancti Laurencii, ubi ordinavit vi^{c} viros armatos et ij. millia sagittarios ire in Scotiam cum Edwardo de Baliolo ad tuitionem marchiæ pro Scotis. Ad festum sancti Andreæ fuerunt hastiludia apud Leycestriam[5] per Henricum comitem Derbeyæ pro maritagio filiæ suæ Matildæ quam duxit[6] in uxorem. Nec prætereundum arbitror quod[7] Gylbertus comes Gloucestriæ, qui moriebatur apud bellum de Strivelyn, habuit tres filias hereditatem patris consequentes, quarum primam Theobaldus de Verdon duxit in uxorem. Post cujus mortem comes de Olnestre duxit eandem; de qua

Family of Gilbert earl of Gloucester.

[1] Here on margin of both MSS. is *Moneta auri oritur.*

[2] *ferthinge* A.

[3] *quod*] om. in MS.

[4] *consilium*] MSS. as usual.

[5] On margin of A. only is *Hastiludia apud Leycestriam.*

[6] No husband's name is given in either MS. He was William, duke of Zealand.

[7] *quod*] quia, MS.

genuit Edmundum de Olnestre, qui postea duxit uxorem filiam comitis Lancastriæ, Isabellam nomine, [de qua][1] genuit unam filiam quam Leonellus filius regis Edwardi duxit in uxorem. Secundam filiam Hugo le Despenser duxit in uxorem. Tertia filia data est domino Petro de Gavyrston, et post ejus mortem Hugo de Audeleye accepit eam uxorem, qui postea factus est comes Gloucestriæ, de qua genuit unam filiam postea conjugatam baroni de Stafforde, qui genuit ex ea unum filium qui desponsavit comitissam de Arundell. A.D. 1344.

In Quadragesima sequenti papa[2] misit regi Angliæ duos episcopos, præcipiens ei dimittere arma Franciæ, et sustineret alienigenas, videlicet religiosos viros præbendarios et provisores promotos a curia Romana, pacifice gaudere suis beneficiis, nec eos quoquo modo perturbaret qui promoti fuerant per sedem apostolicam et magnates regni Angliæ; et petiit a rege mirabilem summam pecuniæ de regno Angliæ, ut dicebat, curiæ Romanæ ab antiquo debitam. Quibus sub brevitate responsum est, et redierunt ad propria. Post Pascha dux Britanniæ evasit de carcere regis Franciæ, et venit in Angliam ad regem. Circa festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ idem dux Britanniæ et comes Northamptoniæ, et comes Oxoniæ cum multis aliis transierunt in Britanniam. Similiter comes Derbeyæ[3] Henricus, et comes de Penbroke,[4] cum pluribus aliis eodem tempore perrexerunt in Vasconiam, et post festum sancti Michaelis Johannes de Monfort dux Britanniæ obiit in Britannia. Post hæc Henricus comes Derbeyæ cœpit congregare populum in Vasconiam et fecit xl. milites Anglicos et Vasconicos, et vastavit patrias, et cepit villas, civitates et castella ad

Papal message concerning provisors, and laying aside the arms of France.

Twys. col. 2585.

A.D. 1345.

Expedition to Britanny,

Murim. 164, 189. Wals. i. 265.

and to Gascony,

Chron. Angl. 19. Avesb. 355.

---

[1] qui in both MSS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Papa mittit regi Angliæ dimittere arma Franciæ.*

[3] *Derbeiæ* MS. and so generally.

[4] *Penbrok* MS.

A.D. 1345. summam lij. Cepit etiam bonam villam[1] de Brigge-
Success of the earl of Derby in Gascony. rake per vim, et infinita preciosa quæ in ea erant; dicebatur namque ipsum de dicta villa unam pipam[2] plenam auro præter alios innumeros thesauros triumphaliter reportasse; cepit etiam per fortitudinem villam et castellum de Langhon. Deinde sequebatur comitem de Armenak usque ad villam de Paragos, sed comes recepit se in castello, et sic evasit. Eodem tempore comes Hunaldiæ, cum duobus aliis comitibus et multitudine populi occisus est in Frigelande. Henricus comes Derbeyæ cum paucis viris perrexit ad villam de Alberoche, ubi invenit xxx. millia Francorum quos debellavit, et per dei gratiam devicit, et in ipsa victoria cepit iij. comites, et iij. barones, vij. vicecomites, et xij. baronettos. Eodem anno venerunt rumores ad comitem de morte[3] patris sui qui apud Leycestriam occubuit.

Murim, 189, 248. Avesb. 356. Chron. Ang. 19.

Murim, 188, 244.

Murim. 190, 249. Avesb. 356.

Death of Henry earl of Lancaster.

A.D. 1346. Anno gratiæ MCCCXLVI. rex Edwardus multavit omnes alienigenas, præbendarios, rectores, vicarios, religiosos, et sumpsit de quolibet secundum quod possent dare, et secundum suum statutum. Eodem anno post Pascha rex habuit unam decimam de clero. Eodem tempore rex Edwardus fecit congregare frumentum, brasium, avenas, bacones, et carnes bovinas salsas, vina, equos, et alia guerræ necessaria ad magnam summam.

Fines levied on foreign clergy.

War supplies.

King Edward crosses to Normandy. Et circa translationem sancti Thomæ rex Edwardus transfretavit in Normanniam cum mille c. magnis navibus et v^{c} minoribus navibus. Medio tempore orta est magna discordia inter magnates Scotiæ, unde nostri boriales cum magna audacia intraverunt in Scotiam circiter xv. millia hominum, et cito post

Wals. i. 267.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Henricus comes Derbeyæ cepit Briggerak.*

[2] *pilam* MS.

[3] Here on both margins is *Comes Lancastriæ obiit.*

dominus de Percy, et dominus de[1] Nevyll, et alii mag- A.D. 1346.
nates patriæ borialis ceperunt treugas usque ad festum Troubles in Scotland.
sancti Michaelis. Scoti vero inde sumentes audaciam
Murim. 199. Chron. Ang. 21. Avesb. 357. intraverunt per partes Carliol, et devastaverunt patriam, et miserunt in ignem et flammam ubique in circuitu. Rex Edwardus applicuit in Normanniam in portu de Hogges, videlicet xx° anno regni sui, ubi invenit xxx. magnas naves et galeas, quas cepit, King Edward lands at La Hougue,
et villas de Hogges et Barflete[2] cepit, et de eis fecit quod voluit. Xij° die Julii arripuit iter suum versus Camodum,[3] et transivit per bonas villas Valoyens, Carantan, sancti Leonis, et plures alias passes Valogne, Carentan, and St. Lo.
Murim. 212, 213, 245. villas. Et in Camodo erant comes de Eawe constabularius Franciæ, Camerarius le Tankurvyll, et
Avesb.[4] 358. multitudo magna militum et virorum armatorum, civium et compatriotarum, qui disposuerant[5] se tenuisse civitatem contra regem Edwardum, sed quando vide-
Twys. col. 2586. runt regem cum exercitu suo coram civitate, retraxerunt se ultra unum pontem qui est quasi in medio civitatis, et ibidem se tenuerunt; et cum appropinquarent prope civitatem sagittarii nostri insultum eis Marches on Caen.
fecerunt per terram, et medio tempore quidam de armatis nostris hæc videntes accesserunt ad eos, et sic fortem insultum inimicis ingesserunt, et pontem de eis adquisierunt. Nam rex credens nullos armatos cum sagittariis esse, et sic infirmiores tantum onus subire, misit comitem Warwiche,[6] ad revocandum sagittarios ne detrimentum paterentur. Qui inveniens eos agiliter King Edward enters Caen.
oppugnantes civitatem, et ipse se immiscuit eis, et
Murim. 214. viriliter pugnavit ad barrea cum eis; tandem Angli

---

[1] *de*] le, A.

[2] *Harflete*, A.; *Barfleur* is the place meant.

[3] *Camodum*. This orthography is persistent in both MSS.

[4] In Avesbury the whole story of the campaign is told in a letter of Michael Northburgh.

[5] *disponsaverant*, MS.

[6] *Warchiæ*, A.

A.D. 1346. pontem adepti super eos, intraverunt[1] villam Camodi, et victoriam de eis obtinentes prædati sunt civitatem ad placitum. Antedictus constabularius Franciæ reddidit se domino Thomæ de Holande cum militibus suis, et cæteris suis viris armatis in grandi numero.

Number of prisoners. Camerarius de Tankerwyll captus est per quendam militem principis Walliæ Edwardi filii dicti Edwardi regis. Capti sunt ibidem et mortui centum milites, et de viris armatis plures. De burgensibus vero, et communibus, ac plebeis capti sunt et mortui circiter v. millia absque detrimento Anglorum, excepto uno valetto scutifero, qui vulneratus erat ibidem et post biduum obiit. Eodem anno, modico ante ista facta orta est gravis discordia inter episcopum de Legys[2] et capitulum et communes patriæ; capta est dies amoris inter eos cum magna fortitudine ex utraque parte; sed orta lite inter partes, cœperunt fortiter pugnare, sed remansit victoria cum capellano[3] et communibus; et occisi sunt ex parte episcopi xl. millia virorum. Inter quos occisus est unus filius regis Boemiæ,[4] unus de filiis ducis Brabantiæ, et frater ducis bastardus, dominusque de Faukemont, et v. millia de viris quos rex Franciæ miserat in auxilium episcopi. Murim. 203.

Disorders in Liege.

The Flemings enter France, having first made accord with Terouanne and St. Omer. Primo die Augusti Flandrenses intraverunt[5] in Franciam in auxilium regis Edwardi, cum lx. millibus virorum armatorum, sed ante eorum introitum fecerunt concordiam cum bonis villis Turonicæ et sancti Omeri ne damnum Flandris inferrent,[6] nec Flandrenses illis villis, et sic arripientes iter fecerunt mala quæ potuerunt. Capitanios habuerunt Anglicos assignatos, scilicet dominum

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Camodum* (corrected in a later hand into *Cadomum*) *capitur per regem Edwardum.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Discordia inter Episcopum de Legys et capitulum et communes patriæ.*

[3] *capellano*] perhaps we should read *capitulo.*

[4] *Boenniæ*, MSS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Flandrenses intrant in Franciam in auxilium regis Angliæ.*

[6] *inferrent*] om. A.

Hugonem[1] Hastyngys, dominum Johannem Moleynes, A.D. 1346.
Murim. 205. dominum Johannem Mautravers. Comes Huntingdoniæ duxit[2] captivos quos ceperant[3] apud Camodum[4] in Angliam, positique sunt apud turrim Londoniensem et in aliis locis regni sub secura custodia, ad numerum ccc. virorum et amplius. Nec prætereundum est quod nisi rex Edwardus transfretasset et meliorem expeditionem in[5] remotis obtinuisset, Franci proposuerant[6] in Angliam pervenisse, et parati erant adventasse ad summam iiij. millia virorum armatorum, v.[7] millia peditum, et v. mille albalistarum, quorum capitaneus Johannes Francus vocatus, scilicet filius regis Philippi de Valoys, qui ad hoc deputatus fuerat per parliamentum Franciæ, ac etiam nomen reportasse conquestoris. Similiter ordinatum est in eodem parliamento, quod donaret terras Angliæ adquirendas magnatibus qui ituri erant cum eo, cuilibet secundum statum suum; et sic terras Angliæ obfirmasse Francigenis[8] imperpetuum. Sed deus incussit eis tantum[9] tremorem per gratiosum regis nostri adventum in suas partes, quod in toto ab hoc proposito destiterunt; et sic distractum est eorum consilium ipsa vice. Ab ea hora qua rex Edwardus abivit de Twys. col. 2587. Camodo cepit castella et villas ad magnum numerum per fortitudinem, nec ei resistere poterant quæque partes. Philippus de Valoys rex Franciæ semper lateraliter approximabat et sequebatur nostrum exercitum, et sæpius non distabat per unam leucam Anglicanam a nostro rege et suis, habuit namque grandem et mirabilem fortitudinem exercitus. In

Captives from Caen brought to England.

French design to invade England.

Stopped by king Edward's expedition to Normandy.

March from Caen.

---

[1] *Hastingis*, MS.
[2] *dux*, MS.
[3] *seperant*, MS.
[4] Here on margin of A. only is *capti in Camodo ducti in Angliam.*
[5] *in*] om. MS.
[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Franci proponunt venire in Angliam nisi Edwardus transfretasset in Normanniam.*
[7] *v.*] 1. MS.
[8] *Fransigenis*, A.
[9] *tantum*] tandem, MS.

A.D. 1346. King Edward comes to Poissy.

vigilia Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ rex Edwardus venit per villam Mellenty,[1] et multos ibidem occidit sed villam non cepit; tetenditque iter suum ad villam Poisye[2] ad vij. leucas de Parisio. Rex Philippus fecit infringere[3] omnes pontes in circuitu in patria, adeo quod rex Edwardus non potuit ulterius transire versus Parisium. Rex Edwardus cepit pontem et villam de Poyse[4] per vim, et interfecit ibidem viros ad summam cccc. virorum armatorum et magnam multitudinem communium, rege Philippo adjacente cum suo exercitu, et abinde fugit apud Parisium. Rex Edwardus fecit pontem ita quod sagittarii nostri cum paucis viris armatis transierunt, et custodes quos Philippus rex destinaverat ad custodiam passagii interfecerunt ad numerum centum et plurium virorum armatorum et aliorum. Cumque Philippus intellexisset passagium Anglorum et ruinam suorum, carpsit iter versus Amyas,[5] fecitque elidi omnes pontes in circuitu inter ipsum et regem Edwardum, iter quod non patuit iter Angligenis nisi inter Crotoye[6] et Abville, ubi antea incolis dictæ terræ vel compatriotis nunquam claruerunt viam, et sic transierunt per unum whassum maris ad longitudinem unius leucæ, in vigilia sancti Bartholomæi; et ex altera parte wasshy[7] inimici fuerant parati[8] ad prælium, iij. millia virorum cum capitaneis Pontiniacis[9] et comitissa de Armarle[10] in campo cum Angli terram capere[11] debuerant; sed Anglici proripuerunt terram super eos cum agili fortitudine; et comes Warwych,[12] et comes Northamptoniæ, et dominus Reginaldus de Cobham exierunt de aqua,

Murim. 215. Avesb. 362.

Flight of the French king to Paris.

March toward Amiens.

Avesb. 367.

Difficulties of the way.

Activity of the English.

---

[1] *Mellenti*, MS. *hodie Meulan.*
[2] *Poisye*] om. MS.
[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ frangit pontes pro rege Edwardo.*
[4] *Poise*, MS.
[5] *Annyas*, MS.
[6] *Cretoye*, MSS.
[7] *washii*, MS.
[8] *parati*] om. MS.
[9] *Pontiniacus*, MS.
[10] *Armarle*] Arundell. MS.
[11] *capere*, om. MS.
[12] *Warwich*, MS.

et antequam rex Edwardus terram arriperet devicerant inimicos et ij. millia virorum armatorum cum pluribus de communibus occiderant, et reliquos fugaverunt usque ad villam de Abvyll; Philippo rege in eadem villa cum suo pleno exercitu existente. Rex Edwardus mansit ibidem in campo cum exercitu suo toto illo die et nocte et in crastino usque ad horam completorii. Et tunc quia Philippus Valoys se movebat de illo loco cum exercitu, rex Edwardus cum populo suo recepit se in forestam de Cressy. Et circa horam nonam venerunt novi rumores ad regem Edwardum, quod rex Philippus paratus erat et arraiatus in iij. distentis aciebus. Rex Edwardus ex hoc lætus effectus, paravit populum suum, et venit ad[1] pontem de Cressy; et circa horam vesperarum et parum ante prospexit Edwardus inimicos appropinquare. Anglici jejuni adhuc erant præ longa mora Francos expectando ut semper possent esse parati in eorum adventu. Statimque clanxerunt clariones[2] et tubæ, inundatioque pluviarum comitabatur, tonitruique magni horribilitas, et in brevi cessavit illa mirabilis tempestas. In anteriori acie erat Edwardus princeps Walliæ primogenitus regis Edwardi, comes Northamptoniæ, et comes Warwych[3] cum suis qui expugnaverunt primam aciem Francorum divino adminiculo subfulti; deinde similiter et secundam absque[4] pausatione aliquali, in qua erant duo reges et unus dux, videlicet rex Boemiæ,[5] rex Malogriæ, et dux Loryngiæ, et multi alii proceres. Deinde tertio congressus est princeps Walliæ cum tertia acie, in qua rex Philippus Valoys fuit et rex Almonyæ et dominus Johannes de Hunaldia, et ipsos dei gratia fretus prostravit et devicit. Rex Franciæ

A.D. 1346.

Edward comes to Cressy.

Wals. i. 268. Chron. Ang. 22. Avesb. 368.

Preparations for battle.

Murim. 216, 246.

Order of troops.

Chron. Ang. 22.

Progress of the fight.

Twys. col. 2588.

[1] Here on margin of A. is *Bellum de Cressy.*

[2] *clarriones*, A.

[3] *Warwich*, MS.

[4] Here on margin of MS. is *Bellum de Cressy.*

[5] *Boeniæ*, MS.

A.D. 1346. Philippus percussus est in facie cum una sagitta, dextrariusque ejus occisus est, ascenditque alium compotem et fugit, nec quisquam Anglicus scivit unde devenit. Similiter et multi alii fugerunt[1]; et interfecti sunt ij. millia virorum armatorum militum et scutiferorum, et quasi innumerabilis multitudo pedestrium. Murim. 247.

Philip is wounded and takes flight.

Numerus[2] virorum venientium cum rege Franciæ Philippo xij. millia galliarum l. millia virorum armatorum ad tibias et pedes. De quibus in illis tribus præliis interfecti sunt ij. mille virorum armatorum et xxxij. mille aliorum armatorum; nam pugnaverunt usque ad profundam noctem, in campo de Westglyse[3] juxta Cressy. Comites xvj. occisi[4] sunt ibidem, duo reges, Boemiæ[5] et rex Malogriæ,[6] et dux Loryngiæ, archiepiscopus Seyensis, et episcopus Neyensis, et magnus magister Hospitalis Franciæ, et abbas de Corbella. Rex Edwardus tota nocte cum exercitu suo stetit in campo, et Franci xvj. vicibus dederunt eis insultum antequam dies illucesceret. Nam luna clare lucebat, sicut deus voluit, per tres partes noctis. In ortu solis venit exercitus Francorum versus Anglos in campum, sed sicut deo placuit congredi non audebant, et cum Angli versus eos procederent, fugerunt, et Angli eos insequentes multos eorum occiderunt; de Anglicis[7] occisus est unus scutifer ante prælium, et in prælio iij. milites, reliquos deus reservavit. Facti sunt multi milites pauperrimi de Anglicis. Murim. 216, 248.

Number of troops and slain.

Fight not renewed.

Toto isto tempore Henricus comes Lancastriæ fuit in Vasconia cum suo exercitu, nam mortuo patre suo Chron. Ang. 20.

The earl of Lancaster's

[1] *fugierunt*, MSS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Summa occisorum in bello.*

[3] *Westglise*, MS.

[4] Here on both margins is *Occisi Franci*, and A. adds *occisi duo reges, i. dux, xvi. comites, ii. millia populares.*

[5] *Boeniæ*, MS.

[6] It is doubtful whether the king of Majorca was in the battle. He certainly was not killed there. Murimuth intimates the doubt in the first passage referred to on the margin: in the second no mention is made of *rex Malogriæ.*

[7] Here on both margins is *Anglici occisi tres milites in bello.*

comite Lancastriæ, iste Henricus qui ante vocatus est comes Derbeyæ jam vocatus[1] est comes Lancastriæ. Rex Edwardus divertit iter suum versus Calesiam, destruens et devastans patriam undique in circuitu per viij. leucas, et suburbia Boloniæ usque ad muros, seynt Rychere, Staples, Chastele noef, donec veniret ad Calesiam cum exercitu suo quasi incolumi et sano, deo dante, scilicet die Jovis ante nativitatem beatæ Mariæ virginis. Rex Edwardus[2] fixit[3] tentoria circa villam Calesiæ pro se et exercitu suo, et hospitatus est in modum civitatis per terram, et posuit navigium forte in portu maris, ita quod nullum subsidium potuit civibus occurrere, nec per mare, neque per terram, per Anglicos sic in miseria inclusis. Deinde rex Edwardus fecit afferri machinas et alia instrumenta magistralia de Anglia quæque ad talem obsidionem pertinentia, ad infringendum muros. Statim[4] post hæc comes Warwych cum pluribus aliis perrexit ad nundinas de Tyrwan, et invenerunt multos viros armatos deputatos ad custodiam fori, videlicet episcopum de Tyrwan cum suis ad summam x. mille armatorum, quos Angli deviserunt et quamplures occiderunt. Episcopus vero quasi letaliter vulneratus vix evasit cum vita. Comes Warwych cum suis tali modo prædatus est forum et spoliavit, et quæque preciosa duxit in carrectis et equis usque ad regem apud Calesiam ; et valde ditati sunt omnes diversis mercymoniis quasi innumeris.

A.D. 1346.

Murim. 217. Chron. Ang. 23. Avesb. 372.

campaign in Gascony.

King Edward ravages St. Riquiers, Estaples, and Chateau neuf.

Wals. i. 269.

Siege of Calais.

Earl of Warwick plunders the fair of Tyrwan.

Tunc Flandrenses, Brabanti,[5] Hunaldi, et multi Almanni, et de Francia aliqui cœperunt inclinare et adhærere regi Edwardo propter gratiam dei quam viderunt in eo. Johannes[6] primogenitus regis Philippi ante

Many come over to the side of the English.

[1] Here on both margins is *Comes Derbeyæ vocatus est comes Lancastriæ.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *obsidio Calesiæ.*

[3] *finxit*, MSS.

[4] Here on both margins is *Comes Warwych spoliat nundinas de Tyrwan, i.e.* Terouanne.

[5] *Brabani*, A.

[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Obsidio Agwylonæ per Johannem de Francia.*

A.D. 1346. adventum regis Edwardi in Normanniam posuerat obsidionem fortem ad villam Agwylonæ. Dominus Radulfus baro Staffordiæ, qui postea factus comes Stafford, tunc erat in Agwilona et defendebat. Et quia dicta villa in una parte nec muro nec palo munita, posuit in tali parte dolia vinacia vacua sed lapidibus impleta pro palo; et idem Johannes habuit secum electiores, nobiliores, et strenuiores totius Franciæ, scilicet ducem Burgoniæ multosque[1] proceres electos de regno, ad summam viij. millia virorum armatorum ad pedes et tibias, et xl. millia de viris armatis, sæpeque dederunt insultum ad villam, et semper perdiderunt totiens de suis tam de majoribus quam de minoribus; et in tantum angustiatus est præ pudore et dolore amissionis suorum, quod jurejurando asseruit, se nulla causa ab illa obsidione[2] recessurum donec de dicta villa ad placitum triumpharet, quia juvenis et elatus erat; sed gratia dei mediante tantum[3] inerat robur defensionis et resistentiæ quod ipsum mentiri oportuit præ necessitate in caput suum. Nec quisquam potuit de tanto exercitu pro necessariis victualibus perquirendis patriare quin esset captus et occisus. Nam Henricus comes Lancastriæ illis diebus ibidem compatriota erat. Et in brevi tempore in tantam destructionem devenerunt præ defectu victualium et inde corruptionis alterius ad alterum, quod sparsim moriebantur ultra numerum xv. mille, et summopere cupiebat abinde exilire, sed tam stricta erat custodia super eum per Henricum comitem Lancastriæ quod abinde multo tempore exire non potuit quoquo modo. Tandem tamen sentiens se frustratum a suo proposito de captione civitatis, regemque Angliæ fines intrasse Normanniæ, subtraxit se de exercitu, et fugit in Franciam exercitu suo desolato ductore. Exercitus

Siege of Aiguillon raised.

Twys. col. 2589.

Wals. 270. Murim. 217, 249.

Chron. Angl. 24.

Successes earl of Lancaster in Normandy.

[1] *que*] om. MS.
[2] *osidione*, MS.
[3] *tantus*, MSS.

etenim opportunitatem capiens sequebatur fugiendo. A.D. 1346. Henricus comes Lancastriæ sequebatur fugientes, et cepit eorum equos et victualia, tentoria et quæque pretiosa, multosque fugitando interfecit. Et sic contigit quod compatriotæ de marchia Franciæ ipsos fugientes spoliaverunt in eorum adventu. Sicque ante per suos proximos ipsos denudantes, et a retro per comitem Lancastriæ et suos ipsos acriter insequentes in nimia miseria positi sunt. Et antequam dictus Johannes ad patrem suum devenire potuit tergum verterat ab Anglicis.

Murim. 252. Chron. Ang. 23.

Post prædictum prælium de Crecy Philippus[1] rex Franciæ nunciavit regi Scotiæ quod tota fortitudo Anglicanæ militiæ apud Calesiam convenerat, et quod non sibi timeret super partes boriales equitare, asserens quempiam non esse qui sibi usquam resistere posset; et hoc ei facere mandavit sub quadam confederatione affinitatis inter eos prius confecta, ut superius patet. Ob quam rem David rex Scotiæ post plures equitationes[2] et gravamina quæ in absentia regis Edwardi exercuerat super partes aquilonares Angliæ in deprædationibus et occisionibus multorum Anglorum, in grave scandalum magnatum borialium, qui a multis credebantur complices in his malefactis fuisse et eorum consentaneos extitisse, tandem idem David in orientali marchia venit in Angliam anno Domini MCCCXLVI. cum grandi exercitu ad summam xxxvj. mille virorum bene in armis arraiatorum ad modum et formam Francorum; et iter ceperunt directe versus Dunelmiam,[3] treugamque omnino respuebant, nec volebant pro quocunque supplicatu aures auditrices ad treugas vel misericordiam apponere, nisi haberent de quolibet capite et quolibet pede unum denarium de singulis

Twys. col. 2590.

The French king encourages the Scots to invade England.

A.D. 1346. Numbers of the invading force.

[1] Here on both margins is *Rex Franciæ hortatur Scotos venire in Angliam.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Rex Scotiæ intrat in Angliam.*

[3] *Dunolmam*, MS.; *Dunolmiam*, A.

A.D. 1346. compatriotis usque ad aquam Trentæ. Nam suggestum erat eis quod non remanserant in Anglia quin omnes forent ad obsidionem Calesiæ, nisi solum agricolæ ac pastores et capellani imbecilles et decrepiti. Unde episcopus Eboracensis dominus Willelmus le[1] Sowche, dominus de Percy et cæteri omnes de illis partibus milites armigeri, capellani et clerici, omnes unanimi assensu parati vivere et mori pro salvatione regni convenerunt in unum diem die Lunæ proximo ante festum sancti Lucæ per iiij^{or} leucas citra Dunelmum, et Scoti fuerunt modico spatio ultra eos in ingenti fortitudine et elata manu. Dominus Willelmus Duglas cum suis præcesserat exercitum Scotiæ, et Anglici inopinate supervenerunt super eum, et captus est per unum armigerum dominum[2] le Deyncourte, et multi de suis ibidem interfecti sunt. Quod cum rex Scotiæ intellixisset cum festinatione paravit se ad bellum, distrinxitque exercitum per acies, repleverunt terram in sonitu tubarum et clarionum, et direxerunt aciem in occursum Angligenarum. Anglici vero spem suam totam in deo ponentes, et juris titulum morti suæ præponentes, et in signo crucis, quæ ante eos cum aliis vexillis ferebatur, plenam fiduciam habentes, divinæ clementiæ a qua nullus fallitur se totum commendaverunt, et se conflictui cum summa audacia fortiter dederunt, sicque miscuerunt se exercitus quasi tertia et pugaverunt usque ad horam[3] . . Tandem mediante divina clementia concessa est Anglicis de hostibus tripudialis victoria[4] apud Beal repayr[5] per tres leucas juxta Dunelmum in vigilia sancti Lucæ. Monachi existentes in campanili ecclesiæ suæ et videntes fugientes Scotos, levaverunt vocem nubesque

Murim. 218, 252.

They expected to find no opposition.

Wals. i. 269. Chron. Ang. 24. Avesb. 376.

Battle of Nevil's Cross, 17th Oct. 1346.

Victory of the English.

[1] *le*] la, A.; om. MS.

[2] *domini*, MS.

[3] Here a space is left in both MSS.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Anglici vincunt Scotos apud Dunelmum.*

[5] *i.e.*, Beaurepair.

repleverunt sonitu clamoris, clamantes et deum lau- A.D. 1346.
dantes, flebilibusque lacrimis præ gaudio dicentes, Te deum laudamus, quam vocem Angli audierunt acsi a tergo eorum prope adessent, et fortiorem audaciam in deo inde sumentes inimicos acrius insecuti sunt et fortius eos protriverunt. Nam monachi Dunelmenses finem fecerant cum Scotis pro se et maneriis suis et suis tenentibus in patria in crastino sequenti pro mille libris solvendis absque ulteriori mora, et sic[1] liberati sunt ab ipso jugo. Scoti proposuerant iter dirigere ad Beverlacum et abinde apud Eboracum, Crediderunt namque nullos esse in patria eis resistere valentes quin omnes essent ad obsidionem Calesiæ. Persons captured in the battle.

Wals. i. 270. Murim. 218, 253.

Isti[2] sunt capti in bello. David rex Scotiæ, comes de Fyth, comes de Meyntife, comes de Wygton, comes de Carryk,[3] dominus Willelmus Duglas, et frater ejusdem Willelmi, dominus Willelmus de Lemyston, dominus Willelmus de Rameseye et filius, dominus Malcolmus Flemyng, dominus David Banaude, dominus Johannes Seyntclere, dominus Willelmus Moubraye. Isti fuerunt occisi in bello Dunelmensi. Comes de Moryf, comes de Suthlande, comes de Straernh.[4] Dominus Philippus de Myldron, dominus Umfridus[5] de Bloys, dominus Robertus Mantalent et frater ejus, dominus Johannes Styward,[6] dominus Alanus Styward frater ejus,[7] dominus Mauricius de Morref, dominus David de la Haye, dominus Edwardus de Keth, dominus Johannes de Cranforde,[8]

Twys. col. 2591.

dominus Johannes de Lymesheye, dominus Adam de Nytfon, dominus Alexander Stragy et frater ejus. Item occisi in bello dominus Willelmus de la Haye, dominus Johannes de la Morre, dominus Thomas

[1] *sic*] si, MS.

[2] Here on both margins is : *Capti in bello.*

[3] *Carrek*, MS.

[4] *Strairich*, MS.

[5] *Humfridus*, MS.

[6] Here in MSS. is *frater ejus* written in error.

[7] Here both MSS. have repeated *dominus Alanus Styward, dominus Johannes Styward.*

[8] *Branford*, MS.

A.D. 1346. Boyde, frater Edmundus domini de Keth, dominus Willelmus de[1] Rameseye pater, dominus Johannes Seynthillere, dominus Adam Moygrave, dominus David Fyth-Roberd, dominus Willelmus Moubray, dominus Reginaldus Kirkepatrik, dominus Willelmus de Halyburton, dominus Patonus Heryng. Et præter istos ultra centum milites meliores totius Scotiæ, et de communibus plusquam xx. mille. Ex parte Anglorum occisi sunt quatuor milites et quinque armigeri. Rex[2] Scotiæ fugit de prælio et vulneratus est de una sagitta in capite et captus[3] apud Meryngton per unum valettum Johannis Coupelande, et ductus apud castellum de Bamburgh, ibique aliquamdiu moram traxit sub custodia domini de Percy, pro eo quod non potuit laborare, cum multis aliis magnatibus, quoadusque ex jussu regis ducti sunt Londonias. Interim rex Edwardus mandavit omnibus vicecomitibus et singulis aliis quod nullus Scotus captus liberaretur pro quacumque redemptione, sed omnes Scoti capti detinerentur sub salva custodia, et rex satisfaceret singulis captoribus pro redemptione omnium et singulorum. Et hoc mandatum generaliter exiit in omnes et singulas partes regni Angliæ sub pœna forisfacturæ vitæ et membrorum. Deinde statim post bellum intraverunt Angli in Scotiam, et ceperunt magnam prædam animalium et aliorum bonorum et duxerunt in Angliam. Referebat quidam se hæc vidisse et testatus est quod, cum sacerdotes partium borialium advocarentur adversus Scotos in prælium, vidit magnam turbam eorum apud Beverlacum congregatam, qui ad finem villæ convenientes discalciaverunt se et discooperti capitibus habentes gladios et sagittas sub femore, arcus sub brachio, parati in expeditionem ad quam vocati fuerant sic procedebant processionaliter,

Losses of the English.

King of Scotland captured at Merrington.

A.D. 1347.

King Edward allows no Scot to be set free on ransom.

The English enter and plunder in Scotland.

Murim. 219.

---

[1] *de*] om. MS.

[2] On both margins is *Anglici occisi ;* and then below *Rex Scottorum captus.*

[3] *captus*] capud, MS.

pulsantes dei aures et sanctorum ejus inclamantes ejus misericordiam et gratiam ad prosperandum negotium itineris sui in[1] liberationem Anglicanæ gentis de suis inimicis se funditus exterminare cupientibus. Populares vero videntes eorum inedicibilem devotionem, in admirabilem contritionem conversi cum lacrimabili vultu et ejulatu flectebant genua, Salvatoris pulsantes clementiam, ut eis in tanta necessitate manus adjutrices afferret. Nec incassum, nam deus adjutor eorum eis ad plenum affuit. O mira devotio! cui mirabilior[2] et inedicibilior, toto mundo in perpetua memoria commendabilis, a deo qui salvos facit sperantes in se subvenit exitus, quod tanta superba elatio protervorum Scotorum a paucis armatis rudibus et ad bellum indoctis Christi adminiculo protrita est. Unde apostolus, Si deus nobiscum quis contra nos? Idem dicebatur fieri a sacerdotibus et plebe tam in Eboraco quam in aliis multis locis.

A.D. 1347. Even the priests join the army. It is looked upon as a righteous war.

Eodem tempore Hibernici levaverunt se in Hibernia[3] contra Anglicos per excitationem et consilium tam Francorum quam Scotorum. Sed protriti sunt et in magno numero occisi ab Anglicis ibidem degentibus. Concessa est regi de clero decima biennalis, de populo quintadecima biennalis, de feodo militis xl. solidos. Eodem tempore nunciatum est regi in obsidione Calesiæ occupato quod comes Lancastriæ Henricus ceperat in Centonia per fortitudinem villam sancti Johannis Evangelistæ quam compatriotæ vocant Seynt John Dangelyn, et villam Tanchanloyt,[4] et cæteræ villæ de patria reddiderant se ei. Deinde cepit per vim castrum de Lysmay, quod quidem castrum reputabatur fortissimum castrum Franciæ. Deinde cepit civitatem de Peyters sub tali modo.[5] In civitate erant plus-

Rising in Ireland.

Twys. col. 2592. Chron. Ang. 25. Wals. i. 270.

Aids granted. Earl of Lancaster in Saintogne. He takes St. Jean, d'Angely, and other places.

[1] *in*] from A. on MS.

[2] *mirabili*, MSS.

[3] Here on both margins is *Hibernici surgunt*.

[4] Probably one of *Tonnays* in this district is intended. *Tonnay-Charente* is most suggested by the text, but *Tonnay-Boutonne* is nearer to St. Jean.

[5] Here on both margins is *Capta est Peyters*.

A.D. 1347. quam mille viri armati qui processerunt in campum cum magna multitudine peditum, et inierunt cuneos, et mixti intraverunt portas cum illis; et cum intrassent occupaverunt portas apertas, donec universi Anglici intrarent; deinde ad placitum occiderunt, spoliaverunt, abstulerunt aurum, argentum, et quæque pretiosa innumera.

Capture of Poitiers.

David Bruce imprisoned in the Tower.

Circa Epiphaniam ductus est David Bruz rex Scotiæ apud Londonias, et missus in turrim sub custodia, cum quo de mandato regis Edwardi venerunt xx. millia Anglorum bene arraiatorum. Ipse vero rex David sedebat super uno nigro dextrario omnibus aliis imminente, ita quod super omnes alios videri posset a populo, sicque ductus est de strata in stratam cum magno tripudio honoris, postremoque ad turrim procedens subsequente populo, et quolibet artificio per se in propria secta vestitus honorifice distincto. In hieme sequenti Henricus comes Lancastriæ, et comes de Penbroc redierunt[1] de Vasconia cum populo suo; et in vigilia Conceptionis beatæ Mariæ passi sunt mirabile periculum subitæ tempestatis in mari, sed deus liberavit eos. Eodem anno obiit Eustachius de Folvyle qui Robertum Bellere interfecerat. In quadragesima sequenti Johannes[2] comes de Meyntyf fuit distractus et quarteri- Murim. 253.
zatus. Eodem die comes de Fyth judicatus ad mortem apud Londonias de ordinatione regis Edwardi.[3]

Murim. 219.

Henry earl of Lancaster returns to England.

Punishments of the earls of Menteith and Fife.

A.D. 1347. Post Pascha anno gratiæ MCCCXLVII. venerunt xxx.[4] Wals. 271.
naves et galeæ et atrociter sine impedimento regis Edwardi vel suorum intulerunt[5] victualia in villam

Supplies introduced into Calais.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Comes Lancastriæ redit de Vasconia.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Comites Scotiæ distracti.*

[3] Here is wrongly written in both MSS. *vel suorum intulerunt.* See three lines below.

[4] Here in a much later hand on margin of MS. is *Obsidio Calesiæ.*

[5] Here on the margin of A. only is *Franci inferunt victualia in Calesiam.*

Calesiæ et absque damno recesserunt cernente populo Anglicano. Et ab ea hora fecit rex obturare viam introitus navium in villam. Et comes Warwych cepit custodiam maris cum lxxx.[1] navibus. Ad festum Pentecostes sequentis misit rex Edwardus per totam Angliam ad abbathias et prioratus pro auxilio habendo de lanis sicut idem quod quælibet domus potuit subportare. Eodem anno ipse Baliolus transivit in Scotiam [2] cum ccc. millibus hominum per Carliolum pro adquirenda hereditate regni Scotiæ, et dominus de Percy per Berwycum cum xx. millibus virorum; et cum venissent ad mare Scoticum Scoti redierunt ad pacem Balioli, et integre se dederunt ei ut regi suo. Deinde Anglici direxerunt iter suum versus villam sancti Johannis in proposito ulterius progredi in devastationem terræ Scotiæ. Sed Scoti tantum instabant, quod concessa est eis treuga usque ad festum nativitatis beatæ Mariæ, et darent regi Baliolo ix. millia librarum sub illa conditione. Ordinatumque est quod ipse Baliolus moram traheret medio tempore apud castellum de Laverok in Galweya in salva custodia pro timore Scotorum, cæteri vero Anglorum magnates redirent in auxilium regis Edwardi apud Calesiam. Modicum ante festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Johannes de Francia primogenitus Philippi Valoys venit prope Calesiam cum fortitudine militiæ quasi totius Franciæ, et Henricus comes Lancastriæ cum retentione videlicet viii^{c} virorum armatorum et xvi^{c} sagittariorum, cum forti manu processit in occursum ejus, æstimans campestre bellum ingruere; sed Franci se retraxerunt et inire congressum renuerunt ad patriam repedantes.

A.D. 1347.

The king asks aid from the abbeys.

Baliol's movements in Scotland.

The English try to reach St. John's town, but are repulsed. Baliol kept at Caer-laverock.

John of France comes near Calais,

but withdraws.

Twys. col. 2593.

Eodem tempore comes Oxoniæ, baro Staffordiæ, factus postea comes Staffordiæ, et dominus Walterus de Mawne cum grandi classe ingressi sunt

[1] A. has iiij^{xx}=4 score, which MS. has converted into xxiiij.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Baliolus vendicavit regnum Scotiæ.*

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARY CENTRAL

A.D. 1347. mare, et sic obviaverunt navigio Franciæ cum victualibus ad instaurandam Calesiam, et ceperunt de dicto navigio xx. naves et multitudinem galearum cum magna plenitudine victualium, occiderunt et submerserunt quos volebant, et quæ volebant secum duxerunt ad regem apud Calesiam. Eodem tempore captus est quidam nuncius in mari habens literas[1] de capitaneo Calesiæ ad regem Franciæ Philippum sub tali tenore, breviter[2] de tota litera excerpta. Avesb. 386.

Capture of French ships intended for relief of Calais. Avesb. 384.

Letter intercepted describing the condition of Calais.

Sachez,[3] tresdoute seigniour, qe vous gentz en Caleys ont mange lour chyvals, chens et ratez, et nest remys rien pur lour vivre sy non chescune mange altre; Par quey, tres honeurable seigniour, si nous ne eyms hastif socoure, la vile est perdieu. Et nous sumes tous accordes, si nous ne eyms eyde, de yssir et morir sur nous enmys au honour plus tost qe dedeins morir pur defalte, et Dieu vous doygne[4] grace de rendre al nous et noz heyrez nostre travayle.

King Edward sends the letter to the French king.

Cum igitur rex Edwardus intellexisset literas, fecit eas muniri suo sigillo, et misit eas regi Franciæ mandans ei accelerare subsidium populo suo Calesiæ pro amore suo fame periclitanti. Eodem tempore ejecti sunt de Calesia de communibus minoribus circiter quingenti viri, qui venerunt ad regem Angliæ quærentes gratiam, quos rex jussit redire in villam; verumtamen qui in villa erant introitum ipsis negaverunt. Et sic moram traxerunt inter exercitum et villam, et fame ac frigore pereuntes spissim de die in diem mortui sunt. Johannes de Francia filius Philippi cum potestate Franciæ venit prope exercitum Angliæ diversis vicibus, quandoque ad duas leucas, quandoque ad tres leucas, sed non habentes victualia unde diu moram trahere valebant, ac etiam quia patria circumquaque destructa fuerat per Anglos, in Flandriam se

Citizens expelled from Calais.

John of France draws near to the

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Litera capitanii Calesiæ ad regem Franciæ.*

[2] *brevite*, MSS.

[3] The full text of the letter is given in Avesbury.

[4] *doyngne*, MS.

receperunt, et magnam multitudinem gentium suarum perdiderunt. A.D. 1347. English army.

Die Mercurii[1] ante festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ percussum est bellum[2] apud Roderayn[3] in Britannia tali forma. Dominus Karolus de Bloys jacebat in obsidione de Rochedarrayn cum xxx. millibus viris strenuis. War in Britanny.

Wals. i. 272. Avesb. 388. Chron. Ang. 24, 26. Et Thomas[4] capitaneus Britanniæ nomine regis Angliæ capta opportunitate quod mane subito irruerunt super eos ex una parte, et cives de civitate exierunt ex altera parte, congrediebantur et fortiter pugnabant, tandemque protriti sunt ab Anglicis et multi capti. Carolus[5] de Bloys qui se ducem Britanniæ intruserat captus est,[6] et dominus de Rochefordia. Dominus Leyhyhak et cum eo xxxvj. milites, dominus de la Vagien, viscont de Rowhan,[7] dominus de Durvayl et filius ejus, dominus de castello Bryant, dominus de Knyghton, dominus de Maletretter, dominus de Rongy, dominus Radulphus de Montforde, et occisi sunt plusquam v^{c} de viris armatis. Capture of Charles of Blois. Other prisoners.

Avesb. 389.

Die Mercurii proximo ante festum sanctæ Margaretæ, Henricus comes Lancastriæ[8] fecit viagium in Francia ab obsidione Calesiæ ad x. leucas de terra Franciæ, et habuit secum in comitiva viij^{c} virorum armatorum, et xx. millia sagittariorum. Et fuit in proposito ivisse ad capitales nundinas prope Amyas die sanctæ Margaretæ; et interim nunciatum est ei[9] quod Philippus de Valoys rex Franciæ erat veniens versus Calesiam cum innumerabili populo. Nam illi de Picardia et Artosia nunciaverant regi Philippo, Rumour that the French king is approaching Calais.

Wals. i. 270.

Twys. col. 2594. Avesb. 390.

---

[1] *Mercurie*, MS.

[2] Here on the margin of A. only is *Bellum apud Rochedarrayn in Britannia.*

[3] *Roydereyn*, MS.

[4] This was Thomas Dagworthe, whose letter about the capture is given *in extenso* in Avesbury.

[5] *Carolus*] Captus, MSS.

[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Carolus de Bloys captus.*

[7] *Rowan*, MS.

[8] Here on margin of A. only is *Comes Lancastriæ facit viagium in Franciam.*

[9] *ei*] om. MS.

A.D. 1347. nisi citius veniret eis succurrere ac etiam Calesiæ, de necessitate compulsi oporteret eos se dare regi Angliæ, et auxilium suum ei præstare. Et comes his auditis cum festinatione ad regem venit[1] apud Calesiam, sed prædatus est patriam in circuitu, et duxit secum ij. millia lx. boves et vaccas et plusquam v. millia de ovibus: quæ exercitui magnum refrigerium præstiterunt. Et idem comes Lancastriæ equitaverat nisi per unum diem et unam noctem, et statim narratum est quod rex Philippus venit versus Calesiam cum ij. mille et lx. de viris armatis et de albalistis gentes sine numero, et quod cepit locum suum inter Whitesande et Calesiam super sabulum maris paratus ad prælium. Et eodem tempore venerunt cardinales ad regem Edwardum tractare de pace inter reges, et sic data est treuga inter partes per iv. dies ad tractandum de pace inter reges; et inter cætera Franci proferunt regi Edwardo Vasconiam, et Pontyf, et maritagium filii sui Johannis, sub alia via submitterent regi Edwardo Calesiam[2] et eam sibi reservarent salvis civium vita et membris. Ad quod breviter responsum est; quod villa et ea quæ in ea erant, erant[3] et esse deberent ad voluntatem regis Angliæ, et nihil de dono Philippi de Valoys. Cotidieque Franci venerunt ad causeam inire hastiludium cum Anglis cum[4] [fortuna] guerræ malum suum inutiliter luentes. Et cum vidissent Franci quod concordia non posset ex tractatu provenire, petierunt quod jus utriusque regis per discrimen quinque vel sex ex una parte et totidem ex alia parte discideretur, et locus discriminis per Francos assignaretur. Ad quod respondet comes Lancastriæ, locum assignari debere per Edwardum regem Angliæ et Franciæ naturalem et rectum hæredem utriusque,

Consequent movements of the earl of Lancaster.

Cardinals come to king Edward to treat for peace.

Avesb. 392.

Answer of the king.

Proposal for a combat between five or six of each army.

[1] *venit*] om. A., but it is added on the margin.

[2] *Calesiliam*, MS.

[3] *erant*] om. MS.

[4] A space for a word is left here in both MSS.

nam ad Philippum de Valoys jus nullum suppetit. A.D. 1347.
Tandem cum discordia inter eos dispareret, sine spe pacis abinvicem ad loca sua discedebant, bellum campestre habere sperantes absque impedimento. Rex Edwardus obtulit se sumptibus propriis ad implendum omnes foveas et infringendum omnia obstacula circa obsidionem, ita quod Franci possent habere liberum ingressum et passagium cum suo exercitu ad bellum congrediendum sine impedimento qualicumque. Et crediderunt Angli bellum habuisse die Jovis vel Veneris proximo sequenti post festum ad vincula sancti Petri, sed Franci nocte ante diem Jovis trussaverunt quæcumque sua quæ cariare voluerunt, et retraxerunt se loco suo, et miserunt incendio et flammæ tentoria sua cum magna plenitudine victualium, surripientes fugam tanquam gentes confugatæ.[1] Igitur cum vidissent cives Calesiæ vecordiam Francorum subtraxerunt de muris vexilla Franciæ, et vexilla regis Angliæ quartilata[2] de armis Angliæ et Franciæ elevantes, feceruntque ejulatum magnum et voce lugubri[3] clamaverunt ad regem Edwardum pro misericordia tanquam gentes fame pereuntes sine subsidio; et reddiderunt villam, se et cuncta sua ad gratiam regis Edwardi, scilicet iv. die Augusti anno Domini MCCCXLVII. sub tali forma. Venerunt[4] de Calesia reddere se et villam regi Edwardo dominus Johannes de Vyenna capitanius cum aliis pluribus. Milites villæ custodes veniunt distinctim cum discoopertis capitibus habentes gladios transversos in manibus, quorum unus gladius significavit quod rex vi et armis villam conquisierat: alter vero, quod subjiciebant se ad voluntatem regis mittere eos ad mortem, vel aliter de eis faceret[5] votum suum. Burgenses vero procedebant cum simili forma, habentes

King Edward offers to fill all ditches, that the French may approach to battle.

The French retreat.

Surrender of Calais.

Avesb. 395. Chron. Ang. 25. Wals. i. 271.

A.D. 1347.

Manner of the surrender.

Twys. col. 2595.

[1] *confutatæ*, A.

[2] Here on both margins is *Calesia capta est.*

[3] *ligubri*, MSS.

[4] Here on both margins is *Modus redditionis Calesiæ.*

[5] *de eis* is here repeated in A.

A.D. 1347. funes singuli in manibus suis, in signum quod rex eos laqueo suspenderet vel salvaret ad voluntatem suam; et voce altisona regi clamabant, quod false et proditiose villam tenuerant et defenderant contra eum. Rex vero misericordia motus suscepit eos in gratiam suam, et gratiose eos tractabat; statimque misit victualia in villam ad recreationem populi, sed illi erant adeo famelici et fame affecti et adnihilati ac debilitati,[1] et tantum sumpserunt de victu et potu, nocte proxima sequenti moriebantur in dicta villa plusquam ccc. personæ. Eodem tempore venerunt ad Calesiam de Flandria in auxilium regis Edwardi lx. millia armatorum credentes bellum futurum inter duos reges. Sed quia villa reddita fuit nec ea vice opus habuit de eis, regratiabatur illis datis muneribus, et redire fecit ad propria, ea conditione quod si ei opus aliquando instaret, ipsi præmuniti parati adessent. Incepta est obsidio Calesiæ anno Domini MCCCXLVI.[2] die septimo Septembris, et capta est quarto die Augusti anno gratiæ etc. xlvij.

The citizens kindly received by king Edward.

Troops sent to Calais from Flanders.

Duration of the siege.

Statim post hæc princeps Walliæ Edwardus fecit equitationem in Francia ab exercitu bene ad xxx.[a] leucas de terra, et misit igni et flammæ totam patriam in circuitu, cepitque prædam magnam, et duxit Calesiam.

Ravages in France by the prince of Wales.

Interim rex misit clericos suos per regnum Angliæ ad abbathias et prioratus cum literis regis precatoriis quantum auxiliari regem de lanis suis vellent de suo dono de saccis lanarum; sicque habuit de domo nostra Leycestrensi iij. saccos de prece, et alios iij. saccos cum communi collectura, ut infra patet. Isto tempore misit rex in Angliam, et habuit lanas ubique, videlicet viginti mille saccorum. In comitatu

King Edward asks for aids.

---

[1] *debelitati*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Obsidio Calesiæ durat.* MS. has in a later hand *Calesia obsessa per ii menses.*

Leycestriæ cccxxxiij. saccos. In comitatu Derbeyæ cclij. saccos. Simili modo fiebat de singulis comitatibus. Concessa est regi eodem tempore decima biennalis de clero. Et præter hæc per breve regis summoniti [1] sunt venire Londonias coram rege et concilio suo omnes mercatores regni, et de qualibet civitate et burgo x. aut xij. potentiores burgenses, et taxati sunt secundum illud quod possent supportare.[2] A.D. 1347. Merchants summoned and taxed by the king.

In Augusto sequenti comes Warwich fecit viagium ab exercitu regis ad villam sancti Omeri, et perdidit multos armatos et sagittarios ad numerum clxxx. virorum, pro eo quod inconsulte nimis præcedebant exercitum. Eodem tempore per totum mensem Augusti extitit tanta caliditas [3] quod Anglici super obsidione Calesiæ præ defectu dulcis aquæ spissim moriebantur tam majores quam minores ad magnam summam. Rex Edwardus fecit congregare omnes thesauros et alia pretiosa [4] villæ Calesiæ in unam securam domum, et ponit super eis custodiam. Dominus Johannes de Vyenna cum xij. de majoribus custodibus villæ missi sunt Londonias in turrim ad carcerem. In crastino sancti Laurencii proximo præcedenti accidit apud Calesiam [5] in exercitu dolorosum infortunium ignis subitanei, et consumpsit tentoria nullo remedio prævalente. Et cum ad tentorium regis ignis excandisset, quasi loco parcens transsaltavit ad alia tentoria concremando, regiæ mansioni non lædens, sed cætera victualia irremediabiliter consumens cum auro et argento atque aliis jocalibus et necessariis, vino, arcubus et sagittis unde oportuit eis facere novam providentiam de victualibus et aliis necessariis. Quapropter comites et alii magnates redierunt in Angliam ad providendum

Misadventure of the earl of Warwick.

Spoils of Calais.

Sudden fire in Calais.

The king's tent not burnt.

Twys. col. 2596.

[1] *submoniti*, MSS.

[2] *subportare*, MS.

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *magna caliditas.*

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex ponit thesauros Calesiæ in custodia.*

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *accidit incendium in exercitu Calesiæ.*

A.D. 1347. sibi de necessariis, sed rex Edwardus semper stabat in obsidione miles stabilis et immobilis nulla necessitudine vincibilis.

King Edward abides in Calais.

Eodem tempore per mensem circa festum sancti Petri ad vincula fuit magna caristia bladi[1] in regno Angliæ, sed non duravit nisi per mensem novis fructibus se[2] emergentibus. Concessa est regi decimaquinta[3] per regnum. Post festum sancti Michaelis facta est treuga inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ usque ad festum sancti Barnabæ proximum sequens. Rex Edwardus ordinavit custodiam super villam Calesiæ, scilicet trecentos viros armatos, vij^{c} sagittarios. Comes Derbeyæ Henricus habuit de retentione sua viij^{c} armatorum et duo millia sagittariorum usque ad treugam captam, de quibus xxx. ad banerium, et tantam tenuit hospitalitatem quod quolibet die fundebat in expensis centum libras et ultra per octo vel ix. marcas. Et in recessu comitis post treugam captam inventum est per compotum ipsum expendisse plusquam xvij. millia librarum sterlingorum de proprio ærario[4] ultra stipendia de rege capta. Post festum omnium Sanctorum redeunt omnes magnates de[5] Calesia in Angliam et magnum dispendium passi sunt in mari, et multi naufragium. Nam multi milites armigeri, sagittarii et mercatores passi sunt ruinam submersionis in mari cum equis et victualibus ac aliis divitiis. Post festum Epiphaniæ rex Edwardus celebravit parliamentum Londoniis et prætermisit illud usque ad medium Quadragesimæ. Toto illo tempore papa procuravit totis nisibus facere filium regis Boemiæ[6] qui occubuerat[7] in bello de Cressy imperatorem[8] Romanum, pro vindicta mortis patris sui;

Dearth.

Custody of the town of Calais.

Large expenses of the earl of Derby.

Chron. Angl. 25.

The English suffer at sea in returning from Calais.

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Caristia bladorum.*

[2] *se*] sese, MS.

[3] A. has xv^{a}, which MS. has made into xl^{a}.

[4] *errario*, MSS.

[5] On margin of A. only is *Redeunt Angli de Calesia in Angliam.*

[6] *Boenniæ*, MSS.

[7] *occubaverat*, MSS.

[8] On margin of A. only is *Papa præfecit regem Boemiæ imperatorem.*

et hoc totum præter et contra voluntatem eorum qui fuerant ordinati electores ad id implendum; et misit Carolum de Hyspania[1] cum bulla papali ad archiepiscopum Coloniæ ut ipsum consecraret in imperatorem, et sacravit eum post festum Purificationis prope Coloniam per iv. leucas. Quam ob causam[2] plures magnates de imperio ex communi assensu miserunt nuncios in Angliam ad regem Edwardum, et ipsum promovere cupiebant in imperatorem[3] velut dignissimum, strenuissimum, et validissimum militem sub Christianismo.[4] Lagena vini vendebatur ad xvj. denarios. Eodem anno defertur in Angliam per alienigenas et indigenas mercatores falsa moneta quæ Lussheburne[5] appellata est; unde apud Londonias multi mercatores et alii plures tracti sunt et suspensi, et quidam magno pretio vitam redemerunt.[6]

A.D. 1347. Efforts of the Pope in the election of the emperor. The nobles of the empire offer it to king Edward. Lushburne, spurious coinage.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXLVIII. in parliamento Londoniensi concessa est regi Edwardo quintadecima triennalis et decima de burgis solvendæ in ij[7] annis. Johanna filia regis maritata est filio regis Hispaniæ et ibidem deducta. Cito post dominus Thomas de Dagworth[8] adduxit ad turrim Londoniensem Carolum de Bloys de Britannia prisonarium, qui Carolus usurpaverat ducatum Britanniæ, captique sunt cum eo triginta de majoribus Britanniæ, et circiter v^{c} occisi per dictum Thomam. Rex Edwardus concessit treugas

A.D. 1348. Grants of Parliament to king Edward. Charles of Blois brought to London.

---

[1] From *Hispania* to *causam* had been written in A., but for some reason has been scratched out altogether. But with all that follows down to *redemerunt* the words are written on the reverse page of the MS.

[2] About half a page or more of the leaf (154 of A.) is left unwritten on both recto and verso sides. There are no such gaps in MS.

[3] Here on both margins is *Rex Edwardus eligitur in imperatorem.*

[4] *Christianissimo*, MSS.

[5] Here on both margins is *Moneta Loysburnes.*

[6] *redimerunt*, MSS.

[7] *secundo*, MS. (wrongly).

[8] *Bagworth*, MS. in text, but *Daqworth* on margin.

A.D. 1348. triennales ad instantiam papæ et rogatum. Tunc[1] nobiles regni cœperunt se dare jocis hastiludiorum ex omni parte regni. Prisonarii vero Francigenæ strenue se miscuerunt nostris. Eodem tempore Almannici elegerunt regem Edwardum in imperatorem,[2] et miserunt solemnes nuncios in Angliam ad regem. Quod cum regina audisset anxia ex hoc effecta multum lamentabatur. Rex misit consanguineum suum comitem Northamptoniæ in Hispaniam ad sciscitandum de prædictis, et compertum[3] est procuratum fuisse per inimicos regis ut sic eum frustrarent ab prosecutione[4] juris[5] hæreditatis suæ in regno Franciæ, ut guerra Franciæ postposita occuparetur in guerra contra filium regis Boemiæ[6] quem papa erexerat in Imperatorem, hac de causa ut credebatur ut patrem suum occisum apud Cressy[7] vindicaret. Verumtamen[8] Almannici concionati sunt regem Edwardum meliorem principem sub Christianismo. Rex totaliter renuit imperium, dicens se malle prosequi jus suum. Marcheus[9] de Julers adhuc expectat responsum a rege, et rediit multum dolens[10] in Hispaniam frustratus a suo velle et proposito.

King Edward chosen emperor.

Twys. col. 2597.

Motive of the offer.

King Edward refuses the empire.

Tunc veniunt Scoti redimere[11] David regem suum. Quibus breviter responsum se oportere satisfacere pro damnis quæ intulerant regi Angliæ et regno, toto præcedenti tempore, et deinde procedere possent ad redemptionem regis sui. Scoti vero absque mora repatriaverunt, et populum congregantes vene-

Scots want to ransom king David.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Hastiludia ubique in regno.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Edwardus eligitur in imperatorem.*

[3] *comperatum*, MS.

[4] *prosequutione*, A.

[5] *viris* is wrongly written before *juris* in MS.

[6] *Boenniæ*, MS.

[7] *Cressi*, A.

[8] *verumtamen*] Utrumque, MS.

[9] *Marcheuus*, MSS.

[10] *delens*, MSS.

[11] On both margins is *Scoti veniunt redimere regem suum.*

runt in Angliam multa facientes, patrias vastando, incendendo villas, populum occidendo, et multos in lectis suis dormitantes in Scotiam prisonarios abducendo, et quasi sub importabili redemptione concludendo. Quam ob causam proclamata sunt hastiludia apud Berwyk, ut Scotos sic provocarent venire in Angliam. Et cum Scoti cum solita magna fortitudine ad hastiludia adventarent, boriales se obviam eis dederunt, oppugnatisque illis quamplures occiderunt. Deinde quidam magnates boriales intraverunt in Scotiam et comitatum de Caryk prædantes vastitati dederunt. A.D. 1348. When refused, they commit great ravages. Tournament at Berwick.

Eodem tempore viij^{c} viri armati de Francia intraverunt in Vasconiam, et multa mala exercuerunt, gentes sine capite, ut dicebatur, volebant subdere terram suo proprio dominatui. At Thomas Cok senescallus Vasconiæ nomine regis Angliæ congregatis Vasconicis et Anglicis se ultro dedit eis obviam, et repentino insultu eos compulit in fugam, et cepit de melioribus xxxv. et occidit circiter cc. Eodem tempore[1] natus est regi filius nomine Thomas de Wyndesore.[2] Illis diebus ortus est rumor et ingens clamor in populo, eo quod ubi hastiludia prosequebantur quasi in quolibet loco dominarum cohors affuit, quasi comes interludii, in diverso et mirabili apparatu virili, ad[3] numerum quandoque quasi xl. quandoque l. dominarum de speciosioribus et pulcrioribus non melioribus totius regni, in tunicis partitis scilicet una parte de una secta et altera de alia secta, cum capuciis brevibus et liripiis[4] ad modum chordarum[5] circa caput French ravages in Gascony. The invaders are driven back. Complaint concerning ladies at the tournaments.

[1] Here on margin of A. is *Thomas de Wyndushore natus Edwardo*, while in a later hand on margin of MS. is *Thomas Wyndesore filius regis.*

[2] *Wyndushore*, A.

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Nota de dominabus in hastiludiis.*

[4] The word is partly destroyed in A. It occurs in the form *liripipium* also.

[5] *cordarum*, MSS.

A.D. 1348. advolutis, et zonis argento vel auro bene circumstipatis, etiam ex transverso[1] ventris sub[2] umbilico habentes cultellos quos daggerios vulgariter[3] dicunt in powchiis desuper impositis; et sic procedebant in electis dextrariis vel aliis equis bene comptis ad locum hastiludiorum; et tali modo expendebant et devastabant bona sua, et corpora sua ludibriis et scurrilosis[4] lasciviis vexitabant, ut rumor populi personabat. Et sic nec deum verebantur nec verecundam populi vocem erubescebant, laxato matrimonialis pudicitiæ fræno. Nec hi quos sequebantur animadvertebant quantam gratiam et præfulgidam expeditionem deus omnium bonorum largitor Anglorum militiæ contulerat contra omnes inimicos undecunque eis adversantes, et quali privilegio triumphalis victoriæ in omni loco illos prætulerat. Sed deus in his sicut in cunctis aliis affuit mirabili remedio, eorum dissipando dissolutionem, nam loca et tempora ad hæc vana assignata imbrium resolutione, tonitrui et fulguris coruscatione et varium tempestatum mirabili ventilatione præoccupavit.

Extravagances and excesses.

Twys. col. 2598.

Heavy rains and storms effectually stop them.

Eodem tempore duo cardinales[5] qui venerant apud Calesiam pro concordia facienda habuerant viij. denarios ad marcam tam de spiritualibus quam de temporalibus. Episcopus Lincolniensis ex gratia papæ habuit vj. denarios ad marcam in diocesi sua.

Pay of the cardinals ambassadors.

A.D. 1348–1349. Isto[6] anno et anno sequenti erat generalis mortalitas hominum in universo mundo. Et primo incepit in India, deinde in Tharsis, deinde ad Saracenos, postremo ad Christianos et Judæos, ita quod in spatio unius anni, videlicet a Pascha usque ad Pascham, ut

The great pestilence or "black death."

---

[1] *etiam ex transverso*] in extransverso, A.

[2] *sub*] vel, MS.

[3] *vulgaliter*, MSS.

[4] *scurilosis*, MSS.

[5] On both margins is *Cardinales habent subsidium.*

[6] On margin of A. only is *Mortalitas generalis.*

Wals. i. 273. Avesb. 406. Chron. Ang. 27.

rumor in curia Romana percrebuerat,[1] mortui[2] sunt in illis remotis regionibus[3] viij. mille legiones præter Christianos quasi subita morte. Rex Tharsis videns tam subitam et inauditam stragem suorum, iter arripuit cum multitudine copiosa nobilium versus Avinoniam ad papam disponens se Christianum fieri et baptizari a papa, credens vindictam dei populum suum enervasse propter eorum malam incredulitatem. Igitur cum fecisset viginti diætas itinerando audivit quod lues mortaliter[4] invaluit inter Christianos sicut inter alias nationes, verso calle ultra non progreditur in illo itinere, sed repatriare festinavit; Christiani vero a tergo eos insequentes occiderunt de illis quasi duo mille. Mortui sunt Avinoniæ uno die mcccxij. personæ secundum computationem factam coram papa. Item alio[5] die cccc. personæ et ultra. De fratribus prædicatoribus in regione Provinciæ in Quadragesima mortui sunt ccclviij. Item apud Monpelers de centum xl. non remanserunt nisi vij. fratres. Apud Magdalen de clx.[6] remanserunt vij. fratres, et tamen satis. Apud Marsiliam de cxl.[7] et x. minoribus non remansit solus unus qui nunciaret cæteris; bene quidem. De Carmelitis mortui sunt Avinoniæ lxvj. antequam cives casum eventus perciperent. Credebant namque quod[8] alter alterum peremisset. De Heremitis Angliæ non remansit unus in Avinonia; nec cura. Eodem tempore eadem pestis invaluit in Anglia incipiens in autumno in quibusdam locis, et discurrens per patrias finivit eodem tempore anno sequenti. Eodem tempore apud[9] Corinthum et Achaiam plures civitates obrutæ sunt et terra operuit eas. Castella et oppida fracta et

A.D. 1348.

The king of Tharsis proposes to become a Christian on account of it.

Great mortality everywhere.

Avesb. 407.

Earthquakes in various parts.

---

[1] *percrepuerat*, MSS.
[2] *sunt*, A.; *etiam*, MS.
[3] *religionibus*, MS.
[4] *mortalitatis*, MS.
[5] *alio*] ambo, MS.
[6] *clx.*] in A. written viii^{xx} = eight score, which MS. has converted into xxviii.
[7] *cxl.*] written in A. vii^{xx}.
[8] *quod*] per, MS.
[9] Here on both margins is *Terræ motus.*

A.D. 1348. frustata et absorpta[1] sunt. Montes in Cipria in unum coequati sunt, ita quod cursus aquarum impediti fuerunt, et sunt, et multæ civitates submersæ et villæ destructæ. Similiter cum frater quidam prædicaret apud Napiles, tota civitas destructa est terræ motu et tempestate, et subito operta est terra sicuti[2] solet lapis jactus in aqua; et mortui sunt omnes cum fratre prædicante, excepto uno fratre qui fugiens evasit in unum hortum[3] extra villam. Et hæc omnia operabatur terræ motus.

The Pope urgent for peace.

Tunc misit papa literas pro pace reformanda inter regna, ut sic evaderent vindicem dei dexteram, asseverans[4] hæc omnia propter peccata hominibus evenisse. Quam ob causam rex misit comitem Lancastriæ et comitem de Norfolk[5] cum aliis magnatibus apud Calesiam tractare de pace. Proceres Franciæ morabantur apud sanctum Omerum. Sed medio tempore communes Flandriæ cum Francis et quibusdam Flandris cum fraude venerunt[6] apud Brygges, et decollaverunt et suspenderunt Flandros quos repererunt tenuisse cum rege Angliæ. Rex Edwardus congregavit populum volens adire Flandriam ut destrueret viros desertores, iterque arripuit, sed comes[7] Lancastriæ occurrit ei dicens universos Flandros ad regem conversos sub certis conventionibus, sicut infra patebit. Concordatum est etiam quod certæ personæ de Anglia et Francia deberent tractare de pace inter regna ab eo tempore usque ad mensem Septembris, quo tempore si concordia non se caperet, corona Franciæ afferri deberet ad certum locum regni Franciæ per consensum partium, et ibi per bellum campestre absque ulteriori rebellatione nancisci.

The people of Bruges attacked for siding with the English.

Twys. col. 2599.

A truce agreed on.

---

[1] *absorpta*] absorta, MSS.
[2] *sicuti*] secuti, MS.
[3] *hortum*] ortum, MSS.
[4] *asseverans*] om. MS.
[5] *Norfolk*] Northfolk, MS.
[6] *venerunt*] venit, MS.
[7] *comes*] communes, MS. wrongly.

Tunc[1] pestis dolorosa penetravit maritima per South- A.D. 1348.
amptonam et venit Bristollam, et moriebantur quasi Much mortality in English ports.
tota valitudo villæ quasi subita morte præoccupati, nam pauci erant qui lectum occupabant ultra iij. dies vel duos dies aut dimidium diem; deinde mors ipsa sæva prorupit circumquaque secundum [cursum][2] solis. Et moriebantur apud Leycestriam in parva parochia sancti Leonardi plusquam ccclxxx.[3] In parochia sanctæ A.D. 1349.
crucis plusquam cccc. In parochia sanctæ Margaretæ Leycestriæ vij^{c}. Et sic in singulis parochiis in magna multitudine. Tunc episcopus[4] Lyncolniensis misit per totum episcopatum, et dedit generalem potestatem omnibus et singulis sacerdotibus tam regularibus quam secularibus audire confessiones, et quosque absolvere plena auctoritate et integra episcopali excepto solo casu debiti. In quo casu, si potens esset per se dum viveret satisfaceret, aut certe alii de bonis suis post mortem ejus id im- Full remission granted to those dying of the plague.
Wals. i. 274. plerent. Similiter papa[5] concessit plenam remissionem de cunctis peccatis cuilibet in periculo mortis existenti una sola vice esse absolutus, et concessit hanc potestatem durare usque ad Pascha proximo sequens, et cuilibet liceret eligere sibi confessorem ad placitum. Mortality among sheep.
Eodem anno fuit magna lues ovium[6] ubique in regno, adeo quod in uno loco moriebantur in pastura una plusquam v. mille ovium, et in tantum putrescebant[7] quod nec bestia nec avis tangere volebat. Et erat leve pretium de cunctis rebus præ mortis timore. Nam

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *de magna peste.* Then in both *nota de Bristollia.*

[2] *cursum* is found in neither MS., but in A. a ∧ is put between *secundum* and *solis* by a later hand.

[3] Written in A. xix^{xx} = nineteen score.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Episcopus Lyncolniensis dat potestatem capellanis populum absolvere.*

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Papa concedit generalem remissionem.*

[6] Here on margin of A. only is *lues ovium.*

[7] MS. has *putresce* and omits *quod nec.*

A.D. 1349. Consequent cheapness of all things.

valde pauci erant qui de divitiis vel quibuslibet rebus curam agerent. Nam[1] homo posset habere unum equum qui ante valuerat xl. solidos pro dimidia marca, j. bovem crassum et pinguem pro iv. solidos, j. vaccam pro xij. denariis, j. juvencam pro vj. denariis, j. multonem pinguem pro iv. denariis, j. ovem pro iij. denariis, j. agnum pro ij. denariis, j. magnum porcum pro v. denariis, j. petram lanæ pro ix. denariis. Et oves et boves per campos et inter segetes vagabantur[2] errantes, et non erat qui eas agendo fugaret aut colligeret, sed in sulcis[3] deviis et sepibus morte perierunt numero incomputabili per universas regiones præ defectu custodis, quia tantus defectus extitit servorum et famulorum, quod non erat quis qui sciret quid facere deberet; nam non occurrit memoria tam rigidæ mortalitatis et tam sævæ a tempore Vortigerni regis Britonum, in cujus tempore, ut testatur Beda de gestis Anglorum, vivi non sufficiebant sepelire mortuos. In autumno sequenti non potuit quis habere unum messorem minori pretio quam viij. denariis cum cibo, unum falcatorem quam xij. denariis cum cibo. Quam ob causam multæ segetes perierunt in campis præ defectu collectoris; sed in anno pestilentiæ, ut supra dictum est, de aliis rebus tanta abundantia erat omnis generis bladorum quod nullus de eis quasi curavit.

Nobody to tend the farms.

High wages for labour.

Twys. col. 2600.

Scoti audientes de crudeli peste Anglorum suspicati sunt de manu dei vindici hoc eis evenisse, et sumpserunt in juramentum,[4] prout vulgaris rumor aures Anglorum personuit, sub hac forma quando jurare volebant, Per fœdam mortem Anglorum, Anglice, be the[5] foul deth of Engelond.[6] Et sic Scoti credentes vindictam dei

A Scottish oath.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. is *leve pretium omnium rerum;* on margin of MS. *pretia rerum vilissima.*

[2] *vagabant*, MSS.

[3] *sulcis deviis*] A. dulcis divis, MS.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Scoti deludunt Anglos propter mortalitatem.*

[5] *the*] ye, A., *i.e.* þe.

[6] *Englond*] MS.

horribilem Anglos obumbrasse, convenerunt in foresta de Selfchyrche in proposito invasisse totum regnum Angliæ. Supervenit sæva mortalitas, et ventilavit Scotos subita et immanis mortis crudelitas; et moriebantur in parvo tempore circiter v. millia, reliqui vero, quidam[1] debiles, quidam fortes, repatriare se disponebant, sed Angligenæ eos præoccupaverunt insequentes, et occiderunt ex eis multos nimis. A.D. 1349. The Scots intend to invade England, but sickness deters them.

Magister Thomas de Bradwardyn consecratus est a papa in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, et cum rediret in Angliam venit Londonias, et infra biduum mortuus est. Hic erat famosus præ cæteris clericis totius Christianitatis, in theologia præcipue, similiter et in cæteris scientiis liberalibus. Eodem tempore tanta penuria erat sacerdotum ubique, quod multæ ecclesiæ viduatæ erant carentes divinis officiis, missis, matutinis, vesperis, sacramentis et sacramentalibus. Vix posset homo habere unum[2] capellanum infra x. libras vel x. marcas ministrare alicui ecclesiæ, et ubi homo posset habere unum capellanum pro v. aut iv. marcis vel pro ij. marcis cum mensa, quando copia extitit sacerdotum ante pestilentiam,[3] vix erat in isto tempore qui acceptare vellet unam vicariam ad xx. libras aut xx. marcas; sed infra breve confluebant ad ordines maxima multitudo quorum uxores obierant in pestilentia, de quibus multi illiterati et quasi meri laici nisi quatenus aliqualiter legere sciebant licet non intelligere. Coria boum sub vili pretio scilicet ad xij. denarios, et per[4] sotularios ad x. denarios xij. denarios vel xiv. denarios unum par ocrearum ad iij. solidos et iv. solidos. Interim rex misit in singulos comitatus regni quod messores et alii operarii non plus caperent quam capere solebant sub pœna in statuto limitata, et ex hoc innovavit statutum. Operarii

Thomas Bradwardyn made archbishop of Canterbury. His sudden death.

Lack of clergy.

Rush of candidates for orders.

Wals. i. 276.

Statute about wages.

---

[1] *quidam*] quidem, MS.

[2] Here on margin of MS. only is *penuria sacerdotum.*

[3] *pestelentiam*, MS.

[4] *et per*] Here MS. has *unum par* from the line below.

A.D. 1349 tamen adeo elati et contrariosi non[1] advertebant regis mandatum, sed si quis eos habere vellet oportuit eum
A mediæval strike. eis dare secundum suum velle, et aut fructus suos et segetes perdere, aut operariorum elatam et cupidam voluntatem ad vota implere. Quod cum notum regi fuisset, eo quod mandatum ejus non observassent,[2] et majora stipendia operariis dedissent, levavit gravia amerciamenta de abbatibus, prioribus, et de magnis militibus, et minoribus, et aliis tam majoribus quam
Fines imposed by the king. minoribus de patria; de quibusdam c. solidos de quibusdam xl. solidos et de quibusdam xx. solidos de quibuslibet secundum quod possent dare. Et cepit de qualibet carucata per totum regnum xx. solidos et nec eo minus unam quintamdecimam. Deinde rex fecit attachiare
Imprisonment of labourers. laborarios quamplures, et misit eos in carcerem, et multi tales retraxerunt se, et abierunt ad silvas et boscos pro tempore, et qui capti erant graviter sunt amerciati. Et majores sunt jurati, quod ultra antiquam consuetudinem stipendia diurna non caperent et sic sunt liberati de carcere. Simili modo fiebat de aliis artificiariis in burgis et villis.

A.D. 1350. Eodem anno[3] fit translatio sancti Thomæ Herfordiæ
Translation of St. Thomas of Hereford. viij. kalendarum Novembris. Post prædictam[4] pestilentiam multa ædificia tam majora quam minora in omnibus civitatibus, burgis et villis collapsa sunt et ad terram penitus diruta præ defectu habitatoris; similiter multæ villulæ et hamilettæ desolatæ sunt nulla in eis
Effects of the plague. Decay of houses and lack of servants. relicta domo, sed mortuis omnibus qui in eis habitarent, et verisimile erat quod multæ tales villulæ non essent habitandæ pro perpetuo. In hieme sequenti tanta erat penuria servorum in omnibus agendis quod vix, ut homo credebat, retroactis temporibus tanta carentia fuerat, nam bestiæ et universa pecora quæ homo

Chron. Ang. 29. Wals. i. 275. Twys. col. 2601.

---

[1] *non*] written twice over in MS.
[2] *observasset*, MS.
[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Translatio Sancti Thomæ Herfordiæ.*
[4] *prædictam*] twice in MS.

habebat circumquaque vagabant absque pastore, et sin- A.D. 1350.
gula quæque quæ homo habebat sine custode. Et sic Cost of necessaries.
cuncta necessaria adeo cara devenerunt, quod id, quod [1]
retroactis temporibus valuerat unum denarium, jam
isto tempore valuit iv. denarios aut v. denarios. Insuper
et magnates regni, et alii minores domini qui tenentes
habebant,[2] perdonarunt redditum de redditu ne tenentes
abirent[3] præ defectu servorum et caristia rerum. Qui- Remission of rents,
dam medietatem redditus, quidam magis et quidam
minus, quidam per ij. annos, quidam per tres, et qui-
dam per unum, prout poterant cum eis convenire.
Similiter qui habebant de tenentibus per diætas totius
anni, ut assolet de nativis, oportebat eos relaxare et and services.
remittere talia opera, et aut penitus perdonare aut
sub laxiori modo in parvo redditu ponere, ne nimia
et irrecuperabilis ruina fieret domorum, et terra ubi-
que totaliter remaneret inculta. Et omnia victualia et Dearth of all things.
omnia necessaria devenerunt nimis cara.

Anno[4] gratiæ MCCCXLIX. incepit generalis absolutio A.D. 1349.
Romæ et multi se paraverunt Romam adire; sed
rex prohibuit passagium eis propter guerram Fran-
ciæ. Quam ob causam papa misit nuncios regi King Edward forbids travelling to Rome.
Angliæ principaliter pro passagio. Primo videlicet ne
rex impediret sanctum passagium visitare sancta loca
apostolorum volentium. Item quod concedere vellet
unam treugam[5] ne comes Lancastriæ equitaret in Message of the Pope.
Aquitania in perturbationem volentium loca sancta
adire. Similiter ne rex impediret aut impediri per-
mitteret promotos a curia per bullas acceptare bene-
ficia sibi taliter incumbentia.

Et primo articulo responsum est, quod occupatus
est in guerra et ideo indiget adminiculo sui, ac etiam

[1] *quod*, om. MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Magnates relaxabant redditus tenentium.*

[3] *abirent*] abierent, MS.

[4] Here on the margin of A. only is *generalis absolutio.*

[5] *treuuam.* A.; *streugam*, MS.

A.D. 1349. The king's answer.

necesse erat ei prævidere de thesauro regni sui ne, in præjudicium sui et suorum, duceretur extra regnum quam diu guerra duraret. Et super hoc rex fecit proclamare, quod omnes Angli, tam Romæ quam alio loco ultra mare existentes, repedare festinarent quantotius sub pœna forisfacturæ corporis ac omnium bonorum. Ad[1] ij^{m} articulum quoad provisores responsum est, quod rex bene acceptaret provisos clericos qui essent bonæ conditionis, et qui digni essent promoveri, et alios non. Ad iij^{m} articulum de treuga habenda responsum est, quod rex Franciæ sæpius equitaverit sub tali treuga super terras regis Angliæ traditiose in destructionem populi sui et contra conventiones in treuga contentas. Et cum tali responso repatriaverunt nuncii papæ.

Exploits of the earl of Lancaster.

Comes Lancastriæ Henricus equitavit cum Vasconicis medio tempore ad numerum xxx. mille super inimicos decem diebus et amplius, et misit igni et flammæ totam patriam in circuitu per x. leucas ex omni parte, et conquisivit plusquam xlij. villas et castella. Et venit Tolosam cum exercitu suo, et petit villam nomine regis Angliæ, vel aliter egrederentur dimicaturi cum eo. Et qui inibi fuerunt promiserunt ei bellum si expectare vellet per v.[2] dies. At ille concessit eis inducias iv. dierum, et tamdiu moram traxit ibidem coram villa Tolosæ. Et cum vidisset quod nollent pugnare, omnia suburbia villæ incendit igni, et quæcumque potuit vastavit et igne succendit, et abiit devastando et deprædando cunctas patrias in regressu suo, adeo quod omnibus inimicis suis incussit magnum timorem.

He comes to Toulouse.

Twys. col. 2602.

He devastates the land and departs.

Spanish raid in Esthonia.

Eodem tempore Hispanici redierunt de Estlandia cum forti classe et gente robusta, habentes gazas

---

[1] *Ad ij^{m} . . . . non.*] This whole sentence is omitted in MS.

[2] *v.*] MS. has x., and in A. the letter is very indistinct.

innumeras et mercimonia infinita, et quieverunt apud le Sclusse[1] in Flandria. Et prædati sunt in mari quæcunque potuerunt, et multos Anglos occiderunt et multa mala fecerunt, et in eorum adventu apud le Sclusse obviaverunt Anglicanæ classi tendenti versus Vasconiam pro vino quærendo, bona eorum rapuerunt et occiderunt de Anglis ad magnam summam, sub maritima Britanniæ. Unde rex Edwardus misit in Flandriam ut eos amoverent a finibus suis ad instantiam suam, et statim rex Edwardus congregavit populum suum [et] pro eo quod Hispanici tanta mala intulerant Anglicis incendendo portus Angliæ, deprædando et occidendo, rex Edwardus dedit eis obviam in mari et eis acriter insultum fecit, et ipsi se nobiliter et fortiter defenderunt longo tempore, et tandem subacti sunt et multi submersi, et tulit rex bona eorum per dei gratiam, et adduxit secum in Angliam, scilicet Dominica proxima ante festum Assumptionis.

A.D. 1349.

Naval engagement between the Spaniards and English.

English victory.

Wals. i. 275. Chron. Ang. 29.

Anno gratiæ MCCCL. annus Jubilæus Romæ. Et incepit in festo Annunciationis gloriosæ virginis Mariæ. Henricus nobilis comes Lancastriæ factus est dux[2] Lancastriæ. Hic erat primus dux Lancastriæ et ante ipsum non occurrit fuisse ducem in Anglia nisi solum in Cornubia. Johannes de Gaunt filius regis Edwardi factus est comes Richemundiæ. Dominus Radulfus baro Staffordiæ factus est comes Staffordiæ. Dominus Robertus de Ufforde factus est comes de Suffolc.[3] Et concessa est regi in parliamento quintadecima. Eodem anno Johannes de Valoys, filius regis Franciæ, coronatus est in regem Franciæ.

A.D. 1350.

Jubilee.

Wals. i. 279. Chron. Ang. 31. Avesb. 411.

Creation of the dukedom of Lancaster and earldom of Stafford.

A.D. 1351.

Avesb. 411.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLI. concessa est regi decima bienalis. Dominus Thomas de Dagworthe nobilis miles

Death of Thomas Dagworth.

[1] Here on both margins is *Bellum apud le Scluse navale.*

[2] Here on both margins is MCCCL. *Henricus comes Lancastriæ factus est dux Lancastriæ.*

[3] *Soffolc,* MSS.

A.D. 1351. peremptus est per fraudem Francorum. Concessa est[1] regi quinta decima triennalis et decima triennalis. Captum est Gynes per Johannem de Bancastre. Matildis filia nobilis ducis Lancastriæ Henrici desponsata est Willelmo duci de Selande.[2] Dux Lancastriæ transiit de Calesia versus Boloniam, et succendit igni omnia suburbia villæ usque ad muros, et igne cremavit omnes naves in portu, et exinde transiit apud Staples et prædatus est villam; similiter et Alnett[3] prædatus est, et cepit multos thesauros et multos prisonarios, et exinde tendit iter suum versus Trowan et rapuit quæ in villa erant, villani fugerunt ad ecclesiam et defenderunt eam et vulneraverunt multos de Anglis. Tandem potitus victoria rediit cum præda magna de bestiis absque numero. Avesb. 414.

Ravages of the duke of Lancaster in North France.

Similar acts of John de Beauchamp.

Dominus Johannes de Beawchamp, capitaneus de Caleys, cum ccc. virorum armatorum et ij. sagittariorum perrexit de Calesia in Franciam, et prædatus est patriam ad x. leucas et cum redirent cum præda sua dominus de Bealren[4] cum ij. mille virorum armatorum surrexit de insidiis, et fortiter pugnavit cum Anglis, tandem Johannes de Beauchamp occidit dominum de Bealren, et cæteros vicisset, sed subito supervenit alia fortis acies Francorum in equis et ceciderunt super Anglos lassos[5] et læsos, et debellaverunt eos, et ceperunt dominum Johannem de Beauchamp capitaneum cum xx. militibus, et cæteros omnes occiderunt; et cito post redempti sunt et venerunt in Angliam. Tunc capta est treuga inter reges Angliæ et Franciæ sub tali conditione, quod quandocunque placeret uni regi vel alteri[6] treugam infringere possent. Et super hoc Henricus dux[7] Lan- Twys. col. 2603.

A truce.

---

[1] *est*] om. MS.
[2] *Seland*, A.
[3] *Alnette*, MS.
[4] *Bealron*, MS.
[5] *lasses et leses*] MS.
[6] *alteri*] altera, MS.
[7] Here on both margins is *Dux Lancastriæ transit in Sprusiam.*

castriæ transivit versus le[1] Sprusiam cum multis viris in sua comitiva de majoribus regni. Et cum pervenisset in altam Almaniam arestatus est cum aliis multis de sociis suis, et fecit redemptionem pro se et suis de iij. mille scutis auri. In hoc itinere mortuus est dominus le Ros. A.D. 1351. The duke of Lancaster arrested in Prussia.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLII. rex Scotiæ David Brus[2] adhuc prisonarius missus est in Scotiam sub custodia cum fidelitate jurata ad revocandum Scotos in fidelitatem regis Angliæ, sicut solebant esse, et sicut idem rex David juratus fuerat esse legius homo regis Angliæ, et sicut reges Scotiæ solent esse. Scoti vero unanimi assensu sub una voce responderunt, se velle regem suum redimere, sed se subdere regi Angliæ nequaquam velle: unde rex David reversus est ad turrim Londoniensem. Post Pascha rex tenuit parliamentum apud Londonias, ubi concessa est regi xv^ta^ triennalis et decima una de ecclesia. Tunc captum[3] est castellum de Gynes. Dum igitur dux Lancastriæ tenderet versus Spruciam, dux Selandiæ Willelmus venit in Angliam, et de consilio reginæ desponsavit Matildam seniorem filiam ducis Lancastriæ cum magna nobilitate honoris in capella regis apud Westmonasterium et duxit eam secum in Selandiam. A.D. 1352. David Bruce's mission to Scotland. Parliament in London.

Cum igitur dux Lancastriæ venisset Coloniam, nunciatum est duci Lancastriæ per quendam militem, quod dux de Bronneswyth habuit in mandatis de rege Franciæ ut caperet ducem Lancastriæ sic peregrinantem versus inimicos Christi; ipse tamen tenuit iter suum quo tenderet,[4] et secure ductus fuit per diversas comitivas; sed ante adventum suum in Spruciam, treuga per plures annos capta est inter Christianos et Paganos; quod multum ei displicuit.[5] At ille inde[6] reversus Duke of Brunswick said to meditate the capture of the duke of Lancaster.

---

[1] *le*] om. MS.
[2] *Bruz*, MS.
[3] *capta*, MS.
[4] *tenderet*] tenderat, MS.
[5] *displicuit*] dispicuit, MS.
[6] *inde*] idem, MS.

A.D. 1352. venit Coloniam, et ibi narravit coram multis magnatibus qualiter dux Oto de Bronneswyk imaginatus fuerat capere eum et ipsum impedire[1] de sua sancta peregrinatione, et tam ipsum quam suos socios, cum non deliquerit versus eum prout noverat, nec aliquam notitiam de eo habuit. Et dixit ultra, quod non decebat talem ducem usurpare de tali milite extraneo peregrinante, qui nihil male ceperat penes eum, et si cuperet habere aliquid facere cum eo reperiret eum paratum in his quæ ad militis gradum[2] pertinent. Cum igitur ista recitarentur coram duce de Bronneswyht,[3] statim absque mora quasi capitose[4] misit literas suas in Angliam ad ducem Lancastriæ sub hac forma.

Anger of the duke of Lancaster.

This is reported to the duke of Brunswick.

A challenge to single combat.

Othes par la grace de deu duc de Bronneswyk, seynour de Torynge, Fitz al grant duc de Bronneswyk, al excellent prince e noble duc de Lancastre. Sachetz qe les paroles qe vous deystes personalment de vostre propre bouche en la sovereyne eglise de Coloyne a noum seynt Pere, le Vendredy[5] procheyn apres la Pasche passee, devant le noble prince Markes de Julers e moltz des honestes chivalers e esquyers en presence des citisenez de mesme la citee malveisment ledment et deshonestment furent mentuz e de nul maner de voir. Queles choses nous meintroms par nostre corps propre e biens contre vostre propre cors sicom bon et leal seigniour estis tenuz e obligee de monstrer devers un malveis e deshoneste e mal homme. Ceste chose ferroms entre le chastel de Gynes e la seynt Omer, ou la ou nostre seignour le roy de France certeyn leu monstra. Car illeques a vous e les vous seour condist de lavantdit seygnour ordeiner ne tangeroms, sour qel chose prioms qe respons nous soyt escryt soth

Twys. col. 2604.

[1] *impedire*] impedere, MS.
[2] *gratum*, MS.
[3] *Bronneswith*, MS.
[4] *copiose*, MS.
[5] *Vendretz*, MS.

vostre seal par le portour de cestez. Donee[1] al Querou- A.D. 1352.
garon etc.

Dux Lancastriæ Henricus rescripsit ei, quod certo die ad hoc assignato paratum se fore futurum, et per dei gratiam ea quæ veritas requirit suo proprio corpore defensurum. Et paravit se et perrexit Calesiam cum l. militibus et multitudine strenua.[2] Et cum appropinquaret prope Gynes occurrit ei dominus Johannes Clermont marescallus Franciæ cum pulchra multitudine[1] virorum armatorum, et recepit eum cum honore, scilicet in quindena ante natale Domini, et fecit ei conductum cum magno honore usque ad Heddyng ;[3] ubi occurrit ei dominus Jacobus de Burbon cum valida comitiva, et conduxit eum usque Parisius, et exhibuit[4] ei quantum potuit honoris et reverentiæ et omnibus suis. Et in adventu suo Parisius occurrit ei multitudo magna procerum et magnatum, cum honore eum recipientes. Et tanta affuit multitudo extraneorum civium et communium quanta nunquam illis diebus visa[5] fuerat in illa civitate, et omnes ei summum honorem exhibuerunt in suo modo. Statimque rex Franciæ misit pro eo ut veniret ad ipsum in palatio suo, et recepit eum cum magno honore. Et rex Navernyæ cognatus ducis super omnes alios grato modo se habuit penes eum, et sapienter pro eo in omnibus agebat. Ante diem prælii proceres tractaverunt inter partes, sed minime profuerunt de concordia.

It is accepted by the duke of Lancaster.

Wals. i. 279.

He passes over to France.

Chron. Ang. 32.

He reaches Paris.

Honours paid to him.

Attempts for reconciliation.

Venit dies prælii et intraverunt listas vidente rege Franciæ et cunctis congregatis ; addictoque sacramento Dominico sacramentum præstiterunt de veritate causæ suæ, ut moris pugnantium. Tunc ascendunt dextrarios quasi parati ad pugnam. Et, ut dicebatur, non videres elegantiorem aut ferociorem militem quam

The combatants enter the lists.

[1] *Bonee*, MS.

[2] *strenua . . . . multitudine* (3 lines below) om. MS., and inserts the words after *recepit eum*.

[3] *i.e.* Hesdin.

[4] *exibuit*, MSS.

[5] *Visi*, MS.

A.D. 1352. dux de Bronneswyk extitit ante præstitum juramentum, quo facto contabuit et inpalluit vultus ejus. De quo conviciati sunt plures querelam suam non esse veram, aut nimis præsumptuosam. Et equum tulit vultu pallido et tristi, et, ut dicebatur, non habuit hillaritatem nec potestatem gratiose se habere in carpendo gladium, scutum, et lanceam, et cætera quæ ei attinebant, sed quasi attonitus et perturbatus defesse cuncta palpitat, et trina vice scutum suum evertebatur in accipiendo. Tandem de consilio amicorum suorum remisit querelam suam, et exuit se omnino de causa sua, committens se in alto et imo sub ordinatione regis Franciæ. Dux Lancastriæ semper astabat in loco suo, hillari vultu et eleganti, exspectans congressum sicuti decet militem pro veritate concertantem. Et mirabantur omnes de ejus stabili gestu. Et omnino recusavit omittere prælium; et dixit quod ante ingressum in listas forte potuit ad concordiam inclinari per tractatum de consilio amicorum suorum; sed postquam ingressi[2] sunt locum certaminis, equis ascensis, et cæteris paratis quæ tale negotium requirit, rege et magnatibus cunctisque populis congregatis pro veritate causæ discidenda, dedecus[3] et obprobrium esset duci Lancastriæ absque re facta de loco recedere in delusionem totius gentis Anglorum. Et dixit, se nolle locum exire pro quocunque tractatu aut concordia nisi haberet prælium, nec alio modo velle prælium dimittere nisi salvo honore suo et sanguinis sui, et legii domini sui regis Angliæ, et totius regni Anglorum in toto in quantum saltem in eo est, ita quod gens Anglorum per ipsum non incurreret crimen pudoris, sed salvus esset honor ejus in toto, nec[4] aliter gratiam expectaret quam ei conferre vellet deus.

Submission of the duke of Brunswick.

The duke of Lancaster will proceed with the fight.

Twys. col. 2605.

Tandem Oto dux de Bronneswyk, utut homo victus, se subegit dispositioni et ordinationi regis Franciæ

Humiliation of the duke of Brunswick.

[1] *et impalluit*] om. MS.
[2] *ingresse*, MS.
[3] *dedicus*, MS.
[4] *nec*] *vel*, MSS. But this gives a wrong sense.

asserens se nolle certamen inire nec insultum duci Lancastriæ inferre et clamium suum remittere absque aliqua conditione honoris sibi reservata, in summum honorem ducis Lancastriæ et suorum. Consiliarii ducis Lancastriæ. Rex Naverniæ. Dominus Egidius frater ejus. Comes de Pontyf. Comes Flandriæ Comes de Tankyrwyle. Comes de Salysbyry. Dominus de Clermont, marescallus Franciæ. Dominus Lodovicus de Navernia. Dominus Lodovicus de Harecourt. Dominus Johannes de Chasteleyn. Dominus Gauterius filius ejus, et plures alii. Tunc rex Franciæ fecit convivium et fecit concordiam inter duces. Deinde rex Franciæ duxit ducem Lancastriæ huc atque illuc, demonstrans ei multa delectabilia quæ ei conferre proposuit, et nil horum voluit nisi solam spinam quæ fuerat de corona Jesu Christi, quam idem dux reliquit in ecclesia sua collegiali quam fundaverat sub castro Leycestriæ.

A.D. 1352.

List of the duke of Lancaster's friends.

The duke of Lancaster accepts a thorn from Christ's crown.

Deinde cepit dux Lancastriæ licentiam de rege Franciæ, et venit in Angliam ad regem apud sanctum Albanum, ubi idem rex tenuit natale Domini, qui congratulatus est nimis de ejus adventu et gratiosa expeditione. Eodem anno papa reservavit vacationem omnium beneficiorum ecclesiasticorum et dignitatum in omni Christianitate, et mortuus est apud villam sancti Nicholai per intoxicationem, ut dicebatur. Et electus est Innocentius. Hic erat multum favorabilis regi Franciæ contra regem Angliæ. Æstas erat nimis sicca, adeo quod, pro defectu aquæ, bestiæ[1] multæ perierunt in suis pasturis, et marisci devenerunt ita sicci quod via patuit ubi non occurrit viam patuisse. Et circa festum omnium Sanctorum contigit magna tempestas ventorum discooperiens domos, ecclesias, molendinos evertens, arbores eradicans, et multa mala perpetrans. Eodem anno dominus Walterus de Bente-

Death of Pope Clement VI.

Wals. i. 276. Chron. Ang. 30.

Drought and storm.

Chron. Ang. 31.

Battle of Mauron.

[1] *bestiæ*, om. MS.

A.D. 1352. leye, gardianus de Britannia, devicit multos Francos
Valour of Walter de Bentley. venientes contra eum; quosdam occidit, quosdam cepit, et reliquos in fugam vertit: qui postea ibidem occiditur per fraudem et seditionem uxoris suæ, sicut infra plenius patebit. Wals. i. 276. Chr. Ang. 30. Avesb. 415.

Statute of labourers. Eodem anno editum est statutum de servientibus, et ab eo die pejus servierunt magistris suis de die in diem quam ante fecerant; sed per justiciarios et alios ministros emolumentum regi[1] semper accrevit, et dominigerium ad populum. Wals. i. 277. Chr. Ang. 30.

A park made for Leicester abbey. Isto anno dux Henricus dedit licentiam abbati et conventui ad includendum[2] boscum suum et inparcandum, et idem dux fecit instaurare prædictum parcum de feris defensæ Leicestrensis. Nam fecit de suo mero motu infringere palos tam de parco suo quam de dicto parco abbatis, ex utraque parte viæ quæ ducit versus villam de Anysty,[3] et claudere viam prædictam cum retibus,[4] et sic fugare feras de parco ducis in parcum abbatis, feno et avenis in via ad alliciendum feras projectis. Fecit[5] etiam idem dux capere feras in dicto parco suo, videlicet defensa Leicestrensi, cum retibus, et mittere in parcum abbatis donec ad plenum instauraretur. Twys. col. 2606. Eodem anno[6] appropriatæ sunt per dictum ducem ecclesiæ de Humberston et Hungurton ad abbathiam nostram Leicestrensem, ipso duce penes papam in propria persona mediante.

Wool-staple established in London. Eodem anno ordinatæ sunt stapulæ esse Londoniis ad magnum emolumentum regis, et magnum damnum alienigenarum et mercatorum; nam emolumentum regis per tale incrementum, ut dicebatur, continebat summam mcij. libras ultra quam aliquis rex habuerat ante. Wals. i. 278. Chr. Ang. 32. Avesb. 419.

---

[1] *regis*, A.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Boscus abbatis Leycestrensis imparcatus.*

[3] hodie *Anstey.*

[4] *ratibus*, MS.

[5] *Fecit*, om. MS.

[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Approvriatio ecclesiarum de Humberston et Hungurton.*

Anno gratiæ MCCCLIII. sederunt justiciarii apud Cestriam super le Eyre magno tempore; et in defensionem eorum ne compatriotæ eos nocerent assistebant prope in patria princeps Walliæ, Henricus dux Lancastriæ, comes Warwych, comes Stafford, pro timore patriæ. Justiciarii, dominus Ricardus de Wylughby, dominus Willelmus de Scharshull. David rex Scotiæ transit apud Novum castrum super Tynam tractare de concordia inter Anglos et Scotos. Scoti vero refutarunt[1] regem suum nisi se in toto eximeret de consilio Anglorum et similiter de eorum subjectione. Et minati sunt ei se nolle ipsum redimere nec redemptionem pro eo facere, nisi perdonaret eis omnes querelas et gravamina per eos facta, cunctaque delicta a tempore captionis ejus, et de hoc eis securitatem faceret, sin aliter, minabantur se velle alium regem super se erigere.

A.D. 1353. Apprehension concerning the session of the chief justices at Chester.

Proposals for peace by the Scotch king.

They are futile.

Jam redeamus ad ea quæ facta sunt apud Cestriam priusquam ulterius procedamus de Scotis. Illi de patria Cestriæ videntes enormitatem delictorum suorum, et se non posse pro tempore in judicio pro fortitudine adversa contendere, finem fecerunt cum principe Walliæ domino suo pro v. mille marcis et lx. solvendis infra iiij. annos proxime sequentes, et fecerunt securitatem qualem princeps petere voluerit, ea quidem conditione quod le Eyre non transiret super eos. Cumque se crederent esse quietos et liberatos in toto, justiciarii sederunt de novo super Traylbastons, et levaverunt pecuniam ultra mensuram, et multæ terræ et tenementa seisita in manus principis, et fines multas fecerunt quasi sine numero. Et in redeundo venit princeps per abbathiam de Dewleucres, et vidit ibi miram structuram fabricæ ecclesiæ quam inceperat rex bonus Edwardus, et contulit eis de mera eleemosyna sua in subventionem

Affairs at Chester.

A fine paid by the offenders to the prince of Wales.

A court of Traylbaston.

Gift of the prince of Wales to the abbey of Dieulacres.

[1] *refutarent*, MS.

A.D. 1353. operis prædicti v^c. marcas. Homo credebat sub tali summa ipsum decimasse perquisitum suum de comitatu Cestriæ. Tunc ordinatum est de consilio regis Londoniæ quod domini de plaga boriali cum comite Northampton et cum omnibus qui terras clamant in Scotia intrare deberent cum rege David in Scotiam, et comes Stafford pergere deberet in Vasconiam. Dux Lancastriæ, et[1] comes de Arundell, episcopus Norwych, dominus Bartholomæus de Borogwas, dominus Michael de Nortborgh, et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, cum multis aliis missi sunt apud Calesiam ad tractandum de concordia inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ. Tunc concessa est treuga usque ad Pascha sequens.

Claimants of Scotch lands to accompany King David thither.

Commissioners sent to Calais to treat for peace.

Nec oblivioni tradendum arbitror quod cum comes de Ewe qui captus fuerat apud Camodum, cum diu moram traxisset in Anglia, licentiatus est sub redemptione xx. mille scutorum adire patriam suam pro redemptione sua quærenda; et cum pervenisset coram magnatibus Franciæ commendavit Anglos de tanta humanitate, honore, et urbanitate[2] quæ in eis repererat, quod rex Franciæ et plures magnatum habuerunt eum suspectum, et apprehensus est et malitiose interemptus absque alia causa. Et rex Franciæ dedit terras ejus Carolo de Spayne, et fecit illum senescallum Franciæ qui ante fuerat miles simplex et pauper.

The Count d'Eu praises England. Twys. col. 2607.

He is put to death.

A.D. 1353. Anno gratiæ MCCCLIII. Isto anno fuit[3] hyems longa, dura, et frigida. Incepit ad festum sancti Nicholai et duravit usque ad festum sancti Gregorii continue; et supervenit tempestas magna et valida ventorum dilapidans cooperturas ecclesiarum, molendinos et magnas arbores, et multa mala faciens; talis tempestas diebus nostris visa non fuerat. Eodem tempore

Cold winter and strong winds.

---

[1] *et*, om. A.

[2] *urbonitate*, MS.

[3] *hyems*] Johannes, MS. having misread the word as an abbreviation.

viginti milites de Francia obtulerunt hastiludiare contra xx. de Vasconia, et assignaverunt locum in marchia inter Vasconiam et Franciam, et fecerunt securitatem altera pars ad alteram locum non dimittere dummodo esset unus qui vellet adversarium hastiludiando occupare; et tam fortiter et diu officium suum exsecuti[1] sunt quod de parte Francorum non remanserunt vivi nisi tantum tres: ex altera parte multi vulnerati sunt, et nobilis miles dominus de Pomers etiam mortuus est. Dominus Carolus de Bloys qui captus fuerat in Britannia per dominum Thomam de Dagworthe[2] transivit in patriam suam sub hostagiis quærere pecuniam redemptionis suæ, et venit ad insulam de Tristrem[3] cum securitate facta causa repausationis, et spatiatus est, et cum vidisset infirmiora patriæ postea supervenit cum ccc. viris armatis, et clam occiderunt quosque inibi invenerunt, quasi miles perfidus et infidelis et ibi se tenuit.

A.D. 1353.

Tournament between French and Gascons.

Charles of Blois goes to seek funds for his ransom.

Avesb. 418.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLIIII. filius Rogeri de Mortuo mari factus est comes de Marchia; et rex redonavit ei terras patris sui quas contulerat comiti de Salisbyry[4] post forisfacturam Rogeri de Mortuo mari et ejus mortem. Eodem tempore comes de Warwyk clamavit dominium terrarum de Gower in Wallia, quas dominus le Moubray possederat[5] toto tempore a conquestu Walliæ, under orta est lis et discordia inter partes. Tandem rex de favore fecit inquisitionem Londoniis de militibus et serjanciis dictæ patriæ; et per inquisitionem prædictam datæ sunt terræ comiti de Warwyk.

A.D. 1354.

Roger Mortimer theyounger made earl of March.

Claims of the earl of Warwick to lands in Wales.

Eo tempore capta est treuga inter Angliam et Franciam, Vasconiam et Britanniam, usque ad Pascha proximo sequens, ad tractandum medio tempore de pace competenti; et missi sunt apud Avinionem ad papam

Truce between England and France.

[1] *exequuti*, MSS.

[2] *Bagworth*, MS.

[3] L'isle de Tristan pres de la baye de Douarnenez. *Histoire de Bretagne* (Morice), i. 283.

[4] *Salesbury*, MS.

[5] *possiderat*, MSS.

A.D. 1354. dux Lancastriæ, comes de Arundel, episcopus Norwycensis, et [1] plures magnates. Cum autem ambassiatores [2] Franciæ, videlicet dux Burboniæ, comes de Armenak et alii, dedixerunt cunctos articulos ad quos assensum præbuerant et convenerant apud Calesiam, et sub brevi eloquio, nullam concordiam amplecti volebant nisi ad suam propriam voluntatem, et dixerunt, "Se paratos " et satis potentes ad tuendam partem suam contra " Anglicos cunctis diebus seculi, et sic abinvicem " recesserunt." Nam primo petierunt Franci, Quod rex Angliæ omitteret arma Franciæ. Item, quod rex Angliæ faceret homagium regi Franciæ pro Vasconia. Respondit dux Lancastriæ, Quod arma Franciæ quæ tulerat de consilio hominum suorum legiorum de Francia non omitteret pro quoquam vivente. Item, rex Angliæ non faceret homagium homini de quo clamat superior esse jure hereditario ex parte matris suæ. Quod si aliam viam pacis rationabilem capere vellent, rex Angliæ tanquam pacis amator amplecti desiderat.

Negotiations for peace fall through.

Chr. Ang. 31.

Demands of the French, and the English answer.

Twys. col. 2608.

Henricus [3] dux Lancastriæ, et cum eo comes de Arundel et cæteri venerunt Avinionem [4] in vigilia natalis Domini cum cc. equis, de quibus fuerunt xxxij. cum hernesiis cooperti, et moram traxit ibidem per vj. septimanas cum pleno honore, et eo appropinquante ad civitatem, occurrerunt ei de episcopis, proceribus, civibus, et communibus ad numerum ij. mille equorum, et tanta extitit turba obviantium, quod ab hora diei tertia usque ad horam vesperarum vix potuerunt pontem villæ pertransire. Et cum intrasset civitatem regratiabatur cunctis, et direxit iter suum usque palatium papæ. Quo cum pervenisset extra portam, descendit ab equo, et ingressus ad papam cum reverentia

The duke of Lancaster, with others, goes to Avignon.

Avesb. 421.

Honours paid to him on his arrival.

---

[1] *et*, twice in MS.

[2] In both MSS. *bassiatores*, the *am* being lost through the termination of the previous word.

[3] *Habere*, MS.

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Quam dux Lancastriæ venit Avinionem.*

debita, prout bene sciebat, salutavit eum; et ut brevitas temporis exigebat mutuo colloquentes, abiit[1] ad hospitium suum. Hillaritas dapium et poculentorum omnibus venire volentibus et refici cupientibus semper parata erat quamdiu ibi moram traxit, et talem providentiam ibi fecerat quod tota curia mirabatur. Providentia vini ante adventum suum in cellaria sua erat c. doliorum. Et tantam humanitatem omnibus exhibuit, et præcipue papæ et cardinalibus, quod dicebant, Non esse ei parem in toto mundo. Post recessum suum de curia Franci circumvenerunt eum insidiis ut eum caperent, sed deo adjuvante per multas cautelas evasit, et venit in Angliam cum honore. Eodem anno natus est regi filius Thomas[2] de Wodstoke qui postea factus est dux Gloucestriæ, et duxit uxorem filiam comitis Herefordiæ[3] seniorem: comes vero Derbeyæ ut infra patebit, duxit[4] alteram sororem juniorem, inter quas divisa est hereditas.

A.D. 1354.

Great festivity during his stay.

Attempt of the French to make him prisoner.

Wals. i. 280. Chr. Ang. 34. Avesb. 422.

Birth of Thomas of Woodstock.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLV. rex Franciæ Johannes Valoys misit marescallum Dondena cum viij^{c} viris armatis in Scotiam in nocumentum Anglorum et subsidium Scotorum, et ordinati sunt manere certo loco super marchia; sed nescientes vivere secundum morem patriæ, cito repatriaverunt. Post Pentecosten rex tenuit concilium apud Londonias, et misit in Vasconiam contra Francos principem Walliæ filium suum, comitem de Warwyk, comitem Oxoniæ, comitem de Suffolk[5] cum viij^{c} viris armatis, m. iiij^{c} sagittariis, et applicuerunt in portu de Geronde; et magnates terræ tam episcopi quam alii occurrerunt eis obviam læti de adventu eorum, et receperunt eos cum honore, et obtulerunt se principi tanquam domino suo legio

A.D. 1355.

French send soldiers to help the Scots.

Council in London, and an expedition to Gascony.

[1] *abbiit*, A.

[2] On both margins is *Nativitas Thomæ de Wodstok.*

[3] *Hertford*, MS.

[4] *dicit*, MS.

[5] *Soffolk*, MSS.

A.D. 1355. cum bonis [1] et catallis in omnibus suis agendis vivere et mori cum illo si tamen moram trahere vellet cum eis ad eorum defensionem, et erant parati cum eo.

Marvellous appearance in the sky.

In æstate sequenti apparuerunt duo [2] vexilla in firmamento, unum rubium et aliud azurium, et in multis partibus regni videbantur a pluribus, et congrediebantur simul alterum adversus alterum rebellando; tandem vexillum rubium debellavit azurium et prostravit ad terram sub se, ut videbatur. Ad translationem sancti Thomæ rex Edwardus transit [3] cum xxxviij. magnis [4] navibus de Londoniis per Tamesiam ad les Downes. Dux Lancastriæ Henricus erat cum eo, et habebant secum xv. mille virorum armatorum, de sagittariis ij. mille. Et in eodem loco fecerunt xxvij. milites, videlicet ij. filios regis, Leonellum et Johannem de Gaunt; ij. filios comitis Warwych, Guidonem et Thomam, filium comitis Oxoniensis, dominum le Mowbray, et alios plures filios dominorum regni. Deinde transierunt in Franciam per maritima Normanniæ remigantes in mari, volentes loqui cum rege Naverniæ prout ante promiserunt duci Lancastriæ obviare eis in aliquo certo loco et tenere cum eis. Nam rex Naverniæ ea de causa venerat ad castellum suum in Normannia, et rex Franciæ exploraverat eum ut eum caperet propter mortem Caroli de Hispania. Sed quando rex Franciæ cognovit quod rex Naverniæ percepisset propositum suum, misit ad eum reginam Franciæ et alios magnos de regno qui eum excusarent, et promisit regi Naverniæ quod nunquam eum impechiaret [5] pro morte dicti Caroli de Hispania, nec de aliqua alia felonia sibi et suis illata, sed gauderet et teneret libere et quiete quicquid

Wals. i. 280. Chr. Ang. 33. Twys. col. 2609.

King Edward sets out for France.

New knights.

They touch at the Norman coast.

Negotiations between the kings of France and Navarre.

---

[1] *bonis et*] twice over in MS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Duo vexilla apparuerunt in firmamento.*

[3] Here on both margins is *Rex transit in Franciam.*

[4] *magna*, MS.

[5] *eum*, wrongly repeated here in MS.

haberet in Normannia, sive castella, sive quæcumque alia, sine impedimento vel contradictione regis Franciæ, vel nocumento suorum; et ipse fidem adhibens eorum blandis promissis nequiter deceptus est, ut infra patebit. A.D. 1355.

Troubles in Ireland.

Eodem tempore Scoti et Hibernici adunati[1] intraverunt[2] Anglicam Hiberniam, et cœperunt destruere patriam in circuitu per x. leucas. Et boriales Hibernici, qui de rege Angliæ tenent, congregati dederunt eis prælium, et occiderunt de illis ij. millia et[3] dccc. et reportaverunt de illis prædam magnam et lucrum de his quæ rapuerunt de Anglis. Eodem tempore congregati sunt Scoti[4] in iij.[5] aciebus, et proposuerunt intrare quidam per Carliolum, quidam per Berwycum. Anglici paraverunt se obviare eis in prælium. Et cum percepissent quod Angli disponerent se pugnare cum eis, cœperunt tractare de treuga, et concessa est usque ad festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ proxime sequentis.

Scots propose to enter the north of England.

A truce.

Et plures magnates aquilonares[6] transierunt cum rege apud Calesiam ad festum sancti Michaelis sequentis. In ista[7] æstate grassavit[8] quædam enormis infirmitas acsi esset de temptatione malorum spirituum. Nam gentes insanierunt[9] et facti sunt dementes toto ubique regno in villis et campis; et sic amentes cucurrerunt ad silvas et loca densa[10] abscondere se tanquam feræ fugientes consortia hominum, et quidam currebant in campis ad villas et de villis ad campos, nunc hic, nunc illuc, quasi de se non curantes, et vix potuerunt comprehendi; et quidam cultellis vulnerabant et dentibus laniabant ipsos capere volentes. Et multi capti

Mysterious mental maladies prevalent.

---

[1] On margin of A. only is *Scoti et Hibernici adunati.*

[2] *intraverunt*, om. MS.

[3] *et*, om. A.

[4] *Scoti*] om. MS.

[5] *iij*] tribus, MS.

[6] *aliquilonares*, MSS.

[7] *ista*] om. MS.

[8] *crassavit*, MSS.

[9] Here on margin of A. only is *Homines insanierunt.*

[10] *densosa*, MSS.

A.D. 1355. Sad effects thereof.

ducti sunt ad ecclesiam et ibi vincti jacebant donec a deo relevationem acciperent; et in quibusdam ecclesiis videres x. aut xij. alicubi plures alicubi pauciores, quod gravis dolor erat intueri passionem eorum.

The affairs of France.

Nunc redeamus ad regem Franciæ qui congregavit grandem exercitum et disposuit se venire versus Calesiam multum elatus et audacior, eo quod subtraxerat regem Naverniæ et ejus potestatem morantem in Normannia.

In the papal dominions some Friars Minor declare Pope John XXII. a heretic.

Nec prætereunda arbitror quæ eodem tempore in curia[1] Romana acciderunt. Erant quidam fratres de ordine Minorum in illis partibus qui sæpius predicabant et pronunciabant papam Johannem xxij. hæreticum et excommunicatum, et omnes successores suos, et quod nullum jus haberent nec potestatem sancti Petri edere constitutionem contra ordinem sancti Francisci aut in præjudicium. Deinde capti sunt, et quæsitum est ab eis, Utrum papa posset mutare habitum eorum et transferre eos ad ordinem Prædicatorum. Responderunt, Quod non. Item, si papa posset dispensare cum eis habere granaria et cellaria pro stauro reservando. Respondent, Quod non. [2]Item, Si crederent quod papa Johannes antedictus caput esset ecclesiæ Christi. Dixerunt, Quod non.[2] Item, Si crederent decretalem quam papa Johannes edidit quæ incepit Quorundam etc. esse bonam, et rationabilem, et fidei orthodoxæ[3] convenientem. Dixerunt, Quod non. Sed dixerunt illam decretalem[4] voluntarie factam in destructionem pauperum[5] fratrum, et in condemnationem iiij^or.[6] fratrum arsorum apud Marsiliam, et in despectum paupertatis Jesu Christi et

Wals. i. 278. Chr. Ang. 31. Twys. col. 2610.

They are arrested and examined.

Their answers.

---

[1] Here on the margin of A. only is *De fratribus minoribus succensis igne in Curia.*

[2] *Item, si crederent . . . . Quod non*] om. MS.

[3] *ortodoxæ*, MSS.

[4] *decretam*, MS.

[5] *pauperum . . . . condemnationem*] om. MS.

[6] *quatuor*, MS.

sancti Francisci. Item, Si crederent quod illi quatuor fratres meruerunt per mortem suam. Dixerunt ipsos gloriosos sanctos coram Jesu Christo et sancto Francisco. Et plures tales opiniones prædicabant et asseverabant contra papalem dignitatem et manutenebant usque ad mortem, unde adjudicati sunt ignis supplicio; sed ante combustionem unus eorum palam emisit talem confessionem. A.D. 1355. They are condemned to be burned.

Ego Johannes indignus servus Jesu Christi et sancti Francisci profiteor[1] et assero papam Johannem hæreticum et sanctæ ecclesiæ inimicum pro hæresibus quas fecit in iiij. constitutionibus et fovebat. Prima incipit,[2] Ad conditorem. Secunda, Cum inter nonnullos. Tertia, Quia quorundam. Quarta, Quia ubi reprobus. Quæ sunt aperte contra sacram scripturam et sanctam vitam apostolorum. Et ego Johannes confiteor et assero credere et tenere cunctis christianis Benedictum papam xij. et Clementem vj. et Innocentium vj. successores antedicti Johannis, qui dictas hæreses foverant et pronunciaverant, vixisse hæreticos et excommunicatos, et de omni gradu dignitatis privabiles, et dignos pœna omnibus talibus ordinata. Et idem dico de omnibus prælatis et omnibus aliis qui ordinati sunt defendere veritatem sanctæ matris ecclesiæ et fidem orthodoxam,[3] et de omnibus aliis cujuscumque status, gradus, dignitatis vel conditionis fuerint. Et in tali confessione vitam finierunt per combustionem ignis ad laudem et honorem sui ordinis ut credebant. Nam illi tenuerunt et adhuc superstites tenent quod nullus papa deberet eligi nisi de ordine fratrum Minorum. Confession of one of them, maintaining all they had before taught. They are burned.

Ad regem Angliæ redeamus. Cum igitur rex Edwardus longo tempore alta maris palpitasset, nunciatum est ei quod rex Naverniæ concordatus est cum English affairs.

[1] *protifior*, MS.
[2] *incepit*, MS.
[3] *ortodoxam*, MSS.

A.D. 1355. rege Franciæ, ideoque disposuit se redire ad Calesiam. Et ibi fuerunt Franci congregati et jacebant ex omni parte ultra numerum expectantes eum: et dicebant se velle inire cum eo bellum quandocunque veniret et vellet. Die Animarum rex transivit cum iij. mille viris armatis, et mille sagittariis, et sic de omni genere populi x. mille, et venit ad Gynes, et inde ad sanctum Omerum, deinde ad Hetyn.[1] Rex Franciæ recessit et fugit Parisius, et fecit prosternere omnes pontes post eum, et victualia et cætera bona delata sunt ad civitates et castella, et ita defuerunt victualia Anglis. Tunc necesse erat redire ad Calesiam. Quo cum pervenisset nunciatum est regi quod villa de Berwyk capta esset per Scotos, sed in redeundo Calesiam dederunt patriam flammæ et incendio.

King Edward hears of the accord between the king of Navarre and the king of France.

He is minded to attack the French. But they flee.

He returns to Calais, and learns that Berwick has been taken by the Scots.

Wals. i. 280. Chr. Ang. 34. Avesb. 431.

Qualiter[2] capta sit Berwyk extat narratio. Scoti absconderunt se in uno bosco, et fugare fecerunt unam prædam bestiarum prope villam de Berwyk, et illi de villa exierunt rapere prædam ab illis et sequebantur; et subito venerunt super[3] Scotos, qui ex utraque occurrentes, ceperunt eos et occiderunt, paucis de minoribus valentibus reservatis. Et in crastino cum custodes murorum sopori[4] se dedissent miserunt scalas ad muros et subito introierunt, et invenerunt eos improvisos, invaserunt et occiderunt quos invenerunt. Rex igitur festinavit et venit ad Novum castrum.

Story of its capture.

Twys. col. 2611.

King Edward comes to Newcastle.

The Prince of Wales in Gascony.

Princeps Walliæ nunc est in Vasconia, et peragrat fines Franciæ cum l. mille virorum armatorum, de pedalibus absque numero de Anglicis et Vasconicis. Et capit villas et castella ad placitum suum, et patriam sub tributo et subjectione ex omni parte subjecit;

Avesb. 424.

---

[1] Probably the same direction was taken as is before described, see p. 71, and *Hesdin* is the place intended.

[2] On the margin of A. only is *Berwyk capta.*

[3] *super*] twice in A.

[4] *sopori*] om. MS. But a space is left as though the word had been illegible to the scribe.

Vasconia manet lætabunda, quia non est qui eam inquietet. A.D. 1355.

Cum igitur rex Edwardus venisset Berwicum, tanta potestas Anglorum occurrit ei undique, quod hi qui in villa fuerunt, videlicet c. xxx. viri, rogaverunt regem quod possent[1] reddere villam, et habere vitam et membra et rex concessit. Die Epiphaniæ Edwardus Baliol, qui clamavit jus coronæ Scotiæ, donavit totum jus suum Leonello filio regis Angliæ Edwardi cunctis qui aderant intuentibus. In crastino conversionis sancti Pauli rex Edwardus intravit in Scotiam[2] cum iij. aciebus. Qui cum venisset apud Rokesborg,[3] multi de magnatibus Scotorum venerunt et habuerunt colloquium cum rege Edwardo quasi vellent venire ad fidem regis; et super hoc assignatus est dies de[4] responso. Et rex cum populo suo quievit in pace per viij. dies, at illi medio tempore cariaverunt[5] bona sua ultra mare Scoticum. Tunc Willelmus Duglas[6] misit responsum per literas suas regi Edwardo se nolle omnino venire ad pacem ejus; et super hoc rex carpit iter versus Ednysborg[7] cum iij. aciebus et destruxerunt patriam per viij. leucas in circuitu, et succenderunt igni et flamma. Scoti abstulerunt cuncta victualia ita quod Angli non habuerunt potum nisi solum recentem aquam per totam quindenam, et iccirco redierunt. Scoti autem semper affuerunt a latere et tergo, capientes et interficientes quotquot de exercitu foriare exibant. Henricus dux Lancastriæ præibat ulterius in Scotiam et intellexit Scotos se parare ad prælium, et nunciavit regi, qui regressus est festinanter cum paucis de Mewrose ubi Angli hospitati

Wals. i. 281. Chr. Ang. 34. Avesb. 450. Avesb. 451.

When king Edward arrived before Berwick the Scots offer to surrender.

Edward Baliol resigns his claim to the Scottish crown.

King Edward's progress into Scotland.

He makes his way to Edinburgh.

The Scots leave the country bare.

Capture of the English in Ettrick forest.

[1] On both margins is *Berwyc reddita regi Edwardo.*

[2] On margin of A. only is *Rex Edwardus in Scotia.*

[3] *Rokesburgh*, MS.

[4] *de*] et, MS.

[5] *et habuerunt*] add MS.

[6] *Douglas*, MS.

[7] *Edwysburgh*, MS.

A.D. 1355. fuerant, et cæteri qui Angliam petebant capti sunt in foresta de Etryk[1] per Willelmum Duglas.[2] Avesb. 456.

A.D. 1356. Aids demanded from the clergy but not granted.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLVI. rex habuit concilium Londoniis, et petiit de clero decimam sexennalem[3] ad solvendum in iij. annis, sed non concessit ea vice nisi unicam decimam. Post Pentecostem dux Lancastriæ et[4] dux Britanniæ cum populo grandi perrexerunt in Britanniam. Sed primo transierunt in Normanniam super terras regis Naverniæ, quem rex Franciæ per fraudem carceri mancipaverat eo quod antea adhæserat regi Angliæ. Et primo apud Mountebrygge in insula Constantyn, et inde usque ad Carantan, et circuivit terram undequaque ad placitum et ad castellum quod vocatur Pount Dondemer[5] regis Naverniæ, quod erat obsessum grandi numero Francorum. Qui cum audissent ducis adventum, dimissis machinis et multis aliis necessariis fugerunt. Et instauravit illud victualibus, et viris, et aliis necessariis. Et inde transiit ad Bretolliam regis etiam Naverniæ, quæ erat obsessa a Francis, et amovit obsidionem et victualibus ditavit. Exinde processit ad civitatem Vernolliam quæ dicitur una clavis Normanniæ, civitas robusta et fortis, cujus una pars est in Normannia, altera in dulci Francia, et cepit eam per insultum eodem die. Deinde fecit insultum ad castellum eodem die usque ad noctem, et die secundo et die tertio usque ad tertiam et tunc reddiderunt illud; habuit namque unum hordicium forte et bene provisum, cum quo ad tales insultus operatus est mirabilia in prosternendo muros castrorum. In crastino nunciatum est ei quod rex Franciæ appropinquaverat et prope erat ad v. leucas. Et

The duke of Lancaster and the duke of Britanny in Normandy.

Avesb. 461.

They relieve Breteuil.

Twys. col. 2612.

Capture of Verneuil.

Rumoured approach of the French king.

[1] *Etrik*, MS.
[2] *Douglas*, MS.
[3] *sexannalem*, MSS.
[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Dux Lancastriæ in Britannia et Francia.*
[5] *i.e.*, Pont Audemer.

continuo exivit de villa in campum, et disposuit populum suum in acies paratus ad prælium. Et moram fecit in campo donec audiret quod rex Franciæ appropinquare nec pugnare vellet. Interim rex Franciæ misit ad eum duos clarigarios[1] armorum dicens, Quod multo tempore giraverat terras suas devastando, et multa gravamina populo suo inferendo, videbatur regi quod idem dux quæreret bellum, et libenter impleretur. Ad hæc dux Lancastriæ respondit, dicens, Se et suos socios ad illas partes pro quibusdam negotiis adventasse, et bene pro parte, regratietur deus, prosecutos[2] fuisse, et jam erat regrediens illicubi quo etiam habebat aliqua facere per viam, et si rex Franciæ vel aliqui suorum ipsum impedire conarentur ipse paratus erat ipsos vi repellere et negotia itineris sui continuare. Et in abscondito nil facere proposuit, sed ut rex Franciæ qua via ipse tenderet scire posset ipse lucernam post se accenderet. Et rex quievit illum persequi quia consultus est[3] ut ejus regresssum exspectaret et etiam donec voluntatem suam de principe Walliæ adimpleret, credidit namque ambos subpeditasse. Et sic rex regressus tetendit iter suum versus principem. Dux Lancastriæ movit se versus Argentan,[4] usque Turri, et usque ad abbathiam sancti Fremundi, ubi transivit aquam nimis periculosam, Franci vero pontem destruxerant. Positique erant viri qui[5] locum pontis custodirent lxvij.[6] viri armati cum pluribus aliis; quibus occurrerunt antequam exercitus Anglorum adveniret xviij. viri Angli et occiderunt et vulneraverunt, ita quod nullus eorum abire valuit. Abinde movit se dux ad Carantan, deinde ad Montebourgh.

A.D. 1356.

Message of the king.

The duke's reply.

The king should know which way he went by the light left behind him.

The King does not pursue.

Further movements of the Duke of Lancaster.

His continuous success.

[1] In A., below *clarigarios* is written *heroudes* in a contemporary hand.

[2] *prosequitur*, MS.

[3] *est*] om. MS.

[4] *Argentaun*, MS.

[5] *qui*] twice in MS.

[6] *lxxij.*] MS.

A.D. 1356. Et nullus dies pertransiit in quo non caperent fortiletta et prisonarios.

The King of France goes against the Prince of Wales.

Medio tempore rex Franciæ divertit aciem versus principem Walliæ, et subito tenuit se cum exercitu suo quasi per unam leucam ab exercitu principis. Cardinales venerant pro concordia, sed rex Franciæ renuit pacem vel treugam habere nisi princeps redderet prisonarios quos ceperat itinerando. Princeps Walliæ Edwardus primogenitus regis Edwardi tertii in crastino decollationis sancti

Movements of the Prince of Wales.

Johannis [1] in autumno movit se de Burdegalo in Vasconia, et equitavit per Ageneys, Lymosine, Haluerne,[2] Beryn, et super aquam de Leyre in Neuers quæ est inter Dalneys ex una parte, et venit juxta Peyters,[3]

Wals. i. 281. Chr. Ang. 35.

Captures made.

ubi initum est bellum xix. die Septembris. Die Sabbati ante bellum isti capti sunt, comes [4] de Juny, comes de Usur, marescallus Burgoniæ, et ccxl. viri armati capti et interfecti. Captum est castellum de

Food begins to fail in the prince's army.

Romerentyn xv°. die ante bellum: in quo captus est dominus de Brun, dominus Brussegardus [5] et xl.[6] viri armati. Victualia cœperunt deficere in exercitu principis in tantum quod oportebat eos congredi [7] in bello aut præ vecordia tergum inimicis vertere. Et hæc inter se videntes firmaverunt sibi cor validum ne quis eorum se redderet regi Franciæ, sed potius elegerunt mori una die pro jure domini sui regis Angliæ [8] una voce et unanimi assensu compacti sunt. Et signaverunt se signaculo sanctæ crucis, deo se et causam suam commendantes, parati in bellum.

Avesb. 471.

Twys. col. 2613.

---

[1] *Johannis*, om. A., but it is added on the margin.

[2] Halverne, Beryn; *i.e.*, *Auvergne* and *Berry*.

[3] *Peuters*, MS.

[4] Called in Walsingham *Comites de Aunser et de Synny*. Chron. Angl. gives the former name *Amiser*.

[5] Called *dominus de Croun et Bursegaund* in Walsingham.

[6] *xl.*] iiij^{x}. MS.

[7] MS. inserts *non* before *congredi* wrongly.

[8] *uno*, MS.

Wals. i. 282.

A.D. 1356.

Et diviserunt se in tres acies. Comes de Warwych habuit primam aciem[1] et ex parte Francorum duo marescalli Franciæ[2] habuerunt primam aciem. Secundam aciem dominus Dolfynus de Vienna cum fratre suo duce de Orlyons cum majori fortitudine. In tertia acie erat rex Franciæ cum ij. mille de[3] electioribus armatis totius Franciæ. Dominus Galfridus Charneys bajulavit vexillum rubium quod erat mortis signiferum. Rex Franciæ edidit præceptum ne quis Anglicus vitæ reservaretur solo principe excepto. Cardinales ante prælium ascenderunt in quendam montem prope ut viderent eventum belli. Jam prima acies Franciæ congreditur cum comite Warwych, sed cito per sagittarios subpeditati sunt. Et Marescallus Clermont occisus est et multi alii ut infra dicetur. Comes de Warwych[4] insequebatur[5] fugientes et quosdam occidit et quosdam cepit prisonarios. Medio tempore venit secunda acies Francorum et miscuerunt cum principe Walliæ, et pugnaverunt nimis acriter infra unam sepem, et Anglici devenerunt multum lassi præ gravedine certaminis, et arma eorum nimis lacerata. Et tam fortis et dura extitit pugna quod sagittarii præ defectu sagittarum sustulerunt lapides, et cum gladiis et lanceis, et quicquid possent arripere pugnaverunt, et sic se corde sagaci mirabile[6] dictu defenderunt; sed tandem sicut deus voluit Franci fugam arripuerunt, et dum Anglici starent lassi se refocillantes et sperantes victoriam reportasse de suis inimicis omnibus, supervenit Johannes rex Franciæ cum ingenti fortitudine aciem dirigens versus principem qui paucos ea hora secum

Arrangements for the battle on both sides.

No Englishman to be spared save the Prince of Wales.

Chron. Ang. 35.

Victory of the troops under the Earl of Warwick.

Severe fighting of the Prince of Wales' soldiers.

The King of France renews the fight.

[1] Here after *aciem* MS. has *Dominus Dolfynus de Vyenna* wrongly. These words occur just below.

[2] *Franciæ* is written above the line in A.

[3] Here on the margin of A. is *Bellum de Peyters.*

[4] *Warwik*, MS.

[5] *insegrebatur*, MS.

[6] *mirabili*, MSS.

A.D. 1356 habebat, quia laborabant super inimicos fugientes. Dum igitur cœpissent Franci aciem miscere supervenit comes de Warewych[1] rediens de fugatione inimicorum cum integro exercitu suo, et opposuit se a latere exercitus regis Franciæ et strenue pugnaverunt, et sic per gratiam dei et non humana virtute victoria cessit principi et prælii[2] reportavit principatum, et rex captus est et filius ejus Philippus, junior, comes de Peyters et magnates plurimi.

Timely succour from the Earl of Warwick.

Wals. i. 283. Chr. Ang. 36.

Regales.

Lists of prisoners.

Dominus Johannes de Valoys Rex Franciæ.
Philippus filius ejus adolescens.
Comes de Pountyf.
Dominus Jacobus Burbon.
Comes de Eawe.
Comes de Tankirvyll.[4]

Avesb.[3] 470.

Comites.

Comes de Aunservill.
Comes de Ventadurn.
Comes de Baleferroynagg.
Comes de Vendoyn.
Comes de Russye.[5]
Comes de Waudemont.
Comes de Aumartyn.
Comes de Nesowe.

Clerici.

Episcopus de Gynes.[6]
Chastell de Enposte.[7]

---

[1] *Warwich*, MS.
[2] *præliis*, MS.
[3] The names in these lists are nearly the same as in Avesbury, but the orthography varies exceedingly.
[4] *Tankyrvill*, MS.
[5] *Russey*, MS.
[6] *Geyns*, A.
[7] *Duposte* (?) in A.

Twys. col. 2614.

A.D. 1356.

Vicecomes de Nerbon.
Marescallus Dondena.[1]
Filius Comitis de Assure.
Filius Comitis de Wendemer.
Comes de Bealmont.
Dominus de Richeflaundres.[2]
Dominus de Mountagu.
Dominus de seynt Agar.
Dominus de Auleneye.
Senescallus de seynt Omer.
Dominus Ricardus Dars.
Dominus Mauricius de Maynet.
Capitanus de Peyters.
Dominus de la Tour.
Dominus de Bewall.
Dominus de Mangeleyre.
Dominus de Blaunceo.
Dominus de Alnoye.
Dominus de Dyvelyn.

Et præter istos ij. mille personæ de quibus mille homines armati.

Nomina occisorum in bello.

Avesb. 469.

Distinguished persons among the slain.

Dux de Bulloun.
Dominus Robertus de Aras.
Dux de Cateneys.
Constabularius Franciæ.
Vicecomes de Talouns.
Marescallus Clermont.
Vicecomes de Brusse.
Vicecomes Lychedard.
Dominus Reginaldus de Pouncz.[3]
Dominus Galfridus Charneys.
Dominus Eustachius de Rippelmond.

[1] *Dendena*, MS.
[2] *Rycheflaundres*, MS.
[3] *Poyntz*, MS.

A.D. 1356. Dominus de Lyle.
Dominus Willelmus Johar.
Dominus Robertus Chaungger.
Dominus castelli Seylon.
Dominus de Monlaon.
Dominus Argention.
Dominus Johannes Saunsiver.[1]
Dominus Lodowycus Brok.
Filius domini Mountagu.[2]
Et præter istos ij. mille virorum armatorum mortui, et de aliis ccc.[3]

Sabbato ante bellum capti.

Prisoners captured on the previous Saturday.

Comes de Juny.
Comes de Usure.
Marescallus de Burgoyn.
Et de viris armatis mortui et capti ccxl. Avesb. 471.

Prisoners made at Romorentin.

Die xv°. ante bellum castellum de Romorentyn captum est, Dominus de Broun, Dominus Bricius[4] Gauth[4] et xl. viri armati.

Total of slain and prisoners.

Summa[5] occisorum in bello . . ij. m. ccc.
Sum. prisonariorum captorum ij. m. d.

The English return towards Bordeaux.

Anglici se receperunt prope locum in uno bosco, et ibi hospitati sunt illa nocte. In crastino numeraverunt mortuos quos spoliatos et nudos reperierunt. Wals. i. 283. Deinde redierunt cum prisonariis suis versus Burdegalum, laudantes et glorificantes deum qui tanta Chr. Ang. 36. miracula operatus est in eis. Concussum est hoc

---

[1] *Saunsure*, MS.
[2] *Montagu*, MS.
[3] *iij^{c}.*] MS.
[4] Called above *Brussegardus*, in one word. See p. 88.
[5] On both margins is *Summa occisorum et prisonariorum.*

Twys. col. 2615.

prælium circa festum S. Mathæi apostoli. In exercitu principis Walliæ mdccc.[1] de viris armatis. Sagittarii mcccc. In exercitu regis Franciæ de omni populo xl. millia. Post festum sancti Michaelis videns dux Lancastriæ quod non posset inimicos equitando perturbare hieme superveniente, descendit cum exercitu suo ad villam de Reynes, et circa festum omnium Sanctorum cœpit obsidere[2] eam ad magnum detrimentum populi sui; nam multum damnum propter hiemis algorem ibi perpessi sunt. Tunc cœpit papa tractare de concordia inter reges cum effectu.

A.D. 1356

Numbers of the two armies.

The Duke of Lancaster besieges Rennes.

Wals. i. 283. Chr. Ang. 36.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLVII. Edwardus princeps Walliæ venit in Angliam ducens secum Johannem regem Franciæ; et applicuit apud Plymmouthe in vigilia sancti Johannis ante portam Latinam. Et exinde ductus est Londonias per mediam civitatem. Et tantus apparatus arcuum, et sagittarum, et de omni genere armorum monstratus est in qualibet strata Londoniensi ubi rex Franciæ adventare deberet, quod mirum est dictu, nec ab antiquo tale quid visum aut auditum. Civesque obviaverunt ei ultra mille equestres suo meliori modo,[3] quodlibet artificium simul vestiti in una secta. Facta sunt hæc die Mercurii proxima ante festum Pentecostes. Concessa est regi quintadecima biennalis. Et rex relaxavit et condonavit omnes felonias, evasiones, et fugitiones.

A.D. 1357.

Return of the Prince of Wales with King John as his prisoner.

Wals. i. 283. Chr. Ang. 37

Entry into London.

Eodem tempore orta est discordia inter clerum et fratres Minores de quibusdam opinionibus; et utraque pars appellavit ad curiam Romanam: unde magister Ricardus episcopus Armachanus[4] transivit cum pluribus aliis clericis ad curiam in defensionem cleri. Et idem Ricardus Armachanus habuit subsidium de clero,

Grants to the King, numerous pardons.

Dispute between the clergy and the Friars Minor.

[1] Here in MS. is wrongly inserted from below *Post festum Sancti Michaelis videns dux Lancastriæ quod.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Dux Lancastriæ obsidet villam de Reynes.*

[3] *modo*] mori, MS.

[4] *Armacanus*, MSS. both here, but not below.

A.D. 1357. et abbas S. Albani erat procurator ejus. Et quia papa semper favebat Francis, et eos fovebat in quantum potuit contra Anglos, et propter miraculum quod deus tribuerat victoriam tam paucis viris contra tantam multitudinem Francorum, scriptum erat in pluribus locis in Vienna et in multis aliis locis, Ore est le Pape devenu Franceys e[1] Jesu devenu Engleys. Ore serra veou qe[2] fra plus, ly Pape ou Jesus. Et scriptum erat in derisionem. Die Lunæ ante festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ venit unus cardinalis ad regem Londonias sub magna festinatione, et dixit ad regem, Domine, consensum erat apud Burdegalum quod dux Lancastriæ amoveret obsidionem de villa de Reynes, quæ jam extat[3] in magno periculo, et cuncta quæ in ea sunt. Nunc autem si tractare debeamus de concordia faciatis amoveri obsidionem. Rex igitur misit literas ad ducem Lancastriæ quod sub forisfactura vitæ et membrorum et quicquid forisfacere posset, ut desisteret ab obsidione[4] et domum remearet quam citius posset; similiter rex Franciæ misit ad suos ut omnia sustinerent in pace. Et dum ista sic tractarentur venerunt Londonias[5] duo alii cardinales, scilicet cardinalis Pagorensis, et cardinalis Ronensis, et ille alius cardinalis. Qui cum venissent ante regem apud Westmonasterium quasi in apparatu imperiali et fero vultu tanquam leonis, adoraverunt eum proni in terram, et sic mutuo alterutris salutatis, regeque in cathedra residente, unus eorum sumpto themate cœpit prædicare. Thema. Honor regis judicium diligit. Et post sermonem cœperunt loqui de negotio itineris sui, videlicet Quod rex Edwardus haberet omnes terras antecessorum suorum dum tamen pax et concordia inter reges mediaret. Respondit[6] rex breviter, Quod

Wals. i. 285. Chr. Ang. 38.

Taunt at the papal favour to France.

Appeal to the King to withdraw the duke of Lancaster from Rennes.

The King agrees thereto.

Cardinals come to England to treat for peace.

Wals. i. 283.

Twys. col. 2616.

---

[1] *e*] o, MS.
[2] *qe*] que, MS.
[3] *extat*] extra, MS.
[4] *obsidionem*, MS.
[5] On both margins is *Tres Cardinales Londonias*.
[6] *Respondit*] Benedic, MS.

licet ipse perdiderat terras antecessorum suorum pro tempore, ipse ea recuperaret cum deus voluerit, et dixit eis ut loquerentur de corona Franciæ quam ipse vendicavit.[1] At illi responderunt, Commissionem suam ad tam ardua negotia non extendere. Et sic dilatum est negotium usque ad decollationem S. Johannis, donec mitteretur papæ pro dicto negotio. Et habuerunt iiij. d. ad marcam tam de spiritualibus quam de temporalibus per[2] totum regnum de ecclesia. Johannes rex[3] Franciæ moram traxit apud Wyndusoram,[4] et David rex Scotiæ apud turrim Londoniensem.

A.D. 1357.

The king's answer to them.

Two kings prisoners, France and Scotland.

Jam redeamus ad ducem Lancastriæ. Cum igitur Henricus dux Lancastriæ ix. menses fecisset super obsidionem et patriam circumquaque devastasset, dominus Carolus de Bloys venit cum x. mille viris et dux paravit se ad pugnam: sed cum appropinquasset non audebat accedere, sed recessit. Illi vero de villa hæc videntes magis timuerunt et captaverunt opportunitatem qualiter inirent colloquium cum duce. Et miserunt unum episcopum cum vj. militibus per conductum ducis reconciliare unam ecclesiam extra muros per mortem unius occisi pollutam. Dux vero compulit eos secum manducare. Et inter epulas colloquebantur[5] de redditione villæ, eo quod nullus veniret in eorum auxilium. Dux vero durus erat ad inducendum ad hoc nisi sub tali conditione quod se et sua cuncta ei redderent in sua gratia. Sed tandem convenerunt dare duci c. mille scutorum[6] pro suis costagiis, et redderent ei villam, sic tamen quod ipsi haberent bona sua. Et fecerunt securitatem quod quandocunque dux vellet petere villam ad opus regis Angliæ ipsi redderent ei villam, dare vel assignare cuicunque

Charles of Blois makes as if to attack the duke of Lancaster.

Alarm of the inhabitants when he withdraws.

Terms for the surrender of Rennes.

---

[1] *vendidit*, MS.

[2] *per*] om. MS.

[3] On margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ et rex Scotiæ prisonarii.*

[4] *Wyndosoram*, MS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Villa de Reynes reddita duci Lancastriæ.*

[6] *Scotorum*, MS.

A.D. 1357. ei placeret. Et dux ordinavit unum capitanium quem voluit, et quia noluit quod deprædaretur villa, assignavit certos viros qui ingrederentur et seisinam caperent in ea ejus nomine. Et ipse moram traxit extra villam et noluit intrare. Eodem tempore die Veneris proximo post festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ dilatæ sunt literæ regis Angliæ ad ducem ut amoveret obsidionem, post concordiam et redditionem factam, sicut[1] deo placuit. Eodem tempore erant nonnulli armigeri et sagittarii qui manserant in Britannia et Vasconia ad custodiam castellorum et oppidorum, et hi convenerunt in unum ad numerum vi^{c} virorum, et perrexerunt in Normanniam, et per[2] subtilitatem comprehenderunt villam de Honyflet[3] et tenuerunt eam, et supervenit Marescallus de Flandria Robertus Clermont cum viii^{c} viris armatis et v. mille pedestrium, et impetierunt villam, sed Angli strenue defenderunt se ad muros, et occiderunt de illis circiter v^{c}. Et dum sic pugnaverunt ad muros supervenerunt Robertus Knolles[4] et Randulphus[5] socius suus cum sua comitiva a tergo, et percusserunt Francos, occiderunt plusquam mille personas, et plures ceperunt prisonarios, et Marescallum et cæteros miserunt ad fugam. Wals. i. 286.

The duke does not enter the town.

Message from England to raise the siege.

Capture of Honfleur.

The English maintain their position and take some prisoners.

Eodem anno orta est lis inter abbatem nostrum[6] Leycestrensem et Johannem Larence de Belgrave, et Laurencium Larence fratrem ejus, et communitatem ejusdem villæ. Et sic incepit. Communes de Belgrave quadam nocte prostraverunt furcas libertatis abbatis Leycestrensis in quodam angulo campi qui vocatur[7] le Stokking. Tandem per sententias latas in patria recognoverunt malefactores factum suum. Si- Twys. col. 2617.

A dispute about roads between the abbat of Leicester and the people of the town of Belgrave.

[1] *sicut*] sed, MS.
[2] *per . . . . eam et*] om. MS.
[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Honyflet capta.*
[4] *Cnolles*, A.
[5] *Randulfus*, A.
[6] *nostrum*] om. MS.
[7] Here on the margin of A. only is *De via quæ dicitur Stokking juxta villam de Belgrave.*

militer fecerunt fossas in quodam vado super aquam Sore ubi via de Fosse solet habere cursum suum, ad impediendum cariagium victualium nostrorum de maneriis nostris cum carectariis, et munierunt pontem ad alteram finem villæ cum pessula et serra ut undique nos gravarent. Super[1] quibus abbas noster Leycestrensis habuit breve regis de placito transgressionis ad justiciarios ad hoc assignatos, scilicet dominum Robertum de Herle et dominum Johannem de Folvyll milites, et Simonem Pakeman[2] et Laurencium Haubark. Et fuerunt addictati xxxv. de Belgrave et sic oportuit eos[3] finem facere parti. Primo Johannes Larence, in cujus confidentia cæteri hæc mala fecerunt, et idem Johannes vadiavit abbati xl. libras in gratia sua, et solvit centum solidos; reliqui vero de villa quia simpliciores erant, ad instantiam magnatum patriæ solverunt tantum x. libras et reliquum pardonatum est eis ea conditione quod repararent viam de Fosse in vado de Coweswath et prosternerent arbores crescentes in dicta via versus pontem, nam dicta via extendit se a Coweswath per pratum et sic inter les Wylwes ad finem pontis usque ad le Penygrene, et etiam dictum pontem paratum patere facerent omni transire volenti. Et antedictus Laurencius frater senior relaxavit si quid juris habuerat vel habere videbatur in illo loco ubi furcæ nostræ prius erectæ fuerant.

A.D. 1357.

The abbat has the matter laid before a special tribunal.

Penalties are inflicted on the ringleaders.

The offenders resign the rights they had claimed.

Eodem tempore Scoti navigabant super mare huc atque illuc cum tribus navibus bene stoffatis cum ccc. viris armatis electis. Et explorabant[4] Anglicos transeuntes cum suis mercimoniis[5] et bona eorum rapuerunt et eos occiderunt, et sic diu multa mala operati sunt. Et circa festum sancti Michaelis ortus est ventus validus et fugavit eos cum multis aliis navibus Anglorum in

The Scots attack and plunder English vessels.

---

[1] *Super*] Similiter, MS.
[2] *Parkeman*, MS.
[3] *eos*] om. MS
[4] *transeuntes* before *Anglicos* as well as after it in MS. It had been so written in A. also, but erased.
[5] *mercymoniis*, MS.

A.D. 1357. They are driven into Yarmouth by a storm and captured.

portum de Yarnysmoth,[1] et ibi capti sunt sicut deo placuit per Anglicos. David[2] rex Scotiæ xi° anno a captione sua liberatus est et redemptus pro xxx. millia[3] librarum et venit apud Berwycum in die sancti Michaelis, ubi venerunt quidam de Scotis cum medietate dictæ summæ, et cum certis viris hostagiis mansuris in Anglia donec altera medietas solveretur. Et facta est proclamatio de una trewga x. annorum inter Anglos et Scotos sub pœna forisfacturæ corporis et catallorum, et post x. annos lapsos eligerent Scoti utrum vellent pacem vel guerram.

Release of David King of Scotland.

Wals. i. 284. Chron. Ang. 37

Exactions of the cardinals in England.

A papal bull.

Ad festum sancti Michaelis[4] iterum cardinales habuerunt iiij. d. ad marcam de clero tam de spiritualibus quam temporalibus, et non eo minus papa misit per bullam quod quilibet episcopus faceret visitare episcopatum suum auctoritate papæ, et solveret[5] procurationes cardinalibus, et dictum est quod hæc summa data est per papam ad sustentationem regis Franciæ. Et papa[6] eodem tempore petiit de regno Angliæ mille marcas per annum per regem Johannem curiæ Romanæ concessas,[7] et ab ejus tempore debitas, jam plenarie solvendas, et hæc omnia facta sunt ut per talem terrorem regis Edwardi animum ad eorum voluntatem magis inclinarent: et rex providus provide et breviter respondit, se nullum tributum velle cuidam dare, quia regnum suum tenuit, et libere tenere voluit, absque subjectione cujuscunque.

Demand of the grant made to the Pope by King John.

King Edward's answer.

A.D. 1358. Safe conduct for

Anno gratiæ 1358. Rex fecit[8] proclamationem in omnibus partibus regni, quod omnes alienigenæ de

---

[1] *Yarnysmouth*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *David rex Scotiæ liberatus per redemptionem.*

[3] *millia*, om. MS.

[4] On both margins is *Cardinales habent iiij*^{d}. *ad marcam.*

[5] *solverent*, MSS.

[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Papa visitat in Anglia, expetit tributum concessum a rege Johanne.*

[7] *concessam, debitam*, and *solvendam* in both MSS.

[8] Here a note on the margin of A. has been rendered illegible by fire.

quibuscunque partibus mundi, qui advenire vellent ad solemnitatem sancti Georgii haberent liberum conductum ingrediendi regnum Angliæ et regrediendi ad placitum[1] per iij. septimanas absque impedimento vel nocumento cujuscumque ad hastiludia cuilibet volenti in suo gradu prosequi generalia. Venit ibi dux Brabanniæ et multi Vasconii. Regina quoque Scotiæ affuit cum multis aliis dominabus. Nobilitas hujus solennitatis multa erat nimis, nec est nostræ facultatis ejus gloriosa facta evolvere. Post solennitatem peractam transierunt omnes Londonias, tractaturi de concordia inter Anglos et Francos, et multo tempore tractaverunt sine expeditione. Tandem pro eo quod princeps promiserat Francis apud Burdegaliam quod pax et concordia se tenerent in quantum procurare posset patrem suum regem, et rex cupiebat promovere filium suum in honore, sicut multum tenebatur, atque ejus sinistra pro suo posse devitare, assensum præbuit concordiæ et pacis viscera amplexatus est. Et sic facta est redemptio[2] regis Franciæ pro x. mille centenis marcis et darent xiiij. hostagios de melioribus totius regni Franciæ ad demorandum in Anglia donec tota summa solveretur.

A.D. 1358.

Twys. col. 2618.

foreigners to the festival of St. George.

Distinguished visitors thereto.

Negotiations for peace.

Ransom of the king of France.

Sed dux Lancastriæ Henricus quando rediit in Angliam dimiserat gardianos in Normannia dominum Jacobum de Pype, Robertum de Knolles[3] et multos alios qui associaverant eis de melioribus viris armatis et sagittariis electioribus in numero sufficienti et mirabile[4] dictu qui auxiliarentur regi Naverniæ, et crevit tam fortitudo regis Naverniæ, quam Anglorum, quod sic adunati devastaverunt cunctas patrias in circuitu, et divites facti sunt nimis et locupletati sunt, adeo quod potius vide-

Wals. i. 286. Chr. Ang. 39.

Ravages in Normandy under Robert Knolles and his company.

[1] *palacium*, MS.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ redemptus.*

[3] *Cnolles*, A.

[4] *mirabili*, MS.

A.D. 1358. rentur domini regni quam stipendiarii. Et multi qui egressi sunt illuc garciones vel valetti facti sunt milites validissimi, ac ditissimi regressi sunt, et omnes terræ ad lx. leucas circa Parisius factæ sunt eis tributariæ,[1] ne in toto exterminarentur. Ipsa quoque civitas Parisiensis promisit eis fidem, et super hac fide dominus Jacobus de Pype cum xxx. viris ingressus est Parisius videre civitatem spatiandi gratia. Cumque aliquamdiu moram traxisset ibidem, surrexerunt quidam de civitate et interfecerunt omnes illos xxx. viros. Dominus Jacobus vero evasit adminiculo unius de civitate suffultus, sicut deus voluit.[2] Et supervenit rex Naverniæ cum exercitu suo, et stetit coram civitate Parisiensi, et dominus Dolfinus de Vienna venit a tergo per ij leucas appropinquans. Et cum nostri viderent quod accedere nollet ad pugnam, direxerunt se versus illum, et coercuerunt eum ad fugam, et occiderunt plusquam ccc. viros de illis et multos valentes milites et armigeros, et unum episcopum ceperunt.

The citizens of Paris promise to side with the ravagers, but slay thirty of them.

The king of Navarre threatens the English in Paris.

Tunc cardinales disposuerunt se repatriare, et habuerunt conductum ad Calesiam. Eodem tempore mortua est Isabella regina mater regis Edwardi, et sepulta Londoniis apud fratres minores. Post recessum cardinalium quidam de Francia venerunt Londonias cum xij. centenis millibus marcarum in partem solutionis pro rege suo. Sed rex noster recusavit pecuniam pro eo quod non adduxerunt secum hostagios prout concordia se præhabuit. At illi responderunt, Magnam partem Franciæ fore per Anglos destructam contra formam concordiæ, adeo quod Franci non audebant ad proprias domos redire. Rex respondit quod Angli qui remanserant in Francia post habitam

Death of the king's mother.

Part of the ransom of the French king brought to England.

Chron. Ang. 38.

---

[1] *tributarii*, MS.

[2] *voluit*, from A. om. MS.

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Pars solutionis pro rege Franciæ.*

Twys. col. 2619.

concordiam exlegati homines fuerunt,[1] felones scilicet, homicidæ, fures et latrones et tales delinquentes contra jura regni sui, et extra protectionem suam, nec ipsos potuit justificare. A.D. 1358.

The king of Scotland offers to go with king Edward to his wars.

Eodem anno post festum omnium Sanctorum venit rex Scotiæ per communem assensum regni sui ad regem Londonias, et obtulit se pergere cum eo ubicumque sibi placeret in guerra sua, si forte talis oblatio posset cedere[2] in alleviamen regni sui de tanta summa redemptionis suæ solvenda. Et supplicavit regi quod[3] mercatores Scotiæ possent libere intrare regnum Angliæ et exire, et mercatores Angliæ simili modo terram Scotiæ, tanquam una gens et unus populus, absque detrimento vel calumnia alterius ad alterum. Similiter quod moneta eorum posset currere cum moneta nostra et nostra moneta transire cum moneta sua, et filii eorum vacare universitatibus Angliæ discendi gratia cum facere volebant.[4] Cum igitur rex Edwardus vidisset tantam humilitatem annuit ejus petitioni. Et rex Scotiæ cum regina moram traxit apud fratres prædicatores Londoniis. Et sciendum est quod rex Angliæ concordatus est cum rege Franciæ in octabis sancti Hillarii, sicut supra notatum est, sub ista forma.[5] . . . . . Et forma concordiæ[6] missa est ad curiam Romanam ad ratificandum et confirmandum, et dum nuncii essent in redeundo, expleto negotio, inventum est quod rex Franciæ contra sacramentum suum juratum miserat literas in Franciam quod nunquam fuit in voluntate dimittere unum pedem terræ regi Angliæ de terra sua Franciæ. Et captus est nuncius ad mare qui

Request for free intercourse of merchants between England and Scotland.

And for other privileges which king Edward grants.

Concord between France and England.

Insincerity of the

[1] Here *cum* is inserted before *felones* in both MSS., but has been marked in A. as if seen to be an error.

[2] *sedere in almaniam*, MS.

[3] *quod*] per MS.

[4] *solebant*, MSS.

[5] It would seem from the break in the line in A. that the form was meant to be inserted here. There is no break in MS.

[6] *forma concordiæ*] om. MS.

A.D. 1358. portavit has literas secreto sigillo suo munitas. Quam ob causam rex Franciæ missus est ad castellum de Somortun sub custodia domini de Deyncort et domini de Colvyll, et Philippus filius[1] ejus missus est ibidem cum eo. Post festum Purificationis quidam tunc valettus[2] postea per processum temporis miles magnus et validus dominus, capitanius multorum castellorum, oppidorum, fortilettorum atque villarum in Francia tam ex assignatione ducis Lancastriæ quam ex propria adquisitione, collecta multa fortitudine Anglorum perrexit in Franciam et venit ad villam de Aurilions[3] et posuit suburbia ad flammam ignis, et occidit quos voluit et tulit secum multa bona et quæque preciosa inventa. Cives vero non audebant exire contra eum, tanta florebat fama divinæ gratiæ Anglorum. Exinde perrexit versus Amisum[4] et per cautelam muros ascendit, portas aperit, omnes Angli intrant et in medio stratæ se ad bellum[5] parant et multos cives necant, et cives in tantum attoniti redduntur quod multi ad muros fugerunt, saltant et colla frangunt, et multi se submerserunt præ timore, sicque factum est quod multo plures occiderunt terrore quam gladio. Et ipsi abstulerunt,[6] rapuerunt et asportaverunt bona innumera et ibi divites sunt nimis. Et non erat ibi Anglus tam pauper quin de auro et argento et aliis jocalibus et preciosis ad plenum ditatus est. Et inde venit dictus Robertus Knolles[7] ad xij. leugas ab Avinonia, et tantam virtutem secum duxit quod papa et cardinales non

French king.

Further ravages of the companies in France.

Wals. i. 286.

Orleans burnt.

Great amount of plunder.

Some of the companies approach Avignon.

Chron. Ang. 39.

[1] *filius* is written above the line in A.

[2] Here on the margin of A. only is *Robertus Cnollys cœpit facere mira in Francia.* Although Knolles is not mentioned by name here in Knighton, the words are of the same character as those by which he is described, Wals. i. 286, Chron. Ang. 39.

[3] A space is left for the name in A., which is written on the margin.

[4] The proper name is omitted in A., and a space left. *Amisi* can still be read in the margin. MS. has *Amisum.*

[5] *bullum*, MS.

[6] *abstulererunt*, MS.

[7] *Cnollis*, A.

audebant extra palatium moram facere, et quasi deludentes intra se dicebant, A.D. 1358.

Roberte Knolles[1] per te fit Francia[2] mollis,
Ense tuo tollis prædas, dans vulnera collis.

Deinde in redeundo cepit prisonarios et villulas multas et divitias ad plenum, et sic venit ad suum hospitium. Tunc Robertus Knolles[3] misit in Angliam ad regem quod quæcunque adquisierat in regno Franciæ castella, villas, catalla[4] et quæcunque alia bene voluit omnia esse ad voluntatem legii domini sui regis, disponere de eis ad suum placitum. Et rogavit regem de suo dominio et bona sua voluntate, et multum placuit regi cunctisque filiis suis. Sed post festum sancti Michaelis idem Robertus captus est per insidias. Et dum deberet abduci supervenit Randekyn socius dicti Roberti qui prope erat in illis partibus et ceperat eodem die circiter xl. prisonarios de Francis, devicit hostes, et liberavit socium suum Robertum.

Twys. col. 2620.

Robert Knolles puts his conquests at the disposal of king Edward.

He is captured, but liberated by one of his comrades.

Interim redeunt nuncii de curia papæ dicentes papam[5] et totam curiam lætam fore de concordia et suum assensum præbuisse. Similiter attulerunt secum unam bullam papalem ad absolvendum justiciarios regis qui fuerant excommunicati ad suggestionem et procurationem episcopi Heliensis sic. Parum ante hæc tempora orta est discordia inter fratrem Thomam[6] de Lyle[7] Heliensem[8] episcopum et dominam la Wake;

Papal rejoicing over the concord between France and England.

[1] *Cnollys*, A.

[2] *per te fit Francia mollis.* This is the form given in Higden (Appendix) vol. viii., p. 358. The MSS. of Knighton give *parte sit* [*fit* A.] *Francus*, which clearly cannot stand. In the second line, Knighton gives *Ipsius* instead of *Ense tuo*, which is the form in Higden.

[3] *Cnollys*, A.

[4] *castella*, MS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Quomodo respondent de curia.*

[6] Called *Johannes* in Walsingham. *Thomas* is right (see Hardy's Le Neve, 1, p. 335). He had formerly been prior of Winchester.

[7] Here on margin of A. only is *discordia inter episcopum Heliensem et dominam la Wake.*

[8] *Helyensem*, MS.

A.D. 1358. nam homines episcopi succenderant unum manerium[1] dominæ la Wake et homines ejus interfecerant, et domina conquesta est regi de suo gravamine. Et justiciarii missi sunt ad inquirendum in causa, scilicet dominus Henricus Grene, dominus Willelmus de Schardeshul et alii, et episcopus venit coram eis, et compertum[2] est quod fuit in toto culpabilis. Unde attachiatus est per[3] temporalia sua, sicut lex dictat, et traditus est episcopis qui eum custodirent et pro eo ad legem responderent, et ipse statim transivit ad curiam Romanam et dedit papæ intelligere quod rex incarceraverat eum et tulerat ab eo sua temporalia contra jura ecclesiæ. Quam ob causam missa est sententia[4] per bullam papalem super justiciarios et omnes suos fautores et eis adhærentes ac coadjutores vel consiliatores in hac causa. Et missa fuit bulla ad Johannem de Gynwelle,[5] episcopum Lincolniensem ad publicandum populo et exhumare corpora eorum si mortui essent et proicere extra cimiterium.[6] Qui continuo perrexit ad quendam Simonem[7] de Draython: et exhumavit eum et fregit parietem ecclesiæ et extraxit corpus per foramen et ejecit extra cimiterium. Et episcopus Lincolniensis mandavit abbati de Burgo idem faceret de corpore domini Johannis de Engan militis, sed impeditus est per virtutem a filio dicti militis. Cum igitur rex ista audisset graviter tulit, et mandavit papæ quod nil actum contra episcopum citra leges et consuetudines regni. Et sic tandem cum difficultate tamen et auxilio cardinalium habuit[8] pro eis absolutionem.

Ad festum Epiphaniæ quando magis credebatur pacem habuisse inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ, cives

Difference between the bishop of Ely and Lady de Wake.

On inquiry the bishop is found to blame.

The bishop appeals to the Pope.

Papal bull and its sentences.

Bodies to be exhumed.

The king of England is much grieved, and at last procures absolution for the persons sentenced.

Wals. i. 285. Chr. Ang. 39.

[1] *manarium*, MS.

[2] *comparatum*, MS.

[3] *per*] from A., om. MS.

[4] *sententia*, om. MS.

[5] The MSS. give *Kynwelle*. *Gynewell* or *Gindwell* is the most usual form (see Hardy's Le Neve, ii. 15), but Godwin calls him *John Synwell*.

[6] *cimitorium*, MS.

[7] *Symonem*, MS.

[8] *habuit* is on the margin in both MSS.

Wals. i. 286.

Parisienses totaliter[1] recusaverunt, et despectuose omnes unanimi assensu insurrexerunt contra Anglos in civitate, quorum multi morati fuerant ibidem tota vita sua, et eos omnes occiderunt et bona eorum sibi[2] rapuerunt. Similiter et Flandrenses ex sua parte fugaverunt mercatores nostros in Brabanniam et mercatores Estyrlynges[3] tenuerunt extra fines Flandriæ, et omnes illos cives de Brygges qui mercatores foverant exlegabant, ceperunt, et multos de mandato comitis Flandriæ detruncaverunt. Et iccirco rex fecit proclamare ubique in regno quod omnes alienigenæ cujuscunque conditione essent, solis firmariis[4] regis exceptis, parati essent ad mare exire regnum citra festum sanctæ Margaretæ proximo sequentis sub pœna vitæ et membrorum absque ulteriori dilatione.

A.D. 1358.

Hopes for peace with France frustrated.

Merchants badly treated in France and in Flanders.

Foreigners in consequence expelled from England.

Twys. col. 2621.

Anno gratiæ 1359 rex fecit retentionem similiter et cæteri domini regni fecerunt qualem præ valetudine non audivimus factam nostris anteactis temporibus pro aliquo passagio ultra mare faciendo, et præparavit se transire in Franciam ad nativitatem beatæ Mariæ. Et medio tempore venit dominus Walterus le Mawne cum xv^{c} viris bene arraiatis de Almania et Hunaldia et aliis locis in auxilium regis, et venerunt ad Calesiam et cum introissent villam tractaverunt villam ad suum placitum. Acceperunt hospitia et ejecerunt Anglos et quosdam occiderunt et ultra mensuram multa magistralia exercuerunt, sicque propter ista[5] et propter alia nova quæ ad aures regis devenerunt rex noluit pro tempore in Franciam transire, et sic passagium illud dilatum est, sed ordinavit Henri-

A.D. 1359.

Wals. i. 287.

King Edward prepares to cross into France.

Sir Walter Manny comes to Calais, and ravages it.

King Edward's crossing is delayed.

---

[1] *totaliter recusaverunt.* The words are transposed in MS.

[2] *sibi*, A., *qui* MS.

[3] *Esterlinges*, MS.

[4] *firmariis* from A.; *infirariis*, MS.

[5] *ista*] om. A., but it is written on the margin.

A.D. 1359. cum[1] ducem[2] Lancastriæ in Franciam pergere et applicuit apud Calesiam post festum sancti Michaelis cum fortitudine grandi, et hoc contra voluntatem multorum magnatum de regno, qui[3] secretas inimicitias gerebant erga eum. Et equitavit per Picardiam et Artoys, et destruxit patrias in circuitu. Et tunc supervenit rex[4] Edwardus cum omnibus aliis magnatibus, et diviserunt se in tres turmas et acies, et abinvicem[5] se dividentes singulæ acies ceperunt iter suum. Nesciebat una acies de cætero ubi altera devenit usque in diem Jovis ante festum sanctæ Andreæ. Quo casualiter duæ acies transeuntes occurrerunt regi ad unam villulam ad x. leucas de Reynes[6] in Campania, ubi rex tenuit unum magnum concilium cum duce Lancastriæ et aliis magnatibus suis in vigilia sancti Andreæ et die sequenti, et exinde ceperunt iter suum versus Reynes in tribus[7] aciebus sicut prius fecerant, ita tamen quod[8] singuli possent scire ubi essent et reliqui, nec aliquis exercitus eorum aliquam patiebatur adversitatem aut dispendium, nec quandoque ab adversariis acclamatus est in toto hoc itinere, sed omnia prospera[9] eis evenerunt nisi quod unus Baldewynus Bartyn xxvj°. die Novembris venit cum lx. viris super comitem Staffordiæ hospitatum in una parva villula prope Principem, et acclamavit eum, at ille exiens in primo insultu unum occidit et alium[10] ad terram jecit, sicque omnes capti sunt vel occisi nec unus quidem evadit et ipse Baldewynus captus est.

Duke of Lancaster sent into France.

King Edward's arrival, and the division of his forces.

Wals. i. 287. Chr. Ang. 40.

A council held. They agree to advance to Rheims.

Sole misadventure during the movement.

---

[1] *Henricum*] Habere, MS.

[2] Here on the margin of A. only is *dux Lancastriæ transit in Franciam.*

[3] Here MS. adds *in*, wrongly.

[4] Here on the margin of A. only is *Rex Edwardus transit in Franciam.*

[5] *adinvicem*, MS.

[6] Here the town of Rheims is intended (*civitas Remensium*, Wals.) though the same spelling was employed before for Rennes.

[7] *tribus*] atribus, MS.

[8] *quod* from A. om. MS.

[9] *prospera* from A. om. MS.

[10] *alium* twice in MS.

Et notandum quod in toto illo viagio non periit quisquam nostrorum nec damnum sustinuit præter quod dominus Thomas de Morreus percussus est medio de una gunna. xviij°. die Decembris venit rex cum omnibus suis ad villam de Reynes[1] et recipiebant se hospitio ex omni parte villæ, et quieverunt pacifice nulli malum aut molestiam inferentes. Et fecerunt convivia unusquisque dominus cum alio acsi in proprio solo fuissent in Anglia. Die sancti Thomæ Cantuariensis ad noctem dux Lancastriæ, comes Richemundiæ, comes March, dominus Johannes Chandos[2] qui nominatissimus miles his diebus habebatur, exierunt ad inscalandum villam de Cerney[3] in Dormoys quæ erat villa fortissima duplici fossa et ingenti muro munita, plena turribus et instaurata viris armatis. In crastino antequam appropinquarent ad villam per unam leucam illi de villa perceperunt eos et eos acclamabant. At dux et cæteri comites non obstante illo clamore equitaverunt donec venirent bene prope villam, et tunc descendit dux de equo ut videret fossuras et . . . . . illarum,[4] et statim cæteri videntes eum ad pedes descenderunt de equis, et absque consilio inito aut aliquo proposito inde capto unanimiter se dederunt ad insultum inprovise, et sine dilatione unam fossuram adquisierunt, deinde absque mora adepti sunt aliam, tunc cum gravi pœna ad muros ascenderunt et ibi militanter et strenue pugnaverunt donec aliqui eorum muros adquirerent, et sic ascensis muris villam intraverunt et miserunt ad mortem qui eis restiterunt, et multi illorum fugientes se submerserunt in aqua et marisco. Deinde direx-

A.D. 1359.

The king arrives in Rheims.

An expedition against Cernay.

The attack on the town.

Twys. col. 2622.

The English gain the walls, and enter the town.

---

[1] On the margin of A. only is *Rex venit ad Reynes.*

[2] On margin of only A. is *Johannes Chandos.*

[3] On margin of A. only is *Dux Lancastriæ capit villam de Carneye cum castello.* The place intended is *Cernay en Dormois.*

[4] A word is left out in both MSS. So it would seem that A. is a copy.

A.D. 1359. erunt se ad castellum ut insultum facerent, sed castellani præpediti timore sine dilatione se reddiderunt cum castello duci Lancastriæ, et eodem die antequam inde abirent posuerunt villam incendio et flammæ, et hospitati sunt eodem nocte in una villula bene prope comitem de March, et in crastino die scilicet Circumcisionis dux Lancastriæ et plures alii tetenderunt viam ad quandam villam vocatam Autry[1] in Dormoys quæ distat per iij. leucas[2] de Cerneye,[3] et erat hæc villa bene munita et fortior quam Cerneye, posita super aquam vocatam Dayne.[4] Sed antequam illuc venirent villani reliquerunt villam et fugerunt præ timore nec erat qui eis resisteret. Eodem die dux Lancastriæ perrexit ad villam fortem et bene munitam vocatam Meuran[5] in Campania, de qua simili modo villani ante eorum adventum fugerant, et villam flammæ et incendio supposuerant, et exinde rediit cum exercitu suo ad regem Edwardum[6] sanus et incolumis cum omnibus suis, laudetur deus. Et præter hæc dominus Bartholomeus de Borgwash, dominus Baldewynus de Buttore cum multis aliis de familia principis et familia comitis Rychemundiæ xx. die Decembris direxerunt se ad villam nomine Courmussy[7] quæ erat munita duplici fossa et bene murata, et fortissimo[8] præsidio, et virili audacia inscalaverunt eam eadem nocte et prendiderunt eam, et in medio villæ erat unum pulcrum castellum cum turri una quasi inexpugnabili, et hoc castellum per suffossionem et varios insultus adepti sunt in die Epiphaniæ, et hi qui fuerunt in castello fugerunt in turrim indilate, sed vi coacti reddiderunt se eodem die, scilicet dominus de[9] Clermont et multi valentes milites armigeri

The castle is surrendered, and the town burnt.

March on Autry. Flight of the inhabitants.

A like success at Manre(?)

Capture of the town of Cormicy.

[1] i.e. *Autry sur Aisne.*
[2] *legas*, MSS.
[3] *Cernay en Dormois.*
[4] i.e. *d'Aisne.*
[5] The MSS. give *Meuram.*
[6] *Edwardum*] A. has only *E.*, MS. *Et.*
[7] *Sourmussy*, A. The place intended is Cormicy, which lies 10 miles N.W. of Rheims. See Johnes' translation of Froissart, vol. i. p. 544, note, and p. 545.
[8] *fortissima*, MS.
[9] *de*] le, MSS.

et burgenses de villa. Tertia die post Epiphaniam prædicta turris dilapidata est ad terram, dictaque [1] villa data incendio combustionis et penitus destructa. A.D. 1359. It is set on fire.

Eodem tempore Dolfinus de Vienna filius regis Franciæ et alii proceres regni congregaverunt multitudinem virorum fortium et classem magnam nimis, ut in Normannia adunati in Angliam applicarent in diversis locis, ut sic regem Edwardum revocarent ac etiam de Anglicis se vindicarent. Et quidam eorum occurrerunt domino Thomæ Fogges ad numerum ccxl. lanceati, ac dictus Thomas occurrit eis juxta Honiflet,[2] cum xxvij. lanceatis et circiter c. sagittariis, et fortiter pugnaverunt, et capti sunt in eodem congressu cxx. personæ armatæ, videlicet dominus Lodovicus Harecourt gardianus Normanniæ. Dominus Johannes Bygot Marescallus. Dominus Baldewynus de la Huse cum duobus fratribus. Dominus de Brakemont et frater ejus, Ballivus de Caux et unus baro cognatus ejus. Dominus Willelmus Marteb. An armament gathered in Normandy for attacking England. An engagment at Honfleur.

Die sancti Mathæi Apostoli in Quadragesima Franci [3] applicuerunt apud Winchelse [4] ad summam xx. millia armatorum virorum, et interfecerunt xxxv. homines de villa. Sed infra breve tempus tanta multitudo Anglorum compatriotarum quod, antequam Franci possent navigio suo se munire, in tantum se proripuerunt [5] ad aquam, quilibet super alium, quod perdiderunt tam necatos quam submersos plusquam cccc. Et sumpserunt secum ix. mulieres speciosas de villa quas tam turpiter violaverunt quod horribile est recitare. Et dum sic occupati essent Franci ex una parte quidam marinarii nostri navigio venerunt et ceperunt xiij. naves cum vino et aliis victualibus bene onustas, et eas abduxerunt. Eodem The French attack Winchelsea. But in the end are driven away.

Wals. i. 287. Chron. Ang. 40. Twys. col. 2623.

[1] *dicta*] prædicta, MS.

[2] *Honyflet*, MS.

[3] On the margin of A. only is *Franci applicuerunt apud Wynchelse.*

[4] *Winchelsee*, MS.

[5] *proripuerunt* is in neither MS., but supplied in a very late hand on the margin of A.

A.D. 1359. tempore missus est Johannes de Valoys rex Franciæ de castello de Somerton ad turrim Londoniensem.

A.D. 1360. A levy of all ages for the defence of the country.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLX. omnes laici, cujuscunque conditionis erant, inter xvj. et lx. annos arraiati sunt. Et de illis meliores armati sagittarii missi sunt ad marisarchos ad mare in defensionem regni. Unus marisarchus erat Johannes Wesnam prior Hospitalis, et alii assignati per regem. Navigium inimicorum super mare dicebatur nimis validum. Chron. Ang. 41.

Grants of indulgences to those who go over sea to the wars.

Archiepiscopi et episcopi per episcopatus suos concesserunt grandes indulgentias omnibus transeuntibus ad mare contra inimicos in defensionem regni, et quod unusquisque posset eligere[1] sibi confessorem ad placitum. Episcopi quoque, abbates et priores, rectores, vicarii et capellani et omnes viri ecclesiastici parati erant prout abbates fuerant, quidam esse viri armati, quidam sagittarii, et electi erant per mandatum episcoporum. Et beneficiati qui non potuerunt in propria persona, supplerent per bona sua in aliis personis, si Franci in terram intrarent et necessitas eis occurrere suppetisset. Tunc marisarchus cum clx.[2] navibus de Londoniis per Temisiam mare petiit. Et primo sulcavit maris alta usque Boloniam, deinde usque ad Honyflete ad reprimendum inimicorum audaciam qui terram Angliæ infestare proposuerant. Et sic nostri fecerant multa mala Francis in ista peregrinatione. Cum igitur rex jacuisset apud Reynes vij. septimanas transivit ad Chalounnes, deinde perrexit in Burgoniam.[3] Et venit dux Burgoniæ et tractavit cum rege, et rex concessit ei treugas per iij. annos pro se et omnibus suis pro cc. mille motonis regi solvendis. In quadragesima sequenti rex Edwardus habuit tractatum cum Francis, aderantque unus Wals. i. 287.

Contributions of those who cannot serve in person.

The navy first goes to Boulogne, then to Honfleur.

Movements of king Edward into Burgundy.

A truce made with the duke of Burgundy.

[1] *elegere*, MS.

[2] Written in A. viii^{xx} = eight score.

[3] *Burguniam*, MS.

cardinalis et unus legatus; sed non cepit effectum. A.D. 1360.

Wals. i. 288. Chr. Ang. 41. Unde rex movit exercitum usque Parisius incendendo,[1] occidendo et undique devastando. King Edward approaches Paris. Et ibi propter festum Paschæ fixit tentoria ad ij. leucas de civitate.

Arrangement of his forces. Die Lunæ post diem Paschæ rex disposuit exercitum suum in tribus aciebus coram civitate clangentibus tubis et clarionis et aliis instrumentis musicis personantibus. Rex erat in secunda acie cum suis, dux Lancastriæ et comites Northamtoniensis et Salisburiensis cum suis in prima acie. In tertia acie princeps et[2] barones cum reliquo vulgo[3] expectantes prælium de his qui in civitate Parisiensi erant sicuti eis ante promiserant.

Fire set to the suburbs. Sed nemo exiit de civitate occurrere illis. Unde rex Edwardus inde graviter motus jussit dare incendio magnam partem suburbiorum ut eos provocaret ad pugnam.

An engagement between 30 English and 60 French. Et tamen non erat qui eis resisteret. Tunc xxx. milites de novo ordinati cum lanceis suis perrexerunt ad portam Parisiorum[4] petentes ab eis opera militaria secundum legem armorum.[5] Et exierunt de civitate lx. cum hastis, et pugnatum est fortiter ex utraque parte, sed per gratiam dei, quæ semper præsto erat Anglis in omnibus suis agendis, Angli vicerunt Francos et refugaverunt eos in civitatem quosdam mortuos, quosdam letaliter vulneratos; sed nostri, laudetur deus, evaserunt absque gravi vulnere.

The English victorious. The duke of Lancaster left near Orleans.

Twys. col. 2624. Tunc movit se rex in alias partes et tradidit custodiam castellorum quæ sunt in partibus de Orlions et Catenesia duci Lancastriæ.

Engagement between the Count de Armenak and the Count de Foy. Eodem tempore comes de Armenak in Vasconia pugnavit cum amico regis Angliæ comite de Foys pro eo quod adhærebat regi Angliæ. Et mortui sunt ex parte dicti comitis xv. millia virorum et ex nostra parte nullus nominatus,

---

[1] Here on both margins is *Rex Edwardus tendit usque Parisius.*

[2] *et*] om. MS. It is written above the line in A.

[3] *vulgi*, MS.

[4] *Parisius*, MS.

[5] *armatorum*, MS.

A.D. 1360. laudetur deus. In isto viagio obierunt in Francia
English losses in this campaign. multi nobiles Angli, scilicet comes de March, marescallus exercitus, Gydo[1] de Warwyk primogenitus comitis miles nominatissimus, dominus Robertus de Morle et filius ejus, et multi alii nobiles milites et armigeri atque valetti. Nam in eorum reditu de civitate Parisiensi versus partes de Orlions in Bevosina,[2] subito supervenit Chr. Ang. 42.
A terrible storm. horribilis tempestas tonitrui fulguris deinde grandinis, et occidit gentes absque numero et plusquam vj. millia equorum, ita quod cariagium exercitus defecit fere in toto, et oportuit necessario redire versus Angliam, sed deus transtulit miseriam necessitatis in honorem regiæ majestatis.[3] Nam papa misit nuncios solemnes cum literis ad regem Angliæ ad tractandum de pace et concordia. Et tractaverunt apud Morens[4] prope Chartres[5] et continuatus est tractatus quinto die Wals. i. 289.
Deliberations about peace. Maii. Quando rex disposuit se redire versus Angliam, tum propter necessitatem tum propter formam tractatus, quæcunque habebant miserunt flammæ et incendio præ defectu cariagii, tentoria, utensilia, currus, sellas, et cætera quasi cuncta. De dicta concordia Chr. Ang. 42.
Grant of liberties to Leicester. dicetur infra. Eodem[6] anno rex concessit libertates Leycestriæ de nundinis et aliis ad instantiam ducis Lancastriæ. Et dux obligavit dominium de Wrangill sub waranto dictarum libertatum pro se et hæredibus suis.

Eodem anno quidam miles dominus Johannes de Ardena implacitavit abbatem nostrum Leycestriæ et nos de[7] manerio nostro de Berewode et advocatione ecclesiæ nostræ de Crudworthe quam per multa tem-

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Gydo de Warwyk et multi nobiles obierunt in Francia.*

[2] hodie *Beauce.*

[3] *magistatis*, MS.

[4] i.e. *Morancez*, S. of Chartres.

[5] *Charters*, MS.

[6] *Eodem anno . . . suis.* These two sentences had been omitted in A., and are written at the foot of the page, with a marginal note *De libertate Leycestriæ.*

[7] Here in A. only was a marginal note, but the fire has left only *de Berewode* legible.

pora in proprios usus habueramus. Qui quidem dominus Johannes, per favorem et auxilium multorum majorum de patria, et per consilium vicecomitis qui pro eo tempore fuerat, portavit unum breve quod continet, Faciatis venire sex tales; et hi erant gentes incognitæ nobis, quæ duxisse debuerant totum negotium ad suum placitum. Sed cum divulgatum esset jus nostrum, ac etiam præ timore unius literæ per regem ad justiciarios missæ quod non sinerent abbatem injuriam pati prout respondere vellent in posterum coram rege et ejus concilio, facti sunt nimis dolentes et tristes. Sicque nostra justitia declarata, transivit negotium ad nostrum placitum et recuperavimus manerium cum ecclesia ut prius habuimus. Acta sunt hæc die sabbati proximo ante festum sanctæ Margaretæ apud Warwicum coram justiciariis domino Johanne de Mowbray, et Thoma de Hyngylby.

A.D. 1360.

Suit between John de Arden and the abbat of Leicester.

The abbat gains the day.

Circa translationem sancti Thomæ transiit Johannes de Valoys rex Franciæ et alii prisonarii ad Calesiam, et tractaverunt cum proceribus Franciæ de concordia et finali pace inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ. Et concordatum est sub tali forma.

The King of France and other prisoners go to Calais about the peace.

Wals. i. 290. Chron. Ang. 44.

Rex Angliæ habere debet totam Aquitanniam et Vasconiam pro perpetuo absque reverso, civitatem quoque de Peyters cum castello, cum toto comitatu et patria de Peyters: Item totum feodum de Tovart[1]: Item totam terram de Belvill: Item civitatem cum castello de Saintona cum tota patria de Saintonia tam ultra aquam de Charent[2] quam citra aquam: Item civitatem Andegaviæ cum castello cum tota patria Andegaviæ: Item civitatem cum castello de Paragors[3] cum tota patria in circuitu: Item civitatem cum castello de Caours cum patria de Caoursina: Item civitatem

Terms of the peace of Bretigny.

Twys. col. 2625.

Towns to be yielded

[1] *Tovart* in New Rymer, vol. iii. pt. i., pp. 514, 515. | *Thoart*, Wals. *Touarde*, Chr. Ang. *Durward*, MSS.

[2] *Clarent*, MS.

[3] *Pierregort*, Rymer.

A.D. 1360. to the English king. et castellum et terram de Tarbe[1]: Item civitatem et patriam de Wygornesia[2]: Item civitatem et castrum et terram cum patria de Caurs[3]: Item civitatem et castellum cum patria de Aungelmosia: Item civitatem et castellum de Rodesya[4] et patriam de Vergia:[5] Item homagia, servitia et honores comitum de Foys et Armenak et de Paragorensi et vicecomitis de Lyngesia[6]; Et servitia de dictis dominis pro terris quas habent in antedictis patriis: Item Monstrellum[7] super mare cum suis pertinentiis: Item integrum comitatum de Pountif: Item castellum cum villa de Calesia cum dominiis et castellis Merk,[8] Sandegate, Colne, Hammes, Wale, Oye,[9] cum terris, mariscis, boscis, rivulis, redditibus, et cum vestituris ecclesiarum et omnibus pertinentiis: Item omnes insulas appendentes antedictis dominiis: Item castellum cum toto comitatu de Gynes cum suis pertinentiis: Item castellum et villam de Rochell cum omnibus suis pertinentiis. Et ad ista firmiter et inviolabiliter perpetuis temporibus observanda juraverunt utrique reges super sacramento corporis Jesu Christi. Simili modo juraverunt magnates utriusque partis pro se et hæredibus atque successoribus suis coram iij. archiepiscopis et viij. episcopis cum indenturis per sigilla ambarum partium munitis. Et pro redemptione regis Franciæ darent.[10]

Oaths of the kings and nobles.

Wals. i., 294. Chron. Ang. 43.

A.D. 1361. Death of Henry, Earl of Lancaster. Anno gratiæ MCCCLXI. Cum igitur reformaretur pax inter regna, in quadragesima sequenti obiit æterna memoria dignus Henricus nobilis dux[11] Lancastriæ apud Leycestriam. Eodem tempore crevit quædam societas

Wals. i. 296.

[1] *Tarbe*, Rymer. *Tharbe*, Wals. *Tarke*, MSS.

[2] *Wygornosia*, MS. *Bigorre*, Rymer.

[3] *Gaure*, Rymer.

[4] *Rodesia*, MS.

[5] *de Vergia*, Rovergne, *Rymer*.

[6] *Limoges*, Rymer.

[7] *Monstereul sur la Mer*, Rymer.

[8] *Merke*, MS.

[9] *Oye* is given both in Wals. and Chr. Ang. *Sex*, MSS., and the preceding name *Wald*.

[10] The sentence is left unfinished in both MSS. The sum is given in Rymer as 3,000,000 crowns, of which 2=1 noble of English money.

[11] Here on margin of A. only is *Henricus dux Lancastriæ obiit apud Leycestriam*.

virorum fortium vocata Societas[1] fortunæ, et per quosdam vocata est La grant companye. Et adunati sunt de diversis partibus non habentes unde vivere nisi de suo labore post initam pacem inter regna. Isti erant viri fortes et bellicosi, elegantes et strenui et vivebant de suo perquisito[2] per[3] guerram, in pace nil habentes. Et erant de diversis nationibus congregati. Isti venerunt de Lumbardia versus Avinoniam et petierunt licentiam proficisci per Savey. Sed comes de Savey negavit eis progressum, et congregavit multitudinem populi ad resistendum eis. Et illi captaverunt opportunitatem et noctanter proruperunt super muros civitatis in qua ipse comes manebat et interfecerunt homines illius et prædati sunt civitatem et tulerunt quæcunque in ea invenerunt. Et ipse comes cum magnà difficultate dimissus per murum vix evasit.

A.D. 1361.

La grant companye.

Wals. i. 295.

The count of Savoy refuses them a passage.

Sack of his capital.

Eodem anno obiit magister Ricardus Fitz-Rauf episcopus Armacanus qui causam manutenuerat contra fratres mendicantes in curia Romana apud Avinoniam. Eodem anno Matildis filia ducis Lancastriæ, ducissa de Seland, scilicet uxor Willelmi ducis de Seland venit in Angliam ad clamandum hæreditatem suam. Et tunc[4] divisa est hæreditas inter dictam Matilden, et dominam Blanchiam filias ducis Lancastriæ. Dominus Johannes de Gaunt filius regis Edwardi duxerat in uxorem prædictam Blanchiam, qui postea factus est[5] dux Lancastriæ. Eodem anno nobilis dux Lancastriæ Henricus tumulatus est in ecclesia collegiali et hospitali extra portam australem Leycestriæ quam ipse construxerat et quam præfecerat uno decano et xij. canonicis præbendariis et totidem vicariis ac aliis

Chr. Ang. 48.

Death of Fitz-ralph, archbishop of Armagh.

Matilda, duchess of Zealand, claims her inheritance.

Wals. i. 295.

Chr. Ang. 50.

Henry duke of Lancaster buried at Leicester.

[1] On margin of A. only is *Societas fortunæ, grant companye.*

[2] *perquisitio*, MS.

[3] *per*] om. MS.

[4] Here in A. only is a note rendered illegible by fire.

[5] On margin of MS. only is *Johannes Gaunt in ducem Lancastriæ creatus est.*

A.D. 1361. ministris sufficienter requisitis, et centum pauperibus debilibus et decem fortibus mulieribus quæ debilibus deservirent et procurarent in esculentis et poculentis et aliis corporis necessariis jugiter die ac nocte, dictamque hospitalitatem pauperum cum collegio canonicorum sufficienter dotavit, ubi jacet sepultus.

His endowments of the abbey church there.

Eodem anno xvj. kalendas Februarii, scilicet in die et nocte sancti Antonii orta est horribilis et nimis valida tempestas [1] ventorum qualem nunquam retroactis temporibus [2] creditur a plebe fuisse visam, nam ultra quam dici potest, boscos, pomeria et omne genus arborum prostravit et multas ultra quam crederet cum radicibus evertit; ecclesias, molendina, campanilia, muros, domos dilapidavit. Apud Londonias mala innumera de campanilibus et aliis domibus et ecclesiis exercuit.

A terrible storm.

Wals. i. 296. Chr. Ang. 50.

Eodem anno Edwardus princeps Walliæ duxit uxorem filiam Edmundi comitis de Cantia quam ante comes de Salisburia [3] duxerat in uxorem, et divortio inter eos per dictam mulierem facto dominus Thomas de Holond [4] duxit in uxorem, pro cujus concupiscentia ut dicebatur divortium factum est. Tertio duxit eam princeps Walliæ antedictus. Eodem anno mortalitas [5] generalis oppressit populum quæ dicebatur pestis secunda. Et moriebantur tam majores quam minores, et maxime juvenes et infantes. Et de congregatione nostra xj. canonici mortui sunt.

Marriage of the Prince of Wales to Joan of Kent.

A great mortality.

Wals. i. 296. Chr. Ang. 50.

A.D. 1362. Anno gratiæ MCCCLXII. obiit Matildis ducissa de Selond et comitissa Leycestriæ, quam vulgaris opinio dicebat veneno intoxicatam propter hæreditatem reintegrandam. Eodem anno sederunt justiciarii de Traylbastons apud Eboracum. Eodem anno quidam valens homo de boriali plaga scutifer elegans et

Death of the duchess of Zealand.

---

[1] On the margin of A. only is *Ventus horribilis.*

[2] Here both MSS. insert *non* wrongly.

[3] *Salesbury*, MS.

[4] *Holande*, MS.

[5] On the margin of A. only is *generalis mortalitas.*

audax, nomine Johannes de Coupeland, occisus est. A.D. 1362.
Iste cepit Davidem regem Scotiæ in bello Dunolmiæ. And of John de Coupeland.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLXIII. ad festum Michaelis rex ordinavit stapulas lanarum esse apud [1] Calesiam et ordinavit xxvj. mercatores de valentioribus regni habere custodiam villæ et eam manutenere cum stapulis per iij. annos. Et cum quolibet mercatore vj. viros armatos et iv. sagittarios de sumptibus regis. Ordinavit etiam ibidem duos majores videlicet unum pro villa, et alium pro stapulis. Et rex caperet, pro mala captura, quæ vulgaliter dicitur Maletorth, xx. solidos et prædicti mercatores gardiani de villa xl. denarios de quolibet sacco lanæ.

Wals. i. 297. Chron. Ang., 51

A.D. 1363 Wool-staple at Calais.

Taxes levied on the wool.

Princeps Walliæ et comes Warwych transierunt in Vasconiam. Eodem anno Willelmus de Clowne humanissimus abbas Leycestriæ adquisivit vacationem [2] abbathiæ Leycestrensis; quando aliquis abbas ibi obierit escaetor regis intrabit in abbathiam et capiet ibi simplicem seisinam in nomine regis, et [3] tenebit se ibi per unum diem et unam noctem, non tamen faciet ibi aliquod magisterium, et in crastino exibit. Et si forte sponte exire noluerit, licitum eis est eum vi expellere. Nec quisquam escaetor se intromittet ulterius in aliis maneriis, terris vel tenementis dictæ abbathiæ nisi solum ut dictum est in abbathia tantum. Et pro isto privilegio et pro primis quatuor vacationis mensibus pro electione privilegiatis dabunt regi iv. marcas. Et si contingat ulterius vacare pro quolibet mense quamdiu vacaverit dabunt regi unam marcam. Hoc privilegium rex Ricardus ij. in suo primo anno confirmavit.

The prince of Wales crosses into Gascony.

Terms of freedom of election of the abbat of Leicester.

Twys. col. 2627.

---

[1] On the margin of A. only is *Stapulæ apud Calesiam et mercatores habent custodiam.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *De vacatione abbathiæ Leycestrensis.*

[3] *et*] om. MS.

A.D. 1363. Eodem anno venit in Angliam[1] rex Cipriæ[2] qui in reliquis regnis laboraverat pro auxilio petendo.

King of Cyprus in England. Et petiit a rege auxilium contra paganos qui ei tulerant et detinuerant regnum et hæreditatem suam Jerosolymam. Et rex noster valde regaliter eum muneravit, et cæteri domini magnum honorem ei exhibuerunt. Eodem tempore rex Scotiæ venit[3] in Angliam pro abbreviatione pecuniæ quam debuit regi Angliæ de redemptione sua, sed rediit negotio non expedito. Rex Franciæ venit Londonias[4] post Purificationem et moram traxit apud Saveye, scilicet in manerio ducis Lancastriæ tunc pulcherrimo manerio Angliæ ut dicebatur. Hoc quidem manerium Henricus dux Lancastriæ construxerat de sumptibus lij. millibus marcarum quas adquisierat apud villam de Bryggerake. Rex Franciæ attulit secum medietatem millenarii in partem solutionis redemptionis suæ. Et rogavit regem pro liberatione hostiagiorum Franciæ. Sed rex noluit annuere petitioni ejus. Sicque evenit uno eodemque tempore quatuor reges[5] convenire Londoniis, scilicet regem Angliæ, regem Franciæ, regem Scotiæ, et regem Cipriæ.

Wals. i. 299. Chr. Ang. 54.

King of France lodged in the Savoy.

Four kings together in London.

Eodem[6] anno rex congregavit comites et barones et cæteros proceres Angliæ et habuit secum omnes hostiagios Franciæ. Et fecit[7] solennem fugationem ferarum in forestis de Rogyngam, Clyve, Schyrewode, et pluribus aliis forestis et silvis et parcis. Et hoc fecit pro anno l. ætatis suæ. Et ut dice-

A royal hunting party in

[1] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Cipriæ venit in Angliam.*

[2] *rex Cipriæ*] om. MS.

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Scotiæ venit in Angliam.*

[4] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ venit Londonias.*

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Quatuor reges convenerunt Londonias.*

[6] At this point a slightly different hand comes in for the remainder of the page.

[7] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex fecit solennem fugationem ferarum.* In a later hand MS. has *Venatio regis.*

batur effundebat expensas diurnales vicissim uno die c. libras secundo die c. marcas toto illo tempore fugationis. Et multas gratias fecit Angligenis illo anno, et condonavit multa delicta. Eodem anno quidam Walterus Wynkeburne suspensus in[1] furcis Leycestriæ per insecutionem fratris Johannis Dingeleye magistri de Dalby de ordine Hospitalium. Et cum dimissus a furcis duceretur ut mortuus ad cimiterium sancti sepulcri Leycestriæ sepeliendus cœpit[2] reviviscere in carecta, et ductus est in ecclesiam sancti sepulcri per clerum, et ibi diligenter custodiebatur a clero Leycestrensi ne forte raperetur iterum suspendendus. Cui rex Edwardus in abbathia Leycestrensi fecit gratiam et concessit cartam, ita inquiens me audiente, deus tibi dedit vitam et nos dabimus tibi cartam. Eodem anno mortua est ducissa de Clara uxor Leonelli ducis Clarensis. Eodem anno Johannes de Bokyngham episcopus Lincolniensis de novo creatus habuit viij. denarios ad marcam de clero per totum episcopatum Lincolniensem. Et gelu magnum et frigiditas insolita isto anno fuit, et duravit usque ad festum sancti Gregorii et ultra. Et obiit Edwardus de Baliolo quondam rex Scotiæ juxta Dancastriam.[3]

A.D. 1363. Sherwood Forest and elsewhere.

A man who had been hanged comes back to life.

Death of the duchess of Clarence.

A great frost.

Death of Edward Baliol.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLXIV. Johannes de Valoys[4] rex Franciæ obiit Londoniis[5] apud Savey vj. idus Aprilis, et ductus est in Franciam et tumulatus apud sanctum Dionisium. Hic a primo suo adventu in Angliam habuit homines suos secretos apud Londonias, et in aliis locis, qui secretiori modo congregaverunt electum aurum regni et fecerunt in platas et miserunt in barellos ferratos ad abducendum in Franciam. Et

A.D. 1364.

Death of the king of France.

Wals. i. 300. Chr. Ang. 56.

[1] *in*] et MS. wrongly.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is *Quidam suspensus Leycestriæ revivixit.*

[3] He died at Wheatley near Doncaster in 1367.

[4] *Valois*, MS.

[5] Here on margin of A. only is *Rex Franciæ obiit Londonias.* Also, just below, *Nota de morte regis Franciæ capti apud Peyters.*

A D. 1364. emerunt arcus et sagittas et posuerunt in saccis lanarum ad summam mille arcuum, et congregavit magnam plenitudinem armorum ad ducendum in Franciam. Et etiam[1] rogavit regem Edwardum condonare sibi de redemptione sua, sed noluit. Cum igitur ægrotaret et mortem approximare intelligeret, misit pro Edwardo rege et recognovit coram eo omnes proditiones[2] antedictas et causas pro quibus attemptatæ fuerunt, ac etiam quod inique et injuste regnum Franciæ occupaverat usque ad concordiam initam apud Calesiam. Et petiit ab eo veniam de omnibus. Rex Edwardus benigne condonavit ei omnia prædicta. Et rex Edwardus fecit arestare cuncta quæ sic collegerat, et Anglicos quosque hujus rei consentaneos rex graviter punivit.

He had secretly sent plate and arms from England into France.

Twys. col. 2628.

He confesses to king Edward.

Eodem tempore invaluerunt fures et latrones in regno et spoliaverunt ecclesias, feretra sanctorum,[3] et reliquias asportaverunt, scilicet abbathiam de Thornton,[4] imaginem de Domina apud Miriwale,[5] in capella sua, et imaginem de Domina apud Monkyskirkeby, et pluribus aliis locis, et multi eorum capti sunt et suspensi. Caput quoque sancti Hugonis Lincolniensis furatum est,[6] et captis argento et auro lapidibusque pretiosis, caput projecerunt in quodam campo. Et quod mirum est dictu, quidam corvus, prout fama laboravit,[7] custodivit illud donec cognitum esset per eosdem latrones et Lincolniam deportatum. Latrones prædicti abierunt Londonias ad vendendum sua prædicta latrocinia, et vendiderunt ut dicebatur pro xx. marcis, et redeuntes in patriam suam spoliati sunt de dicta pecunia, postea de dicto scelere prodentes se

Many cases of sacrilege.

Recovery of the head of St. Hugh of Lincoln.

Punishment of the thieves.

---

[1] *etiam*] om. MS.

[2] Here at the foot of the page in a later hand MS. has *Frenchmen never trew, nor Scottes.*

[3] Here on margin of A. only is *Sacrilegia.*

[4] *Thornthon*, A.

[5] *Merivale*, MS.

[6] Both MSS. read *furati sunt*, but on both margins is *caput S. Hugonis furatum est.*

[7] *laboravit*] perhaps for *elaboravit.*

ipsos capti sunt et apud Lincolniam suspensi. Eccle- A.D. 1364.
siam quoque abbathiæ nostræ Leycestrensis per quandam fenestram super altare sancti Johannis Evangelistæ intraverunt fures, sed cito per sacristam percepti sunt et absque damno illato fugerunt.

Eodem anno dum dux Britanniæ vacaret obsidioni de Orroy in Britannia prope Vanes supervenit Carolus de Bloys qui vendicavit ducatum Britanniæ cum xx. millibus virorum armatorum et pugnavit cum eo. Et occisi sunt ex parte ejus ix. personæ, et ipse Carolus ibidem occubuit, et ceciderunt de parte nostra miles unus, armigeri quinque. In crastino castellani reddiderunt castellum duci Britanniæ.[1] Dominus Bertrannus de Cleykyn,[2] famosissimus guerrator Francus, captus est ibidem per dominum Johannem Chandos qui habebat primam aciem in dicto bello.

Wals. i. 300. Chr. Ang. 55. — Charles of Blois slain.

Wals. i. 304. — Capture of Bertrand du Guesclin.

Anno[3] gratiæ MCCCLXV. Isabella filia regis desponsata est domino de Cousy[4] de Francia apud Wyndosoram. Et rex fecit eum comitem de Aumarle, si forte genuisset filium masculum, sibi et hæredibus suis in perpetuum habere dictum comitatum. Eodem anno fecit rex arrestare justiciarios scilicet dominum Henricum de Grene, et dominum Willelmum Schypwith[5] et plures alios propter eorum enormes infidelitates etc. Nota tu. Et se redimentes fecerunt finem regi.

A.D. 1365. — Marriage of princess Isabella to Lord de Coucy.

Wals. i. 301. Chr. Ang. 56. — Punishment of evil justices.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLXVI. Nicholaus[6] Dagworthe[7] cum sua societate pugnavit cum Francis in ducatu Andegaviæ et devicit eos. Erant enim Franci xv. mille[8] victi et occisi. Et capti sunt de Francis ibidem vc. capitanii Francorum fuerunt dux de Orlions, et dux de Angeres, et plures magnates. Eodem anno princeps

A.D. 1366. — Victory won by Nich. Dagworth over the French.

---

[1] *Bretaniæ*, MS.
[2] *Claykin*, MS.
[3] Here begins in MS. another more flowing hand.
[4] *Couse*, MS.
[5] *Schipwith*, MS.
[6] Here on margin of A. only is *Nich. Dagworthe capit et occidit Francos.*
[7] *Daggeworthe*, MS.
[8] *milia*, MS.

A.D. 1366. Walliæ et frater ejus Johannes de Gaunt, jam dux[1] Lancastriæ, perrexerunt in Hispaniam ad instantiam Petri[2] regis Hispaniæ contra Henricum[2] fratrem suum bastardum. Nam idem bastardus per potentiam et consilium et auxilium papæ fecit se coronari in regem, et expulit fratrem suum regem a regno suo, seipsum intrudens. Johannes dux Lancastriæ semper præcessit itinerando cum exercitu suo, et princeps sequebatur eum[3] cum suo exercitu. In prima acie erat dux Lancastriæ et dominus Johannes Chandos[4] capitanius de exercitu suo. Dominus Stephanus de Cosynton constabularius. Dominus Gychardus Dangill[5] marescallus cum mille dccc. lanceis, sagittarii quasi sine numero. Princeps Walliæ cum suis habuit mediam aciem. Rex Malogriæ[6] et comes[7] Deerne cum suis habuerunt tertiam aciem. Rex Hispaniæ et rex Naverniæ cum duabus aciebus a latere principis semper prosequendo. Et xx.o die Aprilis venit bastardus cum sua potentia quæ grandis erat nimis et bene arraiata in quodam pulcro campo prope[8] Nazaris[9] in regno Castellæ. Et statim congredientes pugnaverunt fortiter; et cessit victoria principi Walliæ et suis. Et mortui sunt ex parte bastardi in prælio de viris nominatis præter inferiores et minores v. millia. Deinde in fugatione de eisdem iij. millia. Ipse bastardus et unus de fratribus ejus fugerunt, et cæteri capitanii mortui sunt aut capti. Post hæc periit populus Anglicanus in Hispania de fluxu ventris et aliis infirmitatibus quod vix quintus homo rediit in Angliam. Istud erat maximum bellum quod in diebus nostris actum est. Ex parte bastardi

The prince of Wales and John of Gaunt cross into Spain to fight for Peter the Cruel.

Arrangement of their forces.

Battle of Nazar (Najara).

After the victory the English die of diseases.

Twys. col. 2629.

Wals. i. 303. Chron. Ang. 58.

Wals. i. 304. Chron. Ang. 59.

---

[1] *dux Lancastriæ*] dux de Lancastre, MS.

[2] The names are wrongly given here in MSS., *Henricus* being put for *Petrus*, and *vice versa*.

[3] *eum*] om. MS.

[4] *Chaundos*, MS.

[5] *Dangyl*, MS.

[6] *Malogiæ*, MS.

[7] *Communes*, MS. wrongly.

[8] *Nazarys*, MS.

[9] Here on margin of A. only is *Bellum de Nazarys*.

venit magna multitudo paganorum, et Saracenorum et incredulorum. Et antequam princeps Walliæ rediret ille bastardus fuerat in Vasconia et destruxerat magnam partem terræ; quo princeps perrexit, sed ipse abivit et rediit in Hispaniam. Et cœpit dolose tractare cum rege Hispaniæ de concordia donec conveniret eum in certo loco cum dolo, et nacta opportunitate scidit guttur ejus et occidit eum. Et sic invasit potius quam rexit regnum Hispaniæ pacifice et quiete, donec Johannes dux Lancastriæ in xix. anno sequenti posuit clamium in regno Hispaniæ pro jure hæreditatis uxoris suæ; nam idem Johannes dux post mortem primæ uxoris suæ duxit Constanciam filiam regis Hispaniæ seniorem, et frater ejus Edmundus duxit juniorem ut infra eodem loco patebit. Eodem tempore venit le grant Companye in Franciam, et fecit multa mala prædando et destruendo patrias, et ceperunt castella multa et civitates. Postremo cum multa audacia præsumpserunt obsidere civitatem Parisiensem.[1] Eodem tempore Leonellus dux Clarensis filius regis desponsavit filiam Goliæ domini de Meleto.[2] Et ibi aliquandiu moram trahens intoxicatus veneno interiit. Eodem tempore Edmundus filius regis transiit in Vasconiam cum v^{c}. viris armatis et sagittariis multis ad fratrem suum principem Walliæ [3] Edwardum.[4]

A.D. 1366.

Ravages of the bastard Henry in Gascony.

Wals. i. 305. Chr. Ang. 60.

He murders the king of Spain.

Claim of John of Gaunt to the kingdom of Spain.

Chr. Ang. 57.

The great company in France.

Wals. i. 306. Chr. Ang. 61.

Marriage and death of the duke of Clarence.

[1] *Parisius*, MS. *Paris* (abbreviated), A.

[2] *Moleto*, MS.; *domini Mediolani*, Wals.

[3] *Edwynum*, MS. wrongly.

[4] In A. these words come at the foot of a page, and there is no hint of any break in the narrative, or of the termination of a book of the history. Only the next page at the top begins with the year 1377. In MS. one quarter of a page is left blank, *i.e.*, half the second column, but there is no mark to indicate the end of one book and the beginning of another.

[LIBER QUINTUS.][1]

A.D. 1377. Death and funeral of Edward III.

Anno Domini MCCCLXXVII. obiit illustrissimus rex Edwardus iii. anno scilicet regni sui li°. xi. kalendarum Julii, et iii. nonas ejusdem apud Westmonasterium regaliter cum honorificentia est sepultus. Isto enim [2]regi Edwardo regina sua Philippa peperit Edwardum filium suum primogenitum, scilicet in festo sanctorum Viti et Modesti, regni sui anno iii.° Hic flos mundana militiæ, sub quo militare erat regnare; confligere, triumphare; cui jure maternali linea recta descendente regnum cum corona Franciæ debebatur. Pro cujus regni adipiscenda corona, quæ maris evasit pericula, quos bellorum devicit impetus, quas belligerorum terruit audacias, scriptor enarrare desistit, suæ relationis veritatem adulationis timens obumbrare velamine. Hic vero Edwardus quamvis in hostes terribilis exstiterat, in subditos tamen mitissimus fuerat et gratiosus, pietate et misericordia omnes pene suos antecessores præcellens. Iste vero Edwardus primogenitus princeps Walliæ fortunatissimus et miles in bello audacissimus inter validissima gesta militaria magnifice ab eodem peracta apud Cressy in Francia, bellum habuit contra Philippum regem Franciæ, qui Philippus associaverat sibi duos reges, scilicet Boemiæ et Malogriæ. Et isti duo reges ambo in eodem bello a prædicto principe Edwardo interfecti sunt; regem vero Franciæ Philippum in fugam vertit, magnamque stragem inimicorum fecit, captivosque plurimos de magnatibus Franciæ in Angliam secum adduxit.[3] Johannem quoque regem Franciæ similiter apud Peyters[4] debellavit, et pluribus,

Wals. i. 329.

Twys. col. 2630.

Of Edward, prince of Wales.

His prowess.

His gentleness.

His victories at Cressy and Poitiers.

[1] There is no indication of the commencement of a book at this point in either MS., but on account of previous references it had better be retained.

[2] Here on both margins is *Edwardus princeps Wallia*.

[3] *duxit* is written in MS. before *adduxit*.

[4] *Petoyrs*, MS.

tam nobilibus quam aliis, de regno Franciæ captis et aliis interfectis, eundem regem Johannem captivavit et ipsum potenter in Angliam patri suo Edwardo ductum præsentavit. Henricum etiam Hispaniæ intrusorem potentissime in bello devicit, et Petrum Hispaniæ regem, dudum a regno suo per dictum Henricum expulsum, potentiæ virtute in regnum suum restituit; unde propter ingenitam sibi probitatem et actus ipsius triumphales memoratum principem inter regales regum memorias dignum duximus commendandum. Hic enim ante patrem suum moriens apud Cantuariam in ecclesia Christi est sepultus.

A.D. 1377.

His help to Peter king of Spain.

Prince Edward buried in Canterbury.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLXXVII. xvii.[1] kalendarum Augusti apud Westmonasterium coronatio Ricardi ii. regis filii Edwardi principis memorati. Hic avo suo regi Edwardo jure hereditario ac etiam voto communi singulorum in regnum successit Anglorum, anno ætatis suæ xi°. Hic duxit uxorem Annam sororem regis Boemiæ imperatoris.

A.D. 1377. Coronation of Richard II.

Wals. i. 332.

Xi°. kalendarum Februarii Willelmus de Clowne abbas mortuus est, qui monasterium beatæ Mariæ de pratis Leycestriæ luculenter circiter per xxxiii. annos cum laude virtutum et incremento temporalium bonorum tramite inviolabili gubernavit. Hic quantæ pietatis et patientiæ, quantæque discretionis et moderaminis erga subditos suos, suoque auxilio et consilio indigentes, seu ejus subsidium in causa verisimili petentes, lingua tabescit evolvere, mens hebet[2] advertere, manus pigrescit scribendo, memoriæ commendare voluntas tepescit, excogitare timens relationis veritatem apud audientium aures sub adulationis obumbrasse velamine me forte posse.[3] Hic pacis et tranquillitatis amator erat, hic discordiarum et injuriarum in patria sua et ubique reformator fuit, quas suis temporibus ubique motas pro suo posse, pro labore vel expensis

Death of William de Clowne, abbat of Leicester.

His indescribable merits.

His love of peace.

[1] Here on both margins is *Ricardus secundus.*

[2] *hebet*, MS.; *ebet*, A.

[3] *forte posse*, om. MS.

A.D. 1377. non omittens, reformare et pacificare totis viribus elaborare studuit, sanguinis semper abhorrens[1] et pertimescens effusionem. Hic bonorum operum sectator incessabilis; subditis et minoribus mitis et affabilis; majoribus et magnatibus regni inedicibiliter amabilis; vultus ejus et præsentia divitibus et pauperibus omnibus inenarrabiliter desiderabilis. Hic piæ memoriæ piissimus abbas in evidentiam et signum quod totus dei servus fuerit et pacis atque quietis amator, pacis tempore et hora quietis, scilicet media nocte diei Dominicæ, inter brachia et manus confratrum suorum ejus decessum plangentium, et animam ejus deo commendantium, ab hac luce migravit ad Dominum, qui ut verisimile erat in omnibus operibus ejus dilexit eum. Quid plura? In temporibus illius de ejusdem laudabili collegio, talem pastorem commendabilem imitante, duo postulati sunt in abbates, scilicet ad abbathias[2] de Myssyndena[3] et Wellowe juxta Grymmysby, et duo in priores, scilicet apud Tortyngton et Mots[f]onde.[4] Duo convolarunt ad anachoriticam[5] vitam, scilicet apud Cestriam et Leycestriam in ecclesia sancti Michaelis, et duo migraverunt ad beneficia ecclesiastica curata. Ejus etiam temporibus duæ ecclesiæ sunt appropriatæ, scilicet ecclesiæ de Hungurton et Humburston.[6] Duoque maneria adquisita, Yngwardeby[7] et Kyrkeby Maleorre.[8] Similiter quoque redditus et possessiones in Hertyshorne,[9] Mouseleye,[10] Bymeswelle,[11] Leycestria, Humburston, Belgrave, Dalby, Burstalle. Cartam quoque de non veniendo ad

Twys. col. 2631.

His death in the arms of his brethren.

Abbats sought from Leicester for other places.

Possessions gained for the abbey.

[1] *aborrens*, A., but corrected above the line.

[2] *abathias*, MS.

[3] i.e. *Missenden* in Bucks.

[4] i.e. *Motisfont* in Herts.

[5] *anacoriticam*, MSS.

[6] *Humbreston*, MS. et infra.

[7] *Yngwarby*, MS. *hod.* Ingarsby.

[8] *Male orre*, in two words in A. The place intended is *Kirkby Malory*.

[9] *Harston* in Burton's *Leicestershire*.

[10] Spelt *Muselei* and *Muslei* in Dugdale.

[11] *Bitmeswell*. Dugdale.

parliamentum pro se et successoribus suis de rege adquisivit. Vacationem quoque abbathiæ[1] post mortem cujuscunque abbatis ejusdem similiter adquisivit, ita ut cum contigerit aliquem abbatem ab hac luce discedere, escaetor domini regis solum in abbathiam[2] intrabit, et ibi simplicem seysinam pro omnibus possessionibus abbathiæ capiet nomine regis, sicque ibidem moram faciet per unum diem et noctem tantum, non tamen intra vel extra in aliquo gravando vel se intromittendo, et tunc exibit,[3] et si noluerit bene licebit eum inde expellere licet invitum, per cartam regis Edwardi iii. quæ quidem carta fuit ratificata per regem Ricardum proximo sequentem, sic quod nullus escaetor regis in aliquo manerio vel loco dictæ abbathiæ se intromittet nisi solum in abbathia tantum. Isti benigno abbati Willelmo deus tantam gratiam in oculis omnium tam dominorum quam aliorum contulit, quod vix erat aliquis qui ei quod petebat negaret. In tantum enim affabilis erat domino regi, quod burdando petebat a rege nundinas sibi concedi pro leporariis[4] et aliis canibus cujuscunque conditionis essent emendis et vendendis. Rex vero credens ipsum nundinas affectuose petisse, ei concessit quod petebat, abbas[5] vero noluit instare circa negotium. In venatione leporum inter omnes regni dominos famosissimus et nominatissimus habebatur, ita ut ipse rex, et princeps filius ejus Edwardus, et plures domini de regno cum eo retenti erant sub annua pensione leporare. Ipse tamen sæpius voluit asserere in secretis, se non delectasse in hujusmodi frivolis venationibus nisi solum pro obsequiis dominis regni præstandis, et affabilitate eorum captanda et gratiam in suis negotiis adipiscenda.

A.D. 1377.

Freedom obtained for Leicester abbey from Edward III.

The charter afterwards confirmed by king Richard.

The abbat's favour with the king.

He was a famous hunter.

But indulged his taste mainly to please others.

---

[1] *abathyæ*, MS. et infra.
[2] *abathyam*, MS.
[3] *exiet*, MSS.
[4] Here on margin of A. only is *De nundinis leporariorum et aliorum canum.*
[5] *abbat*, MS.

A.D. 1378. Election of Pope Urban VI.

Viii.° die mensis Aprilis electio Urbani papæ vi. anno Domini MCCCLXXVIII. Exemplum epistolæ quam cœtus cardinalium transmisit imperatori de electione Urbani papæ sexti, et quam idem imperator fecit sigillari sigillo suo cum aliis xv. sigillis aliorum dominorum; et transfigi fecit Romæ ad ecclesiam sancti Petri in testimonium et fidem præmissorum omnibus intuentibus. Wals. 1, 369.

Copy of a letter from the cardinals to the emperor announcing the election.

Serenissime princeps, Quia plerumque, immo plurimum, præsertim in rebus arduis famæ loquacitas veritatem quibusdam coloribus adulterinis obnubilat,[1] ideo quod his diebus in Romana ecclesia gestum sit vobis præsenti scriptione nunciamus. Et ut his qui vobis rem aliter factam narraverint seu scripserint non credatis, et mens vestra hac nostra insinuatione clarificata in tranquillo et sereno veritatis liquore conquiescat, regia igitur celsitudo cognoscat, quod sanctæ felicisque recordationis domino et patre nostro Gregorio papa x°. vicesimo septimo die mensis Martii nuper elapsi viam universæ carnis ingresso, et sicut de largissima dei pietate confidimus post labores ad præmia evocato, tantique patris, prout juris et moris est, cum debitis honore et reverentia exequiis celebratis die viii°. mensis Aprilis nuper præteriti conclavi palatii apostolici in quo præfatus dominus noster abierat, ne dicamus obierat, juxta sanctiones canonicas decrevimus introire, sed ex certis causis ad id nostrum inducentibus animum, hujusmodi nostrum introitum ad diem immediate sequentem duximus differendum. Quo quidem die, videlicet viij°. die mensis Aprilis primitus gratia Spiritus Sancti invocata conclavem intravimus de electione et substitutione futuri pontificis tractaturi. Sequentique die luciferi nescientis occasum ut pie credimus [lumine][2] illustrati, circa illam diei horam qua Spiritus Sanctus ille, qui paraclitus est, sanctorum discipulorum corda descendit, ad personam reverendi in Christo patris domini Bartholomæi archiepiscopi Barrenni, viri utique meritorum claritate conspicui, et multiplicium virtutum lampade refulgentis, libere et unanimiter direximus vota nostra eum ad celsitudinis apostolicæ specula concorditer evocantes, et hanc nostram evocationem seu electionem in conspectu maxime Christianæ plenæ multitudinis nuncia- Twys. col. 2632.

[1] *obnubulat*, A.

[2] Some word is required for the construction.

vimus. Cæterum die nona ejusdem mensis Aprilis idem dominus noster electus in throno dignitatis apostolicæ sublimatus sibi Urbani vi. nomen asscivit.[1] Ac die qua Christus Jesus summus pontifex vitam nostram resurgendo reparavit, coram turba fidelium copiosa, sicut in Romana ecclesia consuetudinis est, in basilica principis apostolorum de urbe cum ingenti tripudio et lætitia inenumerabilis populi Christiani pontificali regno magnifice et solemniter extitit coronatus. Quæ quidem serenitati vestræ ideo nunciamus, ut, sicut obitus memorati domini Gregorii vobis amaritudinis et tristitiæ calicem propinavit, ita in præsentis patris concessione nobis cœlitus facta gaudii et exultationis spiritum assumatis; in illo enim cujus vicem idem dominus noster gerit in terris firmam spem fiduciamque tenemus, quod sub ejus felici regimine status Romanæ ac universalis ecclesiæ reflorebit, et orthodoxa[2] fides felix optatumque suscipiet incrementum. Datum Romæ die viii°. mensis Maii. A.D. 1378.

An Anti-Pope, Clement, set up at Avignon.

Eodem anno quidam de cardinalibus prima inductione Urbanum papam reliquerunt, et abierunt Avinoniam, ibique erexerunt Robertum episcopum Cibbonensem in summum pontificem, quem vocaverunt Clementem papam, unde schisma[3] maxima orta est in ecclesia Christi, quibusdam regibus et regnis uni adhærentibus, quibusdam vero alteri.

Wals. i. 382.

A.D. 1379. Aid granted to the king.

Wals. i. 393.

Concessa est regi una grossa quæ continet iiii. denarios de quolibet viro et muliere, religiosis, mendicantibus, et pauperibus solum exceptis.

A.D. 1380. Marriage of Henry, earl of Derby.

Twys. col. 2633. Wals. i. 434. Wals. i. 449.

Dominus Thomas de Wodestoke, comes de Bokyngham, perrexit in Britanniam in auxilium ducis Britanniæ contra Francigenas. Henricus comes Derbeyæ desponsavit filiam minorem comitis Herfordiæ. Dominus Thomas de Wodestoke desponsaverat sororem seniorem, et divisa est comitatus de Bowne cognomine.[4] Concessa est domino regi de episcopis, de abbatibus, de mercatoribus certa taxa de quolibet viro cum uxore ii. solidos. De aliis non conjugatis singulis xii. denarios.

[1] *ascivit*, MS.
[2] *ortodoxa*, A.
[3] *scisma*, MSS.
[4] *connomine*, MS.

A.D. 1380. Aids granted by the clergy.

De religiosis possessionatis vi. solidos viii. denarios. De singulis beneficiatis vi. solidos viii. denarios. Et tamen ista taxa non se extendebat in scaccario regis per magnam summam ad taxam præcedentis anni, scilicet iiii. denarios. De quo ministri regis admirantes multum conquesti sunt, dicentes, rem in collectione non se habere bene gestam, nec fideliter taxam fore collectam.

A.D. 1381. A commission of inquiry about the collection thereof.

Unde quidam Johannes Leg cum tribus aliis sibi associatis impetravit a rege commissionem[1] ad inquirendum de collectoribus hujus taxæ in Cantia, Northfolc,[2] et aliis patriæ confinibus, et pacti sunt magnam summam pecuniæ domino regi pro sua adquisitione se daturos; consiliumque regi ad suam perniciem, proh[3] dolor! spopondit.[4] Unus eorum cum esset ad aliquam villam ad faciendum inquisitionem de dicta taxa, convocari fecit tam viros quam mulieres, et puellulas, quod dictu horribile est, esursum impudice elevavit, ut sic experiretur utrum corruptæ essent et cognitæ a viris, ut sic more arctaret amicos et parentes pro eis solvere taxam, et plures potius elegerunt solvere pro suis filiabus[5] quam videre eas tam turpiter attractari. Hæc et hujusmodi dicti inquisitores facientes maxime provocaverunt populum. Cumque vidissent communes de Cantia et finitimis locis erga eos rem sic graviter peragi, et nova ac nova quasi importabilia onera eis indesiniter absque remedio imponi, istiusmodi oppressionis gravamen ulterius ferre non valentes, conferebant adinvicem quam remedii vel subsidii cautelam inde reperire valerent. Cumque hæc et hujusmodi unusquisque in animo revolveret, nec manum inceptricem apponere auderet ne sui damni irremediabile detri-

Wals. i. 454.

Vile conduct of the inquisitors.

Kentish people seek for a remedy.

[1] Here in a later hand on the margin of A. is *Commissio impetrata a rege*; on the margin of MS., also in a later hand, is *Johannes Legge*.

[2] *Northfolke*, MS.

[3] *proth*, MS.

[4] *spospondit*, MS.

[5] *filiaribus*, MS.

mentum pateretur, tandem quidam Thomas Baker[1] de Fobhyngges[2] ab artificio sic vocatus, animum fortiorem sibi assumens, cœpit hortari et associare sibi quosdam de villa sua, et sic alios ac alios sibi associaverunt, et sic miserunt unusquisque ad amicos et cognatos suos, et sic ulterius de villa in villam, et de patria in patriam, rogantes et petentes consilium eorum et auxilium ad ea quæ communis utilitatis et necessitatis eos tam graviter urgentis erant, eis ferre indilate. Qui maximo tripudio suo more gaudentes catervatim ruere cœperunt, læti admodum effecti quod diem viderent quo sibi invicem succurrere possent in tanta ac tali necessitate. A.D. 1381. Exhortations of Thomas the baker. A multitude combines.

Anno Domini MCCCLXXXI. et regni regis Ricardi ii. secundo. A.D. 1381.

Sequenti igitur anno supradicto mense Maii feria iii. quarto post festum Trinitatis cœpit convenire plebs ista nefanda[3] de Cantia, de Sothereye, et de multis aliis locis scilicet confinibus. Apprenticii quoque relictis magistris suis illis accurrebant. Sicque congregati sunt super le Blakeheth, ubi præ multitudine seipsos obliti, et causa pristina non contenti neque minoribus sceleribus pacati, majora inexquisita mala meditati sunt inmisericorditer, nec a suo nefando[4] proposito desistere disposuerunt quoadusque omnes proceres regni et magnates funditus exstirparent; sicque primo direxerunt aciem suæ nequitiæ ad quandam villam archiepiscopi Cantuariensis vocatam Maydestoke[5] in qua erat carcer dicti archiepiscopi, et in prædicto carcere erat quidam Johannes Balle capellanus,[6] qui prædicator famosissimus habebatur apud laicos, qui per plura retroacta tempora verbum dei insipienter

Wals. i. 456.

Twys. col. 2634.

The people gather on Blackheath.

Attack on the house of the archbishop of Canterbury.

[1] On margin of MS. in a later hand is *Thomas Baker*.
[2] *Fobhynges*, MS.
[3] *nephanda*, MSS.
[4] *nephando*, MSS.
[5] *Maydestok*, MS.
[6] On margin of MS. in a later hand is *Johannes Balle*.

A.D. 1381. Of the preaching of John Balle.

sparserat, lollium cum tritico inmiscendo, laicis nimis placens, et libertati juris ecclesiastici et status quam maxime derogans, atque multos errores in ecclesiam Christi inter clerum et laicos execrabiliter introducens, multis annis provinciam sic obnubilavit,[1] ob quam causam a clero fuerat auditus et de jure convictus, atque in eodem carcere pro suo perpetuo mancipatus et adjudicatus. Dicti vero populares carcerem fregerunt, et eum extraxerunt, atque abire eum secum fecerunt, nam in archiepiscopum[2] eum sublimare proposuerunt.

He is released from the archbishop's prison.

The mob breaks up the Marshalsea prison.

Die vero Mercurii[3] ante festum consecrationis venerunt in Sowthreye ad carcerem regis de Marchelsya, et carcerem absque mora fregerunt, et omnes incarceratos in eorum auxilium secum abire coegerunt, et quoscunque invenerunt sive peregrinos seu alios cujuscunque conditionis secum ire compulerunt.[4]

They come into London.

Die Veneris[5] in crastino consecrationis intraverunt[6] per pontem in civitatem Londoniensem, nec erat qui eis resisteret, et tamen, ut dicebatur, cives Londonienses de eorum adventu longo ante tempore intellexerunt; sicque ad Turrim iter direxerunt ubi rex erat cum grandi cœtu militum, armigerorum, valettorum, et aliorum hominum stipatus. Erant ibidem in Turri,[7] ut dicebatur, circiter cl. milites, secundum quosdam centum octoginta, cum matre regis et ducissa de Britannia, et multis aliis dominabus. Et Henricus comes Derbeyæ filius Johannis ducis Lancastriæ adhuc juvenis ibidem erat. Symon quoque de Sutbyry archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et cancellarius

Wals. i. 456.

They proceed to the Tower.

Persons present with the king.

Wals. i. 456.

---

[1] *obnubulavit*, MSS.

[2] Here in a later hand on margin of MS. is *Balle Johannes destinatus Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis.*

[3] On the margin of A. only is *Die Mercurii.*

[4] *conpulerunt*, A.

[5] On the margin of A. only is *Die Veneris.*

[6] Here on margin of MS. in a later hand is *Corpus Christi daye.*

[7] Here on the margin of A. only is *Turris.*

Angliæ, et frater Robertus de Halys prior Hospitalis Angliæ et thesaurarius regis. Johannes[1] quoque Leg et quidam Johannes de ordine Minorum in armis bellicis strenuus, in physica[2] peritissimus, domino Johanni duci Lancastriæ familiarissimus cum aliis tribus ad Turrim cucurrerunt causa refugii sub alis regis latitaturi. Communes vero disposuerunt se interficere archiepiscopum et cæteros prænominatos cum eo, et ad hoc ibidem venerunt, et postea votum suum impleverunt. Volens igitur rex archiepiscopum et socios suos de ore luporum liberare, misit ad communes, mandans eis, ut ad locum qui Myltros[3] vocatur extra civitatem convenirent cum rege locuturi, et de eorum proposito tractaturi. Milites vero qui ituri erant cordis strenuitatem quasi tabescentes vecorditer amiserunt, et mentis audaciam, quod dolendum est, sub calle dederunt, nec egredi quasi timore femineo percussi ullatenus audebant, sed se in Turri continebant. Rex vero perrexit ad locum assignatum, et multi de nefanda[4] plebe sequebantur eum. Plures vero remanserunt in eodem loco. Ubi cum venissent conquesti sunt regi se multiplici et intolerabili servitute et vexatione graviter oppressos, nec posse nec velle ulterius sustinere. Unde rex pro bono pacis et temporis ingruentia ad petitionem eorum concessit eis cartam sub magno sigillo, Quod omnes homines in regno Angliæ liberi essent, et liberæ conditionis, et ab omni jugo servitutis et villenagii exuti pro se et heredibus suis imperpetuum permanerent. Quæ quidem carta eodem anno post festum sancti Michaelis in parliamento apud Westmonasterium per regem et magnates regni quassata fuit, et adnullata, et irrita et

A.D. 1381.

The people design to kill the archbishop and others.

The king invites the people to meet him.

Twys. col. 2635.

Gest. Abb. S. Albani iii. 287.

He grants them a charter.

---

[1] Here on margin of MS. only is *Johannes Legge*.

[2] *phisica*, MSS.

[3] *Multros*, MS. But in both MSS. it is hard to say whether the termination is not *cros*.

[4] *nephanda*, MS.

A.D. 1381. inanis judicata. Dum hæc sic agerentur, ecce degeneres filii remanentes patrem suum archiepiscopum cum sociis antedictis absque vi vel impetu, absque gladio vel sagitta, vel quacunque alia oppressione, sed solum verbis minacibus et clamore turbido evocaverunt, et ad mortem invitaverunt, qui sponte non reclamantes, non reluctantes tanquam agni coram tondente se nudipedes, capite discooperto, cingulis abjectis, acsi homicidio vel furto rei, et sic vindictam meriti essent, libere se morti indebite obtulerunt.[1] Et sic, heu pro dolor! duo luciferi regni, indigni cum dignis, antequam rex reveniret super le Tourehyll decollati sunt, septem in numero. Nam Johannes Leg et iii. socii ejus, ut antedictum est, causa fuerunt istius irrecuperabilis damni. Capita vero illorum in lanceis et baculis transfixerunt ut a reliquis sic dinoscerentur. Inde autem progredientes et inexquisita malitia invalescente iterum viam direxerunt usque ad manerium ducis Lancastriæ vocatum Sawey[2] miro structuræ tabulatu paulo ante ædificatum, quod quidem nobilissimus Henricus Lancastriæ dux primus, cujus filiam dominam Blanchiam Johannes de Gaunt desponsaverat, et sic in hæreditatem successerat, de fundamento construxit, in regno Angliæ, ut credebatur, non habens sibi simile. Quod quidem manerium isti servi diaboli subverterunt, combusserunt, et in cinerem redigerunt cum omnibus in eo inventis præter unum lectum et pauca alia quæ fuerunt per custodem abstracta quasi in eorum adventu. In illo namque manerio erant omnes thesauri dicti Johannis ducis, cum lectualibus et aliis ornamentis, cum gazis innumerabilibus, et ferencia bona sua quæ possent careri a communi cotidiano usu cum cartis et munimentis, quæ omnia, quod dolendum est, eorum furore simul perierunt. Et sciendum quod custos dictæ gardropiæ asseruit oreque

This afterwards annulled by parliament.

The archbishop and six others seized and beheaded.

Wals. i. 461.

Their heads fixed on lances and sticks.

They next attack the Savoy palace,

Wals. i. 457.

and burn it down.

Many treasures were therein, and all were destroyed.

Wals. i. 457.

[1] *optulerunt*, A.

[2] i.e. Savoy.

suo retulit et juravit, quod credidit quod non esset aliquis rex Christianus habens meliorem gardropiam, nec aliquis vix talem; nam ut dixit tanta copia erat vasorum et jocalium de argento, absque aliis deauratis et de auro puro, quod vix v. carrectæ ea vehere sufficerent; unus autem illorum nefandorum sumpsit unam pulchram peciam argenteam, in gremioque abscondit, quod videns aliis et sociis referens, ipsum cum pecia in ignem projecerunt, dicentes, Zelatores veritatis et justitiæ, non fures aut latrones. Fertur quosdam intrasse cellariam vini ibidem, et tantum de dulci vino bibisse quod egredi quidam non sufficiebant, sed jocis, et canticis, ac aliis illecebris ebrietatibus vacantes, donec ostium [1] obturatum fuit igne et lapidibus quod egrediendi facultas denegata fuisset, licet sobrii essent, usque ad mortem. Per septem dies post hæc clamor eorum a multis ad locum accedentibus et de enormitate sceleris dolentibus auditus est, nec erat qui eos adjuvaret vel consolaretur ex omnibus caris suis. Et sic se de vino inebriaverunt, vinumque consumere venerunt, et in vino perierunt. Numerus eorum, ut postea dicebatur xxxii. ferme erat.

A.D. 1381.

No plunder allowed.

Some drunken rioters perished.

Twys. col. 2636.

Wals. i. 457.

Cum hæc et alia mala fecissent redierunt ad novum templum [2] quod erat prioris de Clerkunwell, et ibi plures domos subverterunt. Cistas in ecclesia sive in cameris apprenticiorum inventas fregerunt, et libros quoscunque inventos, sive ecclesiasticos, sive cartas et munimenta in cistis apprenticiorum securibus scindebant, et in cibum ignis dederunt. Domos quoque juratorum in civitate subverterunt, quas senes et quasi decrepiti, quod dictu mirum est, tanta agilitate ascenderunt, acsi essent ratones vel spiritu aliquo vecti. Quod quidem credibile esse potest, quia spiritus malignus quem sequebantur et serviebant, ipse gressus eorum dirigebat.

Next they go to the new church of the prior of Clerkenwell.

The mob seemed possessed by the evil one.

[1] *hostium*, A.

[2] Here on both margins is *Novum templum.*

A.D. 1381. Eodem die processerunt inde ad Clerkunwell, ubi præter ecclesiam pauca reliquerunt non destructa de mansione prioris. Manerium quoque de Hybery extra Londonias distans per ii. leucas quod prædictus Robertus de Halys prior de novo quasi alterum paradisum[1] delicate construxerat, funditus destruxerunt. Juratos quoque civitatis et juris regni apprenticios quoscunque invenerunt sine mora interfecerunt. Si quis ante aliquem haberet exosum vel inimicum, tales maxime requirebant et indilate decollabant. Plures quoque apprenticii civitatis decollatis magistris suis abierunt cum illis; nec aliter quosque interficiebant nisi solum capitis obtruncatione. Ricardum quoque Lyonnes famosum burgensem de domo sua extraxerunt et in sepe decapitaverunt. Qui tempore regis Edwardi iii. in quodam parliamento convictus fuit multiplici fraude regi et reginæ, ac aliis dominis et dominabus regni facta in lapidibus pretiosis et aliis jocalibus, unde judicio parliamenti perpetuo carceri adjudicatus est, stipendio diurno xii. denariorum ex curialitate regis ei concesso, sed postea gratiam consecutus liberatus est, sicque peremptus.

They destroy Highbury manor.

Wals. i. 458.

They specially attack the representatives of law.

They beheaded all their victims.

Murder of Richard Lyons.

Hæc et alia quam plura enormia faciebant nullo gradui vel ordini parcentes, tam in ecclesiis quam in cimiteriis, tam in plateis et stratis quam in domibus et campis; in quem ante dirigebant clamosum sonitum mox accurrebant cæteri, scientes eum decollandum, nec deum timentes, nec honorem matris ecclesiæ verentes. Cum igitur hæc et alia quam plura execrabilia per totum illum diem perpetrassent, tandem tanto labore fatigati, et inmoderamine vini insoliti inebriati, die quoque advesperante, videres[2] eorum jacentes sparsim in plateis, et sub muris soporatos veluti porcos interemptos; nocteque illa plures illorum, sumptis viribus ebriosis, socios suos

They have no mercy.

In the night some of the

[1] *paradysum*, MS. | [2] *vires*, MSS.

occulte interfecerunt quos ab antea in odio habuerunt; sicque in illa nocte strages magna tam ab invicem quam ab aliis facta est. Die vero sequenti, scilicet Sabbato, iterum adunati sunt in Smythfeld, ubi rex venit mane ad eos, qui licet ætate juvenis tamen animi sapientia prudenter doctus. Cui appropinquavit ductor eorum proprio nomine Watte Tyler, sed jam nomine mutato vocatus est Jakke Strawe. Hic regi adhærens et ipsum pro aliis unus alloquens, et cultellum evaginatum, quem dagger vulgus vocant, in manu gerens, de manu in manum jecit quasi pueriliter ludens, et opportunitatem capiens, si rex ei petita negaret, quod[1] ipsum subito, ut credebatur, percuteret, unde maxime timuerunt qui regi assistebant quid in facto eveniret.

A.D. 1381.

rioters attack one another.

Next day they gather in Smithfield.

Wat Tyler is their leader.

Wals. i. 464.

Petunt a rege ut omnes warennæ tam in aquis quam in parco et boscis communes fierent omnibus, ita ut libere posset, tam pauper quam dives, ubicunque in regno in aquis et stagnis piscariis et boscis et forestis feras capere, in campis lepores fugare, et sic hæc et hujusmodi alia multa sine contradictione exercere. Cumque rex de hujusmodi concessione cum deliberatione tardaret, Jakke Strawe propius accedens et regem [verbis] minacioribus alloquens, frænum equi regis, quo ausu nescio, manu arripuit. Quod Johannes de Walworth burgensis Londoniensis intuens, et mortem regi imminere pertimescens, arrepto basillardo[2] transfixit Jakke Straw in gutture. Vidensque hoc alius armiger nomine Radulfus Standyche[3] cum alio basillardo penetravit latera ejus. Et sic corruit resupinus,[4] aliquamdiu[5] manibus et pedibus desiliens interiit. Inde clamor ingens et ululatus factus est multus, Ductor noster mortuus est.

Twys. col. 2637.

Their demands.

Wals. i. 465.

Wat Tyler is slain by John de Walworth.

[1] *quid* is written above the line in A.

[2] *bassillardo*, MS., but not below.

[3] *Standiche*, MS.

[4] *resuppinus*, MS.

[5] Here on both margins is *Prima dispersio.*

A.D. 1381. His body taken into St. Bartholomew's church.

Igitur sic mortuo et in ecclesiam sancti Bartholomæi, quæ prope erat, manibus et pedibus viliter tracto, multi de illis se subtraxerunt, et quasi evanescentes in fugam se subito dederunt, numero, ut credebant, circiter x. millia. Tunc rex, dicto Johanni de Walworth[1] et Radulfo de Standyche vicem rependens ipsos cum aliis iiii. burgensibus de civitate militari cingulo sublimavit, scilicet dominos Johannem Philipote,[2] Nicholaum de Brembre, et Johannem Launde, [et] Nicholaum Twyford. His militibus sic a[3] rege ordinatis jussit rex ut cæteri qui remanserant de nefanda turba secederent et abirent in campum, et ibi convenirent, ut ibidem posset cum illis de concordia tractare. Illis ibidem constitutis, ecce processit interim de civitate multitudo armatorum duce domino Roberto Knollys[4] cum aliis militibus, et circumvallabant cohortem miseram in campo quasi oves desolatas sine pastore. Tunc rex pius qualis fuissent[5] conditionis misericordia motus noluit miseros interire, parcens stultæ multitudini, jussit eos abire unumquemque in domum suam, multis tamen interim recedente rege damna mortis perpessis. In illa misera multitudine recensebantur xx. mille. Isti fuerunt ductores[6] eorum, Thomas Baker primus motor sed postea principalis ductor, Jakke Strawe, Jakke Mylner, Jakke Carter, Jakke Trewman: Jakke Mylner alloquitur socios sic.

The king knights Walworth and others.

An armed band from the city surrounds the rioters.

Wals. i. 466.

The king bids the multitude disperse.

Jack Milner's address.

Iakke Mylner asketh[7] help to turne hys mylne aright. He hath grounden smal smal;[8] the kings sone of heven he schal

---

[1] *Walleworth*, MS.

[2] *Phylypote*, MS.

[3] Here on both margins is *Rex facit milites.*

[4] On margin of A. only is *Robertus Knollys.*

[5] Here a space is left in both MSS. enough for a couple of words, and *qualis fuissent* consequently make no sense. The two words may be omitted without losing the general meaning of the sentence. It probably ran somewhat thus: *qualis fuisset in omnibus rebus*, as an expansion of *pius.*

[6] On both margins is *Ductores.*

[7] *asket*, A.

[8] *small small*, MS.

pay for alle. Loke thy mylne go arigt, with the foure sayles, and the post stande in stedfastnesse.[1] With rygt and with mygt, with skyl and with wylle, lat mygt helpe rygt, and skyl go before wille and rygt before mygt, than goth oure mylne aryght. And if mygt go before ryght, and wylle before skylle; than is oure mylne mys adygt. A.D. 1381.

Wals. ii. 34.

Jak Carter.

Jakke Carter prayes gowe alle that ge make a gode ende of that ge hane begunnen, and doþ wele and ay bettur and bettur, for at the even[2] men heryth[3] the day. For if the ende be wele, than is alle wele. Lat Peres the Plowman my brother duelle at home and dygt us corne, and I will go with gowe and helpe that y may to dygte goure mete and goure drynke, that ge none fayle; lokke that Hobbe robbyoure be wele chastysed for lesyng of goure grace for ge have gret nede to take God with gowe in alle goure dedes.[4] For nowe is tyme to be war.[5] Jack Carter's.

Jak[6] Trewman.

Jakke Trewman doth gow to understande that falsnes and gyle haviþ[7] regned to long, and trewþe hat bene sette under a lokke, and falsnes regneth in everylk[8] flokke. No man may come trewþe to, bot he syng si dedero. Speke, spende and spede, quoth Jon of Bathon, and therefore synne fareth as wilde flode, trew love is away, that was[9] so gode, and clerkus for welthe worche hem wo. God do bote, for nowge is tyme. Jack Trueman's.

Twys. col. 2638.

Exemplar epistolæ Johannis Balle.

Jon Balle gretyth gow wele alle and doth gowe to understande, he hath rungen goure belle. Nowe rygt and mygt, wylle and skylle. God spede every ydele. Nowe is tyme John Ball's letter.

---

[1] *steddefastnesse*, MS.
evyn, MS.
hereth, MS.
[4] *deed*, MS.
ware, MS.
[6] *Jakke*, MS.
[7] *have*, MS.
[8] *every*, MS.
[9] *wasse*, MS.

A.D. 1381. Lady helpe to Ihesu þi sone, and þi sone to his fadur, to make a gode ende, in the name of the Trinite of þat is begunne amen, amen, pur charite, amen.

Prima epistola Johannis Balle.

Another form.

John Balle[1] seynte Marye prist gretes wele alle maner men and byddes hem in the name of the Trinite, Fadur, and Sone and Holy Gost stonde manlyche togedyr in trewthe, and helpez trewthe, and trewthe schal helpe ȝowe. Now regneth pride in pris, and covetys is hold wys, and leccherye withouten shame and glotonye withouten blame. Envye regniþ with tresone, and slouthe is take in grete sesone. God do bote, for nowe is tyme amen. Wals. ii. 33.

Similar rising in Norfolk and elsewhere.

In Essex Southfolc and Northfolc similiter surrexerunt communes in quibusdam locis in magna multitudine, et multa mala fecerunt et plures probos homines decollaverunt. Et sciendum quod in omnibus locis habebant eundem modum jugulandi. Dominum Johannem de Candyche justiciarium regis capitanium trucidaverunt. Dominum quoque Robertum Salle militem in armis strenuitate famosum decollaverunt, sicque inaudita et enormia mala a seculo non audita non solum in una patria sed in multis partibus regni irrecuperabiliter perpetrata sunt. Wals. ii. 1.

Persons of distinction slain. Wals. ii. 5.

Outbreak at Peterborough.

Similiter apud Peturburgh[2] compatriotæ et tenentes abbatis ejusdem surrexerunt contra eandem domum scilicet abbathiam, et eam exterminare cupiebant atque proposuerunt, quod et irremediabiliter fecissent nisi deus manum resistricem eis inopinate immisisset. Nam auxilium eorum a domino Henrico le Spenser episcopo Northwycensi,[3] divina mediante superna clementia, qui cum forti manu armata supervenit, ipsosque malefactores ab incepto proposito perturbavit, et ipsosque persecutus turbam eorum dispersit, et eis reddens prout meruerunt, scilicet aliis Wals. ii. 6.

[1] *John Balle*] twice in MS.
[2] On both margins is *Peturburgh.*
[3] On both margins is *Episcopus Northwycensis.*

mortem, aliis carcerem et vincula, nemini parcens; et dum plures eorum fugam caperent ad ecclesiam pro præsidio, in foveam perditionis ceciderunt quam ecclesiæ paraverant, nam ecclesiæ immunitatem non meruerant qui valles ecclesiæ destruere non metuebant. Nam quidam eorum juxta altare et ad parietes ecclesiæ, tam intra ecclesiam quam extra, lanceis et gladiis confossi sunt. Et sicut illi in sua ferocitate positi nemini parcebant sed ultionem furiosam exercebant, sic nec oculus episcopi cuiquam eorum pepercit, sed digna pro dignis rependens, et eadem mensura qua mensi fuerunt remetiebatur illis; nam ecclesiam et viros ecclesiæ, destruere venerunt, et in ecclesia et ab ecclesia, ut ita dicam, immo quia ita dicere audeo quia ab ecclesiastica persona perire meruerunt; nam manus ejus in ultionem eorum valde lætanter erat extensa, et absolutionem gladialem episcopalis dignitas eis impendere in extremis non dedignabatur pro suis delictis, ut adimpleretur quod dictum est per prophetam, Reges eos in virga ferrea et tanquam vas figuli confringes eos. Similiter faciebat iste valens episcopus in diversis locis in comitatibus Cantibrigiæ et Hontyngdoniæ; et in quibuscunque locis de talibus audiebat, sine mora eis occurrebat, illos disperdens, superbiam eorum funditus quassavit.

A.D. 1381. Rioters dispersed and punished.

As they spared none, they are not spared.

Twys col. 2639.

The church was avenged.

Ps. ii. 9.

The bishop of Norwich takes like measures in other parts.

[1] Apud sanctum Albanum communes de villa et multi a finibus illis egressi obliti bonorum ad abbathiam confluebant, abbatemque et conventum petitionibus eorum adquiescere et eis petita concedere atque de multis libertatibus in non modicum dispendium domus et gravamen. Et hæc tenentes abbatis sibi fecerunt pro suo perpetuo habituri. Sed rex infra breve superveniens cartam frangi fecit, et malefactores puniri. Similiter in multis locis cœperunt tenentes contra suos dominos invalescere, unde scriptum est. Asperius nihil

Gest. Abb. S. Albani iii. 285.

Violent demands of the commons and abbey tenants at St. Albans.

Wals. i. 477.

[1] Here on both margins is *Apud sanctum Albanum.*

A.D. 1381. est humili cum surgit in altum. Nam seipsos ignorabant, suam conditionem non attendebant, nec de fine perpendebant, sed facti sunt velut stulti sicuti qui prius saltant quam lapsum suum considerant; sicque in illis nefariis impletum est quod de sanctis Apostolis scriptum est, In omnes terras exivit, etc. Nam corda hominum tam in remotis et extremis partibus quam in propinquis et vicinis ubicumque in regno a timore eorum contremuerunt, et ubique tremuli et conterriti credebant eos statim absque mora inopinate singuli in suis partibus affuturos.

The low rising against their superiors.

Ps. xviii. 5. *Vulg.*

General alarm.

[1] In Leycestria venit nuncius vespere ad majorem villæ asserens eos prope esse apud Harberough[2] approximantes, cum idem profani essent Londoniis, et in crastino circa horam primam diei in villam Leycestriæ fore venturos ad destruendum manerium ducis Lancastriæ ibidem, et omnia bona ejus ibidem inventa dilaceranda et evertenda atque comburenda, nam quædam habebat ibidem de cotidianis suis necessariis quia sæpius ibi fovebat familiam suam, tamen in tempore istiusmodi conflictus in marchia erat cum Scotis de negotiis regni tractaturus. Quid plura? Major inde maxime conturbatus et conterritus, et quid in casu sibi ipsi contrario faceret contremescens. Si eis resistere disponeret forte deficeret, et sic cum suis occumberet: si eos cum pace reciperet, postea eorum consentaneus dijudicaretur. Salubri usus consilio convocavit vicinos suos juratos et alios peritiores, quorum consilio eadem nocte fecit proclamationem ad altam crucem villæ, et ad iiii. portas sub nomine regis, quod unusquisque paratus esset mane seipsum et proximos defensurus. Similiter sub certa pœna regi danda, quod omnes et singuli de villa tam divites quam pauperes, tam magistri quam servientes, meliori modo

Report that the rioters were coming to Leicester.

Alarm of the mayor at the news.

Proclamation made by him.

[1] Here on both margins is *Leycestria.*

[2] *Haverborough*, MS.

quo se armari possent et se defendere scirent, omni excusatione postposita, extra villam super montem vocatum Galtrehill armis suis taliter stipati mane convenirent, si forte possent, divina eos adjuvante gratia et patria eis similiter succurrente, contra inimicos tam subito supervenientes, occurrere resistendo. Quo in loco cum convenissent numerati sunt circiter mille ducenti tam de bonis et aliis. A.D. 1381. All ranks to be ready armed. To meet at Galtrehill. Twys. col. 2640.

Altera quoque die fecerunt similiter ostendentes se in eodem loco, et eventum rei cum magno timore exspectantes; nam exploratores emiserant et ad explorandum de operibus eorum et eos certificandum ubi essent, et quando ad istas partes diverterent, et qualiter se disponerent ad recipiendum eos, sive cum pace sive cum pugna, nec erat aliquis eorum qui rediret nunciare eis sive bonum sive malum. Propterea magis timuerunt. Interim custos gardropiæ domini ducis rediit de Londoniis similiter metuens ne supervenirent ad destruendum si quid invenirent in castello Leycestriæ, ducis, unde cum festinatione qua potuit ea quæ invenit in castello, onustis carrectis fecit deduci ad abbathiam Leycestriæ pro salva tuitione habenda a prædictis inimicis. Cumque ibidem venissent die Martis sequenti circa meridiem, abbas nimio terrore percussus, sicut et cæteri regni, non audebat ea hospitio recipere, ne forte hujusmodi rei occasione tota abbathia detrimentum intolerabile exterminii pateretur, quia idem communes pacificum ducem Lancastriæ super omnes mortales in illo conflictu magis exosum habebant, et si ipsum invenissent absque mora ab eis periclitaretur; sicque redierunt carrectæ onustæ prout venerant, et in area ecclesiæ sanctæ Mariæ de Castro bona illa exposita sunt, divinam gubernationem, sine cujus adminiculo nihil superest, expectando. They gather on a second day. The alarm increases. The wardrobe treasures of the duke of Lancaster brought to Leicester abbey. The abbat dare not admit the waggons.

In illis diebus, ut jam ante dictum est, erat præfatus pius dux Lancastriæ Johannes in Marchia Scotiæ ad tractandum cum Scotis de negotiis regni. Quod, ut The duke of Lancaster was out of the way at the

A.D. 1381. time, serving on the Scotch border. credibile fieri potuit, ex divina dispositione ei accidit, quod procul ab illis partibus absens esset ne in manus nefandorum caderet sine natura[1] occidendus. Domina Constantia ducissa Lancastriæ talibus auditis timore magno percussa cordis est, malignorumque rabiem declinare volens, et pro refugio sub alas domini sui volare desiderans, cum festinatione qua potuit iter arripuit, venitque ad Pontefractum ad castellum suum pro subsidio habenda quasi in domo propria secura. Et qui inibi erant ipsam hospitio et salvo custodire nullatenus voluerunt, sed recusaverunt ipsam cum castello sub securitate custodire. Dicebant namque se non audere: sicque desolata et quasi a propria domo cum pudore in lassitudine repulsa, eadem nocte cum lumine ceræ antequam diesceret viam septem leucarum peregit, et absque quietis refocillatione apud Knaresburgh[2] pervenit, et ibi moram fecit, donec, cessante procellosa tempestate rabidi cursus, serenitas tranquillitatis et pacis superluxit, et pius dux pacis et misericordiæ de Scotia cum honore reverteretur. Wals. ii. 41.

In alarm the duchess flees to Pontefract castle.

She is refused admission, and goes on to Knaresborough and remains there.

Jam præcesserunt detrimentosa cum lamentatione dolorosa, nunc succedunt lacrimosa cum diligenti amaritudine compassiosa. Igitur pio duce non sui scilicet sed regni negotiis sic se in remotis habente, rumor hujusmodi rapacitatis ad aures ejus pervenit. Quo subito turbatus[3] et licet perturbatus mirum non[4] esset, et inde non ex arrepto sed cum summa deliberatione, sapientissimo usus consilio, non motus ira quia non proderet, non concussus vecordia quia in aliquo delicto non reus, sed qualis fuerit in omnibus actibus suis ostensus, scilicet pius et mitis, hillari vultu audita, quasi motus non esset, secrete conservavit, et usque ad tempus aptum occultum absque revelatione quacunque silenter conservari mandavit, nec cuidam reve- Twys. col. 2641.

The report of all this is carried to the duke.

He acts as if undisturbed by the news, and does not make it public.

[1] *materia* MS.
[2] *Knarisburgh*, MS.
[3] *et licet perturbatus*] om. MS.
[4] *non* is on the margin in A.

lari permisit. Sed finem negotii sui pro quo ibidem venerat cum festinatione qua potuit totis nisibus[1] accelleravit, nam prope finem erant ex utraque parte de tractatu suo. A.D. 1381. Finishes his work in the north quickly.

Fine igitur habito, et hinc inde indenturis sigillatis, tunc primo petiit a Scotis licentiam in Scotiam intrare, et ibidem pro certo tempore si vellet moram facere, atque quando ei placeret absque impedimento sui vel alicujus suorum licenter redire et abire, nondum enim innotuit Scotis necessitatis causa. His itaque ad votum patratis, tunc demum convocavit consilium suum atque familiam, et intimavit eis calamitatem gentis Anglorum australis plagæ. Et ecce ploratus et ululatus multus lacrimantium atque plangentium. Tunc ille cum omni mansuetudine et pietate dedit licentiam suis omnibus, et rogavit ut unusquisque rediret ad propria, ne detrimentum paterentur de bonis suis. At illi ab eo, veluti discipuli a Christo, relicto eo, omnes fugerunt, paucis admodum cum eo remanentibus. Similiter ei relatum est quod duo turmæ nefandorum luporum discurrebant per duas partes regni, et quælibet turba continebat decem millia electorum ad rapiendum eum, una turma per orientalem partem, et alia turma per occidentalem partem. Similiter quoque omnia quæ habebat Leycestriæ destructa erant, et castellum de Tuttebery everberatum et multa alia perpetrata, quæ de facto falsa erant. Unde non mirum esset licet cor ejus hæc horrida frangerent. Comes quoque de Northumbria invitaverat eum ad cœnam et cum eo pernoctandum. Cumque accessisset ad locum, ecce quidam miles dicti comitis cum aliis armigeris venit ei obviam in medio itineris, nuncians ei, dictum comitem dominum suum nec audere nec velle ipsum ducem hospitio recipere, nec aliquid humanitatis ei impendere, nec in aliquo cas-

He obtains leave from the Scots to enter Scotland.

Wals. ii. 42.

Then he makes known the doings in England.

Those who were with him fled.

Reports of further devastations arrive.

The earl of Northumberland invites the duke.

[1] *nisibus accelleravit*] on the margin in A.

A.D. 1381. tello seu villa suæ custodiæ deputatis intrare permit-
But dare not in the end receive him. tere, donec sciret utrum dominus rex ei benevolus esset Wals. ii. 43.
an non. O casus super omni parte supra modum dolendus! pacis amator et reformator a pace sine delicto deicitur et perturbatur. Quo se divertat, quo caput suum inclinet? Si ad castrum de Banburgh[1] gressum
Where can he go? dirigat ubi familiam suam pro tempore quo in marchiam moram facere disposuerat, dictus comes eum prævenit ingressumque prohibuit, victualia quoque quæ pro se et familia sua ibidem paraverat secum abducere denegavit, unde orta est magna discordia, nec inmerito, inter eos.

The duke begins to fear lest the king should be set against him. Videns igitur pius dux innocentissimus quomodo prædictus comes super cæteros rumores adversabatur, magis sibi timuit ne rex ab aliquibus æmulis ejus sub sinistro consilio ductus ad istiusmodi luporum rabiem inconsulte præberet assensum.[2] Et ut verum
This was reported to be so. fatear, in multis locis regni divulgatum fuerat, regium assensum intervenisse in his quæ contra eum fiebant. Quod quidem a nonnullis credebatur licet vane, qui tamen forte, ut assolet, linguæ habenas a cordis radice laxabant, cupientes quod ore fatebantur in
This was by his rivals. effectu durius evenisse: nam plures habuit æmulos et inimicos divites simul ac pauperes, qui potius sinistra quam bona de eo loquebantur, male de eo sentientes, injusta contra eum cum non esset eorum meritus sæpe meditabantur. Sed deus semper adjutor
God was his help. ejus versutias omnium inimicorum vertebat in bonum, et omni tempore compescuit malitiam eorum, et ipsum eripuit de manibus eorum. Spretus igitur sic pius dux a dicto comite et ex omni parte sic agonizatus, et ab hospitio suo atque victualibus tam horribiliter Twys. col. 2642.
seclusus, recessit, nec mirum, corde mœrore repletus gressumque suum sub conductu præhabito in Scotiam direxit, ab amicis et cognatis repulsus, inter inimicos

---

[1] *Baumburgh*, MS.

[2] *assensum*] on the margin in A.

et ignotos hospitium quæsiturus. Ad villam de Ednesburgh[1] domino eum protegente in omnibus viis suis cum pervenisset, quos antea habuerat adversarios et inimicos tunc invenit eos amicos familiarissimos, nam Scoti humanissime eum receperunt, et donis, magnificentiis, exenniis honorificentiori modo quo sciebant ipsum glorificaverunt, et victualia ad plenum ei ministraverunt, et quicquid posset honoris vel solatii excogitari ei impendere sollicite curabant. A.D. 1381. The duke retires to Edinburgh,

Comes de Duglas, et comes de Dunbarre cum aliis duobus comitibus venerunt ad eandem villam in ejus solatium et confortationem, ibique expensis propriis aliquamdiu moram fecerunt ad ejus consolationem. Quid plura? Similiter ex alia parte ad memoriam deduxit actus suos præcedentis vitæ suæ, et de singulis operibus suis si in aliquo delicto transgressus fuerat, clam vel palam, erga regem vel regnum, quo tale quid mereretur ex sua culpa. Sicque librata conscientia cum animo suo, et in se non reperiens modicum vel grande quo posset juste accusari vel quid contra eum juste obici, his et his similibus cum sapienti deliberatione excogitatis in seipsum rediens, confortationem aliqualem inde sumpsit, in transacta justitia sua fiduciam habens, et in deo fixit cor suum, cui se et causam suam cum omni attentione commendavit, animadvertens quod scriptum est, Multæ tribulationes justorum et de his omnibus liberabit eos deus. where he is well received, and is visited by the earls of Douglas and Dunbar. He examines his own past life, and is comforted thereby.

Ps. xxxiii. 20.

Inter cætera tamen in memoriam retorquebat quomodo ac sæpius audierat tam a viris ecclesiasticis quam a suis domesticis, qualiter fama ejus quasi in omnibus partibus regni multo tempore denigrata fuerat, et qualiter ipse pro nullo duxerat quicquid ei dictum fuerat concupiscentia excæcatus, nec deum timens nec homines erubescens. Habebat namque quandam dominam Katerinam He recalls to mind how his character had been defamed.

[1] *Endusburgh*, MSS.

A.D. 1381. de Swynforde alienigenam in familia cum uxore sua, unde suspicio sinistra maxima de eo oriebatur. Et his excogitatis in seipsum, deo gratiam sibi inspirante, statim reversus est, et se totum divinæ misericordiæ committens, et emendationem vitæ deo promittens, votum vovit deo, quod, quam citius posset, dictam dominam a familia sua amoveret cum effectu ulterius non offensurus. Cumque ad propria redisset opportunitate nacta ipsam a domo sua statim amovit ulterius in familia sua non mansuram. Quid plura? Cumque ad aures boni regis Angliæ perstrepisset de tanta angustia ejus et calamitate inaudita atque tristitia intollerabili pii ducis avunculi sui, atque opprobriosa ejus repulsione minus juste ei objecta, maxime condoluit, et mox indilate literas consolatorias quam citius potuit ei transmittere festinavit. Et sic literis novis ac novis supervenientibus animum regis ei benevolum cognoscens, ad plenum consolatus est, et quasi pro nihilo duxit tantam injuriam et irrecuperabilia damna bonorum suorum. Similiter et fratres sui in quantum potuerunt eum consolari nisi sunt. O eventus quam variabilis! Nam unde maximum opprobrium illi oriebatur inde lætitia primi honoris provenit, et ideo cum redeunt consolationis mirabilia redit pio duci et ejus dilectoribus lætitia.

This was on account of Catharine Swynford.

He makes a vow to put her away.

And does so.

The king writes to the duke.

Who is comforted thereby.

And his heaviness is turned into joy.

Igitur his ita transactis rex benevolus mandat comiti Northumbriæ regias literas, ut quærat ducem Lancastriæ ubicumque fuerit cum omni honoris alacritate, et ipsum salvo, pro suo posse, ab inimicis custodiat, et fortitudine qua potuit armata ipsum adducat, et per partes suas salvo transducat, ne detrimentum patiatur. Sicque accidit quod qui primo repulsionis opprobrium ei intulit, primæ reductionis honorem illi impendebat. Cumque idem comes cum fortitudine armatorum ei obviam fecit, et ei obsequium honoris obtulerat, pius dux regi gratias egit, sed ipsum cum comitiva sua repulit dicens se non indigere ejus obse-

Twys. col. 2643.

The king commands the earl of Northumberland to keep the duke safe.

The duke declares he does

quio. Sicque abinvicem recesserunt absque pluri, pius dux viam suam graditur, comes vero in domum suam revertitur. A.D. 1381. not want help now.

Mandavit etiam rex omnibus et singulis dominis borialis plagæ ac etiam vicecomitibus et burgensibus omnibus et singulis præcipiens, quod quilibet eorum cum fortitudine sufficienti secundum vires suas ipsum salvo transducant per partes suas. Sicque factum est quod, aliis recedentibus in suo comitatu aliisque succedentibus in alio comitatu, cum honoris tripudio venit per Eboracum, Notyngamiam, Leycestriam, aliquando mille comitatus lanceatis, ut dicebatur, et quandoque numero majori stipatus, quandoque minori, exceptis sagittariis et aliis. Tandem vero venit ad regem apud Redynges. Rex vero in ejus adventu admodum lætus effectus, cum magno honore eum suscepit, atque cum omni diligentia eum confortabat, donisque largifluis, prout decuit regiam magnificentiam ad suum avunculum, hilariter honorificavit. All people are commanded to give the duke safe conduct. At last he comes to the king at Reading, and is received with all honour.

Wals. ii. 44.

Ne cuidam cedat in mirum quare ipsum totiens pium ducem vocitavi, diligens lector attendat et auditor, veritatis amicus, intelligat, quod iste pius[1] dux pietatis tanto robore fundatus extitit, quod in omnibus tribulationibus suis et in omnibus angustiis atque injuriis sibi malitiose illatis non vindictam quæsivit, non ultionem per suos mandavit, sed æquanimiter tollerans cuicunque petenti delicta condonavit. Cum autem thesaurus argenteorum vasorum ejus per quosdam de familiaribus suis sæpius ad magnam summam furtive ablatus fuisset, et ministri ejus per juris rigorem contra eos captos tandem vellent procedere eos suspendendo, tantæ pietatis spiritu repletus erat quod ipsos prohibuit dicens se nolle aliquem hominem perire pro bonis suis, præcipiens semper tales dimitti sub abjuratione, quod se Let no one wonder at my praise of him, for he sought no revenge, was merciful to those who wronged him.

[1] Here on both margins is *Pietas ducis.*

A.D. 1381. abstinerent a familia et domo regis, et domo sua, et domo fratrum suorum.

Enquiry made by justice Tresylyon about the insurrection.

His itaque gestis[1] et quietis tempore succedente, aderat tempus quo rex puniri faceret delinquentes. Missus est igitur dominus Robertus Tresylyon[2] justiciarius præcepto regis ad inquirendum de surgentibus contra pacem et puniendum. Qui ubique discurrens et nulli parcens fecit stragem magnam. Et ut illi malefactores inimicabiliter insidiabantur adversus justiciarios, scilicet dominum Johannem de Candyche[3] et alios quos invenire potuerunt, mortem eis inferendo capitalem, atque contra omnes legis regni peritos quos invenire poterant, nec cuidam eorum pepercerunt capitali sententia puniendo, sic nec ipse cuiquam pepercit, vicem pro vice rependens. Nam quicunque accusatus fuerat coram eo in causa supradicta, sive juste sive ex odio, statim ipsum mortis sententia plectebat. Et alios quidem decapitari præcepit, alios autem suspendi, alios vero trahi per civitates et suspendi per quatuor partes civitatum, alios autem eviscerari, visceraque concremari coram ipsis viventibus, posteaque decollari et in iv. partes dividi ac suspendi per iv. partes civitatum secundum delicti et meriti quantitatem. Dominus Johannes[4] Balle vero captus fuit apud Coventre et ductus apud sanctum Albanum, ibique præcepto regis tractus fuit et suspensus, atque in iv. partes divisus, quæ ad iv. loca missæ sunt et suspensa.

Wals. ii. 19.

He punished with death all who are brought before him.

Twys. col. 2644.

John Balle hanged at St. Alban's.

Fasc. Ziz. 273.

Wals. ii. 34.

Marriage of the king.

Eodem anno apud Westmonasterium rex Ricardus desponsavit[5] Annam, filiam regis Boemi, sororem Imperatoris, et dedit Imperatori ut dicebatur pro maritagio decem mille libras præter alias expensas in

Wals. ii. 47.

---

[1] Here on both margins is *Ultio de communibus.*

[2] *Tresilyon*, MS.

[3] *Candiche*, MS.

[4] On both margins is *Johannes Balle.*

[5] On both margins is *Rex Ricardus desponsavit.*

quærendo eam et adducendo eam sumptibus suis propriis. A.D. 1381.

Anno proximo sequenti MCCCLXXXII., regis Ricardi v°, dominus rex ad specialem rogatum Annæ reginæ et aliorum magnatum regni, et specialiter pii ducis Lancastriæ, condonavit generaliter omnibus antedictis insurgentibus malefactoribus unientibus et adhærentibus et consentientibus eisdem, et concessit cartas eisdem prosequi volentibus; et mediante divina clementia dicta rabies sic sopita est. A.D. 1382. The king grants a general pardon.

Fasc. Ziz. 272. Wals. ii. 67.

Xii. kalendarum Junii terræ motus generalis mala multa faciens in regno quasi prima hora post nonam feria quarta. Item die Veneris sequenti quasi in ortu solis terræ motus non multum nocens. Sabbato sequenti aquæ motus quasi hora tertia mane. Naves vacillabant in portubus ab aquæ motu. An earthquake.

In istis temporibus floruit magister Johannes Wyclyfe[1] rector ecclesiæ de Lutturworthe in comitatu Leycestriæ, doctor in theologia eminentissimus in diebus illis. In philosophia nulli reputabatur secundus, in scholasticis[2] disciplinis incomparabilis. Hic maxime nitebatur aliorum ingenia subtilitate scientiæ et profunditate ingenii sui transcendere, et ab opinionibus eorum variare. Hic multas dicitur introducere in ecclesia opiniones quæ a catholicis ecclesiæ doctoribus reprobantur, quæ in suo loco pro parte patebunt. Hic habuit præcursorem Johannem Balle,[3] veluti Christus Johannem Baptistam, qui vias suas in talibus opinionibus præparavit, et plurimos quoque doctrina sua, ut dicitur, perturbavit. De quo superius mentionem feci. Hic magister Johannes Wyclif Evangelium quod Christus contulit clericis et ecclesiæ doctoribus, ut ipsi laicis et infirmioribus personis, secundum tempo- John Wycliffe. His great learning. John Balle was a forerunner of him.

Fasc. Ziz. 273.

[1] Here on both margins is *Wyclyff*.

[2] *scolastica*, MSS.

[3] Here on margin of MS. only is *J. Ball*.

A.D. 1382. Wycliffe translated the Scriptures into English.

ris exigentiam et personarum indigentiam, cum mentis eorum esurie, dulciter ministrarent, transtulit de Latino in Anglicam linguam non angelicam, unde per ipsum fit vulgare et magis apertum laicis, et mulieribus legere scientibus, quam solet esse clericis admodum literatis et bene intelligentibus, et sic evangelica margarita spargitur et a porcis conculcatur, et sic quod solet esse carum clericis et laicis jam redditur quasi jocositas communis utriusque, et gemma clericorum vertitur in ludum laicorum, ut laicis sit commune æternum, quod ante fuerat clericis et ecclesiæ doctoribus talentum supernum. Sicque sponsus ecclesiæ conqueritur et cum propheta potest clamare, Sedebit honor ecclesiæ solitarius, et tacebit quia levavit[1] super se. Et sic adimpletum est quod prædixit Willelmus de Sancto amore[2] longo ante tempore, et potest applicari congrue de eodem populo, sic inquiens, Aliqui laborant[3] ad mutandum Evangelium Christi in aliud Evangelium quod dicunt fore perfectius et melius et dignius, quod appellant Evangelium æternum sive Evangelium Spiritus Sancti.

This was a scattering of pearls before swine.

The bridegroom of the church may complain.

Lam. iii. 28.

A prophecy of William de Sancto Amore.

Æternum congrue dici potest, quia jam vulgare et commune in materna lingua, et sic in æterna memoria.

Twys. col. 2645.

Of the writings of William.

Hic prædictus Willelmus composuit libellum de adventu talis populi, de conversatione, de vita et moribus eorum satis expresse, et incipit sic. Willelmus de sancto Amore anno Domini MCCLV. cap. viii. Nos sumus in quos fines seculorum devenerunt, scilicet in ultima ætate seculi. Post istam vero sextam ætatem, quæ est pugnantium. cum qua currit septima ætas, quæ est quiescentium, non est ventura [ætas] alia nisi octava quæ est resurgentium. Igitur nos sumus in

His prophetic utterances.

[1] The MSS. insert another *se* after *levavit*, which is not in the Vulgate.

[2] Here on margin of MS. only is *Willelmus de Sancto amore*. The passage quoted below has been compared with the edition of *Willelmus* published at Constance in 1632, and the words in brackets are from that text.

[3] *laborabant*, MSS.

ultima ætate hujus mundi, et ista ætas jam plus duravit quam aliqua aliarum quæ currerunt[1] per[2] millenarium numerum[3] annorum, quia ista[4] duravit per mcclv. annos. Verisimile est igitur quod nos sumus prope finem, igitur propinquiores sumus periculis novissimorum temporum quæ ventura sunt ante adventum Antichristi. Ista probat ibidem per plures auctoritates sacræ scripturæ. Relinquitur igitur quod in novissimis temporibus sumus aut illis valde propinqui, quod ostendemus per octo signa quod jam [prædicta] pericula instant. Primum enim est, Quod aliqui laborant ad mutandum Evangelium Christi in aliud Evangelium quod fore dicunt perfectius et melius et dignius, quod appellant Evangelium æternum sive Evangelium Spiritus Sancti, quo adveniente evacuabitur, ut dicunt, Evangelium Christi, ut parati sumus ostendere, in illo Evangelio maledicto. Hoc signum manifestum est quod prope est tempus Antichristi, de quo in Psalmo, Constitue, Domine, legis latorem super eos. Glossa. Antichristum pravæ legis latorem.

A.D. 1382.

The end of the age is near.

Eight signs thereof.

The first is the change of the Gospel.

Ps. ix. 21.

Secundum signum est, Quod illa doctrina quæ prædicabitur tempore Antichristi, videlicet Evangelium æternum prædictum, [Parisius] ubi viget scripturæ sacræ studium jam publice positum fuit explicandum,[5] [anno Domini 1254] unde certum est quod jam prædicaretur nisi esset aliquid quod eam detineret. Quid autem detineat scitis, scilicet imperium Petri et eorum qui [tenent] loca apostolorum, scilicet episcoporum. Nisi enim venerit discessio primum non revelabitur filius perditionis vel iniquitatis, unde caveant episcopi ne prædicti pseudo-prædicatores[6] pro-

The second.

---

[1] *quam-currerunt*] quam aliæ quæ current, in the printed text.

After *per* MS. inserts *annum*.

[3] *numerum*] omitted in the printed text.

[4] *ista*, from the printed text, *jam*, MSS.

[5] *exemplandum*, MSS.

[6] The MSS. read *pseudo* after *prædicatores*.

A.D. 1382. curent eorum percussionem,[1] id est, ablationem potestatis eorum; sicut significatur in Evangelio æterno.

The third. Tertium signum est, Quod sicut in Babylone reproba, postquam visa est manus scribens, Mane, Techel Phares, cito secuta est subversio ejus, (Danielis 5,) sic in Babylone dilecta Domini, (Ysa. 21.) [id est] in ecclesia, cum jam visa sit dicta scriptura, constat quod prope sint pericula ejus. Sed ista tria verba jam visa sunt scripta in ecclesia. Scripta sunt enim in illo maledicto libro quem appellant Evangelium æternum, quod in ecclesia jam propalatum est; propter quod timendum est de subversione ecclesiæ. Mane, ut exponitur Danielis 5., numeratur regnum ecclesiæ, scilicet Evangelium Christi, et concluditur in certo numero annorum. Techel inventum est minus habens perfectionis et dignitatis quam Evangelium æternum, quanto minus lucet luna quam sol, quanto minus valet testa quam nucleus, et multæ tales scriptæ sunt ibi comparationes quibus probatur minus valere Evangelium Christi quam Evangelium æternum. Phares ibi invenitur quod regnum ecclesiæ dividetur post prædictum tempus ab illis qui tenent Evangelium Christi, et dabitur illis qui tenent Evangelium æternum.

The fourth. Quartum signum est, Quod propinquante[2] fine seculi et adventu Antichristi quidam, qui apparebunt in ecclesia Christi[3] sanctiores et tamen facient quod displicet Christo, corrigentur per aliquos juxta visionem beati Johannis de correctione ecclesiarum, Apoc. 2 & 3. Ipsi autem correctionem sustinere nolentes, suos correctores tradent in tribulationem, et procurabunt ut ab omnibus odiantur vel odio habeantur, et ut etiam aliqui ex eis occidantur. Twys. col. 2646.

[1] *excussionem*, printed text.

[2] *appropinquante*, printed text, and so in all the following clauses.

[3] *Christi* omitted in printed text.

Quintum signum est, Quando, propinquante consummatione seculi, illi qui videntur in ecclesia sanctiores reprehendentur de falsa sanctitate et de sua præsumptione, propter quod multi, tam ipsi quam scilicet eorum fautores, scandalizabuntur. A.D. 1382. The fifth.

Sextum signum est, Quod propinquante consummatione seculi surgent quidam in ecclesia prædicatores commendantes semetipsos ultra mensuratum a Deo sibi populum, quia gloriabuntur in prædicando plebibus vel populis non suis. Et isti sub specie pietatis multos seducent, id est, a consiliis prælatorum ad consilia [sua][1] ducent. The sixth.

Septimum signum est, Quod propinquante consummatione seculi quidam qui videntur in ecclesia magni zelatores fidei et maxime amare Christum, dimittent Evangelium Christi et adhærebunt Evangelio æterno quod ex toto absorbet[2] fidem Christi, unde refrigescet caritas qua sermo dei custoditur. The seventh.

Octavum signum est, Quod propinquante consummatione seculi annunciabuntur in ecclesia signa propinqua consummationis, ut sic intelligant metuentes Christum prope [esse] consummationem seculi et dolorem qui erit tempore Antichristi. The eighth.

Hæc ibi in octavo capitulo et multa alia cum allegationibus sacræ scripturæ; quæ quidam applicant ad fratres mendicantes, magis tamen congruunt istis novis populis Lollardis qui mutaverunt Evangelium Christi in Evangelium æternum, id est, vulgarem linguam et communem maternam, et sic æternam, quia laicis reputatur melior et dignior quam lingua Latina. These were applied to the Mendicant Friars.

Idemque Willelmus ostendit[3] capitulatim in libro suo de verbo ad verbum, Quod in ecclesia Christi multa et magna pericula sunt futura, secundo capitulo, et per cujusmodi homines sunt futura. 3°. Quam They suit the Lollards better.

[1] There is a ʌ after *consilia* in A.
[2] *obsorbet*, MSS.
[3] This is a summary of the headings of the fourteen chapters of which the work *De periculis novissimorum temporum* consists.

A.D. 1382. habiles et idonei[1] erunt ad pericula inducenda. 4°. Cujusmodi erunt illa pericula. 5°. Qualiter procedent in periculis producendis. 6°. Quod qui non præviderint illa pericula, aut prævisa non præcaverint, peribunt in illis. 7°. Quoniam et ipsi parantes aliis pericula in multis periculis seipsos constituerunt: similiter in quibus periculis erunt constituti. 8°. Ne dicat quis de prædictis periculis nondum esse curandum utpote adhuc remotis, ostendit per quædam signa illa non esse remota longe sed satis propinqua. 9°. Ostendit, Quorum est illa pericula prævidere et prænunciare, et a fidelibus repellere. 10. Ostendit, Quam pœnam incurrent hi qui pericula tenentur prævidere et prænunciare, et ab ecclesia repellere, si non fecerint. 11°. Ne videatur inpossibile illa repelli eo quod sunt prophetice prædicta, ostendit quod repelli poterunt ad tempus. 12°. Ostendit, Qualiter sunt repellenda et possunt repelli. 13°. Quia repelli non possent prædicta pericula, nisi cognoscerentur illi qui pericula procurabant, ostendit ubi possunt prædicti periculosi viri inveniri. 14°. Ostendit, plurima signa quædam infallibilia, quædam vero probabilia per quæ possunt dicti homines cognosci. Ista ostendit cum auctoritatibus sacræ scripturæ luculenter. Et incipit liber.

On dangers from such men to the church of Christ.

And how they may be repelled.

Twys. col. 2647.

Wycliffe a holder of singular opinions.

Prædictus magister Johannes Wyclyf tenuit, ut prædictum est, singulares opiniones et conclusiones, et in tantum in eis delectatus est et fidens,[2] quod[3] sæpius asserebat se velle et paratum esse ire in carcerem, et ignem atque mortem subire pro defensione earum si necessitas temporis illud ab eo postulasset; similiter et cæteri sui hæresistæ discipuli et complices atque fautores, arridente sibi prosperitatis quiete, omnes se esse paratos affirmabant. Interim occidit eis lux audaciæ, et tenebræ eos vecordiæ con-

He is summoned before the

[1] *ydonei*, MSS.
[2] *sedens*, MSS.
[3] A. has *se* before *sæpius*.

prehenderunt. Nam idem magister Johannes citatus fuit et vocatus mandato domini papæ ad comparendum coram archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et multis aliis ecclesiæ doctoribus in ecclesia fratrum prædicatorum Londoniis ad respondendum super hæretica pravitate, ubi habuit præcipuum adjutorem pium ducem Lancastriæ, qui semper ei et suis in omnibus necessitatibus invincibili præsidio affuit, et aliter ipse et sui in foveam interitus viliter cecidissent. Cumque die statuto ad objecta respondere deberet omnem præjactitatam cordis audaciam sine mora dimisit et induit vecordiæ loricam, fantasticosque errores dedicere suos esse molitus est, atque opiniones et conclusiones suas esse vel fuisse firmiter negare conatus est, et eas ab aliis inventas et nomine ejus prædicatas et doctas, et illi ascriptas fuisse protestatus est. Cum tamen ipse et sui eas omni nisu foverant retroacto tempore et publicaverant[1] veras fuisse, et antiquos libros de solida fide ecclesiæ scriptos raserant literalique doctrina novæ opinionis[2] in pluribus locis rescripserant. Thomamque Alquinum in suis scriptis novis opinionibus eorum contrariant,[3] et quia frater erat, concludebant, igitur mendax est. Sicque dejectis armis totius non divinitatis, immo vanitatis, affugit idem magister Johannes Wyclyff sub alas maternæ disciplinæ, pro refugio mortem evadendi, quam a matre didicerat a cunis sub forma quæ sequitur.

A.D. 1382.

Fasc. Ziz. 272. Wals. ii. 57. Fasc. Ziz. 300.

Archbishop of Canterbury.

He is aided by the duke of Lancaster.

He disavows the tenets ascribed to him.

I knowleche that the Sacrament[4] of the auter is verray Goddus body in fourme of brede; but it is in anoþer maner Godus body then it is in hevene. For in heven it is seve[5] fote in fourme and[6] figure of fleshe and blode. But

Wycliffe's confession.

---

[1] *puplicaverant*, A.

[2] *oppinionis*, A.

[3] *contrarant*, MSS.

[4] Here on both margins is *Prima confessio Wyclyff de sacramento.*

[5] *seve fote.* The Latin of Fasc. Ziz. is *Nullo autem istorum modorum trium est corpus Christi in Sacramento sed in cælo, quia tunc jaret corpus Christi* septipedale *in hostia.*

[6] *and*] an, MS.

A.D. 1382. in þe Sacrament Goddus body is be myracle of God in fourme of brede, and is he nouþer of seve[1] fote, ne in mannes figure. But as a man leeues for to þenk the kynde of an ymage whether it be of oke or of asshe, and settys his þouȝt in him of whom is the ymage, so myche more schuld a man leve to þenk on the kynde of brede. But þenk upon Christ, for his body is the same brede that is the Sacrament of the autere, and with alle clennes, alle devocion, and alle charite þat God wolde gif him, worschippe he Crist, and þen he receyves God gostly more medefully þan þe Prist[2] þat syngus[3] the masse in lesse charite. For þe bodely etyng ne profytes nouth þe[4] soule, but in als mykul[5] as þe soule is fedde with charite. Þis sentence is provyde be Crist that may nouȝt lye. For as þe Gospel says, Crist þat night þat he was betraiyede of Judas Scarioth, he tok brede in his hondes, and blesside it, brak it, and gaf it to hise disciplus to ete. For he says, and may not lye, þis is my body. Fasc. Ziz. 117. Twys. col. 2648.

Heresies of Wycliffe.

Opiniones et Conclusiones Magistri Johannis Wyclyf. Wals. ii. 58, 59.

Hæresis 1. Quod substantia panis materialis aut[6] vini manet post consecrationem in sacramento altaris. Fasc. Ziz. 277.

Hæresis 2.[7] Quod accidentia non manent sine subjecto post consecrationem in eodem sacramento. Ibid. 278.

Hæresis 3. Quod Christus non est in sacramento Altaris idemptice,[8] vere, et realiter in propria persona corporali.

Hæresis 4. Quod episcopus vel sacerdos si[9] existat in mortali peccato, non ordinat,[10] conficit, nec baptizat.

Hæresis5.[11] Quod si homo fuerit debite contritus omnis confessio exterior est sibi superflua vel inutilis.

---

[1] *seven*, MS.
[2] *preste*, MS.
[3] *syngeth*, MS.
[4] *to*, A.
[5] *mykle*, MS.
[6] *aut*] et, F.Z.
[7] 2 and 3 are transposed in A., not in *Fasc. Ziz.*
[8] *identice*, F.Z.
[9] *si* is written above the line in A.
[10] *ordinate*, MS.
[11] Here at the top of the page in A. is *anno 1382*.

Quod pertinaciter asserere non est [1] fundatum in Evangelio quod Christus missam ordinaverit. A.D. 1382. Hæresis 6.

Quod Deus debet obedire diabolo. Hæresis 7.

Quod si Papa sit præscitus [2] et malus, ac per consequens membrum diaboli, non habet potestatem supra fideles Christi ab aliquo sibi datam nisi forte a Cæsare. Hæresis 8.

Fasc. Ziz. 279.

Quod post Urbanum sextum non est aliquis recipiendus in Papam, sed vivendum est, more Græcorum, sub propriis legibus. Hæresis 9.

Quod nullus prælatus debet aliquem excommunicare nisi prius sciat ipsum excommunicatum a deo. His errors. Error 1.[3]

Quod sic excommunicans ex hoc sit hæreticus vel excommunicatus. Error 2.

Quod prælatus excommunicans clericum qui appellavit ad regem et consilium regni, eo ipso traditor dei est et [4] regis et regni. Error 3.

Fasc. Ziz. 280.

Quod illi qui dimittunt prædicare, seu audire verbum dei, seu Evangelium prædicatum propter excommunicationem hominum, sunt excommunicati, et in die judicii traditores dei habebuntur. Error 4.

[5] Asserere quod est contra sacram scripturam, quod viri ecclesiastici habeant possessiones temporales. Error 5.

Asserere quod liceat alicui etiam diacono vel presbitero prædicare verbum dei absque auctoritate sedis apostolicæ, vel episcopi catholici, seu alia de qua sufficienter constat. Error 6.

Asserere quod nullus est dominus civilis, nullus est episcopus, nullus est prælatus dum est in mortali peccato. Error 7.

Twys. col. 2649.

Quod domini temporales possunt ad arbitrium [6] auferre bona temporalia sibi ab [7] ecclesia habitualiter delinquente, vel quod populares possunt ad eorum arbitrium dominos delinquentes corrigere. Error 8.

---

[1] *esse*, F.Z.

[2] *præsertus*, MSS.

[3] Marked also as *hæresis* in both MSS.

[4] *et*, om. Fasc. Ziz.

[5] In *Fasc. Ziz.* this Error 5 is placed as the *tenth* among the *hæreses*, and so the *Errors* number only fourteen.

[6] *eorum* added after *arbitrium* in Fasc. Ziz.

[7] *ab ecclesiasticis habitualiter delinquentibus*, F.Z.

A.D. 1382. Error 9. Quod decimæ sunt puræ eleemosynæ, et quod parochiani possunt propter peccata suorum curatorum eas detinere, et ad libitum eas[1] aliis conferre.

Error 10. Quod speciales orationes applicatæ uni personæ per prælatos vel religiosos non plus prosunt eidem personæ quam generales orationes eidem personæ[2] cæteris paribus. Fasc. Ziz. 281.

Error 11. Quod eo ipso quod aliquis ingreditur religionem privatam quamcumque redditur ineptior et inhabilior ad observantiam mandatorum dei.

Error 12. Quod sancti instituentes religiones quascumque privatas, tam possessionatorum quam mendicantium, in sic instituendo peccaverunt.

Error 13. Quod religiosi viventes in religionibus privatis non sunt de religione Christiana.

Error 14. Quod fratres mendicantes[3] teneantur per laborem manuum suarum et non per mendicationem victum suum adquirere. Fasc. Ziz. 282.

Error 15. [4] Quod fratres, mendicantes post sermones suos, eo ipso sunt simoniaci, vel quod conferentes eis eleemosynam sunt excommunicati, et dans et recipiens.

Wycliffe is to appear before the Archbishop in Oxford.

Istis et aliis ab archiepiscopo et consilio ejus consideratis, noluit archiepiscopus ea vice plenarie procedere in causa, donec deliberaret plenarius cum consilio coepiscoporum suorum, et tunc assignavit dicto magistro Johanni Wyclyf alium diem ad comparendum coram eo apud Oxoniam, ut cum consilio cleri universitatis posset luculentius procedere et finem imponere in præmissis. Igitur die statuto convenit apud Oxoniam archiepiscopus cum coepiscopis Lincolniensi, Northwycensi, Vigorniensi, Londoniensi, Salysbyriensi, Herfordensi, cum cancellario universitatis, cum multis doctoribus et pluribus aliis de clero et de populo ibidem congregato. Similiter affuit magister Johannes Wyclyf ad respondendum super hæretica pravitate ut prius de prædictis conclusionibus Wals. 60.

He attends.

---

[1] *eas*] om. Fasc. Ziz.
[2] *personæ*, om. Fasc. Ziz.
[3] *mendicantes*, om. Fasc. Ziz.
[4] The last Error is given in Fasc. Ziz., *quod conferens eleemosynam fratribus*, vel *fratri prædicanti, est excommunicatus*; et recipiens.

sive opinionibus. Qui eis omnino renuncians, nec eas tenuisse, neque tenere se velle protestans, ad maternalis virgæ documentum, quod ei antea pro refugio præsto fuerat, advolavit iterum, sub forma quæ sequitur. A.D. 1382.

Fasc. Ziz. 383 *seqq.*

His form of answer.

[1] We beleve, as Crist and his Apostolus han tauȝt us, þat þe Sacrament of the Autere white and ronde and like tyl oure brede or ost[2] unsacrede is verray Goddus body in fourme of brede, and if it be broken in thre parties, os the Kirke uses, or elles[3] in a þousand, everylk one of þese parties is þe same Godus body, and right so as the persone of Crist is verray God and verray man, verray Godhede and verray manhede, ryth so as holy Kyrke many hundrith wynter has trowyde, the same Sacrament is verray Godus body and verry brede; os it is forme of Goddus body and forme of brede, as techith Crist and his Apostolus. And þerefore seynt Poule nennyth[4] it never but whan he callus it brede, and he, be oure beleve, tok his wit of God in þis: and the argument of heretykus, agayne this sentens, lyth to a cristene man for to assolve.[5] And right as it is heresie for to trowe þat þis Sacrament is Goddus body and no brede, for it is bothe togedur.[6] But the most heresie þat God sufferide come tyl his Kirke, is to trowe þat þis Sacrament is an accident wiþ a substance and may on no wyse be Goddus body: for Crist sayde be witnesse of John, þat þis brede is my body, and if þe[y] say þat, be þis skylle,[7] holy Kyrke hat bene in heresie many hundred wynter, sothe it is, specially sythen the fende was lousede þat was, be witnesse of Angele to John Evaungeliste, aftur a þousande wynter that Crist was steuenyde to heven. But it is to suppose that many seyntes that dyede in the mene tyme before her dethez were puredc of þis erroure. Owe[8] howe grete diversite is betwene us þat trowes þat þis Sacrament is verray brede in his kynde and betuene heretykus that tellus þat þis is[9] an accident withouten a subjecte. For before þat þe fende, fader of lesyngus, was lowside, was never this gabbyng contryvede.

Twys. col. 2859.

[1] Here on both margins is *secunda Confessio Wyclyff.*
[2] *oste*, MS.
[3] *ellys*, MS.
[4] *nemyth*, MS.
[5] *assoyle*, MS.
[6] *togydre*, MS. The sentence appears to be incomplete.
[7] *þat* wrongly inserted after *skylle* in MSS.
[8] Sic in MSS. = Oh.
[9] om. A.

A.D. 1382 And howe grete diversite is betwene us þat trowes þat þis Sacrament þat in his kynde is verray brede and sacramentally Goddus body, and betwe heretykes that trowes and telles þat þis Sacrament may on none wyse be Goddus body. For I dar sewrly say þat ȝif þis were soth, Crist and his seyntes dyede heretykus, and þe more partye of holy Kirke belevyth nowe heresie, and before devoute men supposene þat þis consayle of Freres[1] and London was wiþ þe hery dene. For þey put an heresye up on Crist and seyntes in hevyne[2]; wherefore[3] þe erþe tremblide, faylande maynnus voys, ansueride for God, als it dide in tyme of his passione whan he was dampnyde to bodely deth. Crist and his modur, þat in gronde[4] had destroyde alle heresyes, kepe his Kyrke in right beleve of þis Sacrament, and meve the king and his rewme to aske sharpely of his clerkus þis offis þat alle his possessioneres on paine of[5] lesyng of alle her temporaltes telle þe king and his rewme wiþ sufficient grownding, what is þis Sacrament, and alle þe orders of Freres on paine of lesyng of her legyuns[6] telle the king and his rewme wiþ gode grounding what is þe Sacrament. For I am certaine of þe thridde partie of clergye that defendus þise doutes þat is here saide, þat þey will defende it on payne of her lyf.[7]

Wycliffe's opinions condemned.

Cumque hæc et hujusmodi sic agerentur, archiepiscopus cum consilio coepiscoporum, ac doctorum et aliorum clericorum sibi assistentium, fecit deliberationem de antedictis opinionibus seu conclusionibus, libratisque singulis decisis atque discussis, cum assensu atque consensu totius concilii, publicavit[8] eas falsas esse, et pronunciavit eas damnandas et damnatas, quasdam scilicet ut hæreses, quasdam vero ut errores, sicut patet de singulis in suo loco; et omnes et singulos defensores earum in posterum sententia excommunicationis innodatos fore publice declaravit. Et in evidentia hujus rei feria sexta in hebdomada Pente-

---

[1] *Freerez*, MS.
[2] *deene*, MS.
[3] *Owerfore*, MS.
[4] *grounde*, MS.
[5] *of*] *o*, MS.
[6] *legeaunce*, MS.
[7] *lyve*, MS.
[8] *puplicavit*, MSS.

Twys. col. 2651. costes proxima sequenti facta fuit processio generalis per civitatem Londoniensem,[1] et omnes tam clerus quam cæteri laici, cujuscumque gradus essent, nudis pedibus incedebant pro statu. Et præses [2] ecclesiæ fuit episcopus Londoniensis cum pluribus aliis valentibus: et post processionem prædicavit unus frater et doctor in theologia de ordine Carmelitarum qui vocabatur Kynygham; in qua prædicatione, ex præcepto et commissione archiepiscopi Cantuariensis ibi ostensa, pronunciavit publice omni populo conclusiones illas falsas fore et damnatas, quasdam ut hæreses et quasdam ut errores, et ex præostensa commissione denunciavit omnes illos excommunicatos qui eas in posterum docent et tenent, ac prædicant, vel favent et eis adhærent, et omnes audientes in posterum illas prædicatas vel doctas. Et in isto sermone præsens fuit unus venerabilis miles, nomine Cornelius Cloune,[3] qui istis conclusionibus et eas tenentibus ac docentibus maximus fautor fuerat, nec voluit pro quocumque aliter credere de sacramento altaris nisi quod ibi esset verus panis materialis secundum opinionem Wyclyfe. In crastino, scilicet in vigilia sanctæ Trinitatis iste miles ivit ad conventum fratrum prædicatorum in civitate Londoniensi pro missa audienda; et accidit quod audivit missam unius studentis de conventu illo, et in elevatione corporis Christi nihil vidit nisi sicut prius videre solebat, ita quod firmiter credidit quod ibi fuit verus panis materialis. In fractione vero hostiæ miles respexit et vidit oculo suo corporali in manibus fratris celebrantis veram carnem, crudam, et sanguinolentam divisam in tres partes. Admirans vero et stupefactus vocavit armigerum suum, ut ipse videret, qui tamen nihil vidit nisi sicut prius solebat. Miles vero in

A.D. 1382.

A procession through the city of London in connexion with the condemnation.

Fasc. Ziz. 453, 477.

A sermon by Dr. Kynygham.

Its effect on Cornelius Cloune.

He is afterwards convinced by a miracle

[1] On both margins is *publicatio apud London.*

[2] *præsens*, MSS.

[3] On margin of MS. is *Cornelius Clowne.*

A.D. 1382. tertia particula similiter, quæ in calicem mitti debuit, vidit eundem colorem albedinis quæ prius erat, sed tamen vidit in medio ejusdem particulæ hoc nomen Jesus scriptum literis carneis, crudis, et sanguineis, quod admirabile erat aspectu. Et in crastino in festo sanctæ Trinitatis idem frater prædicans in cruce Pauli sancti pronunciavit istud toti populo. Et in fine sermonis idem miles ibidem præsens narravit ore tenus totum processum publice et aperte ad confirmationem fidei nostræ, et promisit se ibi pugnaturum et moriturum in causa ista, quod in sacramento altaris est verum corpus Christi et non panis materialis solum, ut ipsemet prius credidit. Hæreses supradictæ et errores quæ ascribuntur magistro Johanni Wyclyf damnatæ in domo fratrum prædicatorum Londoniis feria quarta ante festum Pentecostes a decem episcopis et xvii. doctoribus in theologia, et xvi.[1] doctoribus juris, et pluribus aliis bachulariis tam theologiæ quam etiam juris ut in præcedenti patent.

that Transsubstantiation is true.

Confesses his former error.

Fasc. Ziz. 286.

Sequitur copia commissionis qualiter archiepiscopus scribit coepiscopis de damnatione hæresum; missa aliis episcopis prout episcopus Lincolniensis recitat sub hac forma.

Commission of the Archbishop to the other bishops on this condemnation.

Johannes permissione divina Lincolniensis episcopus, dilectis in Christo filiis universis et singulis, abbatibus, prioribus archidiaconatus Leycestriæ, et ejusdem loci archidiacono nostro officiali seu commissario cuicumque, necnon decanis ecclesiarum, rectoribus et vicaribus perpetuis, ac eorum capellanis parochialibus et aliis quibuscumque divina celebrantibus per ipsum archidiaconatum ubilibet constitutis salutem, gratiam, et benedictionem. Literas reverendi in Christo patris domini Roberti dei gratia Londoniensis episcopi salutem et sinceram in Domino caritatem. Mandatum[2] venerabilis in Christo patris et domini, domini Willelmi dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopi totius Angliæ primatis

The form as issued by the bishop of Lincoln.

Twys. col. 2652.

---

[1] *xvi.*] *xiv.* in Fasc. Ziz.

[2] The mandate of the archbishop is printed in Wilkin's *Concilia*, iii. 158, and with this the text has been compared.

et apostolicæ sedis legati, venerabili fratri nostro domino Roberto dei gratia Londoniensi episcopo salutem et fraternam in Domino caritatem. Ecclesiarum prælati circa gregis dominici sibi commissi custodiam eo vigilantius intendere debent quo lupos intrinsecus ovium vestimentis indutos ad rapiendum et dispergendum oves noverint fraudulentius [1] circuire. Sane frequenti clamore et divulgata fama, quod dolentes referimus, ad nostrum pervenit auditum, quod licet secundum canonicas sanctiones nemo prohibitus vel non missus absque sedis apostolicæ vel episcopi loci auctoritate sibi officium prædicationis usurpare debeat publice vel occulte, quidam tamen æternæ damnationis filii in insaniam mentis producti sub magnæ sanctitatis velamine auctoritatem sibi vendicant prædicandi, ac nonnullas propositiones et conclusiones infrascriptas hæreticas [erroneas] [2] atque falsas ab ecclesia dei damnatas et determinationibus sanctæ ecclesiæ repugnantes quæ statum [3] totius ecclesiæ nostræque provinciæ Cantuariensis et tranquillitatem regni [subvertere et] [2] enervare nituntur, tam in ecclesiis quam in plateis, et quam pluribus aliis locis profanis dictæ nostræ provinciæ non verentur asserere, dogmatizare [ac generaliter] [2] et publice prædicare, illis nonnullos Christi fideles inficientes, et a fide Catholica, sine qua non est salus, facientes flebiliter deviare.

A.D. 1382.

Wilkins, iii. 158.

Containing the mandate of the archbishop.

Wilkins, iii. 159.

Nos itaque attendentes quod tam perniciosum malum quod ad [4] plurimos serpere poterit, eorum animas, letali contagione necando, non debeamus sicuti nec debemus sub dissimulatione transire ne sanguis eorum de nostris manibus requiratur, sed illud quantum nobis ex alto permittitur extirpare volentes, de quamplurium fratrum [et] [2] suffraganeorum nostrorum consilio et assensu convocavimus plures sacræ theologiæ doctores, ac juris canonici et civilis professores et alios clericos, quos famosiores et peritiores de regno credidimus, [et sanctius in fide catholica sententes] [2] ut super dictis conclusionibus vota sua dicerent et sentirent. Verum quia præmissis conclusionibus et assertionibus in nostra et eorundem confratrum nostrorum ac [5] dictorum convocatorum præsentia patentibus expositis et diligenter examinatis finaliter est compertum, nostroque et

---

[1] *fraudilentius*, MSS.
[2] From Wilkins.
[3] *statumque*, MSS.
[4] *ad*] in, *Wilkins*.
[5] *ac . . . convocatorum*] om. W.

A.D. 1382. eorum omnium communicato consilio declaratum, quasdam conclusionum illarum hæreticas esse, quasdam vero erroneas atque determinationibus ecclesiæ repugnantes, prout inferius describuntur; fraternitati vestræ committimus et mandamus, in virtute sanctæ obedientiæ firmiter injungentes, quatenus omnibus et singulis fratribus nostris, coepiscopis nostris, et ecclesiæ nostræ Cantuariensis suffraganeis cum ea celeritate qua poteritis injungatis, prout eis et eorum singulis ac vobis injungimus, ut eorum singuli in ecclesiis suis et aliis civitatum suarum et diocesum vosque in vestra et cæteris vestræ civitatis et diocesis, [ecclesiis][1] moneant et inhibeant, moneatis et inhibeatis, prout vos tenore præsentium monemus primo, secundo, et tertio, et districtius inhibemus, pro prima monitione unum diem, pro secunda alium, et pro tertia monitione, canonica ac peremptoria, unum alium diem assignando, ne quis de cætero, cujuscumque status aut conditionis existat, hæreses seu errores prædictos, vel eorum aliquem teneat, doceat, prædicet seu defendat, aut aliquem prohibitum, non missum, vel alium de cujus potestate non constiterit ad prædicandum admittat, aut hæreses seu errores hujusmodi vel eorum aliquem predicantem audiat vel auscultet, seu ei faveat vel adhæreat publice vel occulte; sed statim tanquam[2] serpentem venenum pestiferum emittentem fugiat et evitet sub pœna excommunicationis majoris, quam in omnes et singulos in hac parte rebelles et nostris monitionibus non parentes, lapsis ipsis tribus diebus pro monitione canonica assignatis, mora culpa et offensa suis præcedentibus et id fieri merito exigentibus, ex nunc prout ex hinc[3] ferimus in his scriptis, et per singulos confratres nostros et suffraganeos nostros in suis civitatibus et diocesibus, ac per vos in vestra civitate et diocesi, quatinus ad eos et ad vos pertinet ex abundanti[4] præcipimus fulminari. Dictos nostros confratres insuper omnes et singulos [nostra ex parte][1] per vos hortari volumus et mandamus per aspersionem [sanguinis][1] Jesu Christi, et similiter [vos][1] hortamur, quod cum juxta sacrorum canonum instituta quilibet eorum in suis civitatibus et diocesibus hæreticæ pravitatis inquisitor existat, ac [vos][1]

Twys. col. 2653.

---

[1] From W.

[2] *quasi* is inserted before *tanquam* in MSS., but not in W.

[3] *ex hinc*] ex tunc, W.

[4] *habundanti*, MSS.

in vestris similiter existatis, de hujusmodi præsumptoribus sollicite et diligenter inquirant et inquiratis. Ac contra eos et juxta officii sui debitum cum effectu procedant, [et] [1] similiter procedatis ad laudem et honorem nominis crucifixi et salvationem fidei orthodoxæ. A.D. 1382.

Conclusiones hæreticæ et determinationibus ecclesiæ repugnantes, de quibus fit mentio de verbo ad verbum supra, quæ vocantur conclusiones Wyclyf, similiter et conclusiones erroneæ recitantur ibidem. Datum in manerio nostro de Ottoforde [2] penultimo die mensis Maii anno Domini MCCCLXXXII. et nostræ consecrationis [3] primo. Letter of the bishop of London.

"Cujus auctoritate mandati vobis reverende pater, cum ea "quæ decet reverentia, firmiter injungendo mandamus "quatinus omnia et singula in mandato prælibato contenta "quatinus vos in civitate et diocesi vestra aut personas "earundum concernunt, juxta formam et tenorem ejusdem "executioni plenarie demandetis et faciatis effectualiter "demandari: vos etiam eadem quatinus personam vestram "contingunt curetis diligentius adimplere. Et insuper ex "parte dicti venerabilis patris vos hortamur per aspersionem "sanguinis Jesu Christi, quod cum juxta sacrorum canonum "instituta in vestris civitate et diocesi inquisitor existatis "hæreticæ pravitatis, de præmissis præsumptionibus diligenter "et sollicite inquiratis, ac contra eos juxta officii vestri debitum "procedatis effectualiter ad laudem et honorem nominis "crucifixi et salvationem fidei orthodoxæ. Datum Londoniis "die quinta Junii anno Domini etc. et nostræ consecrationis "primo."

Volentes igitur omnia et singula in dictis scriptis contenta quatenus nos, et civitatem et diocesim nostras ac personas earundem concernunt executioni debitæ demandare, vobis firmiter præcipiendo mandamus quatinus in singulis monasteriorum vestrorum ecclesiis, ac in singulis parochialibus ecclesiis dicti archidiaconatus prout ad quemlibet vestrum pertinet vos abbates, priores, archidiaconi officiales singulique quibus præsentes nostræ literæ diriguntur publice mandatum reverendi patris et domini, domini Cantuariensis archiepiscopi prædicti, omniaque et singula contenta Twys. col. 2654. Injunctions of the bishop of Lincoln to the ecclesiastics of his diocese.

[1] From W.

[2] *Otteforde*, W.

[3] *consecrationis*] translationis, W., and correctly, for Courtney was translated from London to Canterbury in 1381.

A.D. 1382. in eodem cum omni celeritate clero ac populo archidiaconatus et ecclesiarum earundem fideliter exponatis et exponi faciatis, et eis ac eorum cuilibet inhibeatis et moneatis eosdem prout et tenore præsentium nos etiam inhibemus et monemus, quod mandato hujusmodi et omnibus quæ in eodem mandato eis injunguntur pareatis et pareant cum effectu, cæteraque faciatis et faciant, et ab his quæ mandato hujusmodi prohibentur abstineatis et abstineant juxta ejusdem mandati exigentiam et tenorem sub pœnis et censuris in eodem latis, quas monitione supradicta in omnes et singulos in hac parte rebelles et monitionibus hujusmodi non parentes præsentium serie fulminamus et per vos præcipimus solemniter fulminari. Et ut nulli pateat ignorantia præmissorum, vobis præcipimus et mandamus quatinus post publicationem et executionem prædictorum per vos fiendas, præsentium literarum seriem sub vera copias valvis ecclesiarum prædictarum affigi faciatis et dimittatis affixam ad extirpationem hæresum et errorum prædictorum et exaltationem fidei orthodoxæ. Datum apud parcum Stowe sub sigillo nostro XII. die mensis Julii anno Domini MCCCLXXXII. et nostræ consecrationis vicesimo.

Condemdation of the heresy by the Chancellor of the University of Oxford.

[1] " Willelmus de Berton Cancellarius Universitatis Oxoniæ, " omnibus dictæ Universitatis filiis ad quos præsens nostrum " mandatum perveniret salutem, et mandatis nostris firmiter " obedire. Ad nostrum non sine grandi displicentia pervenit " auditum, quod cum omnium [2] hæresium inventores, defen- " sores seu fautores, cum eorum perniciosis dogmatibus sint " per sacros canones sententia majoris excommunicationis " damnabiliter involuti, et sic a cunctis catholicis " rationabiliter evitandi, nonnulli tamen maligni spiritus " repleti consilio, in insaniam mentis producti, molientesque " tunicam Domini, videlicet sanctæ matris ecclesiæ, scindere " unitatem, quasdam hæreses sufficienter ab antiquis patribus " reprobatas, et per ecclesiam solemniter condemnatas " his diebus proh dolor! innovant, et tam in ista " universitate quam extra publice dogmatizent. Duo inter " alia sua documenta pestifera asserentes, Primo, In sacra- " mento altaris substantiam panis materialis et vini post " consecrationem realiter remanere. Secundo quod execrabilius

Fasc. Ziz. 110.

[1] Here on both margins is *Damnatio heresium per cancellarium Oxoniensem.* This document is also found in Wilkin's *Concilia*, iii. 170.

[2] *omnium*] omnes, *Wilkins.*

" est auditu, In illo venerabili sacramento non esse corpus A.D. 1382.
" Christi et sanguinem æqualiter, nec substantialiter, nec
" etiam corporaliter, sic quod Christus sit ibi in sua
" propria præsentia corporali. Ex quibus documentis fides
" Catholica periclitatur, devotio populi minoratur, et hæc
" Universitas mater nostra non mediocriter diffamatur. Nos
" igitur advertentes quod assertiones hujus partis se
" deteriores haberent si diutius in hæc universitate sic
" tolerarentur, convocavimus omnes sacræ theologiæ
" Doctores, et Juris canonici, professores quos ad hoc
" aptiores credidimus et in Universitate præsentes reperimus,
" et præmissis assertionibus in eorum præsentia patenter
" expositis ac diligenter discussis tandem finaliter est
" compertum atque judicio omnium declaratum, ipsas esse
" erroneas, fidei orthodoxæ contrarias, et determinationibus
" ecclesiæ repugnantes, contradictoriasque[1] earundem esse
" veritates catholicas determinationibus ecclesiæ et dictis
Twys. col. " sanctorum consonas firmiterque credendas, viz. Quod per
2655. " verba sacramentalia a sacerdote rite prolata panis et
" vinum in altari in verum corpus Christi et sanguinem
" transubstantiantur seu substantialiter convertuntur, sic
" quod post consecrationem non remanent in illo venerabili
" sacramento panis materialis et vinum secundum suas
" substantias et naturas, sed secundum species earundem.
" Sub quibus speciebus verum corpus Christi et sanguis
" continentur non solum virtualiter seu figuraliter, sed
" essentialiter, substantialiter et corporaliter, sic quod in
" illo venerabili sacramento est Christus licet indivisissime
" in sua propria præsentia corporali. Hoc credendum, hoc
" docendum, hoc contra omnes homines viriliter defenden-
" dum. Auctoritate igitur nostra monemus primo, secundo
" et tertio, ac districtius inhibemus pro prima monitione
" assignando unum diem, pro secunda alium diem, pro tertia
" monitione, canonica et peremptoria, unum alium diem, ne
" quis, cujuscumque gradus, status aut conditionis existat,
" præmissas assertiones erroneas vel earum alteram publice
" tenentem, docentem seu defendentem quovismodo audiat
" vel auscultet, sed statim cum perciperit tanquam serpentem
" venenum pestiferum emittentem fugiat et abscedat, sub pœnis
" in jure expressatis et sub pœnis incarcerationis et suspen-

[1] *contradictoriamque*, MSS.

A.D. 1382. " sionis ab omni actu scholastico, etiam sub pœna excommuni-
" cationis majoris, quam in omnes et singulos in hac parte
" rebelles et nostris monitionibus non parentes, lapsis ipsis
" tribus diebus pro monitione canonica assignatis, mora culpa
" et offensa præcedentibus et id fieri merito exigentibus,
" ferimus in his scriptis, quorum omnium et singulorum
" absolutionem et absolvendi potestatem præterquam in
" mortis articulo nobis et successoribus nostris specialiter
" reservamus. Insuper ut homines quamvis non per timorem
" latæ sententiæ, saltem propter defectum audientiæ a
" talibus doctrinis illicitis retrahantur et eorum opiniones
" erroneæ sopiantur, auctoritate eadem qua prius monemus
" primo, secundo et tertio, ac districtius inhibemus, ne quis
" de cætero aliquem publice docentem, tenentem seu
" defendentem præmissas assertiones erroneas in scholis vel
" extra scholas quivismodo audiat vel auscultet, sed statim
" sic docentem tanquam serpentem venenum pestiferum
" emittentem fugiat et abscedat sub pœna excommunicationis
" majoris in omnes in hac parte rebelles non inmerito
" fulminandæ et sub pœnis aliis superius annotatis."

John Balle the forerunner of Wycliffe.

Hic magister Johannes Wyclyf in suo adventu habuit Johannem Balle suæ pestiferæ inventionis præmeditatorem, ecclesiasticæ unitatis validum scissorem, discordiarum inter clerum et laicios suscitatorem, illicitorum dogmatum indefessum satorem, et Christicolæ ecclesiæ perturbatorem, de quo plenius infra patebit. Fasc. Ziz. 273.

Confession of Nicholas of Herefford, and others with him.

In þe name of God Amen.[1] Wytes alle cristen men þat we Nichol of Herforde and my fellow pristus unworthy in presence of our gostely fader þe Erchebishop of Canturbery þe nyngtende day of Juny þe[2] ȝeer of grace a þousand þre hundred fourscore and tuo in the hous of the Freres prechoures at London whan we weren required to sayne what we felyde of diverse conclusiones, we mayden this protestation and ȝit we maken. Þat oure entent was, and is, to be trewe sones and meke of holy chirche and ȝif happe, as God schilde, that we erren agaynes þis entent Fasc. Ziz. 319.

[1] Here on both margins is *Confessio sectatorum magistri Johannis Wyclyff in suis opinionibus.*

[2] þe] from MS., om. A.

Twys. col. 2656. in wordus or in werkus we submytte us mekelyche to þe correction of our forsayde fadur the erchebyshop of Canturbery, and of alle oþer to whom it longyth to redresse þem þat erren and afturwarde to wam [1] [we] were requirede to say our beleve of þe sacrament of the autere, as to ȝoure understondyng outher the peple we knowlechene fyrst þat þe prist takus in his hondes, þorowe the vertue of the sacramental wordus, is made and turnyde veralyche into Christus body, þe same þat was taken and ben of þe mayden Marye, and þat sufferide deþ on the crosse for man kynde, and þat lay in the sepulcre, and þat ros fro deth to lyve þe þridde day and stey up into hevene, and syttes in joye in the blysse of þe fadur, and þat schal come at þe day of dome to dome þe quikke and þe dede, and þe wyne is also turnyde veralyche into his blode, so þat leves aftur þe consecration of brede and wyne none oþer substance þan þat ilk þat is Cristus fleshe and his blode. And furþermore we beleve þat þe hole body of Christ is hole in þe sacrament, and hole in everyche partye of þe sacrament of þe autere. And also we beleve þat Crist is verayliche in þe same sacrament in his bodely presence to savacion of alle hem þat worthelyche receyven þat same sacrament, to hem þat unworthelyche receyven to her dampnation, and þis [is] oure beleve and in þis we bene þorou grace of God, [and] we wille dye in remission of oure synnes. And therfore we pray alle cristen men, to whom þis confession schal come to, þat ȝe bere us witnes of this beleve at the day of dome before þe heyȝest judge Jhesu Crist and pray for us for charite. A.D. 1382.

Fasc. Ziz. 329. In the name of God Amen. Y John Aston prist unworthy,[2] required of my Lord the erchbyschop of Canturbery þe nyntene day of June in þe ȝer of grace, &c. ut supra, in þe hous &c. to say what y felyde in þe matyr of þe sacrament of þe autere y have knowelechyde and ȝit I do þat þe selfe bred þat the priste holdes in his hondes is made, þorou the vertue of the sacramental wordus, verely the self Cristus body þat was borne of þe mayden Marye and taken and suffrede deth on the crosse and þre days lay in the Confession of John Aston.

[1] *whom*, MS.
[2] *unworthely*, MS. On both margins is *Confessio magistri Johannis Aston.*

A.D. 1382. sepulcre, and þe þridde day ros fro deth to þe[1] lyve and steyede up into heven and syttes on the ryght honde of God, and in þe day of dome schal come to deme þe quikke and þe ded, and over this I beleve generaly alle þat holy writte determynet in worde and in understondyng or what ever holy kyrke of God determynes of alle þis. Whan I was requirede specyaly to say what I felde of þis proposition. Materiale brede leves in þe Sacrament aftur þe consecration. I make þis protestation þat I never þouȝt ne tauȝt, ne prechide that proposition. For I wote wele that the mater and þe speculation thereof passes in heyȝte myn understondyng, and þerefore als[2] mykele tellys openly for to leve in þis mater I beleve, and of þis mater[3] or of any oþer touchyng þe ryght beleve of holy kyrke, that is nouȝt expresside in holy writte, I beleve, as oure modur holy kirke beleves, and in þis belyve I will dye, and of þis þing I beseke alle men and alle wymmen to whom this confession come to bere me witnesse before þe hyghest juge at þe day of dome. Twys. col. 2657.

Nicholas of Hereford goes to Rome after his condemnation in England.

Cumque hæc ita agerentur videns prædictus Nicholaus Herford sic se mortis acerbitatem cum Lancastrensis ducis juvamine et verborum subtilitate evasisse, et ulterius in suis superstitiosis prædicationibus et doctrinis inanibus se non posse proficere, viditque quod non posset opiniones sive conclusiones prætactas in Anglicana ecclesia cum honore suo defendere, cum archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum consensu et assensu coepiscoporum suorum et cleri sui eas pro falsis damnaverit atque omnes eas faventes excommunicationis vinculo innodaverit, pedem erigit, gressum dirigit, Romamque petere disposuit, et sic tandem viam arripuit. Cum igitur venisset Romam in consistorio coram papa, conclusiones antedictas proposuit, et se ab itinere longinquioris terræ fatigatum asserebat ut eas veras et irreprehensibiles contra quoscunque, cum protestatione præhabita ut usque ad mortis periclita-

[1] þe above the line in A. om. MS.

[2] *tellys als mykelt*, MS.

[3] matyer, MS.

tionem defenderet. Igitur papa fecit convocationem de cœtu cardinalium et de clero, et cum consilio eorum in tam arduo negotio fecit plenam deliberationem et crebram discussionem et summam diligentiam ut veritatem investigaret in negotio tam sublimi. Discussis omnibus et articulatim discisis invenit eas a sanctis patribus damnatas, et in præsenti dignas damnari. Et sic cum consensu consistorii fecit eas damnandas et damnatas promulgari, et quasdam ut hæreses, quasdam vero ut errores, omni populo publicari.[1] Et quia gens Anglicana dicto Urbano papæ favebat et ipsum ut verum papam amplectebatur et colebat, papa, quasi vicem rependens in hac parte, noluit Angligenam licet hæresis defensorem ignis flamine consumere; sed quasi aliqualiter indulgens, ob reverentiam quam genti Anglorum gerebat, remissius cum eo, licet merito, agere voluit, perpetuo carceri tamen irremissibiliter ipso adjudicato et publice coram omni populo condemnato. Nam Clemens papa schismaticus illis diebus adhuc florebat; cumque plures magnates in processu temporis penes papam instarent pro misericordia remissionis et liberationis pro dicto Nicholao, papa fertur taliter respondisse, Sufficit ei vitam habere ut animum suum pœnitens revocet ab errore.

A.D. 1382.

His opinions are examined there and condemned.

He is imprisoned for life.

Aliquantulo temporis pertransiit et papa proposuit Romam exire et versus Naples, natale solum visitare di gratia, Romanis inde non consultis, tendere. Cumque profisciscens ad quandam villam in suo progressu veniret, et ibi moram aliquamdiu traheret, obsidionis a rege detrimentum de Naples perpessus est. Romani igitur videntes quod papa sine consensu eorum ab eis recesserat, et sic in domigerio positus esset, ira moti et in seditionem versi palatium papæ invaserunt, carcerem papæ confregerunt, et inibi incarceratos liberos abire fecerunt, inter quos Nicholaus de Hereforde a damno

The Romans take offence at the Pope. And Nicholas is released.

He is afterwards imprisoned

[1] *puplicari*, A.

A.D. 1382. by the archbishop of Canterbury. carceris solutus est et in Angliam reversus est. Sed infra breve post per archiepiscopum Cantuariensem perpetuo carceri mancipatus, ut infra patebit.

Lollard preaching. Opiniones[1] unius alterius quas audivi prædicatas.

Of offending ecclesiastics, and temporal lords. Quod, si persona ecclesiastica deliquerit et se non emendaverit, licitum est dominis secularibus hujusmodi radere per scapulas, scilicet caput auferre licet corona ejus de novo rasa sit et larga.

Similiter, quod si dominus temporalis deliquerit et non se emendaverit, licitum est popularibus ipsum corrigere.

On prayers. Die quadam palmarum prædicavit, Quod multiplicare voces labiorum in oratione scilicet *blaber with thi lyppus*, Anglice, nihil est. Twys. col. 2658.

On payments for religious services. Quod dare denarios pro psalteriis dicendis nihil est.

Quod, dare denarios pro missis celebrandis nisi bene vixerit nihil est; quod si bene vixerit semper orat, et quod sufficit ad orationem bene vivere.

Of the nature of Christ's passion. Similiter ibidem prædicavit, Quod pœna Christi quam sustinuit in passione fuit major quam tota pœna inferni.

Against begging friars. In eodem sermone, Quod Christus nunquam mandavit aliquem mendicare. Item quod prædicavit in aliis locis.

Against vows of poverty. Item, quod Christus nunquam expressit in sacra scriptura quod voluit quod homo relinqueret omnia sua temporalia nihil sibi retinendo. Fasc. Ziz. 413.

Item, omne Christi consilium est præceptum.

Item, nullus debet dare eleemosynam alicui qui habet meliores pannos et meliores domos quam sic conferens.

Of preaching prelates. Item, nullus est vere prælatus nec habilis ad prælatiam nisi sit doctor et prædicator.

---

[1] This short title is written as a marginal note in both MSS.

Item, quilibet absolutus a peccato est in gratia, et in tanta gratia quod non est capax majoris. A.D. 1382.

Item, quod iste habuit auctoritatem confessandi et communicandi parochianos ecclesiarum Leycestriæ, sine licentia vicariorum, ratione rectoriæ dictarum ecclesiarum.

Item, denarius confessionum est maledictus, et tam conferens quam recipiens excommunicatus.

Item, nullus debet dare eleemosynam alicui quem noverit esset malum.

Item, nulli viri ecclesiastici plus habere debent quam nudum victum et vestitum. Ecclesiastics should be poor.

Item, propter peccatum noviter commissum omnia peccata prius dimissa redeunt.

Item, prædicatores sacculos portantes sunt falsi prædicatores cum Christus in Evangelio oppositum præcipiat, nec veri prædicatores Christi discipuli hoc fecerunt.

Item, mendicitas valentium laborare est reprobata in jure civili, et non invenitur a lege evangelica approbata. Against sturdy beggars.

Item, Christus multos de diversis statubus convertit ad fidem, sed non invenitur in scriptura sacra quod umquam convertit sacerdotem. Christ never converted a priest.

Similiter, frequenter asseruit in prædicationibus suis, quod populus fuit deceptus istis ducentis annis postquam istæ novæ sectæ intraverunt per falsos prædicatores, adulatores, Antichristi discipulos, sed ipse eundem populum reformaret per suam veram prædicationem. Deceits of false preachers.

Similiter, frequenter dixit in suis prædicationibus, quod isti prædicatores nituntur falsificare sacram scripturam, dicentes et concedentes, ut ipsemet sæpius audivit publice Oxoniæ, quod ipsa est plena de hæresibus. Et causa[1] istius falsæ assertionis, ut dixit, quia sacra scriptura fuit contra vitam illorum, et ideo ad defendendum vitam illorum malam hoc asseruerunt. They say the scripture is full of heresies.

Fasc. Ziz. 481.

[1] *causæ*, MSS.

A.D. 1382. Item, solet quoque idem frequenter asserere, quod vix quilibet decimus homo salvus erit.

Of the preaching of John Aston.

Item, magister Johannes de Aston nominatissimus, qui refocillamen corporis postponens, vehiculum equorum non requisivit sed pedestris effectus, cum baculo incedens, ubique ecclesias regni cum veneni ampulla indefesse cursitando visitavit, ne equi paratio aut tempus pastus impedimentum itineris aut tardationem inceptæ voluntatis quandoque ei ministraret, sed, sicut canis de accubitu resiliens, paratus sub parvo sonitu ad latrandum; sic expedite ipse viam carperet velut apis argumentosus prompte ad dogmatizandum. Opiniones quoque magistri sui Wyclyf modo audaci pro suo posse ad mensam simplicium cordium dedit, ut cum usuris insanæ doctrinæ et incrementis sectæ suæ postea exigere posset tali blanditie etiam seductos. Nec de magistri sui conclusionibus talibus seductivis contentus, immo utique de sua nova subtili adinventione quampluplures alias adicere non erubuit; et ubique in ecclesiis regni prædicans lollium cum tritico seminavit. Hic seipsum et sectæ suæ fautores frequenter et sæpius veros prædicatores nominando maxime commendavit, et omnes quoscumque alios prædicatores falsos prædicatores totiens recitavit. Et quascunque opiniones aliquis hujus sectæ adinvenerit, reliqui hujus sectæ illas approbaverunt et pro veris prædicaverunt et latius divulgaverunt. Idemque magister Johannes quadam die palmarum apud Leycestriam prædicavit multas opiniones magistri Johannis Wyclyfe, et inter cæteras istas.

Fasc Ziz. 331.

Twys. col. 2659.

He circulates the opinion of Wycliffe.

He preaches at Leicester.

His teaching concerning excommunication,

Quod nullus debet aliquem excommunicare nisi ex caritate, et pro salute animæ suæ.

Item, Excommunicatio quæ datur ad impediendum homines audire verbum dei est excommunicatio Antichristi et non boni Christiani.

Fasc. Ziz. 322.

the purchase of benefices,

Item, quod prælati ecclesiæ adquirunt beneficia sua per aurum, et sic sunt simoniaci et hæretici.

Item, nunquam est bona pax et plenaria in regno isto quousque ista temporalia auferantur ab ecclesiasticis, et ideo rogabat populum manibus extensis, ut unusquisque adjuvaret, quantum posset, in ista materia. A.D. 1382.

Item, Viri ecclesiastici, dummodo vixerint in divitiis et voluptatibus, sicut jam vivunt, sunt inhabiles ad orandum pro populo, pro quo fine fuerunt principaliter instituti. Against wealthy ecclesiastics.

Item, si rex haberet in manu sua temporalia virorum ecclesiasticorum non oporteret eum tunc accipere tallagia nec communitatem regni spoliare.

Item, Quod istæ novæ sectæ, quasi hesterno die venerunt, asserunt vitam suam et religionem perfectiorem quam religionem Christi communem et apostolorum.

Item, Beatus Paulus adquisivit manibus suis victum pro se et discipulis suis, et sic deberent religiosi manibus suis laborare et non publice mendicare. St. Paul's example.

Item, Quod sacramento altaris post consecrationem est verus panis et verum corpus Christi, et illa rotunditas quæ videtur et albedo et hujusmodi sunt panis: et hæc est sententia apostoli et doctorum antiquorum et sanctorum: et in ista materia doctores novelli vel contradicunt inter se vel non dant sufficientem istius sacramenti descriptionem. Against transubstantiation.

Item, Religiosi prædicantes, qui nolunt dicere populo et scribere veram descriptionem istius sacramenti, et fidem fundatam in Evangelio et in sacra scriptura, sunt excommunicati et hæretici: et si quis talibus eleemosynam suam dederit ipse est fautor illorum et cum ipsis excommunicatus.

Item, Fratres verecundanter dicere fidem suam de sacramento altaris, et pro confirmatione omnium dictorum suorum dixit quod hæc est fides quam deberent habere ex Evangelio et dictis apostolorum; et si quis oppositum prædicatorum diceret vel prædicaret quod

A.D. 1382. nullo modo esset ei credendum. Hæc et multa alia erronea dixit publice et prædicavit in detrimentum ecclesiæ et subversionem fidei orthodoxæ. Twys. col. 2660.

Item, quod prædicavit in Gloucestria in festo sancti Matthæi apostoli, Quod episcopi accipientes pecuniam pro peccatis sunt filii diaboli.

Against the crusade of the bishop of Norwich.

Item, Quod inter omnia facta quæ unquam fuerunt reputat statum cruciatæ malignissimum. Nam illis diebus episcopus Norwycensis habuit cruciatam in Flandriam contra Antipapam.

Item, Promoventes causam cruciatæ sunt fures.

Item, Promoventes cruciatam inducunt Christianos ad conferendum bona ad occidendum homines. Nam illis temporibus episcopus Norwycensis habuit cruciatam concessam sibi a papa Urbano in regnum Franciæ contra Antipapam Clementem, (nam Franci eidem Clementi adhærebant), et duxit cruciatam in Flandriam et non ulterius sed rediit.

Item, idem in eodem loco et tempore, Quod concedentes participationem omnium bonorum suorum spiritualium sunt blasphemi.

Of Christ's example of humility.

Item, Quod Christus natus fuit in stabulo et mortuus in cruce ad reprobandum castra Cayni, scilicet ecclesias et domos altas religiosorum et ecclesiasticorum.

The preaching of John Purvey.

Quartus[1] hæresiarcha dominus Johannes Purveye, capellanus simplex, in gestu vultuque maturus et formam sanctitatis prætendens præ cæteris suis, in vestitu et habitu homo communis, corporis quietem excutiens ad itineris laborem operam dabat, ut sectæ suæ populorum corda prædicationibus deceptoriis viisque et modis quibus potuit adduceret indefesse studuit. Et similiter in quantum valuit moribus et vita exempla reliquorum de sua secta imitatus se conformavit magistri sui dogmatibus invincibilis discipulus, doctrinamque magistri Fasc. Ziz. 383.

[1] Here on both margins is *Quartus heresiarcha.*

sui Johannis Wyclyf per omnia et in omnibus executor pervalidus intrepide roboravit; nam magistri sui, dum adhuc viveret, commensalis extiterat, et sic majus de ejus documentis debriatus, copiosius mente hauserat, atque usque ad mortis metas comes individuus ipsum cum doctrinis et opinionibus suis concomitabatur indefesse laborans. Iste Johannes Purveye, sicut cæteri, sectatores suos semper in omnibus prædicationibus suis permaxime commendavit, alienos vero, semper et ubique, et præcipue mendicantes, perniciosis detractationibus palam aspernabatur, et quasi in qualibet tertia propositione cujuscunque prædicationis suæ, æmulatores sectæ suæ insinuans, veros prædicatores commendavit, et tam viros ecclesiasticos quam mendicantes, cæteros prædicatores subintelligens, falsos prædicatores latranter commemoravit. Similiter et cæteri de secta illa frequenter et absque taciturnitate in suis sermonibus et sermocinationibus inexquisite clamitaverunt, *Trewe Prechoures, False Prechoures,* opinionesque mutuas et communes sicut unus ita et omnes. Et ita connexæ erant atque concatenatæ[1] opiniones eorum, quod qui istas habuit, habuit et alterius; et qui alterius opiniones[2] habuit, habuit et opiniones istius. Iste dominus Johannes Purveye prædicavit in Brystowe et publice docuit;

A.D. 1382.

He had lived with Wycliffe.

His laudation of the Lollard preachers.

Quod celebratio missæ est traditio humana et non evangelica, nec Christus eam ordinavit. Similiter, Quod Christus patiebatur in apertione lateris et cordis.

His opinions on the mass.

Twys. col. 2661.

Item, Quilibet sacerdos magis debet dimittere matutinas, missam et vesperas, et cæteras horas canonicas quam prædicationem verbum dei, eo quod solum traditione humana ordinantur.

Important ance of preaching.

Fasc. Ziz. 409.

Fasc. Ziz. 387.

Item, Quilibet sacerdos potest ex lege divina prædicare verbum dei alia licentia non obtenta.

---

[1] *concathenatæ*, MS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Opiniones*.

A.D. 1382. Item, Episcopi et alii qui impediunt prædicationem verbi dei faciunt hoc ne peccata eorum videantur. Fasc. Ziz. 391.

Religious orders. Item, Ingredientes religionem privatam quamcumque ex hoc redduntur inhabiliores ad observantiam mandatorum dei.

Item, conferens eleemosynam fratri prædicanti evangelium propter ejus sermonem est symoniacus et excommunicatus, et dans et recipiens.

Preachers to labour with their hands. Item, Fratres non sub hoc nomine sed sub nomine Phariseorum tenentur victum suum non per mendicationem sed aliunde per laborem manuum adquirere.

Item, nullus sacerdos debet dimittere prædicare evangelium, nec aliquis debet dimittere audire evangelium prædicatum propter excommunicationem cujuscumque.

Item, Nullæ religiones privatæ sunt in aliquo ita perfectæ sicut æstimant quod sunt.

Item, Quilibet curatus est perfectioris status quam quicumque religiosus cujuscumque religionis privatæ.

Item, Episcopi litterati et bonæ vitæ hortantur nos ad prædicandum verbum dei ne eorum peccata videantur.

Of fees for consecrating churches. Item, Episcopus nolens consecrare ecclesiam pauperrimæ parochiæ absque xl. solidis ubi tota parochia non sufficit solvere, et si xl. denarii deficiant,[1] per xl. dies eandem ecclesiam suspendat, et sic parochiani per tantum tempus a missa et omni sacramento sunt suspensi, est symoniacus et excommunicatus.

William Smith, another Lollard. Willelmus[2] Smith principalis colator, ab artificio sic vocatus, persona despicabilis et deformis, qui cupiens ducere in uxorem juventulam quandam, sed ab ea spretus, in tantam prorupit sanctitatis ostentationem, quod omnia mundi concupiscibilia despexit, muliebrem amplexum perpetuo abdicavit, lineis renunciavit, carnes et carnea, pisces et piscina nullatenus admisit, vinum

[1] *sufficiant*, MSS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Heresicolæ principales.*

et cervisiam quasi venenum recusavit, nudis pedibus per plures annos incedens, medio tempore abcedarium didicit et manu sua scribere fecit. Erant etiam milites dominus Thomas Latymer, dominus Johannes Trussell, dominus Lodowycus Clyfforde, dominus Johannes Pecche, dominus Ricardus Story, dominus Reginaldus de Hylton, cum ducibus et comitibus. Isti erant præcipue eis adhærentes et in omnibus eos faventes. Isti erant hujus sectæ promotores strenuissimi, et propugnatores fortissimi; erantque defensatores validissimi et invincibiles protractatores. Qui militari cingulo ambiebant ne a recte credentibus aliquid opprobii aut damni propter eorum profanam doctrinam sortirentur; nam zelum dei habuerunt sed non secundum scientiam: crediderunt namque vera fuisse quæ a pseudodoctoribus audiebant, et sic vani facti sunt in cogitationibus suis, et eis similes in voluntatibus suis, factique sunt cives et domestici eorum. Cumque aliquis pseudoprædicator ad partes alicujus istorum militum se diverteret prædicationis causa, incontinenti cum omni promptitudine populum patriæ convocare et ad certum locum vel ecclesiam cum ingenti sollicitudine congregare satagebat ad audiendum voces eorum licet invitos, resistere tamen vel contradicere non audentes, acsi cum propheta clamaret et diceret, Si eum audire nolueritis, et me ad iracundiam provocaveritis, gladius devorabit vos. Nam assistere solent juxta sic inepte prædicantes gladio et pelta stipati ad eorum defensionem ne quis contra eos aut eorum doctrinam blasphemam aliquid temptare vel contradicere quandoque auderet. Et sic dejecto humilitatis flore, quos non potuerunt ratione, gladii timore sæpissime adquisierunt. O Christi doctrina mitis, humilis et mansueta! O repugnans nefandorum disciplina superba, gladiata, invidiæ et detractionis plena! Christi namque doctrina est, Si quis vos non audierit, exeuntes excutite pulverem

A.D. 1382.

Names of others.

Character and effects of their preaching.

Twys. col. 2662.

Different from the teaching of Christ.

A.D. 1382. pedum vestrorum in testimonium illis. Istorum Lollardorum sive Wyclyvianorum disciplina longe aliter se habet. Si quis vos non audiet, vel contra vos aliquid dixerit, eximite gladium et eum percutite, aut lingua mordaci famam ejus vulnerate. Nam solent isti nefandi hujus sectæ doctores dicere, quod nullus eis contradicat [1] nisi solum peccatores et maligni seu vitiati.

These men threaten with the sword.

Profanity of some of them towards a sacred building.

Quidam dominus Ricardus Waytestathe capellanus, et Willelmus Smyth antedictus moram adinvicem traxerunt in quadam capella sancti Johannis Baptistæ extra Leycestriam prope mansionem leprosorum, ubi cæteri de illa secta sæpe convenerunt conventiculaque fecerunt, et consilia de suis nefariis cogitationibus communicaverunt; ibi enim erat hospitium et diversorium omnium talium adventantium, et ibi habuerunt gignasium [2] malignorum dogmatum et opinionum, et errorum hæreticorumque communicationem. Capella quæ olim deo dedicata est, jam blasphemis, et ecclesiæ [3] Christi inimicis atque hæreticis receptorium et sedes facta est.

It was a consecrated chapel.

They take an image of St. Catharine to make a fire.

Hi duo Ricardus capellanus et Willelmus Smyth, quadam vice olerum esuriem passi sunt. Cumque caules adessent sed focale ad coquendum olera non haberent, prospiciens alter eorum in quendam angulum capellæ, vidensque quandam ymaginem vetustam, quondam in honore sanctæ Katerinæ formatam et depictam, ibi stantem, En, inquit, mi carissime [4] socie, jam deus nobis providit de focali pro caulibus nostris coquendis ut esuriem nostram satiemus. Hæc sancta ymago certe jam erit nobis focale sanctum, et sic per securim et ignem novum patietur [5] martyrium; si forte per immanitatem novorum tor-

[1] *contradicunt*, MSS.
[2] *gingnasium*, A.
[3] *ecclesiæ* is written above the line in MS.
[4] *karissime*, A.
[5] *patientur*, A.

mentorum venire aliquando poterit ad regnum cælorum. A.D. 1382.
Hæc erat conditio Lollardis hujus sectæ quod ymagines oderunt et insidiabantur eis, et eas idola prædicabant et velut simulacra aspernabantur. Cumque quis nominasset sanctam [1] Mariam de Lincolnia, vel sanctam Mariam de Walsyngham, vocabant eas [2] epialtes, hoc est in materna lingua *wyche of Lincolne*,[3] *and wyche of Walsyngham*, et hujusmodi. Sicque alter eorum securim arripuit, alter autem ymaginem tenuit. Sine, inquiens,[4] experiamur certe utrum hæc vera sancta sit. Nam si capite percussa sanguinem emittat, amodo a nobis ut sancta adoranda erit: sin autem sanguinem non eliciat,[5] cibus erit ignis nostris coquendis oleribus ut tanta saturetur nostra esuries. Sicque cum exuissent propriam verecundiam [rem] celare non valuerunt: sed quasi de luso de hoc jactando seipsos, nec impune, pluribus detegerunt. Nam cito post de hospitio suo ejecti sunt.

They mock at the sacred image.

Crevit populus credentium in ista doctrina, et quasi germinantes multiplicati sunt nimis, et impleverunt ubique orbem regni, et adeo domestici facti sunt acsi essent de uno die procreati; audacesque ad plenum facti sunt nec in aliquo erubuerunt, sed quasi inverecundi tam in occultis quam in publicis locis impudice latrantes veluti canes indefessis vocibus. De quibus quidam metricus sic canit dicens.

Increase in the of their followers.

Twys. col. 2663.

Olim [6] quippe viri fuerant duo valde nefandi,
Facta modo [7] sciri quorum fero carmina fandi,
Quæ fecerant triste cancella gesta [8] Johannis
Sancti Baptistæ nostris volventibus annis.

Verses on the subject of the above-named profanation.

---

[1] *sancta*, MS.
[2] *eam*, MS.
[3] *Lincolle*, A.
[4] *inquiunt*, MS.
[5] *elicerit*, MS.
[6] Here both in text and on margin of MS. is *Versus de oleribus.* These words are only on margin in A, but in both MSS. the verses come after *ejecti sunt*, two sentences above.
[7] *modum*] MSS.
[8] *geste*, MSS.

A.D. 1382.

Esuriem passi caularum corde maligni,
Ambo dolent cassi quod privarentur et igni.
Cum decimavissent [1] simul olera cumque fidissent,
Nec patet unde parent ignem sibi sed doluissent,
Angula cancellæ tuitur mox unus eorum ;
En, inquit, velle nostrum plet scriba deorum,
Hic super altare Katerinæ restat ymago,
Absque vetusta pare quæ putret ut Eva virago.
Cur ita pensamus? Scindatur inepta figura.
In cineres flamus frustra, lassi, prece pura,
Prævidit caris sanctis deus ipse focale,
Olera quo laris coquemus ea speciale,
Nostram [2] post finem quibus esuriem satiemus [3]
Hæc nova martiria dolabro patietur et igne,
Per quæ suspiria capiet regnum sine fine.
Tunc unus cepit securim, præsto figuram
Alter eo clepit [4] pœnam ejulans sibi duram.
Jam sine, dicentes, utrum fuit experiamur
Vera per arsentes hæc alma vel ea violamur,
Sanguis percussæ [5] si manat vera vocetur,
Si non, per jussa nobis cibus ignis habetur,
Crambe [6] quo citius mendicis cruda coquetur [7]
Esuries satias [8] et eis fames cito [9] fugit.

Sicque a vulgo Wyclyff discipuli et Wyclyviani sive Lollardi vocati sunt. Ad sectam suam plures ac plures lucrifacerent sic inaniter deceptos. Principales pseudo-Lollardi prima introductione hujus sectæ nefandæ vestibus de russeto utebantur pro majore parte, illorum quasi simplicitatem cordis ostendentes exterius, ut sic mentes intuentium se subtiliter sibi attraherent, et laborem docendi atque seminandi insanam doctrinam securius aggrederentur. De talibus

Of their manner of dress.

[1] *decimarent*, A. Over this word is written in A *a blade*, and in MS. an^ce (=Anglice) *blade*, but the word in MS. looks like *decunntrent*, and in A like *decimarent*.

[2] *Nostri*, MSS.

[3] The line to rhyme with this, as well as those to match the two last lines, appear to have been lost.

[4] *clepit*. Over this word in A is written *linkyde* (as it seems), and in MS. *linkith*.

[5] *percussa*, MSS.

[6] *caulæ*, MSS.

[7] *crude coquentur*, MSS.

[8] *satius*, MS.

[9] *cito*, om. A.

enim loquitur Dominus in evangelio docens suos cavere ab eis, ait enim, Attendite a falsis prophetis qui ad vos veniunt in vestimentis ovium, intrinsecus autem sunt lupi rapaces; a fructibus eorum cognoscetis eos. Acsi diceret, Cavete a talibus qui sub quodam pietatis tegumento tecti venient speciem sanctitatis sub simplici vestimento prætendentes, venenato animo nocendi et intentione seducendi lupi vobis erunt rapaces, exterius ostensione simplicis vestis, et interius corrumpendo suavitate seductivæ doctrinæ. Vestimentum ovium congrue dici potest quod ab ove tonditur et sub alio colore non intingitur; unde vestimentum ovium similitudo innocentiæ et justitiæ, quam prætendebant, dici potest, sed a fructibus, hoc est ab operibus, manifestis doctrinis scilicet errorum et invidiosis detractionibus sanctitatis dulcedinem et veritatis suavitatem exterius superinduunt, et detractionum [1] acerbitate eis non adhærentes indesinenter lacerant et cruentant. Simulare quidem potuerunt,[2] sed fructum bonitatis non attulerunt, finxeruntque se integræ fidei et doctrinæ, cum tamen eorum doctrina erroribus plena turpiter repugnaret fidei catholicæ. In tantum namque in suis laboriosis dogmatibus prævaluerunt quod mediam partem populi aut majorem partem suæ sectæ adquisierunt. Quosdam [3] autem ex corde; quosdam vero præ timore et verecundia eis adhærere compulerunt.[4] Nam adhærentes eis et sectæ suæ omni laude dignos et bonitate perspicuos magnificabant, asserentes eos bonos et inmaculatos omni honore conspicuos, licet essent tam occultis quam publicis vitiis pluribus hominibus notandi. Et in contrarium opinio multorum bonorum virorum perstrepebat, quod tales vitiati pro parte majori et quasi ubique et pauci alii eis adhærebant.[5] Ex alia parte non eis adhærentes vel eis non faventes, sed antiquam ecclesiæ

A.D. 1382.

Scripture applied to them.

Their teaching is repugnant to the Catholic faith.

Twys. col. 2664.

Their manner of making converts.

[1] *detractionem*, MS.
[2] *poterunt*, MSS.
[3] *Quosdam*] quod, MSS.
[4] Here in MS. *Quosdam autem ex corde* is repeated, and in A. from *Quosdam autem* to *eis*.
[5] *aderebant*, A.

A.D. 1382. solidam et firmam doctrinam observantes, impios, pravos, malignos atque perversos, et omni vituperio dignos, atque legi dei contrarios affirmabant ubique; docebantque et prædicabant, quod boni homines et deo digni omnes eis adhærebant, et doctrinam eorum acceptabant secundum legem dei quam docebant, et prædicabant solum autem eos moribus eorum et doctrinæ rebellare qui maligni erant et peccatores pessimi, et nullum esse justum et deo dignum qui non custodiret legem dei quam prædicabant; talem enim habebant terminum in omnibus suis dictis semper prætendendo legem dei *Goddis lawe*.[1] Et sic quamplures simplices pervertebant, et sectæ eorum adhærere[2] compellebant, et hoc ne viderentur a lege dei et divinis præceptis alieni; et multi infirmiores sic seducti sunt, alii timore, alii verecundia, ne ab eis per opprobriosa verba peterentur. Sicque mellis suavitatem in capite eloquii gerebant, in cauda venenum. Nam doctrina eorum in quibuscumque loquelis in sui principio dulcedine plena apparuit et devota, in fine quoque invidia subtili et detractione plena defloruit. Et licet de novo conversi, vel subito et recenter hanc sectam imitantes, unum modum statim loquelæ et formam concordem suæ doctrinæ mirabiliter habuerunt; et doctores Evangelicæ doctrinæ tam viri quam mulieres materno idiomate subito mutato[3] effecti sunt. Et hoc acsi essent de uno gignasio[4] educati et doctrinati ac etiam de unius magistri schola simul referti et nutriti. Quod credibile haberi potest, nam credi absque ambiguitate potest, quod qui eos sibi in servos et malorum dolorum initiatores et invidiarum inter Christicolas propinatores adoptavit, idem ipse eos eadem identitate spiritus sui simul aptavit, et conformitate unius loquelæ cum fervore desiderii in suum obsequium

Their abuse of their opponents.

They pervert many.

They all become alike.

---

[1] *Goddisse lawe*, MS.
[2] *aderere*, A.
[3] *mutati*, MSS.
[4] *gingnasio*, A.

inspiravit; et sic a diebus ingressionis eorum in reg- A.D. 1382.
num Angliæ vim dissensionis[1] patitur, quia ipsi violenti intoxicaverunt illud, et incitaverunt filium adversus patrem, et patrem adversus filium, et socrum adversus nurum suam, et domesticos familiæ adversus dominum suum, et quod dolendum est, quasi quemlibet[2] hominem contra proximum suum. Et vix invenires quemquam fiduciam habentem in quoquam, etiam in fratre suo uterino, quin crederent alterutros mutuo se decepturos. Et verisimile est quod post stabilitam ecclesiam tanta diffidentia, discordia et dissensio in illis partibus nunquam audita vel visa est. Sicque Wyclýf discipuli ubique a ceteris vocati sunt. Et nomen non incongrue sibi asciverunt. Nam sicut magister eorum Wyclyf potens erat et validus in disputationibus super cæteros, et in argumentis nulli credebatur secundus: sic isti licet recenter ad sectam illam attracti nimis efficiebantur eloquentes, in omnibus versutiis atque verbosis colluctationibus cæteris prævalentes; validi in verbis; in garulis fortes; in sermocinationibus præpotentes, in litigiosis deceptationibus omnes superclamantes. Et sic quod non poterant recta ratione quasi pugnanti impetuositate cum voce clamosa et turbida et altisonis verbis supplebant. Adeo ut non Christi servi humiles, mansueti, mites et patientes, immo potius Machumeti suspicarentur discipuli qui legem suam discutere prohibuit suis sequacibus, sed certius bellaci fortitudine eam defendere præcepit et pro ea pugnare. Alcorani azoara quarta.

They foster domestic discord.

Such people are called Wycliffe's disciples.

Twys. col. 2665.

And they are like him.

They may be called followers of Mahomet.

Koran, Sura iv.

Isti Wyclyviani sectam suam maxime commendabilem publicabant, et omnem populum ubilibet tam virorum quam mulierum adhortabantur[4] ad eam, doctrinasque et prædicationes cæterorum omnium ut respuerent incitabant, nec prædicationibus fratrum mendicantium, quos falsos prædicatores nominabant,

Their abuse of other preachers,

[1] *discensionis*, MSS.
[2] *quilibet*, MS.
[3] *commendabile*, MS.
[4] *adortabantur*, A.

A.D. 1382. quoquomodo interessent, tam publice quam occulte ferventi studio indesinenter edocebant, semper eis insidiabantur, falsos fratres vocantes, seipsos veros prædicatores et evangelicos, eo quod evangelium in Anglicam linguam habebant translatum vociferabant. Et sic per publicam detractionem et invidiosam reprehensionem seipsos commendabant hominibus, licet non deo, et fratrum mendicantium statum in multis maxime denigrabant, nam fratres per istorum doctrinam et exhortationem[1] illis diebus exosi multis habebantur, et Wyclyviani ex eo audaciores inde effecti innitebantur avertere magis animos populorum ab eis et ipsos impedire ne prædicarent et ne mendicarent, asserentes tam dantes quam accipientes esse excommunicatos, sed eos debere manuum labore more Apostoli Pauli victum et vestitum adquirere. Plebs ista inepta et reproba adeo callida erat et perniciosa, adeo perfida et ærumnosa,[2] adeo retrograda et spurcitiosa, quod si ejus conditiones describi deberent, vel forte posset[3] scribere adesse mens, tamen satisfacere voluntati nec excogitare ad plenum sufficeret; et licet omnium hominum linguæ verterentur in unam, ejus perversitatem retexere non valeret et malignitatem promere. Et nisi deus citius abbreviasset dies asperitatis illorum, et cum tanta nequitia eorum proventum faceret, ipsum regnum Angliæ non arbitror posse supportare versutias eorum atque malitiam, unde versus.

specially the begging friars.

Fasc. Ziz. 497.

No power could tell their evil character.

[4] Si totum membrana solum, calamus nemus omne,
Et Thetis[5] incaustum, scriptor et omnis homo,
Istorum facinus scribere non poterunt.

Invocation against them.

Maledictus conventus eorum quoniam pertinax. Propterea deus destruat eos, in finem evellat, et emi-

[1] *exortationem*, A.
[2] *erumpnosa*, A.
[3] *posset*, om. MS.
[4] Here on margin of MS. only is *Versus*.
[5] *Tetis*, MSS.

grare faciat de tabernaculis fidelium suorum et radicem eorum de terra regni. Et hoc videant justi et lætentur ut dicere possint, Ecce populus qui se exaltavit super electos doctores dei, et speravit in multitudine vanitatis suæ, confundantur et pereant cum doctrina eorum in æternum. A.D. 1382.

Erat quoque illis diebus apud Leycestriam quidam sacerdos Willelmus de Swyndurby, quem Willelmum heremitam vulgus vocabant, eo quod heremiticam vitam aliquamdiu ibidem colebat. Hic unde venerit aut ubi originem duxerit non occurrit. Sed hoc unum notabile[1] quia inconstans vita et moribus repertus est, nam multos gradus vivendi temptavit, et de gradu in gradum saltavit,[2] nullusque ei placabilis repertus est satis. In primo adventu suo vitam communem in villa ducens inter homines conversatus est. Cœpitque prædicare et initium prædicationis suæ de mulierum defectibus et superbia sumere. Nam ornatum mulierum multum despiciebat, superbiamque et actus earum aspernabatur, lasciviasque earum detestabatur; et quamvis bene agebat tamen nimis importune de hac materia tractabat quia finem facere nesciebat, sicuti nec in quacunque alia materia quam in prædicatione tangebat. In tantum namque mulieres villæ tam bonas et graves quam alias per improbitatem prædicationis et reprehensionis in iram provocaverat ut ipsum lapidibus impetere et de villa lapidare proposuerunt. Videns igitur quod sic prædicando nihil profecit, nec grates[3] reportabat sed magis seditionem excitabat, cessit materiæ, et ad mercatores et divites stilum prædicationis vertit, frequenter asserens in suis prædicationibus, neminem posse habere divitias hujus seculi et affluentiam temporalium bonorum et consequi

Twys. col. 2666.

Of William de Swyndurby.

At first he lived as other men, but afterwards took to preaching.

At first against the failings of women,

who threatened to stone him.

[1] *nobile*, MSS.

[2] *Salutavit*, A., corrected in a later hand to *saltabat*.

[3] *graves*, MS.

A.D. 1382. posse regnum cœlorum: sicque frequentius materiam istam libravit quod quosdam probos viros de villa, nisi mediasset divina clementia, in errorem desperationis demisisset. Tunc vitam communem voluit mutare in vitam solitariam,[1] quia prædicatio ejus nihil ei profuit ad laudem, heremitoriumque in bosco domini ducis petiit, ibique domum hanc aliquanto tempore coluit, discurrendo quandoque in villam, quandoque in patriam. Cumque devoti Leycestriæ sperantes ejus sanctitatem victualia ei ex more transmittere curaverunt, ipse sanctitatem prætendens, et quasi de suo proprio si quid sibi in seculo reservaverat contentus, hujusmodi exennia et dona recusavit et remisit, et dixit, sibi sufficere ad sustentationem paucula quæ habebat cum juvamine domini ducis. Nam dominus dux eum juvabat ad sustentationem. Cumque ibidem moram per modicum tempus traheret et panis alimonia in sistarchia deficere cœpisset, similiter et ipse de tali vita insolita de die in diem tepesceret, de vita sua eum fastidivit, et ad villam unde venerat præ pudore redire non valuit. Medio tempore honestiori modo, quo potuit, procuravit ut in abbathia ibidem pro tempore susciperetur. Quod et factum est; nam canonici ipsum Christum Domini credentes, in quadam camera infra ecclesiam ipsum receperunt propter sanctitatem quam sperabant in eo, et ei ex more aliorum sacerdotum procuraverunt victum cum pensione. Illo tempore ecclesias in patria ubique non in villa prædicando visitavit; sicque inconstantiam mentis ostendens, de mora sua lassus, vix calefactis lateribus, abire ut aliam vitam ducere posset cupiebat. Associavit sibi quendam Willelmum Smyth, de quo superius sit mentio, cum quo ad quandam capellam S. Johannis Baptistæ prope mansionem leprosorum abiit, et ibi alios de secta Wyclyf sibi

Then he preaches against money making.

Next he turns hermit.

He refuses things offered to him for his sustenance.

He returns to ordinary life.

He is received into Leicester abbey.

He joins himself to William Smith.

[1] *Sollitariam*, A.

associaverunt. Nam secta illa in maximo honore illis diebus habebatur, et in tantum multiplicata fuit, quod vix duos videres in via quin alter eorum discipulus Wyclyffe fuerit. A.D. 1382.

Videns prædictus Willelmus quia ex solito modo prædicandi grates populi non habuit, nec laicis et secularibus[1] placuit neque fructum augmentationis ad sectam suam adduxit, direxit sermonem contra libertates ecclesiæ et contra ecclesiasticas personas, et innitebatur quantum potuit vel ymaginate potuit viros ecclesiæ et eorum famam denigrare, asserens eos impudice vivere et bona ecclesiæ male sumere et pejus expendere; et frequenter prædicabat, sicuti et cæteri de secta sua faciebant, ut superius patet, quod parochiani non tenentur dare decimas suas et oblationes suis curatis si caste non viverent, cum aliis moribus compositis, sicut decet dei sacerdotes, ac etiam si in parochia moram non trahant, et ibi bona ecclesiæ expendant ubi ea assumunt. Similiter si insufficientes essent in scientia vel lingua impediores, quod prædicare[2] vel parochianos competenter docere non possent, sed possent parochiani decimas et oblationes retinere et quibuscunque ad libitum dare. Docebant enim cæteri discipuli Wyclyf, quod decimæ sunt meræ eleemosynæ, et ideo possent dare eleemosynam cuicumque vellent. Et si non subtraxerint decimas ab hujusmodi male viventibus, etiam fautores criminis essent et consentientes eorum malis operibus. Item prædicabat, quod homines possunt debita sua cum caritate petere a suis debitoribus, sed nullo modo aliquem propter debita inplacitare, [aut] incarcerare. Item, quod curatus malus subditos excommunicans pro decimarum detentione, pecuniam ab eis indebite et male extorquet. Item, nullus vivens contra legem dei

He changes the subjects of his preaching.

Twys. col. 2667.

Attacks the ecclesiastics.

Fasc. Ziz. 380.

Saying tithes may be withheld from the inefficient.

For tithes are mere alms.

Fasc. Ziz. 323.

Fasc. Ziz. 337.

Other errors of the Lollards.

Fasc. Ziz. 338.

[1] *non* before *placuit*, MSS.

[2] *prædicarent*, MSS.

A.D. 1382. est sacerdos qualitercumque fuerit ab episcopo ordinatus.

Hæc et hujusmodi quamplura erronea prædicans et docens atque hæretica, quorum quædam infra patebunt, affabilitatem vulgi captavit, et eorum familiaritatem sibi adquisivit in tantum ut dicerent, Nunquam vidisse aut audisse talem qui veritatem eis exponeret, et sic colebatur ab eis ut alter deus. Wals. ii. 55.

Swyndurby attracts a following.

Cumque rumor hujusmodi ad aures Johannis Bukkyngham episcopi Lincolniensis personuisset, mox absque dilatione misit, et eum ab omni prædicatione in dicta capella seu alia ecclesia vel cimeterio suæ diocesis de cætero suspendit, et populo inhibuit ne quis eum prædicantem præsumeret audire vel ei prædicanti faveret sub pœna excommunicationis majoris, quam in scriptis ferebat et latius fieri mandaverat ab aliis in diversis ecclesiis. Stabat autem unum par molarum ad vendendum extra capellam in alta strata, et dictus Willelmus ibidem inter illos lapides paravit sibi pulpitum, et convocavit populum, atque ibi pluries in contemptum episcopi prædicavit, dicens, Se posse et velle in strata regia, invitis dentibus episcopi, prædicare, dum tamen benevolentiam populi obtineret. Tunc videres populorum turbas ex omni parte, tam de villa quam de patria copiosius solito, quasi in duplo, ad ejus prædicationem ruere post talem inhibitionem et sententiam excommunicationis tam in abbathia quam in multis aliis ecclesiis. Interim dominus episcopus Lincolniensis eum citavit ad comparendum in ecclesia cathedrali Lincolniensi. Qui die statuto ibidem comparuit, et objectis ei conclusionibus quas prædicaverat, dies plures habuit ad deliberandum et ad objecta respondendum. Tandem super diversis hæresibus et erroribus publice convictus, pabulum ignis digne effici meruit. Tunc flebant sui et palmas et capita ad parietes cum voce lacrimosa jecerunt. Nam plures de Wals. ii. 55.

He is suspended from preaching by the bishop of Lincoln.

He preaches in a mill.

Crowds flock to hear him.

He is summoned before the bishop.

Fasc. Ziz. 334 *seqq.*

He is condemned to the flames.

villa Leycestrensi qualibet vice comitabantur eum ad ferendum ei auxilium, licet incassum. Nam in illo casu nihil proficere potuerunt. Sed casu affuit Lincolniæ eodem die pius dux Lancastriæ qui Lollardis omnibus semper affuerat cum subsidio. Credidit namque eos sanctos dei, propter blanditiem sermonis et vultus, tamen deceptus sicut et multi alii. Hic intervenit apud episcopum pro prædicto Willelmo ut pœnam ejus transferret in aliam pœnam. Et concessit episcopus sub forma quæ sequitur. Quod ipse in quibuscumque ecclesiis tales conclusiones prædicaverat publice diebus festis, inter missarum solemnia, elevata voce recognosceret se falsa prædicasse et docuisse, et hæreses atque errores quas predicaverat, et super eis convictus fuerat, revocaret, asserens determinationibus sanctæ matris et sanctorum doctorum repugnare, et quod in posterum non prædicaret in diocesi Lincolniensi nisi prius habita licentia diocesani. Et hæc omnia postea infra breve adimplevit, et in ecclesia Cathedrali Lincolniæ primo, postea Leycestriæ in ecclesiis sanctæ Crucis, sanctæ Margaretæ et Novæ hospitalitatis, deinde in ecclesiis de Melton, Loughborowe, et multis aliis, comitante semper eum magistro Stephano de Syreham, vicario de Barowe, sequestratore tunc episcopi, et ad hoc opus supervidendum specialiter ab episcopo deputato.

Twys. col. 2668.

A.D. 1382.

but the duke of Lancaster interferes for him.

He is to make public recantation,

in the places where he had preached.

Johannes, permissione divina Lincolniensis episcopus, dilectis filiis, officiali archidiaconi nostri Leycestrensis, magistro Stephano Syreham, perpetuo vicario ecclesiæ de Barowe, sequestratori nostro in archidiaconatu prædicto, singulis decanis ecclesiarum parochialium, Rectoribus, Vicariis perpetuis et eorum capellanis, parochialibus, et aliis quibuscumque divina celebrantibus per dictum archidiaconatum ubilibet constitutis salutem, gratiam et benedictionem.

Process of the bishop of Lincoln against Swyndurby.

Fasc. Ziz. 334.

Ad extirpandam [perfidiam][1] in varios errores prorumpentium[2] temporibus modernis qui molientes scindere tunicam Domini inconsutilem, ecclesiæ videlicet sanctæ et fidei catho-

[1] From *Fasc. Ziz.* o 62014.

[2] *prorumpendos*, MSS.

A.D. 1382. licæ veritatem, prædicationis, quin verius prævaricationis, officium temere usurpantes per loca varia nostræ diocesis discurrendo nonnulla hæretica, blasphematica,[1] schismatica, sacrique canonibus et decretis repugnantia, docere et publice prædicare nequiter præsumpserunt, status et gradus ecclesiasticos a sanctis patribus institutos conficta materia, quia veritate non poterant, suis conviciis et contumeliis lacerantes, cura nostri regiminis perurgente specialiter[2] insurgentes, nuper Willelmum de Swyndurby dictæ nostræ diocesis se presbyterum prædicantem[3] super præmissis et cæteris conclusionibus infrascriptis hæreticis, erroneis atque falsis graviter nobis suspectum, et clamosa insinuatione ac fama publica referentibus denunciatum et delatum, fecimus coram certis nostris commissariis certis die et loco ad judicium legitime evocari.

Quibus objectis eidem Willelmo per eosdem commissarios coram eis comparenti, conclusionibus et articulis memoratis, petitoque termino per eundem Willelmum ad deliberandum super conclusionibus et hujusmodi articulis et ad respondendum eisdem, iidem commissarii terminum hujusmodi præfixerunt competentem, in quo comparente dicto Willelmo coram eis, ac medio suo juramento, responso conclusionibus et articulis antedictis, eisque per eum omnino negatis, cum contra eum vehemens fama super his laboraret, commissarii nostri antedicti eidem Willelmo canonicam super his purgationem indixerunt certum ad hoc diem statuentes et locum salvo jure prosequi volentium super præmissis et se opponere intendentium contra purgationem sic indictam.[4] Fasc. Ziz. 335.

Quibus in genere vocatis et præmunitis comparuerunt judicialiter coram commissariis antedictis reverendi discretionis viri fratres Rogerus de Frysby de ordine Minorum, Johannes de Hynkeleye[5] de ordine Augustiniensi, et Thomas de Blacston[6] de ordine Prædicatorum, sacræ paginæ professores, offerentes se ut denunciatores ad probationem[7] præmissorum per dictum Willelmum negatorum. Twys. col. 2669.

Eisque in forma juris admissis, ac testibus nonnullis per eos productis juratis et examinatis, nos una cum commis-

[1] *blasphema*, Fasc. Ziz.

[2] *specialiter*] spiritualiter, F. Z.

[3] *prætendentem*, MSS., *prædicantem*, from F. Z.

[4] *sic indictam*] supra dictum, F. Z.

[5] *Hunchay*, F. Z.

[6] *Blakstone*, F. Z.

[7] *probandum*, MSS.

A.D. 1382.

sariis nostris memoratis in ecclesia nostra Lincolniensi in causa hujusmodi pro tribunali sedentes, ad instantiam fratrum denunciantium prædictorum depositiones testium in causa hujusmodi productorum fecimus publicari. Eisque necnon [1] omnibus et singulis in causa eadem actis et habitis et productis, visis, intellectis et debite recensitis præfatum Willelmum tam per probationes testium [2] quam alias legitime super objectis sibi ut præmittitur et per eum negatis convictum reputantes, et ibidem a suis erroribus divertentem ac ordinationi [et] [3] dispositioni sanctæ matris ecclesiæ atque nostris se super omnibus antedictis humiliter submittentem, eum ad gremium sanctæ matris [ecclesiæ] [3] quod claudi non debet redeunti, misericorditer admisimus juxta formam et modum sacris canonibus constitutum. Unde injuncta sibi pœnitentia salutari [4] pro commissis, eum fecimus præstare, prout præstitit, ad sancta dei evangelia, tactis sacrosanctis, corporale juramentum, quod nunquam de cætero dictos articulos et conclusiones sibi tunc ibidem publice recitatas et expositas nec earum aliquam prædicabit, docebit, tenebit vel [5] affirmabit publice vel occulte sub pœna relapsus in eadem, quodque dictas conclusiones et earum quamlibet publice revocabit locis et diebus infrascriptis coram populi multitudine adunata, et sub ea forma verborum quæ inferius describetur, videlicet in ecclesia nostra Lincolniensi die Dominica proxime futura dum missarum solemnia celebrantur, ac in ecclesia præbendali sanctæ Margaretæ Leycestriæ, ac in ecclesia parochiali sancti Martini, et etiam in ecclesia novi operis Leycestriæ beatæ Mariæ, necnon in ecclesiis parochialibus de Melton Mowbray, Halughton, Hareburgh, et Lowtburgh proximis diebus dominicis juxta numerum et ordinem locorum prædictorum proximo et successive futuris et captandis.[6] Ad præmissa adimplenda, formam vero revocationis publice prædicto Willelmo fiendæ de quo supra fit mentio statuimus in hæc verba.

Fasc. Ziz. 336.

Fasc. Ziz. 337.

Ego Willelmus de Swyndurby presbyter, licet indignus, Lincolniensis diocesis cognoscens veram catholicam et apostolicam, et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ fidem, omnem hæresim et errorem determinationi sanctæ matris Ecclesiæ re-

[1] *Eisque necnon*] Eis nec, MSS.
[2] *probationis testimonium*, F. Z.
[3] From *Fasc. Ziz.*
[4] *sæculari*, MSS.
[5] *vel*] aut, F. Z.
[6] *aptandis*, F. Z.

A.D. 1382. pugnantem de quibus fui hactenus infamatus,[1] et præsertim conclusiones ac articulos subsequentes et eorum quemlibet per commissarios reverendi in Christo patris domini mei Lincolniensis episcopi judicialiter mihi objectos abjuro, et omnes ac quemlibet eorundem revoco, aliquas ut hæreticas, et aliquas ut erroneas atque falsas, et tales eas [fore][2] assero atque credo, et nullam earum de cætero prædicabo docebo vel affirmabo publice vel occulte. Nec sermonem faciam ad populum nec prædicabo in posterum infra diocesim Lincolni- Twys. col. ensem nisi licentia [dicti][2] reverendi patris et domini mei 2670. Lincolniensis episcopi petita primitus et obtenta. Quod si ego ipse aliquando contra hæc aliquid sentire, facere, seu prædicare præsumpsero, severitati canonum subjacebo, prout judicialiter juris necessitate juravi et nunc juro.

Conclusiones quoque per dictum Willelmum abjuratæ [et][2] per eum ut præmittitur revocandæ, in hæc verba sequuntur:

[3] Prima hæresis, Quod puer non est vere baptizatus si sacerdos baptizans, compater, vel commater, fuerit in peccato mortali.

Secunda heresis, Quod nullus vivens contra legem dei est sacerdos qualitercunque fuerit ab aliquo episcopo ordinatus in sacerdotem.

Primus error, Quod homines possunt debita ex caritate petere, sed nullo modo propter debita aliquem incarcerare. Et[4] quod sic incarcerans est excommunicatus.

Secundus error, si parochiani sciverint curatum illorum Fasc. Ziz. esse incompetentem[5] et malum debent ab eo subtrahere deci- 338. mas, et alias sunt fautores criminis et consentientes ejus malis operibus.

Tertius error, Quod decimæ sunt puræ eleemosynæ. Et in casu quo curati mali, possunt eas[6] licite aliis conferre.[7]

Quartus error, Quod curatus malus subditos excommunicans pro decimarum detentione non est nisi ab eis pecuniam[8] indebite et male extorquens.[9]

Quintus error, Quod nullus prælatus potest aliquem excommunicare nisi prius sciat ipsum excommunicatum a

[1] *diffamatus*, F. Z.
[2] From F. Z.
[3] In *Fasc. Ziz.* the five *errores* are placed first, the six *hæreses* afterwards.
[4] *Et . . . excommunicatus*] om. F. Z.
[5] *incontinentem*, F. Z.
[6] *eas*] om. F. Z.
[7] *conferre*, conferri, F. Z.
[8] *pecuniam*] om. F. Z.
[9] *extorquere*, MSS.

deo. Nota [1] quod episcopus in isto loco et serie posuit ante- A.D. 1382.
scriptas hæreses et inter errores numeravit ut sequitur.[1]

Octavus error, Quilibet sacerdos potest, habita contritione, quemlibet peccatorem absolvere, et, non obstante prohibitione episcopi, tenetur evangelium populo prædicare.

Fasc. Ziz. 339. Nonus error, Quod sacerdos recipiens aliquid pro annuali ex pacto, eo ipso symoniacus est et excommunicatus.

Decimus error, Credit firmiter, ut asserit, quod quilibet sacerdos existens in mortali peccato si ponat [se] [2] ad conficiendum corpus Christi, potius committit idolatriam quam conficit.

Undecimus error nimis diffamatorius, Nullus sacerdos in aliquam domum intrat nisi ad male tractandum uxorem, filiam aut ancillam, et ideo rogabat ut mariti caveant ne sacerdotem aliquem in domum suam intrare permittant.

Quocirca ne veritas gestorum in hac parte perversorum versutia et loquacitate pallietur sed potius damnatarum hujusmodi hæreticarum et erronearum conclusionum iniquitas et confusio eas asserentium veniant in [3] publicam monitionem,[4] vobis omnibus et singulis præcipimus et mandamus, quatinus in locis [et diebus][2] supradictis, prout ad vos et quemlibet vestrum pertinebit præmissa omnia et singula populo et clero ad hoc congregandis publice nuncietis, et ea exsequamini et exsequi faciatis cum effectu. Dictumque Willelmum Swyndurby admittatis et inducatis ac per censuram ecclesiasticam si oportuerit compellatis ad ea quæ sibi ut præmittitur pro suis excessibus sunt injuncta efficaciter peragenda, nos reddentes de modo et forma executionis vestræ præsentium
Fasc. Ziz., 340. ac omni eo quod memoratus Willelmus faciendum duxerit in præmissis plenius certiores literis vestris patentibus, habentibus hunc tenorem sigillo authentico consignatis. Datum
Twys. col. 2671. in domo nostra capitulari ecclesiæ nostræ Lyncolniensis xi. die mensis Julii anno Domini millesimo ccc. octogesimo secundo, et nostræ consecrationis vicesimo.

Wals. ii. 56. His atque transactis antedictus Willelmus heremita William's popularity wanes in Leicester. mansit apud Leycestriam apud prædictam capellam tristis et mœrens, eo quod hi qui aliquando, dum prospera succederent, videbantur ejus amici, jam quasi

---

[1] *Nota . . . sequitur*] om. F. Z.
[2] From F. Z.
[3] *in*] ad, F. Z.
[4] *monitionem*, F. Z.; *notionem*, MSS.

A.D. 1382. desolatum eum dimittebant non visitando nec consolando, neque ei solitam annonam ministrando. Quia sic eo a prædicatione solita cessante fragor et favor populi erga eum cœpit tepescere, et de die in diem magis ac magis frigescere, et inde ipse de vita sua fastidire. Sicque infra breve, in se reversus, fugam de villa occulte iniit, et ad villam de Coventria abiit, ubi infra breve a laicis in majori honore, quam antea fuerat, ibidem habebatur, circiter per annum prædicans, sicut et prius docens, et plures ad sectam execrabilem subvertens, donec lustrata ejus fama et pestifera ejus seductione per diocesanum et clerum, de diocesi illa ridiculose dejectus est cum maximo rubore.

He goes to Coventry,

but is soon driven away.

Dominus Henricus le Spenser episcopus Norwicensis perrexit cum cruciata contra adhærentes papæ Clementi. Nam Francia, Scotia, Flandria, et multæ aliæ nationes favebant, et adhærebant antipapæ prædicto. Collegerat namque dictus episcopus innumerabilem et incredibilem summam pecuniæ auri et argenti, atque jocalium, monilium, annulorum, discorum, peciarum, cocliarium, et aliorum ornamentorum, et præcipue de dominabus et aliis mulieribus, nam dicebatur quod unica domina ei contribuit c. libras. Et sic aliæ, quædam majus, aliæ minus. Et quamplures ultra suum posse, ut credebatur, ut beneficium absolutionis consequerentur pro se et suis benevolis amicis. Et sic secretus thesaurus regni qui in manibus erat mulierum periclitatus est. Et sic faciebant tam viri quam mulieres, divites et pauperes, secundum facultatem bonorum suorum et ultra, ut sic tam amici eorum defuncti quam ipsi a suis delictis absolverentur. Nam aliter non absolvebantur nisi tribuerent secundum posse suum et facultatem suam. Et multi inveniebant viros armatos sumptibus suis, multi sagittarios propriis expensis, et multi ibant in propriis personis et sumptibus. Habuit namque prædictus episcopus indulgentias mirabiles cum absolutione a pœna et a culpa pro

A.D. 1383.

Crusade of the bishop of Norwich.

Wals. ii. 71.

Large contributions made thereto.

The contributions were made

dicta cruciata a papa Urbano sexto ei concessas, cujus auctoritate tam mortuos quam vivos, ex quorum parte contributio sufficiens fiebat, per se et suos commissarios a pœna et culpa absolvebat. Dicebatur enim quod quidam de commissariis suis asserebant, quod ad eorum præceptum angeli de cælo descenderent, et animas in purgatoriis locis positas de pœnis eriperent, et ad cœlos absque mora deducerent. Episcopus igitur primo aciem exercitus sui direxit in Flandriam, ubi cum venisset debellavit villas de Graflinge,[1] Burborgh cum castello, Barwe, Dunchirche, castellum de Dryngham,[2] castellum de Casselys, Nuport, Dicsmyt, Popryne, ecclesiam sancti Georgii munitam, Forne et multas alias non munitas, et cepit eas et tenuit. Cum igitur esset apud Dunchirche, congregati sunt viri ad eum in pugnam, et pugnavit cum eis et devicit et in fugam vertit, et plures cepit, et circiter tria millia occidit. Et obsedit villam de Ypres magno tempore, et oppugnavit eam et multos insultus ei fecit sed semper reverberatus erat. Tandem ipso inconsulto et nesciente exercitus ejus recessit ab obsidione et defluxit ab eo, posuerat enim unam machinam magnam et unum trepget cum una magna gunna, vocata gunna Cantuariensis, contra unam turrim super unam portam, et his ibidem relictis cum duobus curriculis onustis cum utensilibus et aliis necessariis suis, ipse secutus est suos, subclamante populo villæ qui inibi erat super eum, et clamore magno perstrepente. Igitur episcopus sic recedens ab obsidione, recepit se in villam de Dunchirche cum multis aliis de populo suo. Dominus Thomas Tryvet hospitatus est cum multis aliis in villa de Burborgh, et fortificaverunt villam cum palo et fossa. Insuper subito supervenit rex Franciæ cum regali potentia, et accessit

A.D. 1383.

Wals. ii. 76. for the sake of papal indulgences.

The bishop crosses into Flanders.

Wals. ii. 88.

Wals. ii. 90.

He has much success at first.

Wals. ii. 96.

Twys. col. 2672.

The king of France comes against them

[1] *Grafhinde*, MSS.

[2] *Drynghan* I cannot identify. In Johnes' Froissart, ii. 691, the castle of *Trughen* is mentioned in this part of the history.

A.D. 1383. ad villam de Burborgh et tentoria fixit ad obsidionem. Et ignem sagittavit in villam, et involvit eam incendio. Villa vero cremante fiebat insultus ad palum usque ad vesperam; sed bene reverberati recesserunt Franci vice illa. In crastino misit rex Franciæ ad eos qui inibi erant ut redderent villam, et fertur dominum Thomam Tryvet talem dedisse responsum, Si rex Franciæ continuare vellet insultus contra eos per se et suos, ut prius cœperat, per xiv. dies sequentes, invenire deberet paratos pauculos Angligenas, ibidem quasi in parvo clausulo positos ipsum et suos more Anglicano potenter repulsuros. Et ipsum regratiabatur eo quod tam nobilis rex tam grandi potentia paucos viros Anglicanæ nationis tanto honore prædonaverat, bellandi gratia visitando. Cumque sub tractandi forma tempus per aliquot dies tardarent, et se non posse cum tanta multitudine contendere nec valere considerarent, reddere villam concesserunt sub conditione eis a rege concessa quod libere abire possent absque damno suorum cum equis et armis et aliis bonis suis. Dux Britanniæ ibidem cum rege Franciæ fuit qui fidelissimus amicus genti Anglorum pro suo posse in occulto extiterat. Qui in quantum potuit apud regem procuravit ut eis absque damno talem concederet conductum; et aliter non evasisset nec unus quidem Anglus, nam pauci de eis remanserant; et tunc forisfecit suum comitatum erga regem Angliæ quia venit cum rege Franciæ contra Anglos. Dux Britanniæ habuerat in Anglia comitatum Richemundiæ.

Wals. ii. 94.

and forces the English to surrender in Bourbourg.

The duke of Britanny obtains terms for the English.

Wals. ii. 100.

Mense Junii intravit episcopus cum cruciata versus Flandriam, et post festum sancti Michaelis repatriare cœpit de Flandria in Angliam, frustratus ab effectu cruciatæ propositæ. Carolus rex Franciæ venit in Flandriam et intravit in villam de Dampe cum dolo, et decapitari fecit omnes magnates villæ, volens funditorie exterminare linguam Flandricam de villa illa. Nam post recessum episcopi Northwycensis de Flandria omnes villæ de Flandria

The bishop returns from his crusade.

The king of France takes Damme.

reddiderunt se regi Franciæ præter villam de Gaunt, quæ jam anno isto præcedenti devenit Francigena. Miserunt namque cives de Gaunt ad regem Angliæ pro auxilio contra regem Franciæ qui obsidionem posuerat ad villam de Gaunt, et rex cum consensu parliamenti sui concessit eis auxilium virorum armatorum et sagittariorum ad expensas vi. mille marcarum, sed in defectu cancellarii Michaelis de Pole defraudati sunt. Nam distulit solutionem donec coacti fuerunt de necessitate reddere villam, sub conditione tamen quod vivere possent sub legibus suis propriis antiquis, et quod rex non intraret villam nisi cum certo numero virorum armatorum.

A.D. 1383.

Flanders almost entirely surrendered to France.

Ghent holds out in hope of help from England.

Twys. col. 2673.

Ordinationes Episcopi pro Cruciata publicanda.

A.D. 1382.

The bishop's ordinance for the preaching of the crusade.

En primes ordines est en loueur de Dieu et establisment de seint esgleyse et en salvation de roialme que prechourez sufficiantz soient envoyes en chescune pays si bien de la miere come de cea pur declarere et pupplier la Croyserye et le droit estate de seint esglyse et de nostre tressaynte piere le pape Urbane, que Dieu pur sa benigne grace doyne pyte et redresse quant luy plest.

Item que a chescune prechoure oue confessoure que va parmy en Engletiere soit une clerke assigne que serra receyvoure et registroure dez lez nonnes, et de la moneye dez lez gentz penauntz, et lez ditz confessoures soient contrerollours a eaux.

Item qe les ditez confessoures publessent en lour sermones que nule femme soit si hardy de passer en le dite viage si non par especial licence del eveske de Norwyce en escript desouth son seale.

Item que lez ditez confessoures facent proclamacion que nule home soit si hardy par le chemyne de robber ove prendre par ascune extorsione oue tortuose manere biens de nuly tanqils entrent la dez enmys, qils puissent gaynere par droit de guerre, sur payne qils naveront parte del pardon ne de absolution. Et sils soyent convictes de ceo, qils soyent avoyes et jettes hors del host tanne qils ount fait restitution.

Item qe lez ditz prechoures priont et conseyllont le pepul pur faire processiones et altres priers a Dieu, en

A.D. 1382. salvacion del estate de saint esglyse de la realme et de la vyage et de lez peregrynes. Et qils conseylont chescune homme qe voet en le vyage pur faire mesine le manere devant son passage. Et qe chescune qui demourt a hostiel comence de la faire en tout le hast durant tout le vyage pur sez amys vount en le vyage pregnaunt pur lour greo grant pardon graunte per le pape et altres plusours de seynt esglyse.

Item que chescune confessour bayle le nonne de chescune confesse a le receyvour a luy assignes oveske la somme qe le dit receyvour receyvera del le confesse en escripte, et dez ceux qi sont enjoynez pur penaunce del alere en le voyage, qe le dit confessoure delyvere en escript al dit receyvoure lez nones et lez termes a luy enjoynes pur servyr Dieu en le dit voyage.

Item lez ditz prechoures publieront en lour sermones lez articules southseivantz.

En prime qe nul homme soit si hardy de passer en le voiage si ne soit mys en registre delle dit eveske sur payne destre jette hors de host et de la graunt excommunication fier lui done en le fait.

Item lez ditz receyvours et commissaries soyent chargez de receyvere devers eaux pour loure faite lymytours et prechoures dez touz les ordres dez mendynantz pur a eux aydere et conseylere, et pur loure rewarde de lour travayle chescune de eux prendra vi. d. de livere de touz lez deuers que vendront par lour procurement oveske la absolucion.

Item lez commissariez et receivours amonestront tyels lymitours et prechoures sur payne de la excommunication done en le fait, que bien lealment et diligentment ferront et procureront a faire lour charge al eyde de dit croyserye sanz fraude oue nule engyne.

Item lez ditz receyvourez et commissariez enduceront en le meillour manere qils purront et monestront sur payne de lez grauntz censurez et excommunication done en le fait, a touz lez curates en chescune parochie oue ils vendront qils enduceront et treteront lour parochienes ove tout lour poyare en le manere come lez prechoures et commissaries eux enfourmeront, pur doner et aydere al dit croserye en salvacion de lour almes et pur receyver la grant absolution done en le fait. Twys. col. 2674.

Item qils appelleront a chescune parochie ii. oue iv. persones dez plius sufficiauntz pur loure eydes et procurere touz lez habitauns illoeques tam laboreres que menagerers pur eydere et sustener a loure pouare la dite croserye. A.D. 1382.

Item chescune que voet alere en propre persone oue a sez costagez propres pur absolutione, devant qil pregne absolucione soit jure et asseure en presence dez collectours et contrerollours de venir a le dit eveske oue a sone depute pur faire sez endentures pur le temps qil servera la dite croserye.

Item lez ditez prechoures publieront en lour sermones que celuy que voille trover ascune en son none et pur ly alere en la croserye a sez costages, qils ordeyne que celuy qi irra soit able et sufficeant combatour qil ne soit refuse a la monstre affaire devant lour passage, oue altrement paye a dit Eveske ceo qil voile doner en la voiage, si qil puisse allowere sufficiant combatour.

Item chescune que envoye ascune combatour pur luy, qil face enrollere en le registre de dit eveske le none de son soudiour et son none propre devant qil pregne absolucione, ove altrement ils naveront part ne de la pardon ne de labsolucion.

Wals. ii. 105. Scoti intraverunt in Angliam, et spoliaverunt nundinas de Penrith, et succenderunt quandam partem villæ, et approximaverunt versus Carlisle, et sagittaverunt ignem in villam, et succenderunt quandam stratam infra villam. A.D. 1383. The Scots make a raid into England.

Wals. ii. 111. Die Lunæ in crastino Paschæ pius dux Lancastriæ Johannes intravit in Scotiam in magna potentia persequens Scotos, et plures villulas et domos succendit igni, silvasque succidit et dedit igni. Fertur enim posse ibidem audiri sonitus simul quater viginti millium securium succidentium ligna silvarum, et in pabulum ignis ligna interea dederunt. Et inaudita mala de talibus perpetraverunt. Et superveniente nive et frigore gravi detrimento oppressi sunt, et plures tam de Scotis quam de Angligenis hinc inde capti sunt. Dominus Johannes Fawconer cepit dominum Henricum Dowglas militem. John duke of Lancaster enters Scotland. A.D. 1384. Severe cold kills many both of the Scots and the English.

A.D. 1384. A combat in the lists at Westminster.

Die Mercurii, in festo sancti Andreæ, Johannes Walysse de Gremusby pugnavit intra lystas cum Martyletto de Vynelef de Navarria scutifero apud Westmonasterium in præsentia regis Richardi et pii ducis Lancastriæ Johannis. Et idem Johannes interfecit adversarium suum, et jussu regis factus est miles et multis donariis locupletatus est, tam a rege et duce, quam ab aliis magnatibus regni. Dictusque Martilettus postquam interfectus est, statim fuit tractus, suspensus et decollatus. Wals. ii. 117, 118.

The Englishman is victorious.

Parliament at Westminster.

Rex tenuit parliamentum apud Westmonsterium post festum omnium Sanctorum, et habuit de temporalibus quindenam et dimidiam, et de spiritualibus decimam et dimidiam. Dominus Johannes dux Viennæ

A.D. 1385.

mense Junii venit de Francia cum ccc. navibus bene onustis, armatorum manu, in Scotiam in auxilium Scotorum contra regem Angliæ, mansitque ibi usque post festum sancti Michaelis. Richardus vero rex Angliæ credens eos nolle recedere absque re belli, cum tam fortes essent tam de Scotis quam de suis, præmisit pium ducem Lancastriæ Johannem et alios comites, et dominos ad custodiendum partes Marchiæ usque ad adventum suum. Venit igitur rex per Leycestriam, in festo translationis sancti Thomæ martyris, et regina cum eo, quem comitabatur, præcesserat et sequebatur flos militiæ Angliæ, comitum, baronum, militum, armigerorum, valettorum, neque suæ ætati neque suæ paupertati respectum habentes pro expensis, sed hoc solum desiderantes ut tantæ diei eventui in bello interessent, incassum, nam hostes videntes tam floridum populum contra se venire, subtraxerunt se, a latere se elongantes; rex vero insecutus est eos in Scotiano, fugando de patria in patriam circiter per viginti dies in terra Scotiæ. Et villam de Ednesburgh succendit igni et villulas multas et domos, boscos quoque et forestas succidit et ignis pabulum fecit. Abbathias

Twys. col. 2675.

Help sent from France to Scotland.

Wals. ii. 129.

King Richard marches against them.

Wals. ii. 131.

The enemy retire, followed by the king.

Edinburgh burnt, and

quoque de Mewrose et de Edyngburgh cum villa destruxit et succendit ; et non sine merito. Nam rex misericordia et reverentia erga dei ecclesiam motus, tum pietate erga deum tum quia primo tunc arma contra hostes tulerat, ecclesiasticæ libertati favere studuit et ecclesiæ damna inferre noluit. Sed in signum pacis omnibus suis misit vexillum, et poni jussit super portas abbathiarum Mewrose et Newbotyl, pacem et clementiam omnibus prætendens. Unde Anglici audacius et sine trepidatione ingrediebantur et egrediebantur, nec damnum intulerunt nec malum timuerunt. Postea autem multitudine Anglicorum recedente, retro manserunt quidam Anglici et ibidem interfecti postea inventi fuerunt. Quod rex intelligens iracundia nimis motus est. Et pacem mutavit in iram et misericordiam in vindictam, tuncque jussit utrasque abbathias destrui et igne succendi. Et dum rex sic ageret in marchia orientali intraverunt Scoti in marchia occidentali, et incenderunt partem villæ de Pennerythe et ad villam de Carleyl [1] insultum fecerunt, sed, ut dicebatur et credebatur, miraculo territi fugerunt. Nam occurrens mulier nunciavit regem Angliæ venire cum exercitu suo, at illi prospicientes, videbatur illis vexillum regis prodire, et sic pertæsi, relictis scalis ad murum et machinis, fugerunt. Mulier autem illa credebatur gloriosa virgo Maria, patrona de Carleyl,[1] quæ sæpe parata est colonis de Carleyl.[1]

In ingressu regis in terram Scotiæ duos avunculos suos fecit duces, videlicet dominum Edmundum de Langeleye seniorem, comitem Cantubrigiæ, fecit ducem de Eboraco, et dominum Thomam de Wodestoke fratrem juniorem, comitem de Bokyngamia, fecit ducem de Glovernia, eosque regaliter dotavit possessionibus et redditibus, aliisque donariis. Comitem quoque de Oxonia fecit Marcheum de Dublinia. Dominum Symonem de Barle fecit comitem Huntyngdoniensem. Dominum

A.D. 1385. Melrose Abbey destroyed.

The English Standard set up over the gates of Melrose and Newbottle.

The English withdraw.

Wals. ii. 132.

The Scots come into England.

They are terrified by a woman believed to be the Virgin Mary.

Honours conferred by king Richard.

Wals. ii. 140, 141.

[1] *Carlelyl*, MSS.

A.D. 1385. Michaelem de Pole fecit comitem de Southfolk; et eos omnes regaliter dotavit muneribus, fecitque milites incomparabili multitudine, et in proximo parliamento ratificavit hæc prædicta. Ea tempestate scilicet ii°. die adventus regis in partes Marchiæ dominus Johannes

Earl of Stafford's son slain by Sir John de Holand.

de Holande frater regis uterinus, juxta Eboracum versus Bysshopthorp, interfecit filium primogenitum comitis Staffordiæ. Quem rex fecit addictari et exulare per leges regni; et omnia feoda et officia quæ ei rex antea donaverat ab eo eripuit, aliisque donavit. Postea per interventum pii ducis Lancastriæ et aliorum dominorum regni gratiam regis consecutus est et indulgentiam comitis Staffordiæ. Wals. ii. 129. Twys col. 2676.

Parliament at Westminster.

Rex tenuit parliamentum in crastino Animarum apud Westmonasterium. Concessa est regi quindena de temporalibus; de spiritualibus decima. Pius dux Lancastriæ Johannes in parliamento petivit licentiam a rege, proceribus et communibus, adire terram

The earl of Lancaster obtains leave to go to Spain,

Hispaniarum pro hæreditate regni sibi concernente ex parte uxoris suæ. Duxerat autem uxorem Constantiam filiam primogenitam Petri regis Hyspaniarum qui expulsus fuerat a regno per Henricum fratrem suum bastardum et sub dolo occisus, et dominus Edmundus

to which he lays claim in right of his wife.

frater ejus comes Cantubrugiæ alteram filiam juniorem duxerat in refugium contra hostes. Rex vero concessit cum consensu parliamenti, et in subsidium dicti negotii xi. mille marcarum summam ei promisit.

Dominus Willelmus de Bewechamp frater comitis Warwychiæ capitanius de Calesia cepit xlviii. naves per se et suos per vices, quarum duæ onustæ cum speciebus, et quædam cum allece albo ad summam quadringentarum lastarum et reliquæ cum aliis pro-

French ships taken

videntiis regis Franciæ directis versus le Sclus. Similiter et mercatores de portubus ceperunt plures naves, et quasdam earum miræ magnitudinis et altitudinis, et unam navem de Clyssons quæ appreciabatur ad xx.

in considerable numbers.

mille florenas. Dominus Baldewinus de Radynthon cepit duas taretas bene onustas. Sicque captæ sunt Wals. 135.

in diversis partibus regni anno isto naves magnæ et parvæ octoginta et plures. A.D. 1385.

Wals. ii. 143. MCCCLXXXVI. Die Paschæ pius dux Lancastriæ Johannes venit cum uxore sua ad regem pro mutuo valefacere. Cui rex dedit coronam auream. Similiter et regina dedit uxori suæ aliam coronam auream. Et rex præcepit omnibus suis ut ipsum regem Hispaniarum vocarent, honoremque regium in omnibus impenderent. Sicque solemnibus peregrinationibus regni ab eo itineratis, tandem direxit se ad portum de Plummowthe, in Hyspanias cum exercitu suo secundum voluntatem dei profecturus. In quo exercitu recensiti sunt viginti mille virorum electorum, de quibus in rotulo marescalli ii. millia armatorum, et sagittariorum octo millia. Pridie kalendarum Julii applicuerunt se in eundem portum decem naves mirabilis magnitudinis et staturæ, et vi. galeæ magnæ et robustæ et virorum fortium manu bene refertæ. Quarum quædam cum ccc. remigibus, et minima earum cum centum octoginta remigibus, missæ a rege de Portingallia in subsidium pii ducis Lancastriæ et suorum. Vii.° idus Julii paratis omnibus, et circa horam vesperarum diei Dominicæ, pio duce cœnante et Henrico comiti Derbeyæ filio suo et hærede cum eo, videres ventum validum rectum venientem in nubibus quam gaudifluum, et elevaverunt vela in navigium. Nec mora, sibi invicem valedixerunt, et sic abinvicem discesserunt. Comes cum suis rediit ad terram, pius dux cum suis eadem nocte cum omni celeritate se dedit ad navigandum in nomine Domini. In illo exercitu dominus Johannes de Holande, frater uterinus Richardi regis ex parte matris, erat constabularius. Dominus Richardus de Burle marescallus. Dominus Johannes de Marmyon camerarius. Dominus Thomas de Percy amerayle. Fueruntque alii domini, scilicet dominus Johannes Camne, Dominus le Fitz Water, et dominus le Ponyngus cum multis

A.D. 1386. The king ordains that the duke of Lancaster shall be called king of Spain.

The duke sets out for Spain.

He is helped by the king of Portugal.

The fleet sets sail.

Twys. col. 2677.

Nobles who went with the duke.

A.D. 1386. aliis baronibus et militibus et aliis magnatibus. Habuit autem idem pius dux in comitatu suo uxorem suam Constantiam filiam regis Petri Hispaniarum, et Katerinam filiam ejus quam genuerat de eadem Constantia, duas etiam alias filias quas genuerat de domina Blanchia, priore uxore sua, filia et hærede Henrici ducis Lancastriæ, scilicet dominam Philippam non conjugatam, et dominam Elizabet comitissam de Penbrok, dimisso viro suo juvene in Anglia. Qui comes post recessum uxoris suæ fecit divortium, et desponsavit sororem comitis de Marchia. Dominus vero Johannes de Holande primo dictam Elizabet desponsavit sibi in uxorem. Domina Philippa maritata est regi de Portingallia. Katerinam filiam suam maritavit filio regis Hispaniæ, et sic concordati sunt dux Lancastriæ et rex Hispaniæ, et rediit dux Lancastriæ in Angliam mense Novembris anno Domini millesimo ccc. octogessimo nono sequenti, cum immensa summa auri et thesaurorum. Retulit enim mihi quidam de familia pii ducis, qui cum eo fuerat in illo viagio, quod rex Hispaniæ misit quadraginta septem mulas cum auro in cistis onustas pro secunda solutione. De prima solutione non quæsivi, et misit duci hospites de majoribus Hispaniæ pro annuo tributo xvi. mille marcarum ad totam vitam ducis. Si vero uxor ducis superviveret xii. mille marcarum annuatim perciperet ad totam vitam suam. Erat etiam cum eo prior sancti Jacobi de Galecia.

Of the family of the duke of Lancaster

and their alliances.

A.D. 1387.

The duke's daughter Catherine married to the son of the king of Spain.

A.D. 1389.

Thus the expedition returned.

A.D. 1386. Eodem tempore dux Britanniæ obsesserat, tam a mari quam a terra, quandam villam in Britannia ab antiquo regi Angliæ subjectam quæ vocabatur Brest, cum ingenti multitudine Francorum et Britonum. Et xii°. kalend. Julii cœpit ædificare unum bastile coram dicta villa de Brest miræ magnitudinis in spissitudine murorum x. pedum cum vii. turribus. Et operabatur quotidie cum mille operariis, et habuit in defensione dictorum operariorum decem mille pug-

The duke of Britanny besieges Brest.

Wals. ii. 143.

natorum, ne impedirentur a civibus, sicque ædificatum est dictum bastile in decem et novem diebus, et vocatum est nomen ejus le Dufhous, quia columbare in eodem loco ante fuerat. Et instauravit illud omnibus necessariis, victualibus, armis, gunnis, et machinis. Et posuit in eo bellatorum capitanium quendam dominum qui vocatur dominus Johannes Malatret cum centum quinquaginta viris armatis et totidem aliis, trecentis in numero omni. Pius dux hæc intelligens, direxit navigium suum versus portum de Brest. Quo cum applicuisset fugerunt omnes ab obsidione tam a mari quam a terra, solis his qui in bastili erant remanentibus. Prior vero sancti Jacobi rogabat pium ducem ut ipse posset facere primum insultum contra bastile, et bene reverberatus cum suis quievit. Similiter et plures alii, feceruntque insultum per duos dies et amplius. Et suffodientes murum sub una turri, cecidit turris super dominum Robertum de Swynarton militem strenuum de comitatu Staffordiæ cum multis aliis et Johannem de Bolton strenuissimum armigerum de comitatu Eboraci. Et qui inibi erant super turrim similiter ceciderunt et statim occisi sunt.

A.D. 1386.

Of the works which he erected.

The duke of Lancaster directs his course to Brest.

Wals. ii. 143.

Various attacks made on the works.

Interea misit dominus le Malatret de bastili ad ducem ut redderet ei custodiam, sub conditione, quod ipse et sui omnes libere possent abire cum armis bonis et catallis ac victualibus inibi repositis, et pius dux, ut pius semper erat, concessit sub conditione quod antequam recederent, bastile a fundamentis diruerent, et ei etiam pro sagittamine quod ibidem in debellando consumpserat, viginti millia scutorum auri exsolverent. Tunc videres ex omni parte patriæ affluere viros cum feretris et grabatis atque carectis ad abducendum mortuos suos et vulneratos. Nec quispiam inibi erat quin aut ipsum mortuum aut letaliter vulneratum se ejulabant sui. Et ipse dominus Malatret adeo vulneratus est quod

The French commander offers to retire on terms.

Twys. col. 2678.

A.D. 1386.

A.D. 1386. in recessu suo pedestre [1] fulcimentum duorum ex utraque parte eorum scapulis innixus expetebat. Et dicebatur quod absconderunt plures mortuos in sale ne Anglici gauderent super multitudine occisorum. Mortui sunt centum quinquaginta et eo amplius. Deinde dirigit dux iter navigii in opus inceptum. Et quia frequenter [2] de bono principio melior speratur finis, cum in Galiciam [3] applicuisset, cives villæ sancti Jacobi se reddiderunt ei, et a conditione si regnum subjugaret, ei subderentur. Simili modo et cives de la Groyne. Interim prospexerunt eminus naves et unam galeam navigantes, quas quidam cum navigio insecuti, apprehenderunt eas in portu de Pontlyon, et inconsultis civibus irruerunt in villam, et ceperunt eam et tenuerunt. Et in prædicta galea capta invenerunt duos mercatores de Londoniis cum suis mercimoniis captive abductos. Et cum ea navem pii ducis Lancastriæ, quæ onusta erat et plena frumento et farina et cæteris quæ ad officium pistoriæ conveniunt, quæ dum tenderet [4] ad portum de Plummowthe parata ad viagium, capta fuerat et abducta ab Hyspanicis, jamque inopinata fortuna plenarie recuperata. Jam de pio duce taceo donec alia nova audiero.

Number of the slain.

Other conquests.

A ship of the duke of Lancaster is recovered.

Dominus Henricus Percy primogenitus comitis Northanhymbrorum in festo sanctæ Petronillæ virginis exivit de Calesia cum admodum paucis viris versus Boloniam, et incidit in manus inimicorum, et capti sunt et mortui de ejus comitiva de viris armatis circiter xl. de sagittariis circiter octoginta, et plures vulnerati Eadem nocte sequente idem Henricus et dominus Willelmus Bewchamp capitaneus de Calesia et dominus le Bowsers et dominus Degarius de Sees, alienigena, exierunt eadem via, et mane venerunt super magnam comitivam Francorum im-

Henry Percy harasses the French.

Wals. ii. 144.

[1] *pedestris*, MSS.

[2] *frequenter*] in MS. *semper* with *frequenter* written over it.

[3] *Galeciam*, A.

[4] *tenderent*, MSS.

provise, et quos voluerunt vivos captivarunt, et reliquos interfecerunt. A.D. 1386.

Mense Junii dominus Baldewynus de Radyngton cepit duas caretas[1] satis plene opulentas, quas dominus Michael de Pole comes de Southfolc et cancellarius Angliæ, accepta magna summa pecuniæ, dimisit capite proprio per warentum sigilli cancellariæ. Et de illo in proximo parliamento accusatus fuit per communes. Eodem mense dominus le Darcy,[2] Amirallus maris, cepit quatuor caretas et vi. magnas naves non mediocriter onustas, et applicuit eas in portum de Sandewyche. Undecimo kalendas Julii sederunt justiciarii apud Lincolniam in speciali causa deputati,[3] comes Northhanhymbrorum, dominus Robertus Bealeknap et dominus Willelmus Skypwyth. Et coram illis convicti sunt vii. falsarii monetæ qui unum nobile extenderunt ad decem solidos facientes inde vi. quadrantes, qui vii. simul tracti sunt et suspensi. Et quidam vicarius de Wyntringam[4] obmutescens adjudicatus est ad pœnam mutorum. Quidam rector de patria promotus ad valorem, ut dicebatur, octoginta marcarum causa affinitatis, quam digniorem et altiorem habebat, non est morti adductus, sed Londonias missus in Turrim sub voluntate regis, et sic quievit. Et de cooperatoribus eorum et fautoribus addictati fuerunt circiter lx. de diversis partibus regni.

Various captures of ships at sea.

Wals. ii. 146.

Trials and punishments of coiners.

Twys. col. 2679.

Karolus rex Franciæ congregavit exercitum magnum et copiosum et præfecit eis dominum Johannem ducem Vyennæ et dominum le Clyssons et alios plures dominos de regno Franciæ. Et fecit jurare super sacramento altaris et similiter de sacramento communicare, quod infra certum diem terram Angliæ, si ventus eos sineret, absque alio impedimento intra-

A.D. 1386. Charles, King of France, collects an army against England.

Wals. ii. 147.

[1] *taretas*, A.
[2] *Dersy*, A.; *Dercy*, MS.; *de Garse*, Wals.
[3] *deputata*, MS.
[4] *Wyntryngham*, MS.

A.D. 1386. rent, et de ea vivi non redirent donec aut depopulata aut subjugata, saltem finem guerræ imponerent inter regna, vel mortem ibidem sustinerent. Et ad hoc supportandum et perficiendum concessa est regi per totum regnum Franciæ taxa inaudita, videlicet tertia pars bonorum sive catallorum. Rex Franciæ fecerat quendam palum [1] miræ structuræ cum turribus et munitionibus, quem palum secum veherent, et intrata terra Angliæ quasi in tribus horis super terram, mirabile dictu, erigerent; et dicebatur continere in circuitu quasi spatium septem leucarum de mensura terræ Angliæ. Et circa festum [2] sancti Michaelis dominus Willelmus Bewchamp capitaneus de Calesia cepit duas naves, unam onustam cum parcella dicti pali, in qua erat magister carpentarius dicti pali, et aliam navem cum machinis et gunnis et pulvere et aliis instrumentis bellicis. Et post paululum temporis captæ sunt duæ aliæ naves onustæ de dicto palo, sicque captæ sunt tres naves de dicto palo onustæ. Statimque fecit rex erigere prædictum palum circa villam de Wynchelse.

Extraordinary taxation for this purpose.

Wals. ii. 147.

Capture of some ships with arms and munitions by Sir William Beauchamp.

Interim mense Septembris venit exercitus antedictus in Flandriam apud portum de Sclus volens in Angliam dirigere gressum suum. Ibique moram traxerunt sub magna indigentia. Nam dicebatur panem Angliæ denarialem vendi ibidem pro xviii. denariis, et ovum gallinæ pro denario, et in fine mensis Novembris redierunt in Franciam de proposito frustrati. Quorum adventu apud le Sclus audito, rex Angliæ proxima hebdomada ante festum sancti [3] Michaelis misit celeriter in universas partes regni Angliæ et Walliæ, et infra decem dies congregavit industria [4] multitudinem virorum bellatorum de ducibus, comitibus, baronibus, militibus, scutiferis,

Wals. ii. 147.

The French army comes to Sluys.

English preparations against the expected invasion.

[1] Here in a later hand is written on margin of MS. *palus continens in circuitu septem leucas.*

[2] *festum*, om. MS.

[3] *sancti* is above the line in MS.

[4] *industriam*, MSS.

et sagitariis. Nam de comitatu Cestriæ habuit mille A.D. 1386.
Wals. ii. 148. sagittarios, de comitatu Leycestriæ centum quinquaginta, de stipendiis comitatus donec ad regem venirent, præter eos qui cum magnatibus ibant, sicque factum est per totum regnum, secundum possibilitatem plagæ. Præcepitque rex quod omnes communes hospitarentur infra triginta leucas per circuitum Londoniarum, et ne appropinquarent per x. leucas ad Londonias. Simili modo mandavit do reliquis qui venerant cum dominis et magnatibus. Ipsi tamen concursum habere poterant ad regem et parliamentum apud Londonias cum solita familia. Interim inimici se continuaverunt apud le Sclus, nec alicubi appropinquaverunt aliqui eorum, erat enim eventus venti contrarius illis.

The enemy does not come over the sea.
Wals. ii. 151.

Magister Walterus[1] de Skyrlowe episcopus Lychefeldensis[2] nondum installatus sed consecratus translatus est in episcopum Batonensem. Magister Ricardus Scrope factus est episcopus Lychefeldensis.

Episcopal changes.
Higd. ix. 59.

Unde rex mandavit omnibus suis ut redirent singuli in patriam suam, sed stipendia pro expensis nulla illis dedit. Ipsi vero qui a Wallia et comitatibus Cestriæ, Lancastriæ et aliis remotis partibus venerant et expensas pro redeundo non habuerant, spoliaverunt ubique in via sua de equis ad equitandum et pro victu de porcis, porcellis, ovibus, aucis, caponibus, gallinis et cæteris quæ ad esum pertinuerunt. Dicebatur enim in spatio iiii. leucarum sexaginta duos fuisse expoliatos de pauperibus mercatoribus et aliis communibus de patria in comitatu Warwychiæ. Venit etiam quidam in campo de Sapcote in comitatu Leycestriæ et tulit unam equam de quadam carruca, cujus possessor insequebatur eum cum vicinis suis et equam eripuit, raptoremque ad plenum verberavit. Raptor vero dicto tempore rediit cum centum quadraginta sociis cum arcubus et sagittis de comitatu Cestriæ, voluit-

The English armament is disbanded.
Twys. col. 2680.

The soldiers plunder as they go home.

[1] *Ricardus*, MSS.

[2] *Lichefeldinenses*, MS. et infra.

A.D. 1386. Instances of such outrage.

que[1] prædictum villanum occidisse et villam incendisse, unde villani necessitate coacti finem cum illis fecerunt et eis ad certum diem se daturos decem libras obligaverunt; quod et impleverunt. Sicque in diversis partibus regni per tales infinita mala perpetrata sunt.

Attempt of the king of France to get possession of Ghent.

Post[2] festum sancti Michaelis, Karolus rex Franciæ simulavit se velle solemnizare[3] festum natalis Domini in villa de Gaunt, quasi volens honorem impendere civitati et civibus ejus. Et præmisit ministros suos prævisores ad providendum de victualibus et cæteris aliis necessariis, quæ regium honorem et magnificentiam decerent, veneruntque ad villam de Gaunt quasi octingenti viri cum magno cariagio doliorum acsi esset vini. Quod videntes prudentiores villæ mirabantur quod tam tempestive cœpit facere providentiam suam, et præcipue in tali villa ubi omnis abundantia[4] habebatur. Similiter quod tantam copiam ministrorum præmiserat, et quod magis timore advertendum erat, verebantur enim ne forte rex circumveniret eos lapsu mortis, sicuti fecerat compatriotis suis, viris videlicet de villa de Dampe. His et aliis consideratis, miserunt quendam incurium qui occulte et quasi incaute et insipienter, sed accidit sapienter, penetraret dolium unum vel plura, ut eos certiores redderet an dolus interfuisset. Qui jussum implens et nullum liquorem inibi reperiens, nunciavit magistris suis dolia a liquore vacua sed maxima ponderositate plena. Convenerunt igitur cives civitatis a minimo usque ad maximum, et se velle videre et gustare de vino regio dixerunt. Orta est igitur lis magna hinc inde, sed prævalentibus civibus fregerunt plura dolia et ea plena armorum invenerunt, sicque demum extorquebant ab illis quod illi octingenti viri cum aliis, qui sic sparsim venturi erant more ministrorum,

Secret introduction of arms.

The plot is discovered.

[1] *que*] om. A.

[2] The words *Post . . . solemnizare*, are twice over in MS.

[3] *solempnizare*, MSS.

[4] *habundantia*, MSS.

captata opportunitate irruerent super cives civitatis, et depopularent funditusque delerent omnem progeniem in ea inventam. Igitur Flandrenses in seditionem versi et iram, reddiderunt eis prout meruerunt vicem pro vice, et decapitaverunt omnes, nec evasit unus quidem. A.D. 1386. The French men who were in charge of the arms are all killed.

[1] Rex tenuit parliamentum apud Westmonasterium die lunæ in crastino sancti Jeronimi et finivit in festo sancti Andreæ. Comes [2] Oxoniæ qui et Marcheus Dubliniæ factus dux Hiberniæ in festo sancti Edwardi regis et confessoris. Rex traxit moram tempore parliamenti apud Eltham [3] pro majore parte. Proceres igitur regni et communes de communi assensu nunciaverunt regi,[4] oportere amoveri cancellarium et thesaurarium ab officiis suis, quia non erant ad commodum regis et regni, ac etiam habebant talia negotia tractare cum Michaele de Pole quæ non possent tractare cum eo quamdiu staret in officio cancellariæ. Rex inde motus mandavit eis ut de his tacerent, et de negotiis parliamenti procederent atque ad expeditionem festinarent, dicens se nolle pro ipsis nec minimum garcionem de coquina sua amovere de officio suo. Petierat enim cancellarius ex nomine regis a communibus quatuor quindenas solvi in uno anno et totidem decimas a clero, dicens regem adeo indebitatum quod non posset aliter a suo debito et aliis oneribus sibi incumbentibus tam de guerra quam de familia et de aliis relevari. [5]At illi communi assensu dominorum et communium remandaverunt regi, se non posse nec omnino

Wals. ii. 148.

A parliament. The earl of Oxford made duke of Ireland.

Wals. ii. 149.

Twys. col. 2681.

The commons demand the dismissal of the chancellor and the treasurer,

---

[1] Here on both margins is *de Parliamento.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Comes Oxoniæ factus est dux Hiberniæ.*

[3] *Eltam,* A.

[4] Here on margin of MS., in a later hand, is *proceres et communes postulant amotionem cancellarii et thesaurarii ab officiis ut obnoxii essent reddendis facinorum suorum rationibus.* Then just below *Rex indigne fert petitionem nec sinit minimum garcionem de coquina eorum rogatu a se amoveri.* After which comes *Quæ postulaverunt amasii de parliamento.*

[5] Here on margin of MS. is *Responsio parliamenti de non expediendis negotiis nisi exaudiantur.*

A.D. 1386. velle in aliquo negotio parliamenti procedere, nec minimum quidem articulum expedire, donec rex veniret et seipsum in propria persona in parliamento eis ostenderet, dictumque Michaelem de Pole ab officio amoveret. At rex remandavit eis, ut quadraginta milites de peritioribus et valentioribus communibus ad eum transmitterent, qui ei vota aliorum omnium indicarent. Tunc illi majus timuerunt unusquisque de propria salute.[1] Nam occultus[2] rumor aures secretius asperserat, quod eorum interitus per insidias imaginaretur. Nam ut postea innotuit eis, dicebatur, illis sic ad regis colloquium accedentibus turba armatorum eos invaderet et interficeret, vel ad regis convivium invitatos scelesti viri armati in eos irruerent et necarent, vel in hospitiis suis Londoniis subito interficerentur, sed renuente et ad tantum scelus nullo modo consentiente Nicholao de Exton, Majore villæ Londoniensis, istud flagitium dilatum est. Salubri igitur usi consilio miserunt de communi assensu totius parliamenti dominum Thomam de Wodestoke ducem Gloucestriæ et Thomam de Arundelle episcopum Helyensem ad regem apud Eltham, qui salutarent eum ex parte procerum et communium parliamenti sui sub tali sensu verborum ei referentes vota eorum.

Wals. ii. 150.

and will not listen to the king's refusal.

Rumour of a plot by the king's favourites to put to death the leaders of the parliament.

"Domine Rex, proceres et domini atque totus populus communitatis parliamenti vestri cum humillima subjectione se commendant excellentissimo[3] [patrocinio] regalis dignitatis vestræ, cupientes prosperum iter invincibilis honoris vestri contra inimicorum potentiam, et validissimum vinculum pacis et dilectionis cordis vestri erga subditos vestros in augmentum commodi vestri erga deum et salutem animæ vestræ, et ad inedicibilem consolationem totius populi vestri quem regitis. Ex quorum parte hæc vobis intimamus, quod ex antiquo

The address of the parliament to the king.

They remind him

[1] Here on margin of MS. is *Præcipui parliamentarii per amasios ad mortem designati.* And on both margins *Imaginatio mortis de militibus parliamenti.*

[2] *occultatus*, MS.

[3] Here a space is left in both MSS. for a word of about 10 letters, *patrocinio* is only inserted for want of a better word.

statuto habemus et consuetudine laudabili et approbata, cujus contrarietati dici non valebit, quod rex noster convocare potest dominos et proceres regni atque communes semel in anno ad parliamentum suum tanquam ad summam curiam totius regni, in qua omnis æquitas relucere deberet absque qualibet scrupulositate vel nota, tanquam sol in ascensu meridiei, ubi pauperes et divites pro refrigerio tranquillitatis et pacis et repulsione injuriarum refugium infallibile quærere possent, ac etiam errata regni reformare et de statu et gubernatione regis et regni cum sapientiori consilio tractare, et ut inimici regis et regni intrinseci et hostes extrinseci destruantur et repellantur quomodo convenientius et honorificentius fieri poterit cum salubri tractatu in eo disponere et prævidere, qualiter quoque onera incumbentia regi et regno levius ad commodum[1] communitatis supportari poterunt. Videtur etiam eis quod ex quo onera supportant incumbentia habent etiam supervidere qualiter et per quos eorum bona et catalla expendantur. Dicunt etiam quod habent ex antiquo statuto quod si rex a parliamento suo se alienaverit sua sponte, non aliqua infirmitate aut aliqua alia de causa necessitatis, sed per immoderatam voluntatem proterve se subtraxerit per[2] absentiam temporis xl. dierum tanquam de vexatione populi sui et gravibus expensis eorum non curans, extunc licitum omnibus et singulis eorum absque domigerio regis redire ad propria et unicuique eorum in patriam suam remeare. Et jam vos ex longiori tempore absentastis, et qua de causa nesciunt, venire renuistis.

A.D. 1386. that by statute there should be a parliament every year.

The purposes for which it assembles.

Twys. col. 2682.

The king may not estrange himself from the parliament.

Ad hæc rex, Jam plene consideramus[3] quod populus noster et communes intendunt resistere atque

[1] In both MSS. the word looks like *ediam*.

[2] Here on the margin of MS. is *Rex non debet proterve se subtrahere a parliamento.*

[3] Here on margin of MS. is *Rex submittet se exteræ dominationi quam emendationi subditorum in parliamento.*

A.D. 1386. Reply of the king.

contra nos insurgere moliuntur, et in tali infestatione melius nobis non videtur quam cognatum nostrum regem Franciæ [invocare] [1] et ab eo consilium et auxilium petere contra insidiantes, et nos ei submittere potius quam succumbere subditis nostris.

Ad hæc illi responderunt. Non est hoc vobis sanum consilium sed magis ducens ad inevitabile detrimentum. Nam rex Franciæ capitalis inimicus vester est et regni vestri adversarius permaximus. Et si in terram regni vestri pedem figeret, potius vos spoliare laboraret et regnum vestrum invadere, vosque a sublimitate regalis solii expellere, quam vobis aliquatenus manus adjutrices cum favore apponere, si, quod absit, ejus suffragio quandoque indigeretis. Ad memoriam igitur revocetis qualiter avus vester Edwardus tertius rex et similiter pater vester Edwardus princeps nomine ejus in sudore et angustiis in omni tempore suo per innumerabiles labores in frigore et calore certaverunt indefesse pro conquisitione regni Franciæ, quod eis jure hereditario attinebat, et vobis per successionem post eos. Reminiscamini quoque qualiter domini regni et proceres atque communes innumerabiles tam de regno Angliæ quam Franciæ, reges quoque et domini de aliis regnis, atque populi innumerabiles in guerra illa mortem et mortis periculum sustinuerunt, bona quoque et catalla inæstimabilia et thesauros innumerabiles pro sustentatione hujus guerræ communes regni hujus indefesse effuderunt. Et quod gravius dolendum est, jam in diebus vestris tanta onera eis imposita pro guerris vestris sustinendis supportaverunt, quod ad tantam pauperiem incredibilem deducti sunt, quod nec redditus suos pro suis [2] tenementis solvere possunt, nec regi subvenire, vel vitæ necessaria sibi ipsis ministrare, et de-

Further remonstrance of the parliament.

Folly of the thought of help from France.

Sufferings in previous wars with France.

Taxes imposed out of measure.

[1] The word is needed, but is not in MSS.

[1] Here on margin of MS. is *Per iniquos ministros regnum summe depauperatum.*

pauperatur regia potestas, et dominorum regni et magnatum infelicitas adducitur, atque totius populi debilitas. Nam rex depauperari nequit qui divitem habet populum nec dives esse potest qui pauperes habet communes. Et mala hæc omnia redundant non solum regi sed et omnibus et singulis dominis et proceribus regni, unicuique in suo gradu. Et hæc omnia eveniunt per iniquos ministros regis qui male gubernaverunt regem et regnum usque in præsens. Et nisi manus citius apponamus adjutrices et remedii fulcimentum adhibeamus regnum Angliæ dolorose attenuabitur tempore quo minus opinamur. A.D. 1386. The realm pauperised by evil counsellors. Twys. col. 2683.

Sed et unum aliud de nuncio nostro superest nobis ex parte populi vestri vobis intimare. Habent enim ex antiquo statuto et de facto non longe retroactis temporibus experienter, quod dolendum est, habito, si rex ex maligno consilio quocunque vel inepta contumacia aut contemptu seu proterva voluntate singulari aut quovis modo irregulari se alienaverit a populo suo, nec voluerit[1] per jura regni et statuta ac laudabiles ordinationes cum salubri consilio dominorum et procerum regni gubernari et regulari, sed capitose in suis insanis consiliis propriam voluntatem suam singularem proterve exercere, extunc licitum est eis cum communi assensu et consensu populi regni ipsum regem de regali solio abrogare, et propinquiorem aliquem de stirpe regia loco ejus in regni solio sublimare. Quæ forte dissensio aut error gravis [ne] in populo oriatur, et populus regni novo aliquo dissidio dolendo, et inimicis regni placibili, in diebus vestris per insanum consilium ministrorum vestrorum subruatur, regnumque Angliæ tam honorificum et in toto orbe terrarum præ cæteris regnis tempore patris vestri hactenus in militia nominatissimum, nunc vero diebus vestris per divisionem malæ gubernationis impropriose desoletur, They have a remedy. They can depose the king. Why should the king cling to evil advisers?

[1] Here on margin of MS. is *Potestas parliamenti in reges.*

A.D. 1386. regnique tanti damno titulus pro debili gubernatione sub perpetua memoria personæ vestræ scandalosæ quam regni vestri atque populi, et animum ab inepto consilio revocetis et eos qui vobis talia suggerent nec solum non audiatis sed etiam de consilio vestro penitus amoveatis; nam in eventu vario parum aut nihil vobis prodesse poterunt in effectu.

The king gives way.

[1]His et aliis talibus loquelis rex ab ira semotus animum de melancholia[2] revocavit, sicque pacificatus promisit se venire ad parliamentum post triduum et eorum petitioni cum maturitate se libenter adquiescere velle. Venit igitur[3] rex ad parliamentum ut promisit, Wals. ii. 152. et tunc dominus Johannes de Fortham episcopus Dunelmensis amotus est de officio thesaurariæ et episcopus Herfordenis factus est thesaurarius. Dominus Mychael de Pole comes de Southfolke depositus est cum ingenti rubore de officio cancellariæ, et Thomas de Arundell episcopus Helyensis[4] per consensum parliamenti factus est cancellarius. Post hæc dictus Michael de Pole[5] accusatus est de multis transgressionibus, fraudibus, falsitiis et traditionibus factis in grave præjudicium et damnum regis et regni, convictusque in mirabili numero articulorum prædictorum, noluerunt ipsum morte plectere neque nomen comitis ei auferre, et hoc propter honorem gradus militaris, sed judicaverunt eum ad carcerem in castello de Wyndesowre. Sed statim parliamento finito et universis ad propria regressis rex eum a custodia revocavit, et abire libitum libere permisit donec providerent qualiter Wals. ii. 149. disponerent aliter de eo. Redditusque et possessiones quos perquisierat dum steterat in officio cancellariæ ad annuam summam mille librarum ad perpetuum profectum regis confiscati sunt et adjudicati per

He comes to the parliament.

The offenders are dismissed from office.

Accusations brought against Michael de la Pole.

---

[1] Here on margin of MS. is *Rex acquievit rationibus et remonstrationi parliamenti.*

[2] *malencolia*, MSS.

[3] *igitur*] om. MS.

[4] *Elyensis*, MS.

[5] *Poole*, MS.

judicium parliamenti, et multas alias summulas quas nequiter et fallaciter lucratus fuerat in tardando negotia populorum donec cum eo primo finem facerent antequam eos expediret, videlicet ad summam xii. mille librarum condemnatus est reddere regi in relavamen communitatis regni. A.D. 1386. Confiscation of his property.

Twys. col. 2684.

Articulos fraudis et fallaciæ ejus pro parte reserabo sub forma quæ sequitur.

Rot. Parl. iii. 216.

Les empechementz faitz par lez communes en le playne parlyment sur Michaele de Pole, cont de Southfolk jadys chauncelere Dengletiere en terme de seynt Mychele lan de Roy disine. Et les judgementez sur ycels enserment de poynt en poynte. [1] Articles of arraignment against Michael de la Pole.

Primerment qe le dit conte esteant chauncelere et jurez [2] de faire le profite du Roy, purchasa de nostre seigneur le Roy terrez, tenementz et rentes a grant value, come pert par recordes es rolles del chancerye, encontre son soerment la oue il navoit taunt deservys nient considerez la grant necessite du Roy et del realme, et outre ceo a cause qe le dit cont fuist chauncelere au temps de dit purchas fait lez ditez terrez et tenementz furent extendus a mayndre value qils ne vaylent par an par grant summe en deceyt du Roy.

Et [3] pur ceo qil purchasa lez ditez terez quant il fuist chancelere contre son serment, le Roy avera les terrez Mermam, et le dit cont fra fin et ranson au Roy oue lez issnez prisse a temps de purchace.

Item, la oue ix. seigneurs furent assignez au derreyne ii.[4] Parlyment pur veyere et examiner lestate du Roy et del realme et dyre lour avys coment il purra estre meultz amendez et mys en mellour governance et disposition, et sur ceo le examynement fait [et le report sur ce fait] [5] au Roy si biene par bouche come en escript, le dit nadgares chanceller disoit en pleyne Parlement qe lez ditez avisementz et ordinance deussent estre mys en due exsecution. Et ceo ne fuist fait et ceo en defaute de luy qalors fuist principal

[1] Here on both margins is *Arreniatio Michaelis de Pole.*

[2] Here on both margins is *Primus articulus.*

[3] *Et . . . purchace*] om. Rot. Parl.

[4] The other articles are numbered in A. only.

[5] From Rot. Parl.

A.D. 1386. officer. A[1] cest article et a la tierce et a la septisme le dit qe le dit conte respoundera si ascune vorra dire devers luy en speciale.

iii^us. Item, la oue charge fuist graunte par lez communes au darreyne parlyment pur estur despenduz en certeyne forme demande par lez communes et assentuz par le Roye et lese seigneurs[2] et non pas autrement, lez deners ent provenantz furent despenduz en altre manere si qe la miere nestoit gardez en manere come fuist ordenez peront plusours meschiefs sont avenuz al realme et verray semblable est du venir, et ceo en defaute de dit nadgers chauncelere.

iiii^us. Item [par][3] la oue [un][3] Tydeman de Lymbergh qe avoit a luy et a sez eyres du done le Roye layel l. livers annuels del custome del Kyngeston sur Hull, le quele Tydeman forfist devers le Roy et auxint le payement de ditz l. livers annuels feust discontinue par xxxv. anz et plus, le dit chauncelere ceo sachaunt purchasa a luy et a sez eyres de dite Tydeman lez l. livers annuels, et fist taunt qe le Roy lui conferma la dit purchace, la oue le Roy deust aver eue le profite. Et[4] pur cele purchase le dit cont fuist ajuge fin et ranson a Roy et l. li. a Roy et a sez heyres ensemblement oveske lez manere de Flaxflete et x. mars de Rent queux avoit enchange et c. oveske lez issuez etc.[3]

v^us. Item, [par][3] la oue le haut mester de seynt Antoyn est sismatyk et par cele cause le Roy deut avoyre le profite qe a luy pertenoit en realme Dengletiere, le dit nadgers chauncelere qe deust aver avauncez et procurez le profyte du Roy prist a ferme la dit profite du roy pur xx. marcs par an, et ent prist a son oeps propre bene entour mille marcs, et al heure que le dit mestre de seynt Antoyne en Engletiere qe ore est deut avoyre possessione et livere du dit profite il ne poust aver avant qil et deux persones ove luy se avoyent obligez par reconysaunce en la chancelerye et per instrumentz en trez millez livers de payere annuelment au dit nadgares chauncelere et John son fitz c. li. par an a terms de lour deus vyes; [5] et pur cele cause le roy avera touz les profites du dit seynt Antoyn a temps du purchasse; et pur cele reconyssance ensi fait le dit

Twys. col. 2685.

---

[1] *A . . . speciale*] om. Rot. Parl.

[2] *les seigneurs*] Rot. Parl.; *se seigneur*, MSS.

[3] From Rot. Parl.

[4] *Et . . . etc.*] om. Rot. Parl.

[5] *et . . . etc.*] not in Rot. Parl.

conte fuist agarde a prisone et a la volunte le roy fin et ranson etc. A.D. 1386.

Item, qe en le temps le dit nadgares chancelere furent grantes et faitez diversez charters et patentes dez murdres et tresonnes felonies resoures dez rollez vent des loyes, et [en especial][1] puis la commencement de ceste present parlyment fuist fait et enseyle une chartre dez certeynez franchisez grauntez a charstiele du Douvere en dezheretysonne de la coronne et en subversion de touz lez placez et courtes du roy et dez sez leyes. [2] Le roy regarde qe ceux chartres soient repelles. vi^us.

Item, per la ou ordinaunce fuist fait au darreyne parlyment pur la vyle de Gaunt qe x. mille marcs deisent este cheviz et pur cele chevaunce deusent estre perduz iii mille marcs, la en defaute du dit nadgares chancelere la dite vile est perduz; et nient menz lez ditz x mille marcs pur la chevaunce furent perduz come de suz est dite, de touz queux articles lez ditz communes demaundent jugement du parlyment. vii^us.

Item, est fait une estatute qe nully perentre le roy et lez seigneurs apres en le commissione dite face desturbance oue impediment perentre le roy et lez seigneurs sur grevous payne de perdre sa vye et forfeture dez sez terres et possesiones au roy, et qe mesmes les seigneurs facent execution dez totez poyntes compris en la dite commissione. Et a ceo lez seignurs voilent faire lour diligence a lour costage de mesme per ceste an a durere. viii^us.[3]

A council of nobles chosen to take the oversight of the kingdom.

Videntes interea domini et magnates parliamenti quod per cupidinem officiariorum regis bona regni adeo quasi inaniter consumpta essent, rexque nimis deceptus et populus regni per gravia onera depauperatus, redditus et emolumenta dominorum et magnatum multum debilitata, et agriculturæ pauperum tenentium in multis locis in desolationem derelictæ, et in his omnibus officiarii regis supra modum locupletati sunt, elegerunt quatuordecim dominos regni qui gubernaculum totius obtinerent; de quibus tres erant de novis

Wals. ii. 152.

[1] From Rot. Parl.

[2] *Le roy . . . repelles*] not in Rot. Parl.

[3] This numeration was first made and then erased in A.

A.D. 1386. ministris regis per parliamentum electis, videlicet episcopus Elyensis qui erat cancellarius, episcopus Herfordensis thesaurarius, et dominus Johannes de Waltham custos secreti sigilli, et undecim de aliis dominis regni, scilicet archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Edmundus de Langleye[1] dux Eboracensis, Thomas de Wodestoke dux de Gloucestria, episcopus de Wynchestre, episcopus de Excestria, abbas de Waltham sanctæ Crucis, comes de Arundele, dominus Johannes Cobham, dominus Ricardus le Scrope, dominus Johannes de Eurose. Et dederunt eis licentiam et potestatem ad inquirendum, tractandum, diffiniendum, et determinandum de omnibus negotiis, causis, et querelis emergentibus a tempore Edwardi tertii avi regis Ricardi usque in præsens, tam in regno quam extra regnum in remotis. Similiter de expensis regis et ministris, et de omnibus quibuscumque aliis pro tempore sibi assignato emergendis; feceruntque dictos proconsiliarios dominos jurare ad sancta dei evangelia juste et fideliter regulare omnia onera et negotia incumbentia regi et regno, et justitiam facere cuilibet petenti secundam gratiam et scientiam a deo sibi datam.

The names of the councillors.

Adam de Usk, *anno* 1386.

Twys. col. 2686.

Their powers defined.

Similiter et rex sacramentum juramenti præstitit stare ordinationi eorum et eos fovere in suis agendis, et nullum articulum potestatis eorum revocare; sed firmum et stabile habere quicquid prædicti consiliatores fecerint et ordinaverint[2] durante tempore illis assignato. Et si contingat quod omnes simul in quocumque negotio adesse non poterunt aliunde occupati, saltem vj. eorum cum tribus officiariis regis prædictis audire poterunt inquirere, tractare, et determinare quamcunque causam contingentem sive citra mare sive extra quocunque titulo emergente ubicunque

The king swears to abide by their ordinances.

Six of them constitute a council with three officers of the king.

[1] *Langeley*, MS.

[2] *fecerunt . . . ordinaverunt*, MS.

rex facere habuerit sicut ad plenum infra patebit. A.D. 1386.
Similiter ordinatum est quod si quis regem consuluerit aliquid de potestate eorum revocare in tempore succedente, licet rex nihil revocaverit, si super eo verisimiliter convinci poterit, omnibus bonis et possessionibus privabitur; et si secundo tale quid attemptaverit, tractus per civitatem tanquam traditor publicus regis et regni suspendetur, sicut infra patebit in ordinatione. Et ut rex majorem benevolentiam et favorem adhibebit in præmissis concesserunt ei dimidiam decimam de spiritualibus, et dimidiam quindenam de temporalibus solvendas ad festum sancti Michaelis proximo sequens, si necesse fuerit per visum prædictorum consiliatorum si cætera concessa non sufficerent ad supportandum onera incumbentia medio tempore regi et regno. Similiter concesserunt regi de quolibet dolio vini intrante regnum Angliæ, et de quolibet dolio exeunte de regno tres solidos. Item, de libra cujuscumque mercimonii intrante regnum vel exeunte de regno xij. denarios tam de indigenis quam de extraneis, solum exceptis lanis, coriis, et pellibus.

None to counsel the king to recall their powers.

Grants made to the king.

Sequitur[1] Commissio de antedictis articulis, etc.[2]

[3] "Rex Richardus, etc. A touz ceux que cestez lettres verront oue oyront saluz. Nous avoms certeingment conceux de la grevous complaynt dez seigneurs, communes de nostre realme en cest present parliament assemblez qe noz profites, rentes et revenues de nostre realme per singulere et non suffisaunt conseile et male guvernaile si bien dascunes nadgars noz grandez officers come diversez altres persones esteaunt entour nostre persone sunt en taunt sustrez degastez et esloignez donez grantez et alienez destruez et malement despenduz, que nous sumes taunt enpoverez voidez et nuez de tresoure et davoire et la substance de nostre corone a taunt amenuse et destrut qe lestate de nous et de nostre

Terms on which this commission was appointed.

[1] *Modo* is put before *sequitur*, in MS.

[2] *etc.*] *in hac forma, videlicet*, MS.

[3] Here on the margin of A. only is *Copia Ordinationis Parliamenti sive commissionis regis*

A.D. 1386. hostiele ne poet honurablement estre sustenuz come affiert, ne lez guerres que se abundent tout environ nostre realme de joure en altre maintenuz ne governez sanz tresgrandez et outraionses oppressiones et inportablez chargez de nostre dit poeple. Et auxint qe lez bonez leyes, estatutz et customes de nostre dit realme as queux nous sumes astructz et obliges de tenir ne sont ne ont este duement tenuz ne execuz, ne plein justice ne droit faitz a nostre dit poeple, peront plusours desheritysons et aultres tresgrandez meschiefs et damagez sont avenuz si bien a nous come a nostre dit poeple et a tut nostre dit realme. Et nous al honour de Dieu et pur le bien de nous et de nostre dit realme et pur le quiete et relevacion de nostre dit poeple qont este grantement chargez en plusours maners devaunt sez oeures voillauntz ove la grace de Dieu contre tieux meschiefs mettre bone et due remedie. Si avons ne nostre franche volunte et a la request dez seignurs et communes suisditz ordeignez et assignez noz grantz officers, cest assavoyre noz Chauncelere, Tresorer, et Gardeyne de nostre privey seale tieles come nous tenoms bonez et foiales et sufficiauntz pur le honour et profit de nous et de nostre dit realme. Et outre ceo de nostre auctorite real certeine scienes bone gre et franche volunte et per avys et per assent dez prelatz seigneurs communes susditz en pleyne parliment en eyde de bone governaunce de nostre realme et bone due execution de nous ditez lieges et en relevement del estate de noz et de nostre poeple en temps avener confyantz pleinement de le bone avysement scen et discretion de lez honurablez pieres, en dieu William Ercevesk de Canterburz, Alysaundre Erceveske Deverwyk, noz treschers uncles Edmond duc Deverwyk, et Thomas de Gloucestre, les honurables pieres en dieu William eveske de Wyncestre, Thomas eveske de Excestre, et Nycol abbe de Waltham, noz chiers et foialx Ricard count Darundell, John seigniour de Cobbeham, Richard le Scrope, et John Devereux, yceux avoms ordeinez assignez et deputez ordeignoms assignoms et deputoms destre en nostre grant conseile et continuele per un an entiere proschen apres la date de cestez a surveire et examiner oveske noz ditz grandes officers si bien lestate et governaile de tut nostre realme et de tutz nos officers et ministrez de quequonkes estate degre oue condicion quils

Twys col. 2687.

Higd. ix. 83.

Higd. ix. 84.

soient deinz nostre hostiele come hors, et de enquerre et A.D. 1386.
de prendre informacion per touz lez voyes qe mult meillour semblera dez toutz lez rentez revenuz et profitez qe nous appertenent, et sont duez et dussent apertinere estre duez si bien deins nostre realme come dehors en quecumque manere oue condicion. Et de toux maners de douns grantz alienacions et confirmacions per nous faitz dez terres tenementz rentez annuitez profites revenuz gardez mariages eschetez forfactours franchises libertees, voidauncez de erceveskes eveskes abbaties et prioures, fermes dez maisons et possessiones dez alienes et de touz altres possessiones commes dez jurez biens et chateux et dez altres choses quequonkes et a queux persones et per quele cause et coment et en quele manere et nomement dez queux personez qe lont pris sanz desert. Et auxint dez revenuz et profites qeconques si bien de nostre dit realme come lez terrez seigniores citees vylez chasteux forceressez et queconque noz altres possessiones si bien de eea la miere come
Twys. col. 2688. de la, et de lez profitez et molonmentz de noz moneyz et billions, et de la prise de prisonners villez lieux niefs caraks biens et ransons per miere et per terre, et dez beneficez et altres possessiones dez Cardinalx rebelx et touz altres aliens et auxint de aspertes de monoye hors de nostre realme per les collectours de Pope procuratours dez
Higd. ix. 85. Cardinals Lumbardez et altres persones queconque si bien alienz come deniszeins, et dez lez emolumentz et profitez provenantz et sourdantz de customes et subsidez dez leynes quirs et peals lanuz et de lez petitz customez et altrez subsidez dez draps vinez et touz altrez marchandises et dez dymez quinsimez et touz altres subsidez et charges grantz per le clergie et de la commune, et auxint de lez profitez et payments de hampere de nostre Chancelerye et dez qeconqes noz altres rentez de temps de nostre coronement tanqe en eea. Et dez feez gages et rewardus dez officers et ministres greindre et meindres, et auxint de annuites et altres rewardus grantez et donnz faitz as ascunes persones per nous et per noz powere et ayele en fee oue a terme de vye ou en ascune altre manere. Et si gree ou payment lour ent soit faite et per queux et en quele manere, et comebien ils ont relesse oue donez as officers et altres pur avoire lour payment, et as queux persones, coment et en quele manere. Et dez terrez tenementz rentez revenus

A.D. 1386. et forfaitours bargainez et vendez a prejudice damage de nous et de nostre corone; per queux et as queux et coment et en quele manere, et de vent oue bargaine de tailez patentez pur singulere profite si bien en temps de nostre dite aiel come de nostre temps per queux persones. Et enserment dez lez jocalx et biens qe furent a nostre dit ayel en temps de son morant, et queux et de quele pris ou value et oue y sont devenuz, et coment et en quele manere, et de touz chevaces a nomement faitz a nostre oeps per qeconques persones. Et de touz lez perdez damages qe nous avoms eux et sustenuz per yceles. Et per queux persones et coment et en quele manere; Et de Chartres et de perdons generales; Et auxint dez le Communes payMentes et manere dez dispenses si bien de nostre dit hostiele come pur la salvacion de noz realme terrez seigniories villes chasteulx forceresses et altres lieux de cea la miere, et de la faitz et rescus per qeconque persones si bien soldiers come altres et per qeconqe voye, coment et en quele manere et come bien ils ont donez pur avoire loure paymentz et de consement de noz droitez profites et per queux coment et en quele manere. Et de maintenours de querellez et dustres denquestes et dofficers et ministres fait per brogage et de lours brogours, de ceux qont pris le brogage et comment et en quele manere. Et de touz lez defautes et mesprisions faitz si bien en nostre dit hostiele et noz altres courtes places et leux susditz come en touz altrez lieux deinz nostre realme per qeconques persones perount lez profites de nous et de nostre corone ount este espieres et amenuses ou la commune leye destourbez et delayez, ou altrement damages a nous avenus. Donauntz et comettanz per ycestes de nostre auctorite et per avys et assent dessusditez a noz ditez conseillers, sys de eaux, et a noz grandez officers avantditez plein pouare et auctorite generale et especiale dentre nostre dit hostiele et touz les officez de cel et touz noz autres courtes places leux a tant de foit come lour plerra, et de faire venere devant eaux ou et a tant et quant lour plerra rolles et recordes et altres minumentz et evidencez teux come lour semblera et touz lez defautes gastez et excessez troverez en dit hostiele, et auxint touz defautes et mesprisones troverez en les altres courtes places et leux officers et ministers susditz, et en touz lez altres articles et poyntes

Higd. ix. 86.

Twys. col. 2689.

dessuse nomez et chescune de cell, et auxint touz altres A.D. 1386.
defautez mesprisons et excesses faucynes deceytes extorcions
oppressions damages et grevaunces, faitz en prejudice
Higd. ix. damage et destresse de nous et de nostre corone et lestate
87. de nostre dit realme en general et en special nient expresses
ne specifies peramont, amendre corrigere reparere redressere
reformere et mettre en bone et due estate et establissement,
et auxint doyere et receiver touz maners dez playntes et
quereles de touz nos leages qe vorront suyr et se pleyndre
si bien pur nous come pur lour mesmes devaunt nos ditez
officers Consellours, et de touz manerez dez dures oppres-
siones et de injuriez tortz et mesprisonez queux ne purront
bonement estre amenduz ne termines per la courte de la
commune ley de la terre avant usee, et de eut doner et
affaire bone et due remedie et recovere si bien pur nous
come pur noz liges susditz, et a touz lez choses avaunt-
ditz et chescune de eaux pleynement discutere et finalment
terminere et de en faire pleyn execution solone ceo que
lour semblera meult pur le honour et profite de nous et de
nostre estate et renditegracion dez droitez et profitez de
nostre dite corone et meillour governance de la paix et lois
de nostre terre et relevement de nostre people dit. Voilaunt
auxint qe si diversite oue variance de oppinions sourde
oue aveigne entour noz dit conseillours et officers qe juge-
ment oppinion de grendre partie eit force certeine leux.
Commandantz et charauncez a touz Prelates, Ducs, Contes,
Barones, Senescalles, Tresorere et Cantrollour, et touz altres
officers de nostre hostiele, Justicez de Bank et del altrez
officers ministres et liges queconques, qe a noz ditz con-
Higd. ix. seillours et officers en la manere avaunt soient entendantz
88. obeysauntz conseillauntz et aydantz si sovent et per manere
come noz ditz conseillers et officers lour ferront assavoire
deper nous. En temoignance etc. Don soutz nostre grande
seale xix. jour de Novembre.

Sur quoy nostre seignour le Roy voillant qe corrections et redresses dez defautes et mesprisions dessusditz puissent estre pur son profite de son realme en ceste parliment la forme desusditz mys en due execution sanz estre enfrentz oue desturbez per ascune; de lassent de seigneurs et de la communalte de son dit realme en cest present parlyment ad ordyne et estable, qe chescune de lez lieges greindre et

A.D. 1386. meindre de quele estate oue condicion qil soit soit entendant et obeisant en quanke toche lez articlez susditz et chescune dependantz du cellez a lez avantditz counseillers et officers en la forme susdite. Et qe chescune qe ferra ajuge devant eaux come convict de ascunez defautz oue mesprisons susditz prigne et receyve sanz debate et faire tiele correccion come luy ferra per lez conseillers et officers avantditz en la forme susdite ajuge; et qe nulle persone de quele estate nacion oue condicion qil soit greindre ne meindre ne donne a nostre seigneur le Roy en prive oue en apert conseille excitation oue mocion peront qe nostre seigneur le Roy repele lour pouare deinz le temps susdit en ascune poynte oue face riens contrariez de son dit graunt oue de ascune des articules susditz. Et si ascune persone greindre oue meindre de quele estate ou condicion qil soit face contrarie lez ordinance et establement dessusditz, oue procure oue face chose queconque en ascune manere peront lez ditz conseillers et officers soient desturbez en ascune poynt sur le exercite de loure pouare avantdite, ou qe excite oue procure nostre dit seignur le Roy a faire oue commandere chose que conke peront le pouare dez ditz conseillers officers oue le execution de lour jugement et agardez en ycelles soit defaite en ascune poynt, et ceo soit duement prove per bones et vereies tesmoignes qe soient notoirement de bone fame et condicion myent suspectes convenablement examines devant le Roy et lez conseillers et officers dessusditz, prisez et a eux ascunes dez justicez du lune banc oue de lautre oue altres sages pris de la leye tieux come plerra as ditz conseillers et officers, eit tiele penance, cest assavoire, a primer foith quil serra issint convicti forfaite touz sez biens et chatieux a Roy et nyent meyns soyt en prisone a la volunte de Roy. Et si ascune persone soit duement atteint en la forme susdite de conseile excitacion oue mocion donne a Roy de faire la contrarie de son grante come desus est dite tout ne face le Roy riens per tiele conseyle excitacion oue mocion, uncore il avera tiele penance come dessus est dit. Et si il aveyne, qe Dieu defende, qil se porte en apres qil soit autre foith atteynte come dessuse dascunes dez defautes oue mesprisones avantditz, a douque eit la dit persone al seconde foith issount convictez oue atteynte la penance de vie et

Twys. col. 2690.

Higd. ix. 89.

de membre, saveth totefoith digniteis pontificales et privi- A.D. 1386.
legees de seynt esglise et clericale oue totez lez chosez avantditz. Et que cest estatute teigne force et effecte durant la dite Commissione tout soulement.

Ricardus dei gratia rex Angliæ et Franciæ, et dominus Hiberniæ, omnibus ad quos præsentes literæ pervenerint salutem. Sciatis quod domini magnates et communitates regni nostri Angliæ quædam subsidia nobis in præsenti parliamento nostro concesserunt sub certis modo et forma in quadam cedula nobis in eodem parliamento per communitatem prædictam liberata contentis, cujus quidem cedulæ tenor sequitur in hæc verba.

A subsidy granted to the king on certain conditions.

Al honour de Dieu et pur le honour et bien de nostre seigneur le Roy, et pur le bien commune et en defense du realme Dangletiere, lez seignieurs et les communes du mesme le realme esteantz en cest present parlement ount grauntes a nostre dit seigneur le Roy une demye disme et demy quinsyme a lever dez leis gentz du realme a Chandiliere proscheyn venant per maner come ad este acustumez a estre a lever avaunt cez œures, et aux ils ont grantez pur lez causez susditz et pur deffense de la miere et salvacion dez marchaundyses, de chescune tonelle de vyne entrant en mesme le realme ou issaunt hors du cel iij. s. et de la livre de touz altres maneres de marchandye entrant en la realme oue issaunt hors du ycell, hors pryse leyns quirs et peaux lanutz sibien de forens come de deins nient contre esteaunt ascune chartre oue patent fait a contrarye xij. d. Et per la ou a parlyment tenuz a Westmonstier, lan du reigne nostre dit seignur le Roy neofisme, certeyne subside dez leyns quirs et peaux lanutz estoite grantez per lez seignurs communes a prendre de le feste de saynt Piere ad vincula darreyne passez tanqe a le fest de saynt Piere ad vincula proscheyne avener ore lez ditz seignurs et communes en cest present parlyment grantent la dite subsidye a durere de le dit fest de seynt Piere ad vincula proscheyne venant tanqe a le fest de seynt Edmonde le Martyr proscheyne ensuant, et de mesme le feste de seynt Edmonde tanqe a le fest de Nowell lors proscheyne ensuant si ne soit nule parlement tenuz en le mesme temps. Et outre ceo lez ditz seigneurs et communes ont grantes per lez ditz enchesons une autre demy disme et demy quinzime a lever dez lez lays gentz a la

Terms of the grant.

Twys. col. 2691.

A.D. 1386. quinziseme de seynt Michele proscheyne venant sur certeyne condicion, cest assavoire, qe si lez ditz grauntez saunz la dit darrayne demy disme et dimy quinzisme oveske autres biens le Roy purront suffiere pur lez chargez et defensez du realme per une an proscheyne a vener per la diligence et bone ordinaunce dez lez honurables pieres en Dieu William erchevesk de Canturbiers, Alysaundre erchevesk Deverwyk, et les uncles le Roy, Edmond duc de Everwyk, Thomas duc de Glocestre, et lez honurables pieres en Dieu Wil. evesk de Wyncestre, Thomas evesk de Excestre et Nichol abbe de Waltham, Richard Cont de Arundell, Johan sire de Cobham, Richard le Scrope Chivaler, et John Devereux Chivaler, et iij. officers le Roy, cest assavoire Chauncelere, Tresorere, et Gardeyne de privey seale, ordeynez et assignez per nostre dit seigneur le Roy per sa commission enseale soutz son grante seale de sa auctorite real certeyne science bone gre et franche volunte et per avis dez prelatez seignurs et communes en cest present parlyment, en eyde de bone governaunce du realme et bone et due execution dez leys et en relevement del estate du Roye et de son poeple en temps avenir destre de continuele conseylle de nostre dit seignur le Roy: Jadunques mesme la darreyne demy disme et dimy quinzisme ne soyent pur nule qeconqe voye ascunement coyllez ne levez ne nule commissione faite pur lez coiler ne lever, et qe nule altres soyent associes oue assignez a lez ditz seignurs forsque ceux que sont ore nomes en la dite commissione. Touz lez quelez grauntez les avaunt ditez seigneurs et communes ount faite a ceste foith sur lez condicions ensuantz; cest assavoyre, qe si la poar done a ditz seignurs per la commissione susdite ordeignez destre del continuele conseyle tote desus soit en ascune manere desturbez qils ne purront franchement usere ne faire pleyne execution de poer a eux conuz, per la dit commissione et chescune poynt de ycele, sicome meult lour plerra et meult lour semblera pur le honour et profite le Roye et son realme, peront ils surseyent et cessent outrement de la faire, qe del hors la leve et demande de tut ceo qe adonques remandra a lever per force ou colour dez ditz grantez cessent outrement pur touz jours, et en ceo case briefs soyent mandez permy tote la realme en chescune counte as coyllours de touz lez ditz choses ensi grantez qils surseyent de quequonke leve Twys. col. 2692.

eut affaire per vertu dez grantes avantditz qe per mesmes lez briefs ils enoynt lour finale descharge en leschekere. Et que lettres patentes soyent faitez a chescune conte desoutz le grante seal sanz rien payere pur le fee du seale oue scriptoure de cell, recitantz la cause, le manere et lez condicions de touz lez grauntz avantditz. Et qe lestaple dez leyns quirs et peaux lanutz soit ordeigne en la haste que purra bonement per lez seignieurs et officers susditz pur la greindour profite du Roy et du realme. A.D. 1386.

Nos autem tenorem cedulæ prædictæ ad instantiam dictæ communitatis tenore præsentium duximus exemplificandum. In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes. Teste meipso apud Westmonasterium vicesimo octavo die Novembris anno regni nostri decimo. Royal attestation of the schedule of terms.

A.D. 1386.

[1] Dominus Willelmus Bewchaump post natale Domini cepit xiiii. naves regis Franciæ, tendentes versus le Slus, quarum una onusta erat pro magna parte cum ferrura equorum, et una alia cum cera facta in torchiis [2] cereis, et talibus, et reliquæ cum aliis necessariis quæ rex Franciæ paraverat pro ingressu suo in terram Angliæ, sicut plenius patet supra. Eodem anno post principium apud Leycestriam centum quarteria hordei vendebantur pro centum solidis. French ships captured.

Higd. ix. 90.

Price of barley.

Rex venit juxta Leycestriam per pratum episcopi et portam abbathiæ, et regina cum eo in crastino sancti Valentini, et pernoctavit cum domino le Bewmont apud Bewmaner, et tendebat versus Eboracum ad sedandam quandam discordiam ortam inter archiepiscopum Eboraci et cives civitatis. Causa igitur hujusmodi cum luculento consilio ad plenum regaliter decisa,[3] reddidit rex civibus quasi in omnibus votum suum. Fuerat autem et magna discordia longo tempore inter dictum archiepiscopum Alexandrum Nevyll et collegium cathedralis ecclesiæ Eboraci, et inter ipsum episcopum et collegium Beverlacis ecclesiæ; quod quidem collegium quasi funditus per malitiam exter- King Richard at Leicester, on his road to York to settle a dispute between

Higd. ix. 90.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Willelmus Bewchampe cepit naves.*

[2] *torcheis*, MS.

[3] *discisa*, MSS.

A.D. 1386. minaverat, et canonicos inde ejecerat fructusque et proventus ecclesiæ cum armatorum manu longo tempore sibi usurpaverat: sed quia lis mota ab utraque fuerat, rex noluit in causa ecclesiæ ea vice se intromittere.

the archbishop and the chapter of Beverley.

A.D. 1387. Ricardus comes de Arundell marisarchus[1], associato sibi comite de Devenschyre et comite de Notyngamia tunc juvene, circa festum Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ audito quod navigium Franciæ et Flandriæ diverteret se de la Rochel, cum vino, festinato classe exivit in occursum eorum, et magnanimiter debellans in fugam vertit, et cepit lvi. naves cum vino. Et istis navibus in Angliam sub custodia transmissis ipse cum sociis insequebatur inimicos et iterum fortiter pugnavit cum eis, expugnatisque illis cepit sexaginta decem naves cum vino. Summa navium captarum centum viginti sex. In quibus æstimabatur de vino de Rochel quasi in duodecim et tresdecim milia vasorum. Similiter in prædicto conflictu captus est marisarchus Flandriæ cum multis aliis. Interim rediit marisarchus in Angliam cum sociis suis ad refocillandum se et suos, letaliter pro magna parte læsos et vulneratos, et post paululum rediit ad mare revigoratus pluribus novis hominibus, et direxit aciem navigii sui versus Britanniam ad villam de Brest jam secundo per ducem Britanniæ obsessam. Dux Britanniæ fecerat unum bastile de meremio a parte maris ad retrahendum eis subsidium victualium ex parte aquæ et duo bastilia de lapide a parte terræ ad retrahendum eis subsidium ex illa parte. Veniens igitur ibi dictus comes de Arundell, primo cepit bastile super aquam, fregit et funditus subvertit, et unum bastile super terram cepit et funditus dilapidavit, villamque de victualibus quæ in eis erant pro biennio sequenti luculenter instauravit, et

A.D. 1387.

The Earl of Arundel attacks and captures some French and Flemish ships.

Wals. ii. 153. Higd. ix. 91.

Other captures made by him.

Wals. ii. 155.

He destroys the French siege works at Brest.

Twys. col. 2693.

Higd. ix. 93.

[1] *marearchus*, MSS. et infra.

præcipue de sale. Comes de Notyngamia non erat cum eo ista vice. Rediens igitur dictus comes de Arundell in Angliam cepit plures naves; perrexerat etiam [1] in Flandriam in portum de le Sclus, et ibi cepit naves de Flandria et quasdam de Scotia quæ ibi applicuerant. Et ascendens in terram spoliavit, vastavit, et incendio tradidit, quasi per decem leucas, regionem. Interim dominus [2] Hugo le Dyspenser, volens ulterius in portu conscendere in navi cum suis et refluente aqua et deficiente quasi infortune, captus est, ductusque est Parisius ad regem Franciæ. Sicque captæ sunt inter festum Annunciationis et festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ circiter centum sexaginta naves opulenter [3] refertæ.

A.D. 1387.

Higd. ix. 92.

Hugh le Despenser captured and taken to Paris.

Total of the ships taken.

Mense Julii dominus Robertus Tresilian venit ad villam de [4] Coventre, seditque ibi de banco regis per mensem, et addictati sunt coram eo circiter duo milia de patria. Priorque de Coventria passus est magnum detrimentum de uno messuagio ad redditum viginti quatuor marcarum, quod construxerat in villa de Coventria sine licentia regis; sed non amisit hac vice quia ponebatur in respectum ad consilium regis. Eodem tempore venit rex et regina ad villam de Coventria,[5] ibique aliquamdiu moram trahens, adeo placatus est quod ratificavit duas cartas de antiquis libertatibus villæ de Coventria. Et de novo concessit eis, quod major villæ possit habere hominem portantem gladium cum ornatu aureo coram eo ad modum Londoniensium, cum aliis pluribus libertatibus de novo gratiosis. Apud Leycestriam quarterium frumenti vendebatur pro ii. solidis, quarterium hordei ii. solidis, quarterium siliginis xii. denariis, quarterium pisarum

Court of King's Bench at Coventry.

The King and Queen at Coventry.

Grants to the city.

Prices at Leicester.

[1] *etiam*] igitur, MS., but deleted and *etiam* written above.

[2] Here on the margin of A. only is: *Dominus Hugo le Spenser captus.*

[3] *opilenter*, A.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Bancus regis apud Coventre.*

[5] Here on both margins is: *Rex apud Coventriam anno undecimo.*

A.D. 1387. xii. denariis, lagena vini rubei pro vi. denariis, lagena vini albi de le Rochel pro iiii. denariis. Murrena damarum ferarum. Rex et regina pernoctabant apud Groby xiii°. kalendas Septembris. Eodem tempore venit rex apud Scheuesbery, et ex præcepto regis convenerunt ibi quidam de justiciariis regni. Quos interrogaverunt antedicti seductores regis, scilicet Alexander archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Robertus Ver dux Hiberniæ, Michael de Pole, Robertus Tresylyene, et cæteri socii eorum, si posset stare cum jure regni quod rex posset obviare et resistere ordinationibus, de rege et regno in ultimo parliamento constitutis, per proceres et communes regni cum regis assensu, tamen, ut dicebant, in hac parte coacto. At illi responderunt regem posse tales ordinationes adnullare et mutare ad libitum pro meliori factione, quia supra jura. Et dixerunt, Plura fuisse per ipsos in eodem parliamento decreta et per judicium suum declarata, quæ si jam non essent judicata, per ipsos de cætero non forent judicanda nec eis assensum juris præberent. Tunc jussi sunt omnes justiciarii convenire apud Notyngham ad concilium regis ibidem in proximo celebrandum. Tunc rex adiit in partes boriales, et tandem rediit in Augusto visitatis pluribus locis.

Higd. ix. 99.

Questions put to the justices

about the late parliament.

Their reply.

The King comes to Nottingham.

Post hæc rex venit Notynghamiam[1] rediens de partibus borialibus, et tenuit apud Notyngham concilium in crastino sancti Bartholomei. In quo affuerunt quinque nefandi[2] seductores regis, scilicet Alexander archiepiscopus Eboracensis, dominus Robertus Ver dux Hiberniæ, Michael de Pole comes de Suthfolk, Robertus Tresylyen justiciarius, Nicolaus Brembylle. Justiciarii quoque omnes regni jussi sunt ibidem accurrere, dominus Willelmus Skyþwiþ[3] non erat cum eis

Higd. ix. 90.

Twys. col. 2694.

The justiciaries

Higd. ix. 98.

[1] A. though charred here seems to have *per Notyngham.*

[2] *nephandi*, MSS.

[3] *Skyppewyth*, MS.

infirmitate detentus. Tunc jussi sunt justiciarii sigilla sua apponere ad infrascriptas quæstiones, ut exinde seductores sæpedicti caperent occasionem occidendi ducem Gloverniæ et omnes reliquos qui in ultimo parliamento constituti sunt ad gubernationem regis et regni, et omnes in parliamento eis consentientes in hac parte. Quidam de justiciariis renuerunt sigilla sua apponere, sed hoc facere arctati[1] sunt. Dominus Robertus Belknappe justiciarius cum multa instantia renuit. Sed dux Hiberniæ et comes de Suthfolc compellebant eum ad hoc faciendum, nam si non fecisset minabantur ei mortem, et manus eorum, ut sibi videbatur, non evasisset. Cumque sigillum suum apposuisset, ait, jam, inquit, mihi non deest nisi ratis, equus et funis ut dignam mortem sustineam: si vero hoc non egissem, mortem manus vestræ sustinuissem. Et quia voluntatem regis et vestri jam adimplevi, mortem proditionis erga magnates regni merui; unde in proximo parliamento sequenti cum sociis morti adjudicatus est, ut patebit.

A.D. 1387. assembled at Nottingham.

They have to set their seals to their answers.

Speech of Robert Belknappe.

Quæstiones propositæ Justiciariis.

Higd. ix. 98.

Higd. ix. 99.

[2]Memorandum, quod vicesimo quinto die mensis Augusti anno regni regis Ricardi secundi xi°. apud castrum de Notyngham coram dicto domino rege Robertus Tresylyan capitalis justiciarius Angliæ,[3] et Robertus Bealknappe capitalis justiciarius de communi banco domini nostri regis prædicti, [et] Johannes Holt, Rogerus Fulthorpe, et Willelmus de Burgh milites, justiciarii, socii prædicti Roberti Belknappe, et Johannes de Lokton serviens dicti domini nostri[4] regis ad legem, in præsentia dominorum et aliorum testium subscriptorum personaliter existentes per dictum dominum nostrum regem requisiti in fide et legeantia,[5] quibus eidem

The questions which were proposed to the justiciaries, and their answers.

---

[1] *artati*, MSS.

[2] This document is given in Higden. Appendix ix. 98 seqq, and the two texts have been compared.

[3] *Angliæ*] om. Higd.

[4] *nostri*] om. Higd.

[5] *ligentia*, Higd.

A.D. 1387. domino nostro regi firmiter sunt astricti, quod ad certas quæsticnes inferius designatas et coram eis recitatas fideliter responderent scilicet[1] et super eis secundum discretionem suam legem dicerent.

Imprimis, Quærebatur ab eis an illa nova statuta et ordinatio atque commissio facta et edita[2] in ultimo parliamento apud Westmonasterium celebrato derogant regaliæ et prærogativæ dicti domini nostri regis. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, quod derogant præsertim eo quod fuerant contra voluntatem regis.[3]

Item, Quærebatur ab eis qualiter sunt illi puniendi qui statutum, ordinationem et commissionem prædictam procurarunt. Ad istam questionem unanimiter responderunt, quod pœna capitali puniri merentur, nisi rex in ea parte voluerit eis [gratiam][4] indulgere.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis qualiter sunt puniendi qui regem præfatum excitarunt ad consentiendum statuti, ordinationis, et commissionis hujusmodi factioni. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod nisi eis gratiam rex fecerit sunt pœna capitali merito puniendi.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis qualem pœnam merentur illi qui compulerunt regem sive arctarunt ad consentiendum confectioni dictorum statuti, ordinationis et commissionis. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod sunt ut proditores, merito puniendi. Twys. col. 2695.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis quomodo sunt puniendi qui impedierunt regem quo minus poterat exercere quæ ad regaliam et prærogativam suam pertinuerunt. Ad quam quidem quæstionem responderunt unanimiter, Quod sunt ut proditores puniendi. Higd. ix. 100.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis an postquam in parliamento congregato negotia regni et causa congregationis parliamenti de mandato regis fuerint exposita et declarata, et certi articuli limitati per regem, super quibus domini et communes regni[5] in eodem parliamento procedere debeant, si domini et communes super aliis articulis velint omnino procedere et nullatenus super articulis limitatis per regem donec super articulis per eosdem expressis satis fuerit per

---

[1] *scilicet*] om. Higd.
[2] *et edita*] om. Higd.
[3] *regis*] from Higd.; *etc.* MSS.
[4] From Higd.
[5] *regni*] om. Higd.

ipsum regem primo responsum, non obstante quod fuerat eis injunctum per regem in contrarium, numquid rex debeat in ea parte regimen parliamenti habere et de facto regere ad effectum quod super limitatis articulis per regem primo debeant procedere, [vel] an domini et communes primo debeant habere responsum a rege super articulis per eosdem expressis antequam ulterius procedatur. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod rex in ea parte haberet regimen, et sic seriatim in omnibus articulis tangentibus parliamentum usque ad finem ejusdem parliamenti; et si qui contra hujusmodi regimen regis [1] fecerint, tanquam proditores regis sunt puniendi. A.D. 1387.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis, numquid rex quandocunque sibi placuerit poterat dissolvere parliamentum, et suis dominis et communibus præcipere quod ab inde recedant an non. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt quod potest, et si quis ex tunc contra voluntatem regis procedat ut in parliamento tanquam proditor existat puniendus.

Item, quærebatur ab eis, ex quo rex potest quandocunque sibi placuerit removere [2] quoscumque justiciarios et officiarios suos et ipsos pro delictis eorum justificare et punire, nunquid domini et communes possunt absque voluntate regis justiciarios ipsos et officiarios impetere super delictis eorum in parliamento an non. Ad istam quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod non possunt, et si quis in contrarium fecerit est ut proditor puniendus.

Higd. ix. 101. Item, Quærebatur ab eis qualiter est ille puniendus qui movebat in parliamento quod mitteretur pro statuto per quod Edwardus filius Edwardi regis proavi regis qui nunc erat alias adjudicatus in parliamento per cujus statuti motionem et impositionem nova statuta ordinatio ac commissio supradicta fuerunt in parliamento concepta. Ad quam quidem quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod tam ille qui sic movebat quam alius qui prætextu hujusmodi motionis statutum illud portavit ad parliamentum sunt ut proditores et criminosi merito puniendi.

Item, Quærebatur ab eis, an judicium in ultimo parliamento apud Westmonasterium celebrato redditum contra comitem de Suthfolk fuit erroneum et revocabile an non. Ad quam quæstionem unanimiter responderunt, Quod si

---

[1] *regis*] om. Higd. | [2] *revocare*] Higd.

A.D. 1387. illud judicium esset modo reddendum, illi justiciarii et serviens prædicti illud reddere nollent, quia videtur eis quod illud judicium revocabile est tanquam erroneum in omni sui parte. In quorum omnium testimonium justiciarii et serviens prædicti sigilla sua præsentibus apposuerunt. His testibus, Reverendis dominis Alexandro archiepiscopo Eboracensi, Roberto archiepiscopo Dubliniensi, Johanne episcopo Dunelmensi, Thoma Cicestrensi episcopo, Johanne Bangorensi episcopo, Roberto duce Hiberniæ, Michaele comite de Suthfolk, Johanne Rypon clerico, et Johanne Blake scutifero. Datum loco die mense et anno prædictis etc. Twys. col. 2696.

A council held at Nottingham.

Dum rex tenuit concilium suum apud Notyngham in crastino sancti Bartholomæi, marchalsia[1] regis apud Lughteburgh. Dominus Henricus Percy primogenitus comitis Northumbriæ factus est marisarchus in autumno. Hic Henricus vocatus est a Francis et Scotis Harre Hatesporre, quia intempestæ noctis silentio aliis quieti somni[2] vacantibus ipse supra inimicos indefesse laborabat quasi calcaria calefaciens, quod nos dicimus Hatesporre. [3]Hic Henricus direxit navigium suum versus villam de Brest in Britannia obsessam, et liberavit eam ab obsidione, et unum bastile de meremio ex parte aquæ de novo constructum funditus exterminavit, et unum aliud ex parte terræ de lapide conquisivit, et ejectis inimicis instauravit illud de hominibus villæ. Et rediens passus est detrimentum suorum per tempestates maris. Wals. ii. 156.

Harry Hotspur

Wals. ii. 144.

raises the siege of Brest.

Suffers in a storm.

The king at Leicester.

Xvi°. kalend. Octobris rex et regina pernoctabant apud abbathiam Leycestriæ, et cum eis dux Hiberniæ, comes de Suthfolc, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, episcopus Cicestriæ. Die Mercurii et die Jovis dominus Willelmus Skypwiþ[4] justiciarius sedebat apud Melton Mowbray ad instantiam domini le Bewmont ad audiendum et determinandum de parco suo fracto, ut dicit,

A suit at Melton Mowbray.

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Marchalsia apud Lughborowe per VI. dies.*

[2] *sompnii*, A.

[3] Here on both margins is: *Secunda obsidio de Brest.*

[4] *Skyppewith*, MS

et addictavit dominum Thomam de Erdyngton, domi- A.D. 1387.
num de Barowe super Soram, de transgressionibus factis de feris et aliis damnis, et multi alii cum illo addictati sunt de patria. Et taxatum est damnum per inquisitores pro domino le Bewmount contra prædictum dominum Thomam de Erdyngton et suos ad mille et centum marcas. Et xiiii°. mensis Octobris in comitatu Derbeyæ apparuit quædam nubecula quasi hora sexta, ut dicebatur, et pluit sanguinem ad spatium quantum est jactus sagittæ in circuitu. Arain of blood.

[1] Dominica in quarta idus Novembris rex Ricardus venit Londonias cum ingenti honore, comitantibus eum auricularibus suis reprobis, videlicet Alexandro archiepiscopo Eboracensi cum cruce erecta præcedente, et domino Roberto Veer[2] duce Hiberniæ, Michaele de Pole comite de Southfolk, domino Nicholao Brembulle de London milite, subsequentibus. Cui major Londoniarum obviavit cum innumerabili multitudine equitum de civibus, vestitis omnibus in coloribus regis, viz. in gownis albi coloris et rubii. Et conduxerunt regem et reginam ad ecclesiam sancti Pauli, et deinde ad palatium suum Westmonasterii. Nec occurrit aliquem regem Angliæ cum honore tantæ multitudinis aliquando receptum fuisse in aliqua civitate Angliæ tempore pacis. Et dicebatur regem obviasse quinque episcopis, cum solemni processione de Westmonasterio obviam ei procedentibus, et nec crucem nec clerum considerans sustulit viam suam. The king and his favourites come to London. They are met by the mayor and citizens. Slight put by the king on a clerical procession.

In crastino scilicet in festo S. Martini audivit rex et prædicti auriculares de adventu ducis Gloucestriæ et comitum de Arundell et Warwych,[3] prope partes Londoniarum cum fortitudine armata advenisse: dicti auriculares conticuerunt ymaginantes qualiter eos exterminare possent, et timuerunt valde; nec videres The arrival of the duke of Gloucester near London is heard of.

Higd. ix. 105.

Twys. col. 2697.

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Rex venit Londonias.*

[2] *Ver*, MS.

[3] *Warwik*, MS.

A.D. 1387. per totam diem, ut fertur, aliquam naviculam vel bargiam super aquam Thamesiæ laborare. Sed omnes in Londoniis quasi attoniti continuerunt se sub silentio,

Alarm in London.

quia causa adventus dictorum ducis et comitum regem et seductores suos prædictos latebat,[1] expectantes eventum rei. Die Martis in crastino sancti Martini facta est proclamatio per totam civitatem per præconem et duos sergancios [2] regis equitantes, ne quis civitatis sub pœna forisfacti ausus sit vendere comiti de Arundell

Proclamation against those who furnish supplies to the earl of Arundel.

arma, arcus, sagittas, nec victualia seu aliquid aliud quod ad fulcimentum potestatis suæ posset provenire, et causa videlicet quia convenerat dominos et communes regni contra regem Ricardum. Interea dum rex sic se disponeret venire Londonias, Thomas de Wodestoke dux Gloucestriæ, Ricardus comes de Arundell, Thomas de Bewchamp comes de Warwyk, videntes quod non possent procedere in gubernatione regis et regni secundum ordinationem præcedentis parliamenti ad utilitatem

Wals. ii. 163.

The three lords collect their forces.

communem, impedientibus antedictis fautoribus archiepiscopo Eboracensi, Michaele de Pole, Roberto Ver duce Hiberniæ, Nicholao Brembulle, Roberto Tressylien justiciario, qui regem subduxerant et alienare se fecerant a consilio dictorum dominorum, in magnum gravamen regis et regni; unde circuire fecerunt partes regni per gyrum ne prope esset consilio dominorum ne forte eorum consilium caperet effectum. Revera non est auditum quod aliquis rex gyraverit fines regni in tam brevi tempore sicuti ille fecit illis diebus per eorum nefandum consilium; unde convenerunt isti domini tres prænominati cum magna stipatione militum armi-

Higd. ix. 106.

They advance near to London.

gerorum, sagittariorum, et bono apparatu, et appropinquaverunt prope Londonias apud Bysschopeswode, apud Waltham, apud Hakeney,[3] et in diversis locis se moventes. Interim miserunt ad regem archiepiscopum

---

[1] *latebant*, A.; *latentes expectabant*, MS.

[2] *sergeancios*, MS.

[3] *Haknay*, MS.

Cantuariensem, dominum Johannem Lovell, dominum de Cobham, dominum Johannem de Eurose [1] et alios. Et petebant seductores regis et proditores regis et regni, qui seduxerant regem et perturbabant totum regnum tam divites quam pauperes, et seminabant discordias et rancores inter regem et suos proceres, et dicebant se ad commodum et honorem regis et regni ad hoc solum venisse, ut punirentur traditores regis ne regnum tam citra mare quam extra per eorum ineptum consilium honore gubernaculi privetur. Protestantes se in nullo velle cogitare, vel facere seu aliquid attemptare quod posset derogare profectui aut honori regis vel regni sui, sed solum ut traditores amoverentur a latere regis et digne pro meritis punirentur ad terrorem omnium succedentium. Fertur insuper prædictos quinque fautores suggessisse regi, quod isti domini qui consilium et gubernationem regis et regni in præcedenti parliamento acceperant intendunt regem subpeditare, et ad voluntatem eorum ipsum subicere nisi principiis eorum obstaret. Et ideo consuluerunt eum ut cum rege Franciæ amicitias provocaret, faceret pacem in tanta necessitate, et pro bono pacis redderet regi Franciæ Calesiam, Gynes, et Picardiam, et omnia quæ habebat rex Angliæ in regno Franciæ præter Aquitaniam, ut sic rex Franciæ cum manu forti veniret in Angliam ad castigandum et subiciendum inimicos regis indomitos dominos. Et similiter dicebatur, quod quidam valettus mittebatur eodem tempore a rege Angliæ ad regem Franciæ, de quo nuncio quis erat nondum publicatur, sed dicebatur ipsum reportasse in donis sibi datis valorem mille marcarum. Similiter dicebatur quod quidam miles Angliæ mittebatur domino Willelmo Bewchamp capitaneo Calesiæ cum literis signetto regis signatis, ut redderet ei villam Calesiæ. Etiam dominus Johannes Golofre miles missus est a

A.D. 1387.

They send messengers to the king.

They ask that the king's evil advisers should be given up.

The favourites advise the king to seek help from France.

Wals. ii. 164.

A messenger is said to have been sent to France.

Twys. col. 2698.

The governor of Calais is ordered to give it up

[1] *Euros.* MS.

A.D. 1387. rege ad regem Franciæ cum literis. Sed Willelmus Bewchampe capitaneus Calesiæ abripuit ab eo literas et remisit in Angliam ad ducem Gloucestriæ. At ille respondit, quod custodiam villæ et gubernationem sibi traditam in præsentia et auctoritate regis et dominorum regni publice et palam, et ideo se nolle reddere villam in occulto donec ad eorum præsentiam adveniret.

He refuses to obey such an order.

Ad priorem historiam redeamus. Fertur quendam de his qui adhærebant regi dixisse, Domine, surgamus et irruamus in inimicos vestros et circumvallemus eos tanquam gregem ovium, et verberabimus eos quasi [1] diabolus laniabat coria eorum. Fertur etiam regem interrogasse a majore villæ, quot armatos in brevi tempore paratos possent habere in civitate. Qui respondens, dixit, Se credere posse habere circiter quinquaginta millia in brevicula[2] hora. Vade, inquit rex, et quam citius valebis adduc ad me quot poteris sine mora. Cumque venisset in civitatem major in executionem negotii, responderunt pro majori parte quasi una voce et unanimi assensu, se non posse nec velle procedere in pugnam contra amicos regis et regni et veritatis defensores, et pauperum in instanti negotio, deo adjuvante, fortissimos tutores; sed contra inimicos regis et regni nunc et semper esse paratos. Fertur etiam dominum Radulphum dominum le Basset respondere regi. Domine, sciatis quod ergo semper fui, sum, et semper ero vester legius homo fidelis, et corpus meum et catalla mea vestra erunt et sunt in justitia vestra et veritate; sed si contingat me in campum venire, sciatis me velle trahere absque ambiguitate ad partem veracem et veritatis sectatricem, nec intendo me opponere ad fracturam capitis mei pro duce Hiberniæ. Fertur etiam comitem Northumbriæ[3] dixisse regi, domine rex, isti domini in campis semper fuerunt vobis

The king's party advise a conflict.

The mayor is asked to provide a force.

The populace refused to fight against the real friends of the king and the people.

Answer of Sir Ralph Basset.

And of the Earl of

[1] *quod*, MSS.
[2] *brevila*, MSS.
[3] *Northambriæ*, MSS.

fideles, et jam sunt et semper esse intendunt, nec in aliquo statui vestro vel commodo, seu honori obviari proponunt, sed sentiunt se flebiliter gravatos per nequissimam imaginationem et falsam oppressionem quorundam vestrorum. Et hoc unum sciatis absque vacillatione aliqua, quod totum regnum vestrum turbatum est cum eis in ista causa et inedicibiliter motum, et hoc tam majores quam minores, tam proceres quam communes, et exponere se volunt cum eis usque ad mortis metas. A.D. 1387. Northumberland. The whole nation disturbed as well as the nobles.

Rex his auditis attonitus expavit et comes adjecit, domine rex, vos jam statis in principali loco regni vestri et in sede coronationis vestræ, nunc igitur agatis sapienter et regaliter, et mittatis eis ut veniant ad vos in publico loco solii vestri ad intimandum vobis causam adventus eorum cum tanta multitudine virorum ad partes istas; et cum eos audieritis audeo dicere quod habebitis eos plenarie excusatos. Similiter et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et episcopus Helyensis cancellarius, et alii episcopi et domini instabant penes regem, ut delenirent et mitigarent melancholiam ejus erga dominos. Tandem rex favebat voluntati eorum, et coercuit seipsum ab ira concepta, quia in tantum subductus erat quod totaliter causa suæ personalis subversionis dominos sic venisse autumaverat. The earl advises the king to send for the three noblemen. Others do the same. Twys. col. 2699. The king yields.

Feria quarta post festum sancti Martini dux Gloucestriæ et duo comites, sentientes quod rex faceret causam actam contra v. traditores quasi suam propriam personalem per seductionem eorundem, supponunt quod leviter cives Londonienses per regem sic allectum et v. traditores ad partem illorum inclinari possent, hi qui veritatis tramitem penitus ignorantes et causæ cognitionem minime intelligentes, et in præcedenti die audierant in civitate proclamationem factam, ne quis sub pœna forisfacti aliquid comiti de Arundell venderet vel ministraret unde posset confortari vel relevari; sicut supra ostenditur; iidem domini dis- The duke of Gloucester and his party fear the Londoners may be misled. Higd. ix. 105.

A.D. 1387. Therefore they send a letter to them.

ponunt se certiorare eosdem cives per literam suam causam congregationis eorum et gravamen plenius continentem, petendo eorum consilium et auxilium pro justitia totius regni et conservatione veritatis.

[1] COPIA LITERÆ QUAM MISERUNT.

Copy of the letter.

Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglietere[2] et Ricard count de Arundell et de [Surrey][3] et Thomas Bewchamp counte de Warwyk, as maire, viscont, aldermen, cytesenez et touz lez bonez communes de la cyte de Loundrez salutz.

Vous faceoms assavoire, qe nous avons este sumes et totediz serroms obeysanz et leaux lieges a nostre tresredoute seignur le roy; et qe vous ne merveylez de la cause de nostre assemble en ceste manere. Pur ceo qil fuist ordeigne per nostre dit seigneur le roy a son darreyne parliament qe certeyne seignurs illoeques ordeignez et jurez pur le honour de dieu et le bien du roy et del realme deverent avoyre la governance de son consayle et de realme et de lors per une an entiere, la quele governance ad este et est grauntment desturbez per Alysaundre le Erchevek Deverwyk, Robert Ver duc Direland, Mychele de la Pole conte de Southfolk, Robert Tresylan fauce justice, Nichol Brambulle fauce chyvalere de Loundrez, faux et traytoures touz et chescune de eaux traytoures a roy et al realme, queux fausement et traytorousement ount aloignes le roy et per lour engynes conseil et mennez la honurable persone de nostre dit seignur le roy en diversez partiez longes de soun conseyle en arrerysment de luy et de son realme, et luy ount fausement conseyllez encontre son serment faire diversez chosez en disheretyson et dezmembrance de sa coronne en poynt de perdre sa heritage perdela le miere a grant honte et destruccion de tut le realme, et fausement faitez diversez dissentez entre nostre dit seignur le roy et lez seignurs de son consayle, si qe ascunez de eux furent

[1] Here on the margin of both MSS. is: *Litera missa civibus Londoniarum per ducem et socios suos.*

[2] *Denglitiere*, MS.

[3] A word is omitted in both MSS.

en doute et peril de lour vyes, si come nous avoms en partye declarez a nostre tresredoute seignur le roy per lez tresreverentz pieres en Dieu lercheveske de Canturbery, le duc Deverwyk, leveske de Wynchestre et de Ely, et diversez altrez seignurs grandez del realme, et pluis ferroms si Dieu plest, a tote le realme. Pur queux chosez redressere et desore restreynere et lez traytours avant ditz duement puniere come le ley voet, nous sumes assemblez. Vous requiroms et chargeoms par vertue de vostre legienance qe vous ent fecez pleyne proclamation permy tout la cyte quest nostre entent e nule altre qe pur lonour profite de salvacion du roy et du realme et dez touz sez loiaux lieges, et qe vous soiez eydantz et confortanz ove tote vostre devoire et poiare nient favorantz ne en eydantz as traytours avantditz ne a nuly de eaux, sicome vous voillez le honour de Dieu et du roy et du realme et la salvacion de vostre cytee avant dite. Ceo ne lessez come vous voillez eschuere le perille gent purra a vener en temps a venir. Et qe vous nous certifiez de vostre entente dez cestez matyrez y ceo Vendredy en tote manere. A.D. 1387.

Twys. col. 2700.

[1] Die Veneris proxima sequente venerunt archiepiscopus Cantuariensis et cancellarius episcopus Elyensis et alii domini, quibus jussum est nuncium hoc facere, missi a latere regis, quærentes ducem et comites. Et tandem invenerunt eos, et salutatis utrisque, fertur tam ducem et comites quam archiepiscopum et socios suos fidem facere ad crucem archiepiscopi Cantuariensis causam incumbentem non remittere donec finem congruum et communitati regni utilem inde quandoque obtinerent, et ad hoc omnia bona sua usque ad ultimum denarium se exposituros promittebant, ac etiam, si exigentia temporis idem expeteret, corpora sua usque ad mortis periculum prodere non formidarent, et si aliquis eorum ab hac vita vel plures ab hac vita discederet, reliqui viventes bonis eorum et catallis gauderent in communi donec commune negotium ad finem congruum perducerent. Præterea archiepiscopus et socii

Messengers sent from the king to the lords.

They all are of accord to do their utmost for the safety of the kingdom.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Nuncii missi a rege ad ducem et socios suos.*

A.D. 1387. sui negotium adventus eorum eis declarantes; et inde qualiter et quomodo in accessu suo ad regem sub humillimo vultu et gestu se haberent mutuo consuluerunt. Ventumque est ad consensum, ut ad regis se offerant dominica sequente præsentiam, et se erga regem de melancholia [1] erga eos concepta integre et plenarie excusarent, et causam gravaminis sui contra v. seductores regis et proditores regni plenius exponerent, et remedium inde secundum leges regni ab eo peterent effectualiter assequendum.

The three lords agree to go to the king.

Higd. ix. 107.

Dominica igitur sequenti venit rex in aulam Westmonasterii et sedit in solio regali, et tota domus erat repleta dominis magnatibus et communibus, et rex exspectabat eorum adventum quasi per spatium fere duarum horarum. Nam relatum erat duci et comitibus quod insidiæ positæ essent per viam apud le Mewes et in hospitio archiepiscopi Eboracensis ut eos raperent, et ideo lustratis his et aliis locis suspectis tandem venerunt ad præsentiam regis, comitantibus illos multis dominis magnatibus et communibus. Cumque intrassent in atrium videntes regem flexis genibus salutaverunt eum, et cum venisset ad pedem graduum iterum genuflexo adoraverunt eum. At ille innuit eis manu ut accederent, tunc ascenderunt summum graduum et tunc tertio genu flexo salutaverunt regem. Rex vero reverenter assurrexit eis, et singulis manu ad manum receptis, ut moris erat illo tempore in adventu amici ad amicum, iterum residebat. Tunc illi se integraliter excusabant erga regem et personam regis nihil mali imaginasse vel excogitasse, causamque gravaminis sui erga quinque proditores regi referebant, et in scriptis indentatis plenarie de materia regi tradiderunt. Inde rex publice promisit eis, quod faceret illos quinque comparere in proximo parliamento sequenti et stare judicio legum regni et [præfixit eis

The king prepares to receive them in Westminster Hall.

Wals. ii. 165.

A plot against them suspected.

They arrive and are solemnly received.

The king promises to bring the five

Twys. col. 2701.

[1] *malencolia*, MSS.

diem parliamenti, et vocabatur parliamentum istud parliamentum sine misericordia, nec alicui misericordiam faceret sine consensu dominorum. Et surgens adduxit eos secum in cameram, et biberunt cum eo, et sic discesserunt. Præterea die Martis sequenti videlicet xiij°. kalend. Decembris præcepit rex fieri proclamationem per mediam civitatis Londoniensis in excusationem ducis Glocestriæ et sociorum ejus comitum de Arundell et Warwychiæ, sub hcc sensu licet non plena forma verborum. A.D. 1387. persons accused before the next parliament. He also issues a proclamation in excuse of the lords. Wals. ii. 166.

Ricardus Rex etc. Notum facimus omnibus legiis et fidelibus nostris per totum regnum nostrum Angliæ dispersis, quod cum Thomas Dux Gloucestriæ, Ricardus comes de Arundell, Thomas comes Warwychiæ diffamati fuerint per quosdam nostrorum secretorum fuisse proditores nobis et regno nostro, qui veritatem minus bene sapiebant, nos igitur ut decuit causam hujus diffamationis cum summa deliberatione et diligentia non modica librantes et diligentissime pro posse nostro veritatem sub omni integritate consilii nostri ad plenum investigantes nihil in eis invenimus actum quod suspicionis nævo vel evidentiæ scrupulo[1] foret dignum, unde prædictam diffamationem falsam, iniquam, reprobam et omni veritate vacuam integraliter decrevimus declarare, ipsosque ducem et comites bonæ famæ dignos esse et omni suspicione hæsitationis innocuos fore testificamur, et in quantum in nobis est et possumus sic esse approbamus, prædictosque ducem et comites in nostram specialem protectionem deinceps acceptamus. Insuper et diffamatores eorundem, prout suscepimus, volumus omnibus innotescere per præsentes. Dominus Alexander archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Robertus Ver dux Hiberniæ, Michael comes de Suthfolc, Robertus Tressylyen justiciarius, Nicholaus Brembulle miles de Londoniis; quos utique usque ad proximum parliamentum nostrum in quo habent his et aliis sibi obiciendis respondere, suscipimus in nostram protectionem. Præcipimus insuper ne quis prætextu prætactorum, ut supradictum est, istis vel præantedictis dominis palam vel occulte, verbo vel opere, aliquid molestiæ vel gravaminis The proclamation. These lords are taken under the king's special protection. And the accused persons also.

[1] *scripulo*, A.

A.D. 1387. seu obsequii inferat usque ad tempus præfixum parliamenti nostri.

The favourites appeal to the king, and say they are in special peril.

Interim quidam istorum nefandorum prædonum accesserunt ad regem ingenti audacia dicentes se in maximo vacillo vitæ et mortis non pro se sed pro regis commodo positos erga magnates et dominos regni, cum rex promisisset se producturum eos et alios in proximo parliamento tam prope præfixo, quia illud fieri non posset cum honore regis pro cujus amore talia pericula subire deberent; nam dicebant se non audere nec posse nec velle exponere corpora sua ad tam evidentes mortis metas. Rex ista considerans retraxit se a consilio suo quod tunc Londoniis assignatum erat pro parliamento et his quæ ad parliamentum necessitanter prævidendis, sicque consilium istud cum proposito habendi parliamentum dilatum est et quassatum. Interea prædones isti a latere regis cum maximo pavore recesserunt, et in diversas partes fugerunt.[1] Alexander archiepiscopus Eboracensis relicto cariagio et omnibus aliis bonis suis cum paucis viris in forma simplicis sacerdotis, ut dicebatur, partes boriales quam magna festinatione petiit. Robertus Veer dux[2] Hiberniæ, ut fertur, cum arcu et sagittis in pharetra in forma valetti cum quinque aliis valettis simili schemate Cestriam fugit, Michael de Pole comes de Suthfolc Calesiam petiit, et ut dicebatur barbam et caput a capillis per rasuram denudavit, simulans se Flandricum pultarium cum caponibus in calatho, (id est, a panyer,)[3] cum quibus accessit ad portas castelli Calesiæ quasi volens in castello vendere capones suos. Cujus causa erat quia frater dicti Michaelis scilicet Johannes[4] de Pole capitaneus fuit eodem tem-

Hence a delay ensues about the summoning of parliament.

And they take to flight.

The archbishop of York goes north,

De Vere to Chester,

De la Pole to Calais.

Higd. ix. 108.

Twys. col. 2702.

Wals. ii. 169.

[1] Here on both margins is *Fugiunt a rege.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is: *Dux fugit.*

[3] The words within the parentheses are above the line in MS.

[4] The name is given as *Edmundus* in Walsingham. *Edwardus* in Higd.

pore prædicti castelli, sed præcognitus a quibusdam captus est per Willelmum Bewchamp capitaneum Calesiæ, qui statim absque mora reduxit eum ad regem Londonias. Ob quam causam rex motus est contra Willelmum Bewchamp et misit eum in custodiam, sed postea quorundam ductus consilio dimisit eum ne videretur id fieri ob causam quia noluit liberare villam Calesiæ ad jussum regis, ut præmittitur. Et Michael de Pole licentia regis abiit viam suam versus partes de Holle. Igitur rex sic viduatus a consortio suorum auricularium et præcipue ducis Hiberniæ graviter tulit, nec diu potuit sustinere sed cito misit ad ducem ut se festinaret ad eum, misitque ad Thomam Molyneux[1] qui magnæ potestatis erat illo tempore in comitatibus Lancastriæ et Cestriæ, et ad vicecomitem Cestriæ, sub secreto sigillo rogans, et misit eis etiam commissionem præcipiens ut populum congregarent et consanguineum regis et amicum specialissimum conducerent sub omni securitate ad regis præsentiam, pro labore vel expensis nullatenus omittentes. [2]Tunc iste Thomas Molyneux congregavit populos ex omni parte, et ut fertur, qui noluerunt secum ire pro zelo ducis Gloucestriæ et sociorum ejus mancipavit eos in carcerem, præcipiens custodibus eos vinculis arctari, et ut eos uno die parco pane nigro alerent, et altero die tanquam penitus mortis crudelitati adductos sola aqua contentos facerent, donec de viagio rediret. Mandavit quoque rex dominum Radulfum Vernon et dominum Radulfum de Radeclyffe et omnibus aliis magnatibus patriæ, ut assumpta fortitudine ducem regi salvo transducerent. Qui collecta multitudine circiter quinque millium virorum ire cœperunt. Quo audito dux Gloucestriæ, comes Derbeyæ, comes de Arundell, comes Warwychiæ, comes de Notyngham miserunt in omnes partes regni congregare populum suum. Tunc videres

A.D. 1387.

De la Pole brought back to London.

Higd. ix. 108.

But is allowed by the king to depart.

The king cannot be without the duke of Ireland.

Wals. ii. 167.

Steps taken to bring him back.

The three lords gather their forces.

[1] *Moleyns*, MS. et infra.

[2] Here on margin of A. only is: | *congregatio populi pro duce Hiberniæ.*

A.D. 1387. ex omni parte regni tam majores quam minores catervatim sub omni celeritate festinare ad eos nulla occupatione impediente. Factique sunt quasi una persona majores et minores plebei et communes contra antedictos regni prædones, clamantes et dicentes, Deleantur de vita ne honor egregius Anglicanæ gentis per tales proditores viduetur. Videres quoque orationes mirabili aspiratione incessanter ab omnibus domi remanentibus fundi, processiones ab ecclesia devotissime frequentari, et tam senes quam juvenes ac mulieres quasi lacrimabili voce pro pace et tranquillitate regni Christi aures sollicite personare. Timebant etenim ne rex brachium auxilii sui pro duce Hiberniæ opponeret contra dominos et communes, quod et ante, ut supra patet, fecit per commissiones, et postmodum multiplici juvamine pro suo posse faceret si se in illo proposito prodesse ullatenus videret. Nam voluntas Londoniensium stetit cum dominis et communibus, ut supra notatum est.

Fears about the action of the king.

Denique Robertus Ver dux Hiberniæ cum omni populo suo numero quasi inter quatuor et quinque mille pugnatorum venit in vigilia sancti Thomæ apostoli in comitatum Oxoniæ, tendens iter versus pontem[1] de Radecote quæ distat ab Schepyng Norton per iv. leucas. Quem pontem si forte pertransisset securus ab omni timore fuisset de omnibus inimicis suis; sed interceptus est a proposito suo. Nam comes Derbeyæ posuerat custodes ad caput pontis viros armatos et sagittarios qui transitum duci prohibuerunt, et pavimentum pontis interruperunt in tribus locis, adeo quod non potuit nisi solus eques simul pertransire, ac etiam pro majori securitate pontem in tribus locis pessulis munierunt. Cumque dux Hiberniæ sic festinaret iter suum versus pontem prædictum, non longe prospexit Henricum comitem Derbeiæ cum grandi caterva stipatum veloci gressu proximare. Statim pedem fixit,

Twys. col. 2703.

The duke of Ireland in Oxfordshire.

Higd ix. 112.

He tries to cross Radcote bridge,

Wals. ii. 168.

but is intercepted.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Dux venit ad pontem de Radecote.*

vexillum regis quod ibi paratum habuerat expandere jussit et super lanceam erigere, alacri vultu et quasi læto animo fecit tubis clangere aliisque instrumentis musicis in altum concrepare, et jocunda voce hortabatur suos paratos esse ad pugnam imminentem; quidam vero ex eis pugnare volebant, sed quidam renuerunt, dicentes, se non posse quia numero pauci respectu adversariorum, nec audere offendere certamine contra tot dominos et nobiliores totius regni, nec velle se tanto periculo mortis quoquo modo immiscere ex injusta causa. Dux Hiberniæ hæc considerans urgens equum semper antecedebat omnes festinato pede, proposuit primus pontem pertransire, et sequebantur eum populi sui. Cumque tendisset ad pavimentum pontis et vidisset illud sic fractum et armata manu sic munitum clamavit. Decepti sumus, et rediens exsiluit de equo in quo sedebat, ascendit alium cursarium volens effugere adversarios per ripam fluminis Thamesiæ. Et ecce occurrebat ex adverso dux Gloverniæ cum caterva sua multa nimis, et dux Hiberniæ sic inclusus ex una parte de aqua Thamesiæ et ex parte altera ab adversariis suis undique, et comes Derbeyæ prope aderat ad capiendum eum, commisit se fortunæ vitæ vel mortis. Et calcaribus urgens equum rejectis a se cirothecis[1] suis et gladio et aliis quæ equum suum a gravitate forsan expeditiorem redderent, immisit se in aquam Thamesiæ, et sic mirabili ausu evasit ab eis. Thomas Moleyns volens eum sequi retractus est per dominum Mortymer, a quo et interemtus est. Quidam frater de ordine Minorum confessor ejusdem ducis ibidem in quadam palude submersus est, cujus equus salvatus est et captus, cujus famulus captus est. In cujus mantica repererunt octingentas libras de nobilis auri exceptis obolis et quadrantibus, ut dicebatur. Fertur in eadem palude

A.D. 1387.

He tries to swim his horse across the Thames.

Wals. ii. 169.

And thus he escapes.

Wals. ii. 168.

[1] *cirotecis*, A.; *syrothecis*, MS.

A.D. 1387. circiter octingentos viros submersos fuisse de populo dicti ducis onustos cum iv. millibus librarum auri. Et hæc retinuerunt sibi in expensas populi sui. Quatuor dicti domini quoque currus ceperunt bene onustos cum pretiosis vasis, aureis, argenteis, aliisque vestualibus, lectualibus, mensalibus, utensilibus, aliisque bonis necessariis, quæ omnia nostri domini sibi et suis reservabant. Insuper et nostri homines irruerunt in reliquum vulgus et invaserunt eos tanquam hostes publicos, Cestrenses, Lancastrienses, Wallenses, quos quasi omnes suppresserunt, nudaverunt et armis arcubus et sagittis, equis, auro, argento, et vestibus usque ad verecundam nuditatem inverecunde spoliaverunt, et sic egentes, angustiatos, afflictos fame, frigore et nuditate inanes et miseros illos in propriam patriam absque verbere vel vulnere illæsos remiserunt; nam non occurrit plures ibi interfectos fuisse quam Thomam Molyneux[1] et unum valettum et unum puerum, quamplures tamen propria stultitia, ut antedictum est, submersos fuisse.

A great number drowned in the marshes.

An attack upon the troops of the Duke.

Twys. col. 2704.

Wals. ii. 168.

A.D. 1388. Igitur nostri domini antedicti sic a captione ducis Hiberniæ Roberti Veer dolenter frustrati, redierunt apud Oxoniam, ibique inierunt consilium de suis negotiis agendis. Inde progressi sunt ad sanctum Albanum et ibi moram traxerunt vigilia natalis Domini et die cum populo suo. Die sancti Stephani iter dirigunt versus Londonias, et ibi se monstraverunt coram civitate in campo prope Clerkunwell[2] cum delectabili et incredibili armata manu, ordinatique sunt in tribus aciebus fulgentibus, unde resplenduit aer a claritate refulgoris armorum, et miserunt in civitatem duos milites et alios scutiferos ad majorem et alios potentiores ut venirent ad nostros dominos antedictos ad certiorandum eos, utrum vellent stare cum eis et cum communibus regni.

The troops of the lords return to Oxford.

Higd. ix. 105.

Thence they go to London.

[1] *Molyners*, A.; *Molens*, MS. | [2] *Clercunwell*, MS.

Wals. ii. 171. Venit igitur major nomine Nicholaus de[1] Exton cum majoribus civitatis, et traditis clavibus portarum civitatis submiserunt se illis, et obtulerunt eis ingressum cum omnibus gentibus suis. At illi miserunt duos milites cum aliis scutiferis ad explorandum ne forte insidiæ occultæ laterent in aliquibuscunque munitionibus ad expugnationem eorum; et cognita veritatis securitate intraverunt cum omnibus suis in Londonias, et manserunt ibi. Interim conventum est inter regem et nostros dominos, ut nostri domini venirent ad colloquium regis apud Turrim tunc degentis. Quod et factum est. Nam die Veneris sequente venerunt ad regem sedentem in papilione apud Turrim in quadam vinea regaliter cum indumentis aureis strata. Sed non est prætereundum quod rex misit eis claves portarum et[2] omnium munitionum Turris ante ingressum eorum. At illi miserunt milites et scutiferos qui lustrarent omnes munitiones propter[3] occultas insidias. Et sic tandem cum securitate intraverunt Thomas de Wodestoke dux Gloverniæ, Henricus comes Derbeyæ, Ricardus comes de Arundell, Thomas comes de Warwyke, Thomas comes de Notyngham, traditis prius clavibus quibusdam viris securioribus de suis qui custodirent portas dum ipsi inibi essent, omni comitatu armatorum cum reliquo vulgo foras extra Turrim in loco plano expectante; cumque isti quinque domini venissent amplexatis mutuo brachiis coram rege, eo ut decebat salutato, breviter de negotio suo eum allocuti, at rex concessit se velle favere votis eorum; et surgens duxit eos secum in cameram suam, ubi prolixe tractabant mutuo de negotiis eorum, et rex videns imminentia pericula favebat petitioni eorum. At illi petebant a rege, quod omnes de curia

Wals. ii. 172.

Higd. ix. 114.

Wals. ii. 172.

A.D. 1388. Lord Mayor Exton offers them the city keys.

They come to a conference with the king at the Tower.

Names of those who came to the Tower.

The king speaks favourably.

[1] *de*] om. MS.

[2] A space is left here in MS. as though two or three words were left out, but in A. there is no blank.

[3] *propter*] præter, MS., but corrected into propter on the margin.

A.D. 1388. regis qui de proditione et falsitate suspecti habebantur caperentur et mitterentur singuli in singulis custodiis castrorum regni. Et annuit rex petitioni eorum; quod factum est ut infra patebit. Interim comes Derbeyæ allexit regem murum turris petere, et populum congregatum pro salvatione regis et regni aspicere. Quem cum rex vidisset mirabatur de tanta tamque præclara multitudine et fortitudine in regno suo. ¶ At dux Gloverniæ, hic, inquit, populus non est decima pars populi volentium nobiscum accedere ad destruendum et exterminandum falsos proditores regis et regni ejus. Et talibus sermonibus mulcebant animum regis. At rex rogabat quinque dominos secum cœnare et pernoctare. Sed dux Gloverniæ volens securius se et suos socios habere, excusabat se dicens, ne forte eorum populi in tali absentia eorum male se haberent inter se aut erga cives civitatis, et ideo se non posse ab eis quomodocunque pernoctare. Sed instante rege comites Derbeyæ et Notynghamiæ cum rege et regina ea nocte demorati sunt. Denique rex Ricardus ad instantiam prædictorum dominorum jussit suspectos de curia et familia sua mitti ad diversa loca regni, ut infra notatum est, custodiendos, in proximo parliamento pro suis demeritis responsuros, scilicet dominum Symon de Burle, dominum Willelmus Elman,[1] dominum Nicholaus Dagworth, dominum Johannes Golofre, qui Johannes nondum redierat de Francia, ut supradictum est, isti sunt milites. Quidam cognomine Clyfforde et alius Slake clerici, deputati sunt ad castrum de Notyngham. Ad castellum de Dovere deputati sunt dominus Johannes Bewchamp, dominus Thomas Tryvet[2] dominus Johannes de Salisbery,[3] et alius nomine Lincolne. Ad castrum de Bristowe quidam Jacobus Bernyrers, quidam Mede-

He consents to the arrest of his courtiers.

Twys. col. 2705.

The king desires the lords to dine and lodge there.

The earls of Derby and Nottingham remain.

The names of those who were arrested.

Higd. ix. 115.

They are placed under

[1] *Elmham*, Higd.
[2] *Tryvette*, MS.
[3] *Salusbery*, MS.

forde[1] clericus. Ad castrum de Rowchestria Alexander Nevylle archiepiscopus Eboracensis, sed ipse evaserat, ut antedictum est. Michael de Pole comes de Southfolc qui similiter evaserat. Ad castellum de Gloucestriæ dominus Robertus Tresylyen justiciarius capitalis Angliæ, sed nondum erat inventus, dominus Nicholaus Brembyl de Londoniis amasius regis, qui invenit manucaptores stare jure regni. Isti sunt amoti de[2] curia regis, scilicet dominus Johannes Fortham episcopus Dunelmiæ, dominus le Bewmont,[3] dominus la Sowche, dominus le Burnelle, dominus le Lovele,[4] dominus Thomas Camoys et filius domini le Clyfforde, dominus Baldewynus Berforde,[5] episcopus Cistrensis confessor regis, domina le Moune, domina le Ponyngus, domina le Molynews.[6]

A.D. 1388. guard in various parts.

Wals. ii. 172. Higd. App. ix. 116.

A.D. 1387. Names of persons removed from the court.

Quædam[7] forma in specie ignis in multis locis regni Angliæ apparuit, nunc in una forma nunc in alia, quasi singulis noctibus, in diversis tamen locis, per menses Novembris et Decembris. Et sæpe quando quis solus gradiebatur, cum illo ibat, et cum stante stabat. Et quibusdam apparuit in forma rotæ volubilis ardentis, aliis autem in forma barelli rotundi flammam ignis superius emittentis, aliis vero in forma longi tigni ardentis, et sic aliis in una forma, aliis vero in alia forma per multum tempus hiemis,[8] præcipue[9] in comitatibus[10] Leycestriæ et Northamptoniæ apparuit. Cum vero plures simul[11] gradiebantur non se eis approximavit sed quasi de longe eis apparuit.

Strange appearances of fire.

---

[1] *Medforde*, MS.
[2] *de*] a, MS.
[3] *Bowmount*, MS.
[4] *Lovell*, MS.
[5] *Derforde*, MS.
[6] *Molenews*, MS.
[7] Here in MS. there is as a heading: *Forma ignis apparuit in multis locis.* In A. the words are on the margin.
[8] *yemis*, MSS.
[9] *præcipue*] videlicet, MS.
[10] *comitatu*, MS.
[11] *simul*, om. MS.

A.D. 1387. Quarrel among the scholars in Oxford.

[1] Orta est gravis discordia Oxoniæ, inter scholares, videlicet inter Australes et Walenses ex una parte et boriales ex alia parte iii°. kalend. Maii. Et in tantum increvit illa dissensio quod pro majori parte scholares recesserunt singuli in suas patrias, quibusdam tamen primo occisis. Quam ob causam cancellarius universitatis per consilium regis in parliamento jam instante depositus est,[2] et magister Nicholaus Brygtwell[3] decanus novi operis Leycestriæ per cœtum Universitatis Oxoniæ eodem tempore, scilicet in æstate, electus est. In præcedenti quadragesima factum est quoddam caput[4] de cera opere nigromantico[5] ut dicebatur,[6] [quod] quidem caput tempore statuto loquendi hæc tria verba protulit et amplius loqui desiit. Ista[7] sunt verba: Primo, caput decidetur. Secundo, caput elevabitur. Tertio, pedes elevabuntur[8] super caput.

Twys. col. 2706.

A magic head and its predictions.

A.D. 1388. Parliament at Westminster.

[9] Rex Ricardus celebravit parliamentum apud Westmonasterium in crastino Purificationis scilicet iii°. nonas Februarii, et duravit usque pridie nonas Junii ubi finivit, intermissis tamen duabus hebdomadis, videlicet a vigilia Palmarum usque in octabas[10] Paschæ. Et quidem primo die parliamenti arestati sunt omnes justiciarii excepto domino Willelmo Skypwith,[11] scilicet dominus Rogerus Fulthorp, dominus Robertus Bealknappe, dominus Johannes Care, dominus Johannes Holte, dominus Willelmus Borowe,[12] Johannes de Locton

Higd. App. ix. 115. Wals. ii. 174.

Arrest of the justiciaries.

---

[1] Here in MS. as a title is: *Dissensio inter scolares Oxoniæ.* In A. this is on the margin.

[2] *est*, om. MS.

[3] *Brittewell*, MS.

[4] *capud*, A.

[5] Here on both margins is: *Caput ceræ apud Oxoniam loquitur.*

[6] *quod*] not in MSS.

[7] *Ista*] Et ista, MS.

[8] *elevabitur*, MSS.

[9] Here as a title in the text of MS. is: *Parliamentum apud Westmonasterium operans mira.* In A. it is on the margin.

[10] *octavas*, MS.

[11] *Skippewyth*, MS.

[12] *Brorowe*, MS.

Wals. ii. 178.

serviens regis ad legem. Isti omnes capti sunt sedentes in officio suo judiciali, et ducti sunt apud Turrim, et separatim positi sunt in custodiam sub hac causa. In ultimo namque præcedenti parliamento commissa fuit gubernatio regis et regni et omnium arduarum causarum emergentium, tam intra regnum Angliæ quam in omni loco dominii regis, ut supra plenius patet, per communem assensum regis et procerum, cum consilio justiciariorum legem in hac parte regulantium. Factaque inde fuit quædam indentura tripartita[1] pro majori securitate, cujus prima pars remansit penes regem, et altera penes electos gubernatores sives consiliarios antedictos, et tertia penes justiciarios. Qui postea ut supra patet, contrariaverunt suo decreto apud Notyngham, propterea, ut infra patet, perierunt. A.D. 1388.

The king's favourites called to account.

In principio parliamenti per plures dies, secundum consuetudinem legis in parliamento, dominus Robertus Veer dux Hiberniæ, dominus Alexander Nevyll archiepiscopus Eboracensis, dominus Michael de Pole comes de Suthfolc, dominus Robertus Tressylyen[2] capitalis justiciarius Angliæ vocati sunt ad respondendum domino Thomæ de Wodestoke duci Gloverniæ et domino Ricardo comiti de Arundell, et domino Thomæ comiti de Warwyk, et sociis suis, domino Henrico comiti Derbyæ et domino [Thomæ][3] comiti de Notyngham super articulis supra notatis de alta proditione regi et regno per ipsos facta. Qui non comparentes exlegati sunt, statutumque est communi judicio parliamenti quod deinceps pro suo perpetuo non daretur eis gratia redeundi, bonaque eorum mobilia et immobilia, terræ et tenementa forisfacta sunt et seysita in manus regis tam ab his quam ab hæredibus suis. Terræ tamen et tenementa quæ sub tallia

Not appearing, they are outlawed.

[1] *tripertita*, MS.
[2] *Tresylion*, MS.
[3] A small blank space is left in both MSS. for the name.

A.D. 1388. eis provenerant, post eorum decessum ad rectos hæredes redire statuuntur. In præsenti parliamento quatuor milites Franciæ miserunt et clamaverunt quatuor milites Angliæ ad[1] hastiludium apud Calesiam in forma guerræ. Inter quos dominus le Bewmont primo hastiludiavit cum camerario regis Franciæ et strenue et nobiliter se habuit, Dominica sequente, dominus Petrus de Courteneye, cum suo clamatore, et sic singuli cum suis clamatoribus, nomine grandi inde reportando. Mense Aprilis draco[2] ardens visus est in multis locis per Angliam.

Challenge to a tournament in Calais.

A fiery dragon.

Adhuc[3] his diebus florescunt et increscunt Wyclyviani, qui et Lollardi dicti sunt, et erroribus suis abundant et inedicibiliter[4] in eis virescunt nec in eis adhuc erubescunt, sed tamen impetuositate clamosa aliqualicumque tabescunt. Insuper novos errores antiquis immiscent. Quidam etiam eorum ad parliamentum submonentur, opprobria etiam et objurgationes multiplices in parliamento et domi inter proximos passim patiuntur, nec adhuc ab inceptis desistunt sed tamen errores suos et opiniones[5] ubique prudentius solito indefesse evomunt, et eis addunt. Quorum quidam hic inferuntur, quidam quoque supra notati hic iterum recitantur. Twys. col. 2707.

Great increase of the Wycliffites.

[6] Opinio[7] prima, Quod papa modernus Urbanus sextus non gerit vices beati Petri in terris sed est filius Antichristi, nec erat verus papa a tempore sancti Silvestri.

A list of their opinions.

[8] 2. Item, Quod papa non potest concedere aliquas

On the papal power.

---

[1] Here on margin of A. only is: *Hastiludium guerrale apud Calesiam.*

[2] On both margins is: *Draco ardens.*

[3] *Adhuc*] Et adhuc, MS.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Lollardi adhuc increscunt.*

[5] *oppiniones*, A.

[6] Here on both margins is: *Errores Lollardorum.*

[7] *Opinio*] Sequitur opinio, MS.; *Oppinio*, A.

[8] *Secunda opinio*, MS., and so in every case down to *vicesima quinta opinio*. A. has merely numerals on the margin.

indulgentias nec episcopi quicumque, et quod omnes confidentes in hujusmodi indulgentiis sunt maledicti. A.D. 1388.

3. Item, Quod papa non potest condere canones decretales seu constitutiones, et si quos condiderit nullus tenetur eos observare.

4. Item, Quod ex sola cordis contritione deletur omne peccatum absque oris confessione, nec requiritur oris confessio etiam ubi copia sacerdotum haberi poterit. On confession.

5. Item, Quod imagines crucifixi, beatæ Mariæ [1] Virginis aliorumque sanctorum nullo modo sunt venerandæ, immo ipsas vel picturas aliquas quomodolibet venerantes peccant et idolatriam committunt, et quod deus non facit aliqua miracula per illas, et quod omnes facientes peregrinationes [2] ad ipsas, vel eas aliquo modo adorantes, lumen vel alias devotiones coram ipsis imaginibus exhibentes, sunt maledicti. On images.

6. Item, Quod non tenet [3] neque ligat excommunicatio papæ vel episcopi. On excommunication.

7. Item, Quod non est supplicandum sanctis orare pro viventibus, nec dicenda est letania, affirmant enim deum omnia facere, ipsos nil facere posse quos sanctos vocamus. Sed multos eorum prædicant esse in inferno quorum festa celebrantur. On prayers to saints.

8. Item, Quod non est decimandum rectori existenti in mortali peccato. Nec oblationes [4] aut donationes pecuniales sunt faciendæ in purificationibus mulierum, nec in celebrationibus missarum pro defunctis. On tithes.

9. Item, Quod presbyteri et diaconi quicunque tenentur et debent populo publice prædicare ratione ordinis suscepti, licet populum non habeant nec curam animarum. The obligation to preach.

10. Item, Quod papa, cardinales, archiepiscopi, episcopi, archidiaconi, decani, officiales, utique omnes personæ majores ecclesiæ sunt maledicti. Of church dignitaries.

---

[1] *Mariæ*] om. A.
[2] *peregrinationes*] om. MS.
[3] *non ligat neque tenet*] MS.
[4] *obligationes*] MS.

A.D. 1388. The rich will not go to heaven.

11. Item, Quod nullus intrabit regnum cælorum nisi omnibus renunciaverit ea dando pauperibus, solum deum sequendo, modo ipsorum.

12. Item, Quod vir vel mulier offerendo sacerdoti denarium petendo pro ipso missam celebrari, tam ille quam sacerdos sic recipiens sunt maledicti.

All things to be common among the clergy.

13. Item, Quod omnia inter clericos debent esse communia.

14. Item, Quod est contra sacram scripturam quod clerici habeant possessiones temporales.

Against musical services.

15. Item, Quod divina officia non sunt cantanda cum nota, et quod deus non delectatur in hujusmodi cantu.

Against oaths.

16. Item, Quod non licet aliquo modo jurare. Nota ibi isti firmandis, nam sequela cujuslibet dicti eorum talis erat, I am sykyr,[1] It is soth, vel sic, Withoute[2] doute[3] it is so.

Bread in the Lord's supper only a sign.

17. Item, Quod illud quod fuit panis ante consecrationem in sacramento altaris, post consecrationem non est corpus Christi, sed signum rei, non ipsa res. Twys. col. 2708.

Evil ministers invalidate the sacraments.

18. Item, Quod quilibet presbyter existens in peccato mortali non conficit neque baptizat nec confert aliquod sacramentum.

19. Item, Quod non potius orandum est in ecclesia quam alibi.

Saints' days not to be kept.

20. Item, Quod festa sanctorum, scilicet Stephani, Laurencii, Margaretæ, Katerinæ, et aliorum sanctorum non sunt colenda neque celebranda, eo quod nescitur, ut dicunt, utrum sunt damnati vel non, nec[4] credendum est neque standum eorum canonizationi et approbationi dictorum sanctorum factæ per curiam Romanam in hac parte.

No image to be made of the Trinity.

21. Item, Quod sancta Trinitas nullo modo est figuranda, formanda nec depingenda in ea forma qua communiter depingitur per totam ecclesiam.

---

[1] *sykur*, MS.
[2] *Withouten*] MS.
[3] *douȝte*] MS.
[4] *nec*] neque, MS.

22. Item, Quod nullus rector vel vicarius aut prælatus aliquis excusatur a personali residentia facienda in suis beneficiis commorando in obsequiis episcoporum, archiepiscopi seu papæ. A.D. 1388. Clergy to be resident.

23. Item, Non licet presbytero locare operas suas.

24. Item, Quod rectores et vicarii non celebrantes nec ministrantes sacramenta ecclesiastica etiam removendi et alii loco eorum instituendi, quia indigni sunt et dissipatores bonorum ecclesiæ. Negligent clergy to be removed.

25. Item, Quod viri ecclesiastici non deberent tam validis incedere equis, nec uti tantis jocalibus, vestibus pretiosis aut prandiis delicatis, sed omnibus renunciare et dare ea pauperibus, pedibusque incedentes accipientesque baculos in manibus formam pauperum suscipientes aliis dando exempla per conversationem. Against display and luxury among ecclesiastics.

Videntes igitur proceres et communes regni navem ecclesiæ istis et aliis innumeris erroribus atque nefandis opinionibus quasi undique de die in diem incessabili impulsione quassari, petierunt a rege in præsenti parliamento de istis remedium apponi ne forte archa totius fidei ecclesiæ talibus impulsionibus in illis [1] temporibus præ defectu gubernaculi irremediabiliter quateretur, et gloriosum regnum Angliæ per fidei depravationem in desolationem gratiæ et honoris paulatim duceretur. Rex vero sano consilio totius parliamenti in hac parte utens, jussit archiepiscopo Cantuariensi cæterisque episcopis regni ut officium suum, singuli in suis diocesibus, secundum jura canonica acrius et ferventius exercerent, delinquentes castigarent, librosque eorum Anglicos plenius examinarent, errata exterminarent populumque in unitatem fidei orthodoxæ reducere studerent, ecclesiamque urticis, vepribus defloratam liliis et rosis ornarent, fulcimentumque regiæ potestatis ut audacius et fortius agerent eis annuit. Et jussit rex statim absque dilatione literas suas The Lords and Commons appeal to the king against such teaching. The king enjoins on the bishops to take measures against it.

[1] *illius*, MSS.

A.D. 1388. He also issues letters patent for this end.

patentes in singulos comitatus regni velocius mitti, et in quolibet comitatu certos inquisitores de hujusmodi libris et eorum fautoribus instituit, præcipiens eis ut remedium celerius apponerent, rebelles proximo carceri manciparent donec rex eis mitteret. Sed executio tarda et quasi nulla affuit quia nondum hora correctionis advenit.

Copy of the Royal Commission.

[1] Copia regiæ commissionis sequitur in hæc verba:— Twys. col. 2709.
Ricardus dei gratia rex Angliæ et Franciæ et dominus Hiberniæ dilectis sibi magistro Thomæ Bryghtwell in theologia doctori, decano Collegii Novi operis Leycestriæ et Willelmo Chesulden[2] præbendario præbendæ ejusdem collegii, ac dilectis et fidelibus nostris Ricardo de Barowe chyvaler et Roberto Langham salutem. Quia ex insinuatione credibili certitudinaliter informatur quod ex insana doctrina magistrorum Johannis Wyclyf, dum vixit, Nicholai Herforde, Johannis Aston et suorum sequacium quamplures libri, libelli, cedulæ, et quaterni, hæreses et errores manifestos continentes[3] in fidei catholicæ læsionem et sacræ doctrinæ derogationem expresse et palam et notorie redundantes frequentius cupilantur, publicantur, communicantur, et conscribuntur tam in Anglico quam in Latino, ac exinde[4] opiniones nefariæ sanæ doctrinæ contrariantes oriuntur, et accrescunt, ac manutenentur, et prædicantur damnabiliter et inique, in fidei orthodoxæ enervationem ecclesiæque sanctæ subversionem, et ex consequenti, quod absit, quamplurium incredulitatem eorumque animarum periculum manifestum: Nos zelo fidei catholicæ, cujus sumus et esse volumus defensores in omnibus ut tenemur moti salubriter et inducti, nolentes hujusmodi hæreses aut errores infra terminos nostræ potestatis[5] quatenus poterimus oriri seu quomodolibet pululare, assignamus vos conjunctim et divisim ad omnes et singulos libros, libellos, cedulas, et quaternos hujusmodi, doctrinam dictorum Johannis, Nicholai, Johannis et sociorum sequacium seu opinionem aliquam minus sanam continentes, ubicumque et in quorumcumque manibus, possessione seu custodia inveniri poterunt, infra libertates vel extra investigandos,[6]

Wycliffite books are multiplied.

The king desires to repress the heretical teaching.

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Commissio regis contra libros Lollardorum.*

[2] *Chyselden*, MS.

[3] *continentes*] om. MS.

[4] *exinde*] inde, MS.

[5] *paupertatis*] MS.

[6] *investigandum*] MS

capiendos et arestandos, et penes consilium nostrum cum omni celeritate possibili deferri faciendos, ut tunc ibidem de eisdem ordinare valeamus prout de avisamento consilii nostri prædicti fore decrevimus et [1] viderimus faciendum. Ac etiam ad proclamandum et ex parte nostra firmiter inhibendum ne quis cujuscunque status, gradus seu conditionis fuerit sub pœna inprisonamenti et forisfactura omnium quæ nobis forisfacere poterit, aliquas [2] hujusmodi pravas et nefarias opiniones manutenere, docere, pertinaciterque defendere clam vel palam, seu hujusmodi libros, libellos, cedulas, et quaternos detinere, scribere, vel scribi facere, aut emere, vel vendere præsumat quovismodo. Sed omnes et singulos hujusmodi libros, libellos, cedulas, et quaternos secum habitos et inventos ad mandatum vestrum vobis reddat seu reddi faciat indilate; et ad omnes illos quos post proclamationem et inhibitionem prædictas contrarium inveneritis facientes et hujusmodi nefarias opiniones manutenentes, coram vobis præfato Thoma decano et Willelmo evocandos et diligentur examinandos, et cum inde legitime convicti fuerint, per ministros nostros proximis prisonis committendos, in eisdem detinendos quousque a suis erroribus, heresibus, et pravis opinionibus resipiscant, seu nos pro deliberatione eorundem aliter duxerimus ordinandum. Et ideo vobis mandamus quod circa præmissa cum omni diligentia et efficacia intendatis et ea faciatis et exequamini in forma prædicta. Damus autem tam universis et singulis viris ecclesiasticis, quam vicecomitibus, majoribus, ballivis, ministris, et aliis fidelibus et subditis nostris, tam infra libertates quam extra, tenore præsentium firmiter in mandatis, quod vobis et cuilibet vestrum in præmissis faciendis assistentes sint, consulentes et auxiliantes prout decet. In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes. Teste meipso apud Westmonasterium xxiii°. die Maii anno regni nostri undecimo.[3]

A.D. 1388.

Books are to be seized, and their owners arrested.

Offenders to be brought before the Commissioners.

Twys. col. 2710.

All authorities are required to aid the Commission.

Magnates et communes regni videntes oppressiones immanes et sceleratissima facta quorundam consiliatorum regis tam erga majores quam minores, et de die in diem in suis maleficiis invalescere sentientes, in præ-

An appeal made to the king for a reform in the government.

---

[1] *decrevimus et*] om. A.

[2] *aliquas*] om. MS.

[3] Here on margin of MS. and at the foot of the page in A, the text ending there, is *Burton.*

A.D. 1388. senti parliamento unanimi assensu suggesserunt regi pro emendatione et reformatione habenda, sub hac forma:

The petition is from the commons of the realm.

A nostre tresdoute seignur le Roy et a touz noz altres seignurs du roialme monstrent lez humblez communes de vostre dit roialme lez causez et damagez advenuz en displesaunce du Dieu et de seynt esglise, en deshonour de vous et de vostre coroune, et de touz voz noblez et gentiles et a touz estatez du dit roialme per la leve et rumour ore tarde advenuz per lez petitez gentz [1] de vostre dit realme ensemble ove lez perilles et damages qe de jour en altre apierent sils ne soyent hastyment redressez, en destruccion de seint esglise deinz vostre realme en disheritance et dishonour de vous et de vostre coroune, et damages de touz ceaux de vostre realme, riches [2] et pouers; dez queux perilles vous ne lez voz gentz de vostre terre ne poient eschapiere si pluis hastyve remedie per ascune mentz dez prelatez,[3] countez, baronez, et dez pluis sagez de vostre realme ne soit ordeigne.

The appeal is against wrongs which demand a remedy.

Primez a cause qe le peas et droite justice en vostre terre [4] a quele vous estez tenuz a maigtenere nad este sustenez egalment perentre ryches et ryches, poures et poures, et nomement perentre ryches et poures sicome Dieu et droit demanderont, vostre poure peple ount este anyntez per extorcions de voz officers en paiis [5] come eschetours et autres commissours dez officers et mynistres de seynt esglise, per officers dez altres seignurs en pays come seneschalles et clerkes dez courtes de Byron et nomement per iii. oue per iiii. en chescune conte appellez seconde royez qe au pigne vostre poure peple ne purront vivre ne porter lour charge en eyde de vous et de vostre realme [6] quant bosoigne y fuisse, per quelez defautez vous et vostre realme ont este mys en grant disclaundre en chescune terre. Et outre ceo voz graundez juggez dez lez loyes de vostre terre nient fessauntz en touz temps ne as touz personez egale execution solonc lez voz loyez ordeignes, einz sount enclynes deschuere loffence dez maundementz per prive seale oue per grant seale encontre voz bonez loyes et lez priers dez altres seig-

Law unequally administered and extortions practised.

[1] *gentez*, MS.
[2] *richers*, MS.
[3] *prelatis*, A.
[4] *terrez*, MS.
[5] *pays*, MS.
[6] *royalme*, MS.

murs ove queux ils sount de retenuz qils ne fount perfaire lour devoyre a queles ils fount jurrez, tout outrement en destruction de vostre dit poure commune sil ne soit pluis hastyment redresse. A.D. 1388.

Item, tresdoute seignur, per la oue vostre dit poure commune ne solonc en temps de voz nobles progenitours porter taxus ne tallages ne altres chosez especiales deinz iiii. oue v. annz une si ont [1] cestez v. anez perdevant de an en ane mys mes a diversez tallagez nient egalment adgistez a chescune persone solonc soun estate davoire mes totedys et continuelment la pluis grant quantitate dez ditez taxes tortuosement surmys a vostre poure commune et nentymens [2] a nule esploite ne petisse dez voz guerrez et en deffence de vostre realme per la costers de miere en contre la chose graunties. Eins ount estez sur lez costiers du miere en divers parties de vostre roialme lez maysones de lez poures communez arsez, lez villagez et lez personez raunsones, et la nave tote outrement destruytz et la terre tote voyde et poure de tote maner de tresoure qe vous navez dont vous poiez vostre terre defendre ne vostre estate reale tenere, a graunt doloure et poissance [3] de touz vous sagez pur le peple qe se leva ne saveyt altre chose faire forsque aretter governours de vostre counsayle appellantz lez pluis graundez de vostre counsayle traytours a vous et a la roialme come gentz qe bien ne savoyent ne reson.

Twys. col. 2711.

Taxes unfairly assessed, and not used as they were intended.

Decay of the national defences.

Et plusours altres enchesones, tresredoute seignur, purroit homme declarere a vostre hautesse pur queux lez ditz communes leveront, sil a fuisse pur long tariance de vous nostre seignur et noz altres seignurs en cest presente parlyment esperaunce en Dieu qe si bone remedie soit ordeigne pur lez diffautes susdytes come appertient, lez ditz defautez et teuz altres qe busoignerent a penser serrount redressez en plesaunce du Dieu, honour et profite a vous et de tous noz altrez seignurs et communes du roialme. Pur quoy, seignur, vous bonez gentz vous preent humblement pur salvacion de vous, et Dieu, et de le coroune, la quele ils sont tenuz a maygtener par lour ligienance [4] qe vous plese assentiere as eux qe les deffautes et perilles avanditez et aultrez que purront advener puissent estre oustez et re-

Redress is asked for before it be too late to apply a remedy.

---

[1] Space left in both MSS.

[2] *neynteyment*, MS.

[3] *poyssaunce*, MS.

[4] *legeaunce*, MS.

A.D. 1388. dressez par ordinaunce de voz noblez et pluis sagez au present assemble. Sembillantz au vostre dit commune tresdoute seignur qe si sage et perfite remedye ne soit mys en cest present parlyment lem[1] doute de celle perille venaunt apres qe homme ne serra de puissance pur lamender, la quele ne voile Dieu pur sa mercy Amen.

Et queux defautez remedier, tresdoute seignur, si bien de ceux come per lez damages et perilles semblables advenere il semble a vous humbler communes per conge et per commaundment de vous qe primerment qe est bosoigne demutere la governayle de vous et de vostre terre qe vous nostre liege et naturele seignur permy[2] vostre terre dehors et en touz voz altres seigniories fuisse honure et doutez[3] et perfytement amez de peple pur bon et justice governayle, cest assay voyre treshonure seignur en droite justice fesauntz as tieux persones si biene as poures come as ryches egalment solonc lour desert si bien en voz hautez courtes come ayllours en chescune pays cherisancez lez bonez et vaylantz de touz les estates de vostre realme solonc lour degre et desert et nomement le honorable chyvalrye de touz voz seigniories endonantz la corage a lez bonez pur sustiner vostre honour et deffendre[4] vostre realme dez damagez en puissance tortes extorcions et touz oppressiones faitez et affaire devers poures de vostre terre en touz pays riches ne voylaunce espernes qe fuisse eut atient et asoutomes quelle ne fuisse prunes sanz pardone solonc la deserte de trespas si biene de gentz espirituele come dez lanes mittaunt payn sil vous plest en cest present parlyment come il semble a vous et a nous voylauncez seigniories et baronage sur voz hautys justicez et touz vous autres officers et commissours queconqes pur faire droite et dieu justice en tous cases si bien as poures come as riches saunz doune oue fee prendre dascune autre de vous saunz vendre lez loyes pur doute oue pur hayne oue pur doune ou pur covetisse, onstantz[5] le poure en chescune pays de meistymours de querell et touz ceux qe sont appellez secondes royes extorcions; au confort et le relever de voz poures communes, per quele remedie et ordinance lealment teneux et executez en tut temps quant

Remedies suggested.

Right and justice to be administered to poor as to rich.

Twys. col. 2712.

---

[1] *tem*, MS.
[2] *purmy*, MS.
[3] *douziter*, MS.
[4] *defendre*.
[5] *enstantz*, MS.

bosoigne soit vous nostre seignioures de Dieu ameez et per- A.D. 1388.
my tote vostre realme honourez pur droiture, qe Dieu le voille ottroiez pur sa mercy etc.

Tresdoute seignur, defrechiee a vostre haute noblie sover-engment en plesaunce de Dieu et de seynt esglyse pur honour de vous et de vostre coroune longment continuere pur ease et tranquillite de tut vostre commune ordeigner per vous nostre seignour et voz nobles a vous appellez de teux et tauntz come vous plest appellere lestate de vous et de vostre coroune, et de voz guerrez regardere et destreitement examiner a tiele entent qe le honour de vous nostre seignur et de vostre coroune soient honestenement sustenez sanz enblessement de vostre roialte en touz chosez appendantz, qe per vous et voz ditz nobles sil vous plest ore a cest parlyment lez causes dez taxus autres grevances chargez portes perdevaunt de vostre commune per defaute de sage avysement qe font la terre poure et anientz tut voide de tresoure, puissent estre cessez et appeties en supportacion de vostre dit commune taunqe ils puissent lour mesme relever de lour poverte et la realme enrichesser per sage governayll.

The honour of the king and the crown to be supported.

The taxation ruins the nation.

Entenduz a vostre hautesse noblye, nostre treshonoure seigneur, sil vous plest, qe lez guerrez[1] devant sustenuz no lour viens[2] peravant donez et degastez ne altres chargez assetz purront estre especifyez a vostre dit realme et importable et sustener saunz outrement[3] la destruere, qe Dieu ne voille; suppliauntz humblement a vostre haute et royal nobleye pour Dieu et vostre honour la dit mater destrement et effectualment purroit estre determys au present au soveraigne plesancez do Dieu, encrese et renomes de vostre bone governement si bien dehors come dedeinz vostre dit realme en perfait ease et prosperite de tut poure commune: per lesployte[4] de quele article, tresredoute seignur, vous purrez purchasser de Dieu et de vostre poeple perfitement lours amours en tote lour pouare et corage, qe Dieux coe voille per sa gracious petie. Amen. Et pur la gracious esploite de bon governement sovereynement pur perfourmer lez requestez avount requies et declariez supplient lez ditz humblez communes a vous, tresdoute seignur, et a touz noz

War expenses more than can be borne.

Twys. col. 2713.

[1] *gurrez*, MS.
[2] *biens*, MS.
[3] *outerement*, MS.
[4] *lezployte*, MS.

A.D. 1388. A small commission asked for to carry out measures of relief.

altres seignours ore assemblez qe de pluis sage de vostre realme et de pluis vertuose de quele estate qils soyent, vous plest faire estre nomez vi. viii. oue taunt de noumbre qe vous plest et lour faire chargiere ensi toust come ceo poet estre distingment et per bone payne et surement,[1] qe endroit dez damagez et perillez avaunt nomes et plusours altres que nous ne savoms ne poemes pencer ensemble et dez lez remediez avaunt nomes et de touz altrez purvyauncez et remediez qe enbosoignent pur lonour et bien de vous nostre seigneur et tut le commune ils diligentz soient en tout lour pouare de sustener vostre honour et roialte et la prosperite de tut vostre roialme espirancz[2] en Dieu et lour seen et travayll que nulle de ditz meschiefs ne nule tiele semblabez jammes navendra en vostre dit realme einz per leyde de Dieu[3] et per lour remediez et purvyance en temps qils ent ferront chargez de ent ordeigner et occupiere sils facent loure devour vous nostre seigniour et vostre coroune serrez honurablement governez en totez honurez et honestez plesance et tut la poeple en quietz; per quelez governementz enserres vous nostre [seigneur][4] de Dieu chierez, et de vostre poeple perfytement ameez et doutez, et tut la roialme quietz, qe voille Dieu coe ottroire. Amen.

So the crown shall be honoured, and the people in peace.

A petition from the Flemings.

Mense Junii Flandrenses venerunt ad parliamentum [5]petentes a rege et magnatibus regni pacem et concordiam inter Anglicos et Flandricos, promittentes se velle Anglicis obsecundare, et obsequium eis præstare, atque in omnibus eis adhærere pro suo posse. Tunc misit rex viros apud Calesiam tractare cum Flandrensibus de concordia et pace. Et Anglici plura petierunt ab illis et concesserunt petita. Et inter cætera petierunt ab illis, quod eicerent omnes Francigenas de finibus suis deinceps cum illis non moraturos, et annuerunt hoc facere. Similiter petierunt ut castellum de Gravelyng, quod in multum nocumentum et gravamen Angligenis extiterat, penitus destruerent

Demands made by the English.

---

[1] *surrement*, MS.
[2] *esperance*, MS.
[3] *Dyeu*, MS.
[4] *Seigneur*, omitted in both MSS.
[5] Here on both margins is *Flandrenses petunt pacem a rege.*

et funditus dilapidarent. Nam Anglici in illis partibus degentes et mercatores illuc transeuntes multa[1] mala et pericula per illud castellum perpessi sunt. Et verisimile est adhuc per dictum castellum talia sustinere, et idcirco firmam pacem haberi inter regna non posse quamdiu dictum castellum staret vel etiam per Flandros gubernaretur. Flandri vero dictum castellum evertere aut in manus Anglorum liberare renuerunt, sicque discordes abinvicem abierunt. Interea, ut fertur, quasi infra proximum mensem orta est gravis dissensio in Flandria[2] inter Flandros et Francos inter eos cohabitantes, adeo, ut dicebatur, quod uno die et uno tempore diei quasi in tribus horis occisi sunt de Francis et Flandris eis faventibus circiter xvi. milia virorum in tribus civitatibus, videlicet in[3] Gaunt, Yprys, et Andewerpus.

A.D. 1388.

The Flemings refuse to destroy the castle of Gravelling.

Wals. ii. 175.

Serious outbreaks in Flanders.

Eodem tempore dux Gerlyæ[4] misit[5] avunculum suum cum aliis magnatibus ad regem Angliæ, qui nomine dicti ducis obtulerunt homagium regi atque fidelitatem ex ejus nomine ei fecerunt in eodem parliamento publice coram omnibus congregatis.

The duke of Geldres does homage to the English king.

In exordio[6] hujus parliamenti dominus Thomas de Wodestoke dux Gloverniæ,[7] et Henricus comes Derbeyæ, Ricardus comes de Arundell, Thomas comes de Warwyke, et Thomas comes Marescallus[8] in pleno parliamento accusaverunt, prout prius appellaverant, de falsa proditione et seditione dominum Alexandrum Nevyll, fratrem domini le Nevyll, archiepiscopum Eboracensem,[9] et Robertum Veer ducem Hiberniæ et comitem Oxoniæ, et Michaelem de Pole comitem de

Accusation brought against the royal favourites.

---

[1] *multa*] om. MS.

[2] Here on both margins is *Flandri occidunt Francos in Flandria.*

[3] *in*] om. A.

[4] *Garlyæ*, MS.

[5] Here on both margins is *Dux Gerlyæ facit homagium regi*, to which MS. adds *Angliæ.*

[6] Here on both margins is *De parliamento.*

[7] *Glowcestre*, MS.

[8] *Mareschallus*, MS.

[9] *archiepiscopum Eboracensem* comes after the first *Nevyll* in MS.

A.D. 1388. Suthfolk,[1] Robertum Tressylyane capitalem justiciarium regis, et dominum Nicholaum Brembul[2] militem et civem Londoniensem, quem sæpius rex fecerat majorem præter et contra voluntatem multorum civium; et accusaverunt eos de alta proditione in multis falsitatibus regi et regno per eos factis; et ad hoc probandum se obtulerunt in forma quæ sequitur:[3]

The form of the charges.

[4] A tresexcellent et tresredoute seigneur nostre seigniour le roy, et son consayle, en cest present parlyment monstront Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglieterre, Henry cont de Derby, Richard cont Darundell et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyke, et Thomas cont Marescall, qe come lez avantditz Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Dengleterre, et Richard cont Darundell et de Surre, et Thomas cont de Warwyke, come loialx lieges nostre seignur le roy pur profite du roy et realme le xiiii. jour de Novembre darreyne passe a Waltham Crosse en le cónte de Hertford, devant le tresreverent piere en Dieu William lerceveske de Cantebrus, Edmund duc Deverwyk, reverent pieres en Dieu William eveske de Weyncestre, Thomas eveske de Ely, alors chancelere Dangleterre, John de Waltham alors gardeyne du prive seale nostre seigniour le roy, John seigniour de Cobham, mes seignioures Richard le Scrope, et John Deuros[5] adonqes commissioners nostre seigniour le roy ordeignez et faitez en le darreyne parlyment, appellerount Alexandur lerceveske Deverwyk, Robert de Veere duc Dirlande, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressiliane faux justice, et Nichole Brembule faux chyvalere de Londres de hautes tresons per eux faitez encontre le roy et son realme, et soy offeront de se pursuere et mayntener et sufficeant seurte trover. Et prierent as ditz seignurs dez cestez certefiere a lour dit seigneur leage, quele chose estoit certifie a mesme le jour a nostre seignur le roy per lez ditz seigniours commissioners a Westmynstre ou pleuseurs dez ditz appellez estoyent presenter

Twys. col. 2174.

Higd. App. ix. 119.

The appellants have acted for the profit of the king and the realm.

Higd. App. ix. 120.

Names of the accused.

The appeal made

[1] *Southfolk*, MS.

[2] *Brennebull*, MS.

[3] Here in MS. there follows as a title: *Accusatio archiepiscopi Eboracensis et ducis Hiberniæ et sociorum suorum.* In A. this is on the margin.

[4] This preamble and the charges which follow are printed in Higd. Appendix, Vol. ix. in the Rolls Series; and in *Rot. Parl.* xi. R. 2, p. 229 *seqq.*

[5] *Devereux*, Higd.

pienement enformes et certifiez du ditz appelle. Et puis per assent du roy et son conseyll lez avantditz Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Dangleterre, et Richard cont Darundell et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyk le Dysmeygne le proschein ensuant viendrent a Westmynstre in presence du roy [1] et de son consayle illoqes pur profit du roy [2] et du roialme appelleront les avaunt ditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk et aultres traytours sez compaignons appellez dez hautez tresons per eux faitz contre le roy et son realme come traitours enmys du roy et du roialme appelleront les avaunt ditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk et aultres traytours sez compaignons en affirmance lour appelle avantdit, et soy offeront de ly pursuere et mayntener come devant est dit. La que appelle nostre seignur le roy accepta, et sur ceo assigna jour as ditz parties a son primere parliment qe sessoit tenuz a Westmynstre lendemayne del chaundelere proscheyn ensuant, de prendre et receyver adonqes sur la dit appele pleyu justice. Et en le temps mysne prirt en sa sauve et trespecial protection lez ditz parties ove touz lour gentz biens et chatieux, et coe fist proclamere et publiere en sa presence en mesme le temps. Et puis le lundy proscheyne apres le jour de la natyvite nostre Seigniour Jhesu Crist proscheyn ensuant lez avantditz Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglieterre, Richard conte Darundell et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyk ensemblement ove lez avantditz seignurs Henry cont de Derby, et Thomas cont Marescall en presence du roy en le toure de Londres come loiales liegies nostre seigniour le roy et du roialme appelleront lez avantditz Alexandre ereeveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veer duc Dirlande, Mychele de la Pcle cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justicer, et Nichol Brembul faux chyvaler de Loundres, dez hautez tresonez per eaux faitz encontre le roy et son realme come traytours enmys du roy et du roialme et soy offerent de pursuere et maintener et suffisant seurte trover, come de suis et sur ceo le roy lour assigne jour a son proscheyne parliment a pursuiere et declarere la dit appelle. Sur quoy le roy per avys de son consaile fist proclamer en touz lez contees Denglietere per briefs de son grant seale qe touz

A.D. 1388, before the king at Westminster.

The king has in the meanwhile taken the accused under his protection.

Higd. App. ix. 121.

Twys. col. 2715.

The charges which are made.

[1–2] *et . . roy*, om. MS.

A.D. 1388. lez ditez appellez serront au dit parliment a y respondre sur appelle susdite. Et quele appelle lez avanditz, Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglietiere, Henry conte de Derby, Richard counte Darundell, et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyk, Thomas cont Marchall appellantz sont prestez a pursuiere maigtener et declarere et come loialx lieges nostre seignour le roy pur profite du roy et realme appellount lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk etc. dez hautez tresons per eux faitz encontre nostre seignur le roy et son roialme come traytours et enmys du roy et du realme. Quellez appellez et tresons sont declarez apointez et specifyes pleynement si come est contenuz en diverse cedules annexes a y cestez, et prient qe lez ditz appellez soyent demandes et qe droit et justice eut soit fait en cest present parlyment avantdit. Higd. App. ix. 122.

[1] 1. Primerment Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglictere, Henry cont de Derby, Richard cont Darundell et de Surre, Thomas count de Warwyke, Thomas cont Marchall appellont et dyont qe Alysander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veer duc Dirlande, Mychele de la Pole count de Suthfolk, faux traytours et enmys au Roy et a realme veantz le tendurnes del age nostre dit seignur le roy et la innocencie de sa royal persone luy firont entendere come pur verite tantz dez faucer choses par eaux outre lealte et bon foy ymagines et controvez qe entierement en luy fyrent de tut a eux doner son amour et ferme foy et credens et hayer ses loiaux seignurs et lieges per queux il duist de droit pluis aver et este governe. Et auxint accrochans a eaux real pouare endeffranchissant nostre signeur le roy de suevereigte enblemyssance et amenusauntz sa royale prerogatyve et regalye luy firent si avant obeysere qil fuist jure destre governe conseylle et mesne per eux. Per vertue de quele serment eux luy ont si longement tenuz en obesauncz de lour faux depensemet ymaginacions et faitz qe lez meschiefes enconvenients deseux et destruccions continuz as articles si apres ensuant sont avenuz come sont overtement en partye a monstrer et desclarer pur profit du roy et du roialme.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Articulus primus, super tribus traditoribus qua fecerunt regem adhærere consilio eorum et odire consilium aliorum dominorum.*

[1]2. Item la oue le roy nest tenuz de faire nule serement envers nules de ses lieges si noun le jour de son coronement oue pur communes profite de luy et de son realme lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veer duc Dyrlande, Mychele de la Pole count de Suthfolc, faux traytoures du roy et du royalme ount faitz luy jure et assentir envers ceux qe les mayntendra et sustendra a vivre et moere oue eux et issint la oue le roy doit estre de franc condicion pluis qe nule altrede sou roialme ils luy ont mys pluis en servage encontre son honoure estate et regalie, encontre lour ligeance come traytours a luy. A.D. 1388.

Higd. App. ix. 123.

[2]3. Item lez avantditz Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Mychele de la Pole count de Suthfolc, Alexander ercevez Deverwyk per assent et consayle Robart Tresilian faux justicer et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Loundrez, per lour faux covyn ne sofferont pas lez grantz du roialme ne lez bones conseyllours le roy parler ne aprocher au roy pur luy bien conseyllere ne le roy parler a eux forsque en la presence et en la oyere dez ditz Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, Mychele de la Pole count de Southfolc, Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk per assent et consayle Robart Tressylyan faux justicer, Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Loundrez, en presence dascune deux a meyns a lour volunte et solonc lour tayle et choses qils vaylorent en rebottant lez grantz et lez bonez conseylers le roy de lour bone volunte vers lour seigniour liege et encrochanz a eux royal pouere seigniorye et soeverrant sur la persone le roy a grant dishonour et peril du roy et du coroun de son roialme.

Twys. col. 2716.

[3]4. Item, lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, Mychele de la Pole, cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justicer, Nichol Brembul, faux chivaler de Loundrez, par lour faux covyn et acrochement de lour faux malvestez maneront et male conseyleront nostre seignur le roy, si que sa presence qil doit de son devereire monstre a lez seigneurs grauntz et a son people leige et a lez grants et droit queux requirerent respondre

[1] On both margins is: *Articulus secundus de eisdem quia fecerunt regem jurare quod eos foveret in suis causis.*

[2] On both margins is: *Tertius de quinque traditoribus quia noluerunt permittere consiliarios regis loqui cum rege nisi in eorum præsentia.*

[3] On both margins is: *Quartus articulus de quinque traditoribus.*

A.D. 1388. ne le fist poynt forsque et a la taylle lez ditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justicer et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Loundrez, en oustount le roy de son devoyre contre son serement et lez coieres dez grantz seigneurs et de people de son seigniour liege, en compassance de eloigner le coer nostre seignur le roy dez pieres de la terre pur avoire entre eux soul le government du roialme. Item, per le dit accrochment lez avanditz, Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, et Mychele de la Pole cont de Suthfolc per assent et conseylle du dit Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk ont faitz qe nostre seigniour le roy sanz assent du roialme ou deserte deux lour ad done per lour abette moult diversez seigniories chastelle vylels manoyrez sibien annexes a sa corone come autres, si come la terre Dirlande et Okam oue la forest dycell et grantez terrez qe furont al seigneur Dandelegh et autres grantz terres as dit duc Dirland et as autres diversement peront ils sont grantement enriches et le roy est devenez en poure et nad dont il se purra sustener et portere lez charges du royalme si noun per imposicions taxus oue tributes mettre et prendere sur son poeple en disheriteson de sa corone et en defesance du royalme. Higd. App. ix. 124.

[1] 5. Item, per le dit encrochment lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Mychele de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, per assent et conseyle de dit Robart Tressylyane faux justicer, et Nichol Brembulle, faux chyvaler de Loundrez ont faitz qe nostre seignur le roy ad done divers manoyres terrez tenementz offices et baylifes as diverses altres persones de lour affyance et as aulteres persones dez queux ils ount prises grantz douns per brogages pur ycellez causes et auxi per cause a tener ovesk eux en loure faucez quereles et purposes en deffesance du roy et du realme sicome est de sir Robart Mansel clero, John Blake, Thomas Uske et altres diversment.

[2] 6. Item, Robart de la Veere duc Dirland, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, et Alysander ercevesk Deverwyk, Higd. App. ix. 125.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Quintus articulus de quinque traditoribus quia fecerunt regem dare terras tenementa et officia suis adhærentibus.*

[2] Here on both margins is: *Articulus de quatuor traditoribus quia rex dedit eis dona pro eorum procuramento ad summam c. mill. marcarum.*

per assent et conseyle de Nichol Brembulle faux chivaler A.D. 1388.
de Loundres encrochant a eux roial pouare ount fait qe
nostre dit seignur le roy lour ad done tresgrantz dounes
Twys. col. dor et dargent sibien des biens joialx propre come des
2717. bien et tresoures du roialme sicome des dymes quinzymes
et aultres taxes a diverses parliment grantez pur estre
esploites en defence et savegarde du roialme et altrement,
quel some amont a c. mill. marcz et pluis, sicome au dit
duc Dirland et autres diversements. Et outre ceo plu-
soures bones ordinances et purposez faitz et ordeignez en
parlyment si bien pur lez guerres come en deffence du roi-
alme, ont ils desturbez en grant areresment du roy et du
roialme.

[1]7. Item, per le dit encrochement et per grantz dounes et brogagez quils ont pris lez avantdit duc Dirland, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk ont faitz qe diverses persones nient sufficiantz et nient covenables ont lez garde et governance des diverses seigni-ories chastellez et paiis en guerre come en Gueyene et aillours si bien de ca la miere come de la peront le poeple et paiis dy celles parties lieges et loialx au roy pur grendure partie sont destruez et grantz seigniories des novellez rendutz as maynes et possessiones des enmys sanz assent du roialme, queles ne furent unques en maynes des enmys puis le conquest du cell sicome il est en la marche de Scoce et ayllours en des heriteson de corone du roy et grant areresment du roialme sicome en Harpeden et Craddok, et aultres diversementz.

[2]8. Item, per le dit encrochement lez avanditz Alexander ercevesqe Deverwyk et sez compaignons traitours susditz ont faitez qe diversez gentz ount desturbes de le commune ley Denglietere et mys a grantz delays perdes et costages,
Higd. App. ix. 126. et estatutez et jugementz droiturelement sur causez neces-sariez faitz et renduz en parliment reverses et adnullez per procurement dez ditz malfesours et traitours, et ceo per cause dez grantz dounez et brogages per caux recevy du cell parties en grant arceresment du roy et du roialme.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Septimus articulus de tribus traditoribus quia fecerunt regem habere insufficientes ministros quo multa damna evenerunt.*

[2] Here on margin of both is. *Octavus articulus*, to which A. adds *de quinque traditoribus quia ceperunt dona a multis ut aliorum justitiam impedirent.*

A.D. 1388. [1]9. Item, lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, et lez altres traitours au roy et au roialme ont faitz et conseyelle nostre dit seignur le roy a granter chartres de pardon dez horribiles felonies et tresons si bien contre lestate du roy come du partie, la quele chose fuist encontre le roy et le serement le roy.

[2]10. Item, la oue lez avanditz seigniories de la terre Dirland sont et ont estez du temps dont memorie ne court parcel del coroun Denglietere et lez gentz de cell terre Dirland per tote le temps avantdit ont este liegez sanz mesne au roy nostre seigneur et ses roialx progenitours roys Denglietere en touz lour chartres breves lettres patentz et auxi en lour sealx en augmentacion de lour none et de lour roialte lez ount fait nommez seigneur Dirland, les avantditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, et Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, come faux traitours au roy per le dit encrochement ont fait et conseille qe nostre seignur le roy en quanqe que luy est ad grante et assente plenement et soy accorde qe Robart de Veere duc Dirland soit fait roy du dit terre Dirland, et pur complere cest malveys purpos lez avanditz traytours ount counseylle execute qe nostre seignur le roy ad envoye cez letters a nostre seint piere le Pope de grantiere ratifiere et confermer lour traitourouse purpos sanz science oue assent de son roialme Denglietere et de la dit terre Dirland en desceverance de la liegiance du roy perentre le dit realme Danglietere et la dit terre Dirland, en decresse del honurable none du roy nostre seigneur avandit, et en overte disheretson de sa corone du roialme Denglietere et pleine destruccion dez lealx lieges du roy nostre seignur et la dit terre Dirland. Twys. col. 2718. Higd. App. ix. 127.

[3]11. Item, la ou per la grant chartre et autrez bonez leyes et usagez du roialme Dengletere qe nul homme ne serra pris ne prisonez mys a mort sanz due proces de loy avantdit Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londrez per le

[1] Here both have: *Nonus articulus*, A. adding *de traditoribus.*

[2] Here on both margins is: *Decimus articulus de tribus traditoribus.*

[3] Here on the margin of A. only is: *Undecimus articulus solum super Nicolaum Brembul quia rapuit* [*homines e*] *carcere et abduxit eos in Canham et occidit eos ibi.* The two words enclosed in brackets are damaged by fire in the MS.

dit encrochment prist per noet certeins prisouns deis de A.D. 1388.
prisone de Newgate chapeleins et autres jesqe le noumbre de xxii. ascunes endictez appelles de felonie et ascunz provours en cas de felonie et ascunez prisez et prisonez illoeques per cause de suspecion de felonie, et lez amesnoit hors de Loundrez en la conte de Kent a un lieu qest appelle Foulehoke, et illoeqes encrocha a luy roiale pouere come traitour au roy sanz garante oue processe du ley les fist estre decollez toutz sanz un qestoit appelle de felonie per un provour le quele il lessoit aler a large mesme le temps.

[1] 12. Item lez avantditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Mychele de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyane faux justicer et Nichol Brembre faux chivaler de Loundrez, traitours au roy et au roialme ont prisez en meinez causes grantz donnz en noun du roy dez diversez parties pur maintenance dez quere lez et ascune foith dez ambideux partiez si come pluis a pleine serra monstre quant mester serroite.

[2] 13. Item, per le dit encrochement lez avanditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, et touz cez autres compaignons ont fait que per la ou ascun dez seignurs altres loialx lieges nostre seignur le roy as diversez parlimentz eyantz grant
Higd. App. ix. 128. pouare et doute le perde du roy et du roialme per cause lez ditz mesfesours meschiefs moveront davoire bone governance entour le roy pur eschuiere les perilles avantditz, qe nostre seignur le roy se mova tut et si durement encontre eux qe commanda ascunez que departieront de son conseille et de parliment, ensi quils serront pluis parler de cest mater ne touche bone governance du roy et du roialme pur prioure de mort en grant areresment du roy et du roialme.

[3] 14. Item, per le dit encrochment les avantditz Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk et touz lez autres traitoures ont fait qe la ou le darreine parliment touz les seignurs et autres sages illoeques assembles veantz le perde du roy et de son realme esmuz tantz pur les perilles et meschiefs susditz et

[1] On both margins is: *Duodecimus articulus de quinque traditoribus quia ceperunt dona pro manu captione causarum.*

[2] Here on both margins is: *Tertius decimus articulus de quinque traditoribus.*

[3] Here on both margins is: *Quartus decimus articulus de quinque traditoribus.*

A.D. 1388. qe le roy estoit du partie de consaile du roialme et se enoit tut a conseile de lez ditz mesfesours et traitours come per cause qe le roy Franceys estoit eskyppes ou son roial pouare en la meere prest pur avoyr ariver en Englietere et destruere tut le roialme et la lange Denglietere et nul ordeignance ne governance estoit aillours fait pur savite du roy ne du roialme, mes ne sovieront de ceo autres remedyes mes monstront au roy tut pleinement coment il estoit malement governe consellie et demenee per les avantditz traitours et mesfesours en declaranz a luy lour malves condicions et luy requirerunt humblement comes sez foialx lieges pur savite de luy et de tut son realme, et pur eschuire touz lez perillez avantditz lesser et oustiere lez ditz mesfessours et traitours hors de la presence et companie, et qe ne ferroit en apres lour malveis consaille mes apres lez sagez loialx et deseretes du roialme, et sur ceo les ditz traitours mesfesours veautz cest bone et honurable opinion de parliment et pur desturbere cel bon purpos par lour faux conseile firent qe nostre seignur le Roy commanda a Maire de Londres de faire sodeignement lever ove grant pouare des gentz de Londres docciere et mettre au mort touz les ditz seignurs et communes hors pris ceux que furent de lour covin, al fesance de quele male fait les greindres mesfesours et traitours susditz serroient partie et per presence deffesaunce du roy et du roialme susditz.

Twys. col. 2719.

Higd. App. ix. 129.

[1]15. Item, Quant lez ditz Alezandre ercevesk Deverwyk et touz les altres traitours et mesfesours au Roy et au roialme perceveront qe lez ditz Maire et lez bonez gentz de Londrez avoient overtement refusez en presence du Roy dacompliere lez ditz malveis purposez et prodicion touchant le mourdre dez ditz seignurs et communes, par lour dit traiterouse acrochement faucement conseleront le Roy et tant fyront qe nostre seignur le Roy soy esloigant hors du dit parliment per plusours jours et fist certifiere qe ne voloit unqes approcher le dit parliment ne communer ove lez ditz seigniours et communes du besoignes du roialme pur nule perile perde ne mischiefe que purroient ascunement avener a luy et son roialme si ne fuisse primerment assurez per lez avantditz seigneurs et communes qils ne duissent riens dier ne faire en le dit parliment encontre ascunez dez ditz

[1] Here both margins have : *Quintus decimus articulus de omnibus.*

mesfesours, savant qils duissent alere en procedere avant A.D. 1388.
touchant la processe qe fuist lors comence envers Mychel de le Pole; a grant areresment du Roy et du son roialme, et encontre lez aunciens ordeignance et libertes du parliment.

[1] 16. Item, Lez avantditz seignurs et communes du roialme apres qils avont entenduz qe la volunte le Roy per les malves excitacion et conseile de ditz Alexandre et touz lez
Higd. App. ix. 130. altres estoit tiele qil ne voloit suffrere ascune chose estre comence pursue oue fait encontre la volunte le Roy. Et puis en le dit parliment ewes lez conseillez et avisementz dez touz lez seignurs justicez et aultres sagez communes du dit parliment coment lestate du Roy et de son roialte purront meult estre savez encontre lez perillez et meschiefs susditz. Et ne scieront trover ne troveront altre remedie mes de ordeigner qe XII. de loialx et sages seignurs de la terre serront de conseille du Roy pur une an entiere alors proschein ensuant, et qe lours serroit fait tiele estatut et commission per mesme le temps per queux ils avoient plin et suffesant poiar de ordeigner pur la governance du Roy et du roialme et quanqe appertenoit a Roy de sea la Miere et de la, et de repellere repayerer et redresser quant qestoit malment fait encontre lestate honour et profit du Roy et de realme, et de faire altres chosez diversez et necessariez du Roy et du roialme, come est contenuz en la commission ent fait quele est de recorde en la Chancelerie. Et qe nule personn ne deveroit conseillere le Roy ne luy mover ascunement encontre la dit ordeignance et statute, et
Twys. col. 2720. si le ferroit, a primer foit perdiroit touz sez bienz et chatieux, et al seconde defaute il porteroit penance de vie et de membre. Et cellez ordeignancez et remedie serroit ent fait sil plerolt au Roy et nient aultrement. A quele ordeignance touz lez justicez du roialme estoient accordes et lour conseile a ceo doneront sibien en presence du Roy come dez ditz seignurs, et auxint nostre seignur le Roy sey assente pleinement a ycelle ordeignance. Et sur ceo lez ditz ordeignance estatuz et commission furent faitz et
Higd. App. ix. 131. accordauntz al sent du Roy et dez ditz seigneurs et justicez, et altres sagez et communes assemblez au dit parlyment pur savere le Roy, sa regalie, et son realme,

[1] Here both margins have: *Sextus decimus articulus de omnibus.*

A.D. 1388. et apres le finissment de dit parliment lez ditz traitours et mesfesours par lour ditz malves encrochementz fauccment et tratriousement confourmeront le Roy qe lez ditz ordeignancez estatute et commission estoient faitz en defence de sa regalie, et qe totez ceux que procureront oue conseleront lez ditz ordeignancez estatut et commission destre fait et qe touz y ceux qe exciteront le Roy dassenter a ceo sont dignez destre mortes com traitours au Roy.

[1] 17. Item, apres ceo lez ditz mesfesourrs et traitours Alexandre erceveske Deverwyke, Robart de Veer duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylian faux justicer, et Nichol Brembre faux chivaler de Londres, ont faitz le Roy assemblere conseille dez certeins seignurs justicez et altres plusours faitz sanz assent ou presence dez seignurs de grant conseille, et lez ont faitz diversez demaundere et moult suspecionouse dez diversez matiers. Pur quoy le roy lez seignurs et le commune poeple ont estez en le pluis grant trouble et tut le realme auxi et lez coers dez plusours retrays du Roy savant loure liegeaunce.

[2] 18. Item, pur acompler la dit haut treson les ditz mesfesours et traitours Alexandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, per assent et conseille Robart Tressylian faux justice, et Nychol Brembulle faux chivaler de Londres, firent le roy alere ovesqe ascunez dez eaux per my son roialme per le greindoure partie en parties de Calis, et firent le roy faire venir devant luy lez seignurz, chivalers, esquiers et altres bonez gentz dez ditz parties si bien dez citees et boroughez come dez altres lieus, et lez firent estre liez ascunes per lour obligacions et ascunez per lour serement a nostre seignur le Roy destre ovesqe luy encontre touz gentz, et dacompler la purpos du Roy estoit a celle temps de acomplere lez voluntez et purpos dez lez avantditz mesfesours et traitours et per faux imaginacions covins et crochemetz susditz. Queux seurtez et serement estoient faitz encontre lez bonez loyes et usages de la terre et contre le serement du Roy a grant areresment et

[1] On both margins is: *Articulus septimus decimus de omnibus.*

[2] On both margins is: *Decimus octavus articulus contra omnes quia consuluerunt regi facere magnates et nobiles facere securitatem esse cum rege contra dominos.*

Higd. App. ix. 132. dishonours du Roy et du roialme. Item perforce tielez liens et serementz tout le roialme est movee en grant mirmour et truble per lez ditz mesfesours et traitours Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Vere duc Dirland, Michele de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justice, Nicol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres, et en perille davoire suffert diversez meschiefs emportables. A.D. 1388.

[1] 19. Item, pur aforcer lez ditz Alexandre etc. ove touz sez compaignons sovent firent le Roy soy essoinere en lez pluis longez partiez du realme a cause qe lez seignurs assignez per lez ditz ordeignancez et statutez et commission nie purroyent conseillere ovesqe luy du busoigne du roialme, en desturbance et deffence le purport et en effect del ordeignance estatutez et commission avantditz en grant areresment du roy et du roialme.[2]

Twys. col. 2721.

Higd. App. ix. 133. [3] 20. Item, les avantditz mesfesours et traitours Nychol Brembul faux chivaler de Londrez, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, Mychele de la Pole cont de Southfolc, et Robart Tressylian faux justice, apres quellez estoient sustraiez lez corps et bien volunte le roy dez ditz seignurs qe senteront de faire lez avantditz ordeignauncez estatutez et commission en darreine parliment, et qe roy les tenoit sez enmys et sez traitours et ovesqe ceo qils estoient accordantz a lour malveis purpos susditz et qascunes dez ditz justicez estoient de lour assent et covine aillours pur faire imaginacion et pur attendre lour faux et traiterous purpos avantditz per faux compassements entre eus ordeigneront primerment arrestez, puis per faux enquestz endittez atteintes dez certeins tresons per eux fauxment imagines sur mesmez lez seignurs et communes et issint estre mys in malveis et honitouse mort et eux de lour sank perpetuelment disheritez, et qe ceux faux arrestez enditesmentz et attiendrez serront faitez a Londrez et en Middlesez. Et pur celle cause firent un malveis et faux persone de lour

Higd. App. ix. 134.

---

[1] On both margins is: *Decimus nonus articulus contra omnes quia fecerunt regem elongare se a consilio dominorum.*

[2] Here is some additional matter in Higden, Appendix.

[3] Here on both margins is: *Vicesimus articulus contra omnes et contra Thomam Uske, Johannem Blake et Johannem Rypon.*

A.D. 1388. covine Thomas Uske destre South-Viscont de Middlesex qe perlaunce et assent procurement et commandment enpristz qe lez faux enditesmentz et attiendrez serront faitez et accomplez [1] per le maner susdit, et a plener complessement de mesme la treson lez dits traitours firent nostre seignur le roy envoiere sez lettres du credence per John Rypon faux clerk qe estoit de lour faux covine, directez a Maire de Londres, quele credence estoite qe le dit Maire duist mettre le dit Thomas duc de Gloucestre et aultres certeins persones queux il noma a cell temps. Et apres qe le dit duc et lez altres fuissent ensi arrestez ils duissent estre enditez de certeins tresons en maner come le dit Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres, et John Blake qestoient de ceo pleinerment enformes duissent enformere le dit Maire. Et puis le dit Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres, et John Blake per force du dit lettre de credence porteront al dit Maire une bille questoit enformacion de la dite fauce enditement commandant et chargeant deper le Roye au Maire qil a son pouare duissoit faire lez avantditz arrestez enditementz et atteindres estre faitez per le manere suisdit. Le fait de quele bille ensuiet. Semble pur le meult qe certeins etc. ut en confession Blake etc. Outre ceo lez ditz mesfesours et traitours ordeigneront qe bone espie serroit fait sur la arrivall de mon seignur duc de Lancastre et qil serroit arestee maintenant sur sa arivall. Higd. App. ix. 135.

[2] 21. Item, apres qe lez avantditz Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justice, et Nychol Brembul faux chivaler de Londrez, mesfesours et traitours au roy et a roialme avoient ensi traiterousement enformes nostre seignur le roy qil croya seurment qe lez ditz ordeignancez estatutz et commission furent faitz en derogacion de sa regalie et prerogative du roy, et luy enfourmeront de croiere auxi fortement qe toux ceux qe ordeigneront lez ditz ordeignance estatuz et comission destre faitz furent en Twys. col. 2722.

[1] Here on both margins is added: *Ad addictandum duces Lancastriæ, Gloucestre et multos alios nobiles et morti tradere.*

[2] Here on both margins is: *Articulus vicesimus primus contra omnes de fractione commissionis factæ in parliamento præcedente.*

finall purpos a degradere et deposere nostre dit seignur le roy. Et qils ne voillent en nule maner cessere de lour purpos tanqe averont ceo perfait peront le roy lez tinet come sez enmys et traitours. A.D. 1388.

[1] 22. Item, Apres celle faux et traitorouse informacion quant lez avantditz Alexandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylian fauce justice, et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres perseveyront qe nostre seignur le roy lez loialx seignurs tenoit come sez enmys et traitours, lez ditz mesfesours et traitours luy conseilleront qe per chescune voie possible luy ferroit sibien per pouare dez sez gentz liegez come per pouere de sez enmys Franceys et altres a destruere et mettere a mort lez avantditz seignurs et touz altres assentantz al feisaunce de dit ordeinance estatutez et commission, et qe ceo serroit si privement qe nully ent saveroit tanqe y fuist mis en fait.

[2] 23. Item, pur accompler cest haut treson lez avantditz Alexandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, per lour conseile ils firent le roy sez lettres de credence maundere a son adversarie du roy Franceys ascunes per Nichol Suthwell vadlet de sa chaumbre et ascunez per altres persones de petite estate sibien alienz come denizeinz, requirant et enpriant le dit roy Fraunceys qil verroit estre ove tut sa pouare et counseil eidant et enforceant a nostre seignur le roy a destruere et a mort mettre lez ditz seigneurs et aultres Englys lez queux le roy lors tenoit sez enmis et traitours come desus, a tresgrant disease et trouble de tut le roialme.

Higd. App. ix. 136.

[3] 24. Item, Lez avantditz Alexandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de Pole cont de

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Vicesimus secundus articulus ut rex convocaret tam inimicos quam amicos ad destruendum dominos regni cum omnibus adhærentibus.*

[2] Here on margin of A. only is: *Vicesimus tertius articulus contra omnes quinque, ut rex mitteret* [some words illegible from fire] *literæ ad regem Franciæ quam dominos regni sui.*

[3] The notes on the next four articles are on the margin of A. only, and are—24. *Ut rex noster sursum redderet castellum cum villâ de Calys regi si veniret in auxilium, cum omnibus castellis et villis ultra mare.*

A.D. 1388. Suthfolc acrochantz a eaux roial poiare firent le roy promittere a roy Franceys per sez ditz lettres et messagez pur eide et forcement avoire du dit roy Franceys et de sa poure pur acompliere cest haut treson de prodicion et murdre, de doner et suisrendre au dit roy Franceys la ville et le chastell de Calys et touz altres chastiellez, forcellettes en la marche de Pycardie et a Troys lez chastielles et villes de Chirburgh et de Brest, a tresgrante dishonour et trouble et arreresment du roy et du roialme.

[1] 25. Item, Apres lez avantditz Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Mychel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, estoient surez davoire eide en forcement du roy Franceys per manere come desuse, leur estoit accorde perentre nostre dit seignur le roy et le roy Franceys per excitation et fesaunce dez ditz traitours Alexandre etc. Et touz cez compaignons qe parlance serroit faite en lez marches de Calys de trewe per v. anz perentre lez ditz dieux roialmes Denglietere et France, et a quele parlance serroit lez ditz deux royes et auxi lez ditz seignurs Engleys queux le roy tenoit allors sez enmis et traitours a la treson mesmes lez seignurs Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglietere, Ricard cont Darundell et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyk, et altres serront mis a mort.

[2] 26. Item pur acompleyscement de ceste haute treson Alexandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, firent le roy envoier pur avoire certens savecunditz du roy Fraunce ascunez pur le roy mesme, ascune pur le duc Dirland, et ascunes pur John de Salusbury, et John Lancastre chivalers ove certeine noumbre dez gentz ove eux pur alere en France en acomplissement de lour dit malveys purpos et treson. Lez queux sont prestz a monstrere. Twys. col. 2723. Higd. App. ix. 137.

[3] 27. Item le avantdit Nychol Brembul faux chivaler de Londrez per assent et conseil des dits Alisandre erceveske Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la

---

[1] *Articulus* 25, *ut dux Gloucestriæ cum suis sociis proditiose caperetur et morte traderetur.*

[2] 26. *Pro salvo conductu ad certas personas in Franciam pro seditione adimplenda.*

[3] 27. *Isti fecerunt omnia artificia Londoniarum manutenere regem contra omnes sibi rebelles.*

Pole, cont de Suthfolc, et Robart Tressylyan faux justice A.D. 1388.
acrochantz a eaux roial pouare come devant fist qe ascuns des eux vendrent a Londrez en propres persones, et sanz assent oue savoire du roy illeques overtement en non du roy fist touz les craftus du dit Citee de Londrez estre jurrez a tenir et perfourmere diverses matieres nient honestez sicome est contenus en le dit seurment qest de recorde en la Chancelerie, et entre autres, qe la volunte du roy et le purpos du roy tiendront et sustiendront a lour pouare encontre tieux ceux qe sont oue serront rebelles oue contrariantz encontre sa persone oue son regalie, et prestez serront a vener et demourere oue nostre dit seigneur le roy pur destruere toux ceux que purposent oue purposeront treson encontre nostre dit seignur le roy en ascune maner, et qe prest serront et prestment vendront a lour maire qe lors estoit oue qe apres cel temps serroit quanqe a quele loure serroient requis pur restiter tanqe come la vielour dure a touz que purposent oue purposeront treson encontre nostre dit seignur le roy en ascune maner, et qe prest serront et prestment vendront a lour maire de lors estoit oue qe apres cel temps serroit quanqe a quele loure serront requis pur reeister tancqe come la vie lour dure a touz que purposent oue purposeront encontre nostre seignur le roy liege oue ascunes des points susdits. A quele temps le roy per malves information des dits mesfesours et traitours et per faux respons des dits justices fermement tenoit les dits seignurs et altres qe estoient de lassent de faire les avantdits ordeignances estatus et commission estoient rebelles a luy ses enmys et traitours et quele informacion allors estoit disconez as gents des Londres; et auxi per tieles paroles obfaires en le dit surement continues, le entent des dits mesfesours et traitours estoit de exciter les avandits gents
Higd. App. ix. 138. de Londres de steire et de faire lour pouare a destruere les seignurs loialx susdits.

[1] 28. Item lez avantditz Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Loundres, Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, Robart Veer

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Articulus vicesimus octavus ut nullus de Londonia venderet aut minisraret victualia vel arma comiti de Arundell.*

A.D. 1388. duc Dirland, Mychele de la Pole traytours de Roy et du roialme accrochant a eux royal pouere de lour auctorite demesme sanz garrante du roy oue de son grant conseile firet faire proclamer per my la Cite de Loundres, qe nul des lieges nostre seignur le roy ne duissent sustener ne conforter ne eider Richard count Darundell et de Surre piere de la tiere un des seignurs de grant conseille nostre seignur le Roy durant la dit commission, ne armour ne vitailles ne autres choses necessaries luy vendre ne nul aultre manere luy desportere, et qe touz ceux questoyent entour luy duissent luy voidere come rebelle du Roy sur peine de quanque qils purront forfaire vers nostre dit seignur le Roy, monstrant et portant une patent nostre seignur le Roy dautre tenure en compassant du dit faux proclamation en aloignement du loialx lieges nostre dit seignur le Roy. Twys. col. 2724.

[1] 29. Item les dits Nicholl Brembull faux chivaler de Londres per assent et conseille de les avantdits Alexandur ercevesk Deverwyke, Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, Michel de la Pole count de Suthfolc fist crier et proclamer en la dite Citee de Londres qe nul persone soit si hardie parler ne parole ne mot sonner de male des dits mesfesours, traitours ne des ascuns deux sur paine de forfeture de quanque qils purront forfaire envers nostre dit seignur le roy encrochantz a eux roial pouare.

[2] 30. Item les avantdits Alexandur, erceveske Deverwyke, Robart de Veer duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole count de Suthfolc, et Robart Tressylyan faux justice, et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres traitours au roy et au roialme ont faites le roy maundere a son counseile de faire certeins persones per my Englieterre visconts queux estoient a luy nummez per les dits mesfesours et traitours al entent de faire tieles chivalers des contes veniere al parliment come ils voillent nummer, en defaute de bons seignurs et loialx et bones communes du roialme et auxi des les bones leyes et customes de la terre. Higd. App. ix. 139.

[1] And here : *Articulus vicesimus nonus, nullus sub pœna forisfacturæ loqueretur malum de dictis proditoribus.*

[2] And here : *Tricesimus articulus ut certi milites nominati venirent ad parliamentum in præjudicium dominorum de quolibet comitatu.*

[1] 31. Item les avantdits Alexandur erceveske Deverwyk, A.D. 1388.
Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justice, et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres faux traitours au roy et al roialme durant le temps de la dit proteccion en anientusment de la dit pelle fauxment conselleront et firent le roy commaundere per ses lettres as diversez chivalers et esquiers, viscontz et altres ses ministres de diversez Contees de lever et assembler tut la pouare qils purront pur vener ove le dit duc Dirland encontre les avantdits troys seignours appellantz pur eux sodenement guerrer et destruer.

[2] 32. Item durant le temps de la dit proteccion les avantditz Robart de Veere duc Dirlande, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Alexandur ercevesk Deverwyk, et Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres firent le roy per ses lettres notifiere au dit duc Dirland coment il et autres estoient appelles de treson per les dits Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Danglietere, Richard cont de Arundell et de Surre, Thomas count de Warwyk coment il avoit de se done jour au dits parties tanqe a proschein parliament, et coment il ad pris en sa especiale proteccion ambidieux parties ovesqe touz lour gents et biens et chatieux; Et outre estoit contenuz as dits lettres du roy qe si le dit duc Dirland avoit suffisant pouare qil ne lerroit aler ovesque le dit pouare et de vener au roy. Et tost apres firent le roy escriver au dit duc Dirland qil prendroit le champ ovesqe tut la pouare qil purroit assemblere, et qe le roy luy enconteroit ovesqe tut son pouare, et qe le roy metteroit en aventure son corps roiale, et qe le roy estoit en grant perille de luy mesme et tut son roialme sil ne
Higd. App. ix. 140. soit eide ne socoure per le dit duc Dirland, et qe le dit duc Dirland devoir soy monstrer a tous les gents qestoient assemblez ove luy qe le roy paieroit tous les gages et costages de dit duc Dirland et de tous lez gentz per luy assembles. Par fors des quelles lettres et malveis et traiterouse excitacion si bien du dit duc Dirland come de ses
Twys. col. 2725. adherentz et come les altres mesfesours et traitours le dit

[1] And here: *Tricesimus primus articulus quia fecerunt regem levare populum cum duce Hiberniæ contra dominos.*

[2] And here: *Rex misit duci Hiberniæ venire ad eum, et occurreret et cum regali potestate in ejus auxilium et rex poneret in eveniu corpus suum et regnum.*

A.D. 1388. duc Dirland assembla grant noumbre des gents des armes et des archiers, et si bien des countes de Lancastre, Cestre, et Gales comes des altres lieux du roialme a destruere et mettre au mort les avantdits seignurs qe furent al sent de fesaunce de dits ordeignaunces, estatutes et commission en defensance du roy et du roialme.

[1] 33. Item le dit Robart de Veere duc Dirland faux traitour du roy et du roialme assembla grant noumbre des gents des armes et darchiers si bien des contees de Lancastre, Cestre, et Gales, et de plusours altres lieux al entent davoire destruere traitorousement tut la roialme, lez ditz Thomas duc de Gloucestre constable Denglieterre, Henry cont de Derby, Richard cont Darundell et de Surre, Thomas cont de Warwyk, et Thomas cont Marchal et altres lieges loialx nostre seignur le roy, si bien en defessance et anientesment nostre dit seignur le roy et tut son realme issint chivacha le dit duc Dirland ove grant pouare et force dez gentz dez armes et achiers de conte de Cestre per my le roialme tanque qil vient a un lieu qest appelle Ratecotebrygge qest pres le Coteswold accrochant a luy roial poiare il fist displaiere le baner le roy encontre lestate du roy et de sa Coron. A qele temps de dit duc Dirland et sa compaignie per la grace de Dieu furent de lour male purpos destourbes.[2]

[3] 34. Item le dit Robart de Veere duc Dirland per conseille et abette dez ditz mesfesours et traitours Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robert Tressylyan faux justice, Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres acrochant a luy roial pouere sanz commission usuele du roy oue altre garrant suffisant si fist justice de Cestre, per luy et sez deputz tenoit illoeques touz maners dez pleez de la corone, et sur ceo renderont jugement et firent ent execution. Et auxi fist diversez lettres de originalez et judiciels estre ensealez ove la grant

---

[1] Here on both margins is : *Articulus* 33. *Dux Hiberniæ congregavit populum ad destruendum ducem Gloucestriæ et socios suos.*

[2] At this point the copy in Higd. App. proceeds with Articles against Simon Burlee and other three.

[3] Here on both margins is : *Articulus* 34. To which A. adds : *Dux Hiberniæ portavit populum ut cum eo irent contra ducem Gloucestriæ et socios suos* [a few other words damaged by the fire].

seale le roy en celles partiez uses et issint per tieles en- A.D. 1388.
crochmentz du pouare roiale il fist sourdre et lever ovesqe luy grant party dez gentz de tut la pays ascunes per tieles lettres mout hidouse et manassables, ascunez per prisonement de lour corps, ascunez per seison de lour terre et altrement en moultz maners nient honestez per colour du dit office, et coe tut pur guerre et destruere les ditz seignurs et autrez loialx lieges nostre seignur le roy et ove defesance de tut son roialme.

[1] 35. Item lez ditz traitours Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Alexander erceveske Deverwyke, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc par conseille et abbette du Robart Tressylyan faux justice, Nichol Brembul faux chivaler de Londres acrochantz a eux roiale pouare firent deliveerer John Bloys heire au Bretaine que fuist prisonere et tresour a nostre dit seignur le roy et a son roialme sance assent de son parliment oue de grant conseille et garrantie oue grant afforcement del adversary du France, en grant arreresment du roy et du roialme encontre lestatute et ordeignance avantdit faitz en darreine parliment.

[2] 36. Item lez ditz traitors Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Alexander ercevesk Deverwyk, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justice de Londres firent le roy du faire grant retenance de novell de diversez gentz et doner a eux diversez signez aultrement qil ne soloit estre de auxien temps per ascunez dez roies sez progenitours, al effect pur avoire pouere pur perfourmere lour faux treson avantdit.

Twys. col. 2726.

[3] 37. Item les avantditz mesfesours et traitours Alexandur ercevesk Deverwyk, Robart de Veere duc Dirland, Michel de la Pole cont de Suthfolc, Robart Tressylyan faux justice, Nichol Brembull faux chivaler de Londres en plener accomplessement de tut lour treson avantz et autres et pur faire le roy de creyer a eaux et en lour conseille et lez tient pluis loialx a luy et pluis sagez qe nulez altrez

---

[1] On both margins is: *Articulus 35. Fecerant regem divertere hereditatem Britanniæ sine consensu consilii sui.*

[2] Here on both margins is: 36 *Articulus. Fecerunt facere retentionem majorem solito, et dare eis signa insolita regibus, suis prædecessoribus.*

[3] Here on both is: *Fecerunt regem vocare justiciarios ut dicerent ordinationes in præcedenti parliamento contra regaliam editas esse.*

A.D. 1388. de son roialme, et sur ceo pluis colorere lour faux utreson et faux susditz, firent le roy faire vener devant luy as diversez lieux deins le roialme diversez Justicez et gentz du ley, cest assavoire Robart Tressylyan, Robert Bealknappe, John Care, John Holte, Roger Fulthorp, Will. Burgh sez Justices, John de Locton serjant de la leye et oveske eux John Blake oppossez et demandez per lez avantditz mesfesours et traitours si lez avantditz ordinance estatut et commission furent faitz en derogation de sa regalie et prerogative ou nient, et des altres diverses questions, as queles lez ditz justices serjant et John Blake responderont en manere come ensuit. Prædicta responsio prædictorum justiciariorum [1] patet [2] supra circa medium proxime præcedentis quaterni, videlicet in secundo folio post medium ejusdem quaterni sub hac forma. Memorandum quod vicesimo quinto die mensis Augusti anno regni regis Ricardi secundi xi^c^ apud castrum de Nottyngham coram dicto Domino Rege etc.

Three of the accused take to flight.

Tunc medio tempore dominus Robertus [3] Veere, dominus Alexander Nevill archiepiscopus Eboracensis et dominus Michael de Pole comes de Suthfolc fugerant, ut supradictum est, et ad parliamentum non venerunt, et ideo exlegati sunt et omnia bona eorum, redditus et possessiones, bona mobilia et immobilia, in manus regis seisita pro se et hæredibus suis imperpetuum, exceptis his feofamentis quæ sub tallia ad hæredes provenirent.[4] Sed dominus Robertus Tressylyan capitalis justiciarius regis absconderat se in domo cujusdam apothecarii prope portam Westmonasteriensem, ut sic videret dominos et magnates regni intrantes ad parliamentum et egredientes et exploraret quid ageretur in parliamento, quia in tota vita sua semper cautelose [5] egerat, sed jam cautela ejus vertitur in summam stultitiam. Nam die Mercurii xi^o^ kalend. Martii proditus a proprio famulo et circa horam xi. ante nonam

Chief Justice Tresilian hid himself,

Wals. ii. 173.

but is betrayed by a servant,

[1] Here on both margins is: *Responsio justiciariorum.*

[2] The words *supra . . . . ejusdem quaterni*, which only refer to the particular MS. in which they occur, are only in A.

[3] *Robartus*, A.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Robertus Tressilian conventus captus et destructus.*

[5] *cautulose*, MS.

captus est et per ducem Gloucestriæ in parliamento præsentatus. Eodem die post nonam distractus est de turri[1] Londoniensi per medium civitatis usque ad Tyburne ad furcas et suspensus est, gutturque ejus cæsum est, nam antea adjudicatus fuerat ad eandem mortem in eodem parliamento. Hic prædictus Robertus disfiguraverat seipsum[2] fingens se pauperem debilem in tunica hispida et dilacerata et debili, feceratque sibi barbam prolixam et longam artificiose, quam barbam barbam Parisiensem vocabant, et faciem suam exterminabat ne agnosceretur; adeo disfiguratus fuerat quod nullus eum agnovit nisi ex sola loquela. A.D. 1388. and is executed summarily.

In crastino, scilicet die Jovis, Dominus rex ipsum Nicholaum de Brembul sæpius promoverat antea in Majorem civitatis contra voluntatem multorum de civitate. Hic multas oppressiones et seditiones fecerat in civitate. De quo fertur quod dum fuerat in sua plenaria postestate[3] majoratus fieri fecit unam stipitem communem et unam securim communem ad amputandum colla sibi insurgentium et sibi adversantium. Et fertur de eo quod addictari fecerat de talibus suis adversariis potentioribus de civitate Londoniensi octo mille[4] quingentos et plures; quos omnes ut dicebatur nisi deus restitisset proposuerat decapitandos, et ut dicebatur cum eisdem instrumentis idem Nicholaus apud Tourehill decapitatus est: pro quo rex rogavit et institit[5] penes dominos parliamenti ne distraheretur aut suspenderetur. Hic si vixisset dux Troiæ factus per regem fuisset. Nam ab antiquo civitas Londoniensis Troia minor vocata[6] est; et sic dux de Londoniis esset, mutato nomine Londoniarum in nomen Troiæ. Of Nicolas Brembul. His evil intentions. He is beheaded on his own block.

Twys. col. 2727.

Wals. ii. 174.

[1] *Londoniarum*, MS.
[2] *fugiens* inserted here in MS.
[3] *potestate* om. MS. The word is only on the margin in A.
[4] *milia*, MS.
[5] *instetit*, MS.
[6] *vocata*] facta, MS.

A.D. 1388. Thomas Usk and John Blake executed.

Item iv° nonarum[1] Martii Thomas Uske[2] subvicecomes de Londoniis et alius de familia regis nomine Johannis Blake distracti sunt a turri Londiensi usque ad Tyburne, et ibi suspensi et decapitati. Caput vero Thomæ Uske positum est super portam de Newgate causa opprobrii parentelæ suæ quæ in illis partibus civitatis morabatur. Tertio nonarum Maii dominus Symon[3] de Burlee damnatus est de proditione ut cæteri supradicti, sed rex dispensavit cum eo de distractione et suspensione. Hic apud le Tourhyll decapitatus est. Qui de patrimonio hæreditario expendere non valuit ultra xx. marcas, sed in paucis annis in obsequio prædicti regis crevit ad ultra valorem trium mille marcarum annui proventus. Et fertur de eo dedisse ad natale Domini in liberationem militum armigerorum valettorum et aliorum, tam de curia regis quam suorum, et ubi sibi placuit quandoque centum quadraginta pannos, quandoque centum sexaginta, quandoque ccxx. magni pretii, scilicet quosdam pannos deauratos et quosdam de scarleto. Item iv° idus Maii dominus Johannes Bewchamp[4] condemnatus est distrahi suspendi et quarterizari, sed gratia regis translata est ejus damnatio in decapitationem; et sic apud Tourhull decollatus est. Dominus Jacobus Bernerys miles de curia regis de proditione et seditione eodem die eodemque[5] modo accusatus et condemnatus in eodem loco capite[6] plexus est. Dominus Johannes Salusbery miles distractus est a turri usque ad Tyburne et ibi suspensus est.

Wals. ii. 174.

Simon Burley is beheaded.

John Beauchamp. Jacob Berners, and John Salusbery executed.

Wals. ii. 174.

---

[1] *quarto nonas*, MS.

[2] On margin of MS. is *Thomas Uske*, to which A. adds *distractus est*.

[3] Here on margin of MS. is *Simon Burleye*, to which A. adds *decapitatus*.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Johannes Beuchampe*.

[5] *et* is here added in MS. wrongly.

[6] Here on both margins is: *Jacobus Bernerys decollatus*.

Summi proditores evaserunt de regno fugiendo, videlicet Alexander Nevill archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Robertus Veere dux Hiberniæ, et Mychel[1] Pole comes de Suthfolc. Isti de judicio parliamenti exlegati sunt, et de hoc editum est quoddam statutum, quod deinceps gratiam redeundi in terram Angliæ nulla mediante conditione consequerentur. Similiter exhæredati sunt et forisfecerunt omnia tenementa terras et possessiones pro se et hæredibus suis imperpetuum, his exceptis quæ sub tallia provenerunt, sicut supra plenius patet ante principium hujus parliamenti. Simili modo de cæteris qui morte plexi sunt de forisfactura tam bonorum suorum et terrarum atque possessionem pro se et hæredibus suis statutum est.

A.D. 1388. The chief men escape. They are outlawed and their property confiscated.

Post hæc producuntur justiciarii,[2] scilicet pridie nonarum Martii, qui in principio parliamenti arestati sunt et mancipati sub custodia tenebantur apud Turrim, videlicet dominus Robertus Belknappe, dominus Johannes Caare,[3] dominus Johannes Holte, dominus Rogerus de Fulthorp, dominus Willelmus de Burgh, et Johannes de Locton serjancius ad legem. Qui omnes pro suis demeritis, sicut supra patet ante præsens parliamentum, et similiter supra in ultima accusatione proditorum plenius continetur, videlicet in præcedenti, damnati sunt ad distractionem et suspensionem et mortem. Sed interveniente Anna regina Angliæ cum archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et aliis episcopis, rex cum consensu dominorum in quos deliquerant condonavit eis vitam.[4] Sed exhæredati sunt sicut cæteri pro se et hæredibus suis; et exlegati sunt in Hiberniam sub statuto edito nunquam redituri. Assignatique sunt bini et bini ad certa loca pro suo perpetuo mansuri, et ultra certas limites et bundas non progressuri; et assignata

Proceedings against the justices.

Wals. ii. 174.

They are condemned to death.

The queen intercedes for them.

Twys. col. 2728.

And they are spared,

[1] *Michael*, MS.

[2] Here on both margins is: *Sex justiciarii damnantur.*

[3] *Care*, MS. Rymer gives *Cary*.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Rex concedit vitam justiciariis.*

A.D. 1388. est certa summa pecuniæ singulis eorum de arca regis ad eorum sustentationem, videlicet[1] domino Rogero de Fulthorp xl. libræ et progredi circa locum sibi limitatum per iii. leucas, et domino Willelmo de Burgh socio suo xl. marcæ, et progredi et regredi circa locum sibi limitatum per ii. leucas. Item domino Roberto Bealknappe xl. libræ et egredi et regredi circa se per iii. leucas. Et domino Johanni de Holte socio suo xl. marcæ et egredi et circumgredi per ii. leucas, domino Johanni Caare[2] et Johanni Locton cuilibet eorum xx. libræ et exire et redire circa se per ii. leucas. Inhibitumque est illis omnibus ne uxores eorum ad eos accederent in terra exilii sui aut filii eorum, ne forte eos de lege regni instruerent. Inhibitumque est eis ne cuiquam auxilium aut consilium vel favorem verbo aut scripto vel quoquo alio modo aliquatenus ministrarent. Cautum quoque est contra eos, quod si quis quemquam illorum bundas illis limitatas transgredientem inveniret, transgressorem statim arrestaret[3] Londoniasque ad regem duceret prima mortis damnatione videlicet distractione et suspensione prout ante addicti fuerant sine remissione plectendos.

but imprisoned within certain limits.

Injunctions laid upon them.

If they break bounds they are to be put to death.

His ita gestis rex facit[4] generalem gratiam domino Johanni Golofre[5] qui de proditione accusatus fuerat sed in transmarinis illis diebus agens, et omnibus et singulis de proditione notatis aut in seditione delinquentibus; nec quisquam ultra molestatus fuit de illo crimine. Sicque finivit parliamentum[6] pridie nonarum Junii et inceperat in crastino Purificationis præcedenti. Et sic patet quod Robertus Tressylyan

The king grants pardon to John Golofre and others.

---

[1] *videlicet*, Cf. Rymer iii., pt. iv. anno 1388.

[2] *Care*, MS.

[3] *arestaret*, MS.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Rex facit generalem gratiam proditoribus et seditiosis.*

[5] *Golfre*, MS.

[6] Here on margin of A. only is: *Parliamentum finitur.*

capitalis justiciarius Angliæ distractus est et suspensus et gutture cæsus. Willelmus Skipwyth[1] justiciarius evasit solus sine culpa quia non erat cum illis apud Notyngham quando malum illud proditionis fecerunt. Cæteri quinque ad eandem damnationem addicti sunt. Sed vita eis sic condonata, pro perpetuo suo taliter exlegati sunt ut supradictum est. A.D. 1388. Skipwith was not condemned.

Scoti intraverunt in Angliam[2] in occidentali marchia prope Carlhull[3] et dederunt patriam prædæ et incendio, et multa mala exercuerunt. Et ceperunt de patria circiter ccc. viros et eos secum abduxerunt, et ceperunt dominum Petrum Tyroill[4] vicecomitem Carliolensem et alios milites de patria et evaserunt absque magno damno suorum. Item in orientali marchia iii° die Augusti intraverunt Scoti cum plena potestate Scotiæ, videlicet comes Duglas, comes Fyf,[5] dominus Alexander de exteris insulis, comes Marchiæ, comes Straerniæ, comes de Murryf, comes Orkeneye, dominus Archibaldus Duglas, et deprædati sunt patriam et incendio tradiderunt et quamplures partes borialis plagæ devastaverunt, adeo quod multis retroactis temporibus tanta mala in regno Angliæ per hostes non sunt audita. Quibus occurrit dominus Henricus Percy filius et hæres comitis Northumbriæ quem Scoti vocabant Henricum Hotespurre[6] propter suam probitatem, eo quod aliis sopori deditis ipse super hostes suos evigilare consueverat, et hic Henricus pugnavit cum eis juxta Zolston prope Novum Castrum super Tynam. Et hic manu sua interfecit comitem Duglas, et comitem de Murryf[7] ad mortis metam vulneravit. Et idem Henricus[8] ibidem

Scotch ravages.

Wals. ii. 175.

Henry Hotspur goes out against them.

Wals. ii. 176.

He is taken prisoner.

[1] *Skyppewyth*, MS.

[2] Here on both margins is: *Scoti intrant in Angliam.*

[3] *Carlehull*, MS.

[4] *Tyryoll*, A.

[5] *Fif*, MS.

[6] *Herry Hatesporre*, MS.

[7] *Murrif*, MS.

[8] Here on both margins is: *Dominus Henricus Percy captus est Scotis.*

A.D. 1388. captus est cum fratre suo juniore et aliis xxi. militibus et multis aliis armatis et sagittariis, et in Scotiam abducti sunt. Sed et de Scotis multi capti sunt, inter quos Jacobus de Lynseye frater reginæ Scotiæ vir potentissimus. Factaque est pugna die Mercurii proximo ante festum sancti Laurencii in vespere. Et numerati sunt occisi mille et c. prope Carlhull eodem tempore numero xxx. millia quoque in fugam coacti sunt capientes aquam. Twys. col. 2729.

Episcopal promotions.

Dominus Thomas de Arundell episcopus[1] Elyensis post exlegationem Alexandri Nevyll factus est archiepiscopus Eboracensis, dominus Johannes Fortham translatus est de Ecclesia Dunelmensi ad ecclesiam Helyensem. Dominus Walterus Skyrlowe translatus de ecclesia Batonensis ad ecclesiam Dunelmensem. Magister Radulfus Argum translatus est de ecclesia Salysbiriensi ad ecclesiam Batonensem, et dominus Johannes Walton, factus est episcopus Salysbiriensis. Magister Walterus Skyrlowe primo creatus fuerat episcopus Cestrensis,[2] sed antequam installaretur translatus est ad sedem Batonensem deinde post paululum translatus est ad sedem Dunelmensem; eodem scilicet anno magister Richardus Scrope creatus est episcopus Cestrensis. Wals. ii. 179.

Parliament at Cambridge.

Hæc omnia eodem anno. In autumno proximo sequenti in crastino nativitatis beatæ Mariæ virginis rex[3] celebravit aliud parliamentum apud Cantubrugiam[4] scilicet eodem anno gratiæ MCCCLXXXVIII. et regni sui xii° incipiente, in quo concessa est ei de ecclesia dimidietas decimæ et a populo medietas quintodecimæ pro guerra in Scotia[5] anno sequenti facienda. Et edita sunt nova statuta pro utilitate Wals. ii. 177.

Subsidies granted for the war in Scotland.

[1] Here on margin of both MSS. is: *Episcopi translati de sede in sedem.*

[2] *Cistrensis*, A.

[3] Here on the margin of A. only is: *Rex tenuit aliud parliamentum apud Cantubrugge eodem anno in supplementum prioris* (?). The last word had been rendered illegible by the fire.

[4] *Cantbrigiam*, MS.

[5] *Scotiam*, MS.

communis populi, et plura statuta quæ edita fuerant in tempore avi sui Edwardi iii. innovantur, scilicet de laborariis, operariis, de servientibus, de ballivis, de singulis officiariis, de vicecomitibus, de provisoribus ad curiam Romanam tendentibus et de multis aliis gradibus, communi populo necessaria.[1] Nam tanta elatio in inferiori populo illis diebus in habitu et apparatu in diversis guysis pullulabat et crevit, quod vix quis de populo dinosceretur ab alio per splendorem vestitus aut apparatus. Non pauper a potente,[2] non egens a divite, non servus a domino suo, non sacerdos ab alio de populo, sed unusquisque imitabatur alium et nitebatur inducere noviorem gysam[3] et transcendere in elatiori apparatu et habitu suum potentiorem, super quo magnates instabant apponere remedium et errata defalcare et ad meliorem formam reducere, sicque rex statuta sequentia cum assensu parliamenti confirmavit, et in singulis comitatibus regni publicari et conservari inviolabiliter districte mandavit, sub forma quæ sequitur.[4]

A.D. 1388.

Sumptuary legislation necessary.

[5] Pur commune profite et universele bien de tut le roialme nostre seignur le Roy a son parlyment tenuz a Cantebrugge lendemayne de la nativite de nostre dame lan son regne duzysme del assent des seigneurs et communes illoeques assemblez ad fait certeynz estatutez et ordinauncez en la fourme que [6] suit.[7]

Statutes of the Parliament of Cambridge.

Twys. col. 2730.

[8] Primerment accordez est et assentez qe seynt esglyse eyt totez sez libertez et fraunchisez et qe la grant chartre et chartre de la forest et touz altres estatuz et ordenancez

Confirmation of the liberties of the church.

---

[1] *necessariis*, MS.

[2] *Non pauper a potente*] om. MS.

[3] *guysam*, MS.

[4] A copy differing somewhat from this is given, Higd. App. ix. 190, seqq.

[5] Here on margin of both MSS. is: *Ordinatio statutorum.* In MS. the words are also given as heading to the text.

[6] The text has been compared with the early printed copy of the *Nova statuta* (Brit. Mus. 505, h. 11), and variations are marked N.S.

[7] *suit*] sensuit, N.S.

[8] Here on margin of both MSS. is: *Primum statutum.*

A.D. 1388. avant ces œurez faitez et nyent repellez soyent dewment tenuz et firmement gardez.

[1] Item, accordez est et assentez qe le Chauncelere, Tresorere, Gardeyne de la prive seale, seneschal del hostiele le roy, Chaumburleyne du roy, Clerk du rollez, Justicez del une bank et de lautre, Barons del eschekkere et touz altres qe serront appellez du ordeigner nomer oue faire Justicez de la pees, Viscont[2] Eschetours, Customers, Contrerollours, oue ascune altre officer oue mynistre du roy soyent firmement jurrez et sermentz qils ne ordeignent nomenz ne facent Justice de la pees, Viscont, Eschetour, Customer, Controllour ne nulle altre officer ne mynistre du Roy pur nulle maner donne ne brogage ne favour ne affection, ne qe nulle qe pursue per luy oue per altre en prive oue en apert[3] de les pluiz loialx et les pluis sufficiantz a lour escience et lour conscience. Higd. App. ix. 191.

None shall obtain offices but upon desert.

[4] Item, accordez est et assentez qe touz les estatutz de artificers et laborers servauntz et vitayllers faitz sibien en temps nostre seignur le roy qore est come en temps de son noble ayele, qe dieu assoyle, nyent repellez, soyent fermement tenuz et gardes et duement executez, et qe les ditz artificers laborers servants et vytaillers soyent duement justicez per les justicez de la paix si bien a suit du roy come a suite du partye solonc le exigence des ditz estatutz, et qe le Mayre baylifs et seneschalles des seignurs et seneschalles des villes facent dument lour office touchant ticles artificers, servants, laborers, et qe ceppes soyent en chescune ville a justifiere mesme les servants et laborers come ordeigne est en le statute susditz ; et en outre est ordeigne et assentuz qe nule servant oue laborer soit il homme oue femme ne departe au fyn de son terme hors del hundrede rape oue wapentake oue il est demoraunt pur servire oue demorere ayllors oue per colour dalere loynes en pylrynage sil ne porte lettre patent contenant la cause de son aller[5] et le temps de son retournere sil doit retournere, desouth le seale du roy qe a ceo serra assigne et lyvere Higd. App. ix. 192.

No servant to depart from one hundred to another without a warrant under the king's seal.

[1] Here on margin of both MSS. is : *Secundum statutum.*

[2] *Viscontes*, N.S.

[3] Here is added in N.S. : *de estre en ascun maner office soit mis en mesme laffice ou en ascun auter eins que ils facent toutes tielx officers et mynisters.*

[4] Here on margin of both MSS. is : *Tertium statutum de laborariis et artificiariis.*

[5] *alere*, MS.

en garde dascune prodome[1] del hundrede en hundredez A.D. 1388.
rape oue wapentake, cite ou burgh, solonc la discrecion des justices de la paix a gardere et loyalment faire tiels lettres quant il besoigne[2] et nemye en altres manere per son serement, et qe entour le dit seale soit escript le non[3] del conte, et atraverce du dit seale le non del dit hundrede rape wapyntake cyte oue borough, et[4] si ascune servant oue laborer soit trouve en cyte ove burgh ayllors venant de ascune lieu vagarant sanz tiele lettre soit maintenant pris per lez ditz mayre bayliffes seneschallez, oue constables et mys en cepps et gardez tanqe ils eyent trove surtees de retournez a son servys oue servyre oue laborere en la ville dont il vient tanqe il eyt tiele lettre[5] come desuys. Mes nest mye[6] la entencion du cest ordeignance qe servauntz qe chyvachent oue allent en bosoignex de lour seignours oue meystres soyent compris deynez cestez ordeignance pur temps de qe le[7] bosoigne. Et si nule porte tiel lettre qe poet estre trove forge oue faux, eit la prison de quarrant jours pur la fauxyme et outre tank il eyt trove surte de retournere et server et laborer come devant est dit. Et qe nule receyt servant ne laborer allantz hors de lour hundrez rape wapentake cite oue burgh sanz lettre tesmoynale ne oue lettre outre un noet sil ne soit per cause de maladye oue altre cause resonable ou qe il vult oue puisse servere et laborere illoeques per mesme le tesmoygnance sur payne a lymytiere per Justicez de pees. Et qe si bien artificers et gentz de maystyer come dez servantz et apprentys qe ne sont de grant avoyre et de quele artifice et mystere len nad pas bosoigne en temps daust soyent artez de servyr en aust de cyere coilere et entyellere[8] lez bleez, et cest[9] estatute soit duement execute per mayres et baylyffes
Twys. col. 2731. seneschallez et constables de vyles sur peyne a lymiter et a juger per lez ditz justicez de la pees en lour sessions.

---

[1] *prode home*, N.S.

[2] *bosoigne*, MS.

[3] *noun*, N.S., and in the next line also.

[4] *auxint*, added in N.S.

[5] Here is added in N.S.: *a departier per cause resonable. Et fait a remembrer que servaunt ou laborer puisse franchement departer hors de soun service al fyn de son terme et servir aillours issint que il soit en certayne oue qui et eit tiel lettre.*

[6] *mye*] pas, N.S.

[7] *que le*] mesme, N.S.

[8] *entyellere*] entrer, N.S.

[9] *que*, add N.S.

A.D. 1388. [1] Et qe nule prigne outre une denere pur la dit lettre faire et ensealere et delyverere. Et en outre a cause qe lez servantz et laboreres ne voillent per long temps ount voluz servere et laborere sanz outrageouse et excessyve lowere et molt greindre qe nad este done as tiels servantz et laboreres en ascune temps passe, si que pur chierte dez ditz laboreres et servantz lez husbondes et terre tenantz ne poyent payer lour rentes ne a payne vivre sur lour terre, a tresgrant damage et perde si bien dez seigneurs come de tut le commune et auxint a causes qe lez lowers dez ditz laboreres et servantz nont este mys en certeyne devant cez œures, accorde est et assentuz [2] qe le Baylif pur husbondrye pregne per an xiii. s. iiii. d. et sa vesture un foith per an au pluis, le maystr hyne x. s. Charetter x. s. Berchere x. s. Bouer vi. s. viii. d. Bachere [3] vi. s. viii. d. Porchere vi. s. Femme laborerere vi. s. Deye vi. s. Chacer des charowe vii. s. a pluis, et [4] chescune altre laborere et servant solonc son degre, et meyns en pays [5] ou meyns soleint estre donez sanz vesture curtesye oue altre rogarde per covenant, et qe nule servantz [6] dez artificers ne de vytayllers deynz Cite, burgh ne altres villes ne pregnent pluis qe le laboreres et servantz desuz nomez solonc lour estate sanz vesture curtesye ne altre regarde per covenant come desuz est dit; et si nul pregne oue donne per covenant pluis qe nest especifies peramont, qe al prime foith qils serront ent atteyntez payent sibien lez donors come lez pernors la value del excesse issint donee oue pris, et a la seconde foith de lour atteindre la double value dez tieles excessez, et a tierce foith la treble value dez tieles excessez, et si le pernour issint atteynt neyt rienz dont payere lez ditz excessez eit la prison de xl. jours.

Penalty for giving or taking more wages than fixed by statute.

Higd. App. ix. 195.

[7] Item, ordeigne est et assentuz qe ceux oue celluy qe use de laborere a charewe et charet oue altre labour oue servyse de husbondrye tank soit del age del xij. anz qe dehors [8] en avant il demourge a tyele labour sanz estre mys

Whosoever serveth in husbandry till twelve years old shall so continue.

Higd. App. ix. 194

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *Pro litera dabitur denarius.*

[2] Here on both margins is: *De stipendiis laboriarorum.*

[3] *Vacher*, N.S.

[4] *et*] et que, N.S.

[5] *et meyns en pays*] om. N.S.

[6] *servants*] om. N.S.

[7] Here on both margins is: *iiij. statutum.*

[8] *dehors*] delors, N.S.

an mystiere oue artifice, et si [1] covenant en [2] [lieu [3]] de apprentyce soit fait desore en avaunt a contrarye soit tenuz pur nul. A.D. 1388.

Higd. App. ix. 194.

[4] Item, accordez est et assentez qe nul servant de husbonderye oue laborere ne servant de artificyere ne de vytayllere ne porte desore en avant basilarde [5] dagger ne espey sur payne du forfetoure du cyelle si non en temps de guerre par deffence du roialme, et ceo par survewe dez arrayours pur temps esteantz oue travayllant per pays oveske lour meystrez oue en lez messagez de lour mestrez mez eyent tieles servantz et laboreres arkes et settez et lez usent lez dysmengez et jours dez festez et lessent tut outrement lez jewes [6] as peltez [7] si bien a mayne come al pes et les altres jewes appellez coytes dyces gettere du piere kayles et altres tielez jewes importunez. Et qe lez vyscontz mayrez baylyffes et constables eyent pouare darester et arestont touz lez contravenauncez, et lez baselardus [8] daggers et espeyes suisditz, et lez ditz baselardes daggers et espees seysere, et gardiere tanqe al session de justicez de la pees et lez presentent devant lez ditz Justicez en lour sessions ensemblement oue lez nons [9] du ceux qe lez porteront. Et nest pas lentencion du roy qe prejudice soit fait as fraunchisez dez seignurs touchant lez forfaytures a eux dewes. No servants in husbandry to wear weapons or play unlawful games.

Twys. col. 2732.

Higd. App. ix. 194.

[10] Item accorde est et assentuz qe de chescune qe va mendynant et est able a servyre oue laborere soit fait de luy come de celuy qe departe hors dez hundrez et altrez lieux susditz sanz lettre tesmoynayle come desuys est dit forpris [11] genz de religion heremytes approves eyantz lettres testemonals dez ordeynaryes, et que lez mendynantz impotentz de servyre demorgent as Cytees et villez oue ils sont demorantz al temps de proclamacion du cest estatute. Et si les gentz del ditz Citeez oue vylles ne voillent ne poyent suffrere de lez trover, que les ditz mendynantz soy trayent as altres villes deynz le hundrede rape oue Punishment for beggars and provision for the impotent.

---

[1] *si*] si ascun, N.S.
[2] *en*] ou, N.S.
[3] From Higd. and N.S.
[4] Here on both margins is: *v. statutum.*
[5] *basselarde*, MS.
[6] *jewwes*, MS.
[7] *pelots*, N.S.
[8] *basselardes*, MS.
[9] *nouns*, N.S.
[10] Here on margin of A. only is: *vi. statutum.*
[11] *forpryses*, N.S.

A.D. 1388. wapentake[1] oue as villes oue ils furent nees,[2] deynz xl. jours apres la dit proclamacion fait et la demourgent contynuelment pur lour vyez. Et qe[3] de touz ceux qaillent en pylrynage come mendynantz et sont puissantz a travallere soit fait come dez ditz servantz et laboreres sils neyent lettres tesmoynallez de lour pylrynage desouth le ceale avantditz, et qe lez clerkz de universiteez qe vont auxi mendynantz eyent lettres de tesmoyner de lour Chauncielere sur mesme la payne.

They shall bring testimonials that report themselves to have been imprisoned beyond the seas.

[4] Item, accorde est et assentuz qe ceux qe ceo[5] faynent hommez travellys[6] hors du roialme et illoeques est enprisones portaunt lettres tesmoynals de capytayne ou ils ount demourez oue dez Mayrez et bayliffes oue ils facent lour arryvayle, et qe mesmez les mayrez et baylifs enquergent dez tiels gentz oue ils ont demoure et ove qui [ils ount demurres[7]] et en quele lieu lour demourere est en Englietere, et qe mesmez les mayrez et baylifs lez facent lettres patentez desouth le seale de lour office tesmoygnant le jour de lour arryvayle[8] et [auxint tesmoignant[9]] ou ils ont este a ceo quils ont dit, et qe lez ditz mayrez et baylifs les facent jurere qils tendront lour droit chymyne vers lour pays si non quils eyent lettre patent desuys la grant ceale le roy daltrement faire, et si ascune tiele homme travayllez soit trove sanz tiele lettre soyt fait de luy come dez servants laboreres susditz, et cest ordeignance serra entendu des hommes travaylles qe vont mendynant per le pays apres lour arryvaille.[10] Higd. App. ix. 194.

The statute of labourers to be put in force in cities and boroughs.

Item ordeigne est et assentuz qe lez ordeignauncez susditz[11] des servantz et laboreres mendynauntz et vagarantz tienent lieu et soyent executez si bien as cytees et burghes[12] come as altres villes et lieux deinz la roialme si bien deinz franchise come dehors, et qe lez viscont mayres et gardeyns des gaioles soyent tenuz et chargiez de resceyvere les ditz servantz laboreres mendynantz et vagarantz et les detener en prison en la fourme avantdit sanz lez lessere a maynprise ou en baylle et sanz fee oue altre rienz prendre deux per eux Higd. App. ix. 194.

---

[1] wapyntake, MS.
[2] *neez*, MS.
[3] *qe* is above the line in A.
[4] Here on margin of A. only is : *vii. statutum.*
[5] *ceo*] se, N.S.
[6] *travellez*, MS.
[7] from N.S.
[8] *arrevayle*, MS.
[9] from N.S.
[10] *arrayvaille*, MS.
[11] Here on both margins is : *Octavum Statutum.*
[12] *borouhs*, MS.

mesmes oue per altres tanqe come ils soyent ensy en prison [1] ou al entre oue al issue dez mesme la prisone, sur payne de payere c. s. al Roy. A.D. 1388.

Higd. App. ix. 195.

[2] Item ordeignez est et [assentuz] [3] qe en chescune Comission dez Justicez du pays ne soyet assignez que six Justicez outre les Justicez dassysez, et qe les ditz syz [4] Justicez tiegnent lour sessions en chescune quarter del an au maynes, et ces per treys jours si meyster soit, sur payne destre punys solonc ladvis de conseyl le roy a suyte de chescune qe se vorra pleyndre. Et enquergent diligentment entre altres chosez touchant lour offices si les ditz mayres baylyffes seuechallez conestablez et auxint gayolers ont deument faitez execution des ditz ordeignauncez et estatutz dez servantz et laboreres, mendynantz et vagarantz, et punyssent ceux qe sont punissablez per la dit payne de c. s. per [5] mesme la payne qe [6] ceux que sont trovez en deffaute que ne sont punyssables per la dit payne de c. s. punissent per lour discrecion.

The number of justices of the peace in every county, and how often they shall hold their sessions.

Twys. col. 2733.

Et pregne chescune des ditz Justices lour gagez iv. s. le jour pur le temps de leur dit sessions et lour clerkes ij. s. le jour et ceo dez fynes et enmercyments susdytez et provenantz de mesmes les cessiones [7] per maynez des vyscontez, et qe les seignours des fraunchysez soyent contributours as ditz gages solonc afferant [8] de lour partie des fines et amercymentz susditz, et qe nul seneschall de seignour [9] soit assigne en nule de ditz [10] commissions et qe nulle associacion soit as Justices de la pees apres lour primere commission, et nest pas lentention de cest estatute qe lez Justicez del un banc et del altre ne lez sergeauntz de leye en cas qils soyent nomez en les ditz commissions soyent tenuz per force du cest estatute de tener les ditz cessions [11] quatre foith per an come sont lez altres commissioners que sont continuelment demourant en pays, mes quils le facent quant ils a ceo poyent bonement entendre.[12]

Higd. App. ix. 195.

---

[1] *en prison*] emprisones, N.S.

[2] Here on both margins is: *Nonum Statutum.*

[3] from N.S. The omission is marked with a ʌ in MS.

[4] *syz*] six, MS.

[5] *per mesme la . . . de c. s.*] om. MS.

[6] *qe*] et, N.S.

[7] *cessyouns*, MS.

[8] *fferant*] lafferant, N.S.

[9] *seignour*] written sur in MSS.

[10] *dit*, MS.

[11] *cessyouns*, MS.

[12] *entendre*] atteindre, MS.

A.D. 1388. Punishment of those who malign peers or great officers of the realm.

Item, come contenuz soyt si bien en lestatute[1] de Westmynstre primer come en lestatute fait a Gloucestre [l'an du regne [2]] nostre seignur le roy qore est secunde que nul soit si hardy de controvere ou countere[3] ascune faux novelle mesonge oue ascunez tiels fauxez eschosez dez Prelates Ducs Contes Barons et altres noblez grauntz du roialme, et du Chaunceliere, Tresorere, Clerk du prive seale, Senechal del hostiele nostre seignur le Roye, Justicez de lune banc et de lautre, et daltres grant officers du roialme, et qe le fra soit pris et enprisonez jesques a taunt qil trove celuy dont[4] la parole serra movez. Accordez et assentuz est en cest parlyment quant ascune tiele soit pris et emprisonez et ne poet altre trover dont la parole serra movez come devant est dit qil soit punys per[5] le dit consayl nient consteantz lez estatutez avantditz.

In what cases the lords and spiritual persons shall contribute to the expenses of the knights of the parliament.

[6] Item, en droit de la leyres[7] dez Chyvalers venantz as parlymentz pur lez communes des Contees[8] accordes est et assentuz qe le dit leeve soit fait come ad este use avant cez oeures nouste[9] aycell qe si ascune seignur oue altre home espirituele oue temporele eyt purchacez ascunez terrez, oue tenementz ou altres possessiones que soloyent estre contributours as tielez dispences devant le temps du dit purchace, mesmez lez terrez, tenementz et possessions, et lez tenant du ycelle soyent contributours as ditz dispencez come lez ditz terrez, tenementz, et possessionz, et lez tenantz du ycellez soilent faire devant le temps de mesme le purchace.

[10] Item, pur ceo qe taunt dez fymes et altres ordurez[11] dez issuez [et] entraylles si bien de bestez tuez come dez altres corruptions sont gettez et mys en fosses ryvers et altres ewes, et auxint plusours altres lieux dedeyns et entour et pres

---

[1] Here on both margins is: *ix. Statutum ut male loq. de magnatibus puniantur.*

[2] from N.S.

[3] *ou countere*] ou dire en countre, N.S.

[4] *dont moves*] cont . . . nomes, MS.

[5] Here N.S. reads: *per advys du counseil nient contristeantes les estatutes avaunt dites.*

[6] Here on both margins is: *Decimum statutum.*

[7] *leyres*] leve dez despenses, N.S.; *leyrez*, MS.

[8] *countes*, MS.

[9] *nouste aycell*] aiouste a icelle, N.S.

[10] Here on margin is: *Undecimum statutum ut stercora amoveantur de civitatibus.*

[11] *ordrez*, MS.

diversez cytees, burghes[1] et villes du roialme et lez suburbes du celles,[2] qe leyre illoeques est grauntment corrupte en estee et plusours altres maladyez et altrez dyseasez nyent suffrablez aveygnont de jour en altre si bien a lez enhabitanz et conversantz as dytez cytees, burghes, suburbes, villez, come al altres illeoques repayrantz et passantz[3] suisditz, accorde est et assentuz qe proclamation soit fait si bien en la cyte de Londres[4] come en altrez cytees, burghs, villes, et permy le roialme ou il bosoigne si bien deyns franchisez come dehors,[5] que toux ceux qi tils anusancz[6] fymes, issues, entrailles et altres ordurez ont gettez et mys en fossez et ryvers, ewes et altres lieux suisditz, lez facent oultrement remover oustere et enportere perentre cy et la fest de seynt Mychell proscheyn avener apres la fyne de cest parlyment, chescune sur payne de [perdre et forfaite[7]] xx. li. a payers al Roy. Et qe lez Mayers et baylifs de chescune tiel cyte, burgh et ville, et auxint lez bayliffes dez fraunchesez lez compellont de ceo faire sur semblabull payne. Et si ascune soy sent greve que ceo ne soit perfait[8] en maner susdit, et soy vult enpleyndre en la Chancelerie apres la dit feste de seynt Mychel, eyt brief[9] de faire[10] vener celuy de qi il vult ensi plendre en la Chancelerye a monstrere par quoy le dit payne ne serra leeve de luy, et[11] sil ne poet ent dewment excusere, soit mesme la payne leeve de luy. Et en outre soit proclamacion fait si bien en la dyte cytee de Loundres come en altres cytees, burghes et vylles come desuys qe nul de quele condicion qil soit ne faite mettre ne gettare [desore[12]] en avant tiles anuysans issuez fymes entraylles et[13] ordures en lez fosses, ewes, ryvers et altres lieux susditz. Et si nul le face soit appelle per brief devant le Chancelier al suyt de celuy qe soy vorra pleyndre. Et si y soit trove coupable soit punys solonc la discrecion de Chaunceliere.

A.D. 1388.

Punishment of those who corrupt the air near a city or great town.

Twys. col. 2734.

---

[1] *boroughes*, MS.
[2] *cellies*, MSS.
[3] N.S. inserts here: a tres graunde anusaunce dammage et perill des inhabitauntes conversauntes repairauntes et passauntes.
[4] *Lounderez*, MS.
[5] *dehorse*, MS.
[6] *anusaunce*, N.S.
[7] from N.S.
[8] *prefait*, MS.
[9] *bref*, N.S.; bie, MSS.
[10] *deffaire*, MS.
[11] *et sil . . . de luy*] om. N.S.
[12] from N.S.
[13] *et*] et nauxent ascunes auters N.S.

A.D. 1389. Confirmation of 47 Edw. iii. about the length and breadth of cloth.

[1] Item,[2] accordes est et assentuz qe les drap de Ray et de coloure affayrez et aceneres a Bristout et ez countez environe soyent de la mesure altre foythe ordeygnee par estatut fait a Westmynstre lan du regne le Roy Edward ayel nostre seignur le Roy qore est xlvii.[3] Cest assavoyre lez drapez de Ray de la longure vynt et oept anz mesures per le list et synk quarters de leaure, et le drape de colour de xxvi. aunez de longure mesure per les doos et vi. quarters de laeure an meyns. Et qe demy drape soit il de Ray oue de colour tiegne en longure solonc la ferant[4] en laeure come lez drapes de colour et du Ray sur la payne a lymitiere en mesme la estatut.

He that goeth out of the realm to procure a benefice within the realm to be out of the king's protection.

[5] Item, qe nulle liege du Roy de quele estate oue condicion qil soyt greyndre oue meyndre passe le miere nenvoy hors du roialme Denglietere per lycence oue sanz lycence sanz especial conge du Roy mesmes pur soy providre oue purchacere ascune benefice du seynt esglyse ove cure oue sanz cure en la dit roialme. Et si ascune le face et par vertu de tiele provision accepte oue per luy oue per lautre ascune benefice en mesme la roialme, qe a cele temps mesme le provisour soit hors de proteccion du roy et mesme[6] la benefice[7] voyde si qe bien lise a patrone du mesme le benefice si bien espirituele come temporil presentere a ycelle un clerc able a sa volunte. Higd. App. ix. 197.

Removal of the staple from Middleburg to Calais.

[8] Ensement est assentuz et ordeignez qe lestaple soit remewes du Mydburgh[9] [a] Caleys, et qil soit a Caleys le primere jour de Decembre proscheyne avenir.

Scots ravage the

Eodem anno in Quadragesima intraverunt Scoti[10] in occidentali plaga et tam occidendo quam incendendo

---

[1] Here on the margin is: *Duodecimum statutum de mensura pannorum de Rayes et aliis de colore.*

[2] *Item..... Bristout*] Item ..... affairs et a overers a Bristuct, N.S.

[3] *xl. septime*, A.

[4] *lafferant*, MS.

[5] Here on margin is: *xiii. statutum ut nullus provisor eat ad curiam sine licentia speciali regis.*

[6] *et mesme*] bis in MSS.

[7] *voyde si . . . benefice*] om. MS.

[8] Here on the margins is: xiii. *De Stapula removenda de Midburgh ad Calesiam.*

[9] *Midburgh*, MS.; *Middeburgh*, N.S.

[10] Here on both margins is: *Scoti incendunt pueros et mulieres.*

multa mala exercuerunt, insuper pueros parvulos lactantes ad ubera, mulieres in puerperio et prægnantes, ac viros debiles et decrepitos in patria Gyldisland in dominio domini de Dacres in domos colligentes concluserunt et clausis ostiis ad numerum, ut dicebatur, circiter cc. et amplius irremissibiliter et absque misericordia igni combusserunt. A.D. 1388. north of England. Wals. ii. 180.

Anno gratiæ MCCCLXXXIX. incipiente die Jovis ante Pascha, dominus le Bewmont gardianus de Carliol in occidentali marchia intravit in Scotiam per xl. leucas, et spoliavit forum de Fowyk, et prædatus est ad placitum et multos Scotos secum abduxit. Eodem [1] anno statim post Pascha quidam mercator de Dermowth [2] conduxit classem de Portink proprio stipendio, et cepit xxxiiij. naves, ut fertur, onustas cum vino de Rochele [3] circiter mille v. c. doliorum. A.D. 1389. English enter Scotland. Twys. col. 2735.

In Quadragesima orta est dolorosa discordia [4] in Oxonia, discordia anni præcedentis ad plenum nondum sopita, sed semper partes adhuc irritante. Nam Wallani scholares semper inquieti adhærentibus sibi australibus scholaribus insurrexerunt contra boriales scholares, et hinc inde multa mala mortis inter eos evenerunt. Et in tantum increvit istud discidium [5] quod dies campestris prælii in campo præfixus est inter partes. Sed deo mediante et Thoma de Wodestoke duce Gloucestriæ se intromittente cum minore damno conquievit, et multi de Wallanis [6] banniti sunt ab Universitate Oxoniæ; et in recedendo per alios scholares boriales ad hoc paratos ad portas villæ in recedendo oscula offerre compulsi sunt. Discord among the students in Oxford, appeased by the duke of Gloucester.

---

[1] *Eodem*] Eodem Domini, MS.

[2] Here on both margins is: *Naves capti sunt cum vino.* And MS. inserts the words also among the text.

[3] Rochell, MS.

[4] Here on both margins is: *Discordia scholarium in Oxonia.*

[5] *dicidium*, A.; *decidium*, MS.

[6] *Wallianis*, MS.

A.D. 1389. Council at Westminster.

[1] Mense Maii rex tenuit concilium apud Westmonasterium, et in festo inventionis sanctæ Crucis rex veniens in consilio amovit omnes majores officiarios inopinate ab officiis suis et ad placitum suum subrogavit alios quos voluit, scilicet amovit cancellarium archiepiscopum Eboracensem et loco ejus promovit episcopum Wyntoniensem, et thesaurarium episcopum Herfordensem[2] et in loco ejus alium imposuit, et clericum de privato sigillo et omnes alios. Similiter et justiciarios de utroque banco. Sed ne negotia regni medio tempore obfuscarentur, jussit justiciarios legis requisita sicut solito prosequi donec sibi de aliis justiciariis consultius provideret. Comes quoque de Arundell, cui commissa fuerat parliamenti gubernatio et custodia maris, et marisarchus[3] fuerat, similiter ab officio suo amotus est, et comes Huntyngdoniæ in loco ejus subrogatus. Similiter faciebat rex de cæteris officiariis dicens 'Se non debere inferioris aut minoris 'conditionis quam quiscumque alius hæres regni Angliæ, 'cum lex et consuetudo regni Angliæ asseverant quod 'quisquis hæres in warda cujuscunque domini positus 'cum vicesimum primum annum ætatis suæ pervenerit 'statim de paternali hæreditate gaudebit, et liberam[4] '[potestatem] disponendarum facultatum et rerum sua-'rum legitime possidebit.' Sed jam contigit quod ego per plures annos sub consilio vestro et gubernatione degebam, et nunc primum deo, deinde vobis gratiarum actiones multiplico quia me et hæreditatem meam atque regnum meum Angliæ, tam infra quam extra, et præcipue contra inimicos nostros undequaque gubernastis et subportastis, salvo semper nobis et regno nostro

The king changes the chief officers of state.

Wals. i. 181.

He will not be in worse position than other heirs.

He thanks those who have been his guardians,

---

[1] A damaged note on the margin of A. is: *Rex celebravit* [*concilium apud*] *Londonias et facit novos officiarios.*

[2] *Herteforde*, MS.

[3] *marisarcus*, MSS.

[4] In A. some later hand has put a ^ after *liberam.*

honoris et laudis tripudiali organo. Nunc autem deus ita[1] pro nobis disposuit quod legalem ætatem supplevimus, et jam vicesimum secundum annum in præsenti agimus. Idcirco petimus et deinceps liberam facultatem regulandi et regendi nos et hæreditatem, ac regnum nostrum habere volumus, et officiarios ac ministros ad nostrum placitum secundum quod nobis melius expedire visum fuerit per dei gratiam volumus[2] eligere et ad quæque officia promovere, officiarios vero jam incumbentes ad nostrum libitum penitus amovere, et alios quos eligimus in loco eorum ubilibet subrogare. Et non erat quis qui regis voluntatem infringere conaretur, sed omnes deum glorificaverunt qui sibi talem regem sapientem futurum providere curavit.[3]

A.D. 1389.

but will now be free.

Twys. col. 2736.

Wals. ii. 182.

Mense Julii dum rex esset apud Schene convenerunt in curia sua multæ turmæ attomorum et muscarum, et in modum prælii congredientes fecerunt maximam stragem invicem, adeo ut scopis et pertis mundarent locum de interfectis.[4] Captæ sunt treugæ inter regem Angliæ Ricardum et reges Franciæ, Scotiæ, Hispaniæ, Portugalliæ, Naverniæ, et istæ treugæ inceperunt primo die Augusti in propinquioribus partibus tam per mare quam[5] per terram, et in remotioribus partibus quæ diuturniorem relationem[6] expetebant videlicet xvi° die mensis Augusti sole oriente anno MCCCXCII.

A plague and battle of flies.

Wals. ii. 186.

Wals. ii. 205.

Truces with the nations of the continent.

Eodem anno magister Willelmus[7] Courteneye archiepiscopus Cantuariensis frater comitis Deiræ visitavit diocesēm Lincolniensem. Et in festo sanctæ Fidis vir-

A.D. 1392.

Visitation of the

[1] *pro nobis ita,* MS.

[2] *volumus*] nobis, MSS.

[3] Here the words *De prælio atomorum in curiâ regis* are on margin of A., but in MS. are amid the text.

[4] The text from this point to *indignatio regis* (page 319) is written twice over in A.

[5] On both margins are: *Treugæ triennales.*

[6] In both MSS. the text here runs: *expetebant xv. die mensis Augusti sole oriente. Anno mcccxcii videlicet xvi. die mensis Augusti oriente,* followed by a blank space.

[7] *Willelmus*] om. MS.

A.D. 1392. diocese of Lincoln by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

ginis visitavit dominum Johannem de Bokyngham episcopum Lincolniensem in ecclesia cathedrali Lincolniæ cum capitulo et cætu[1] canonicorum. Et venit ad abbathiam Leycestrensem visitationis causa sabbato ante festum Omnium Sanctorum, et ibi moram traxit usque diem Martis. Et hora vesperarum die Omnium Sanctorum, scilicet die Lunæ, convocatis omnibus canonicis ejusdem monasterii cum capellanis de capella sua in singulorum manibus candelis accensis, idem archiepiscopus firmavit sententiam excommunicationis super Lollardos sive Wyclyvianos cum fautoribus, qui errores et opiniones magistri Johannis Wyclyffe tenuerant, vel foverant[2] vel in posterum teneant vel foveant in diocesi Lincolniensis. In crastino scilicet die animarum iterum idem episcopus fulminavit sententiam excommunicationis in specie cum cruce erecta candelis accensis, pulsatis campanis ut prius super novem certas personas villæ Leycestrensis quæ eandem villam cum patria nimis polluerant et infecerant. Archiepiscopus inde hora vesperarum recedens abiit ad ecclesiam sancti Petri ad quandam anachoritam Matildam nomine ibidem reclusam, quam arguens de prædictis erroribus et opinionibus Lollardinis, minus provide respondentem citavit quod coram eo compareret die Sabbati proximo sequenti in abbathia sancti Jacobi Northamptonæ ad respondendum ad prædicta erronea profana. Quæ ibidem statuto die comparuit, et renunciatis erroribus injunctaque pœnitentia salutari repatriavit. Sed usque in secundum diem ante festum sanctæ Luciæ extra reclusorium suum moram traxit, quo die iterum reclusorium ingressa est. Quidam alii Lollardi citati comparuerunt apud Oxoniam et aliis locis prout archiepiscopus eis indixerat,[3] et renunciatis suis superstitiosis erroribus atque abjuratis pro-

Wals. ii. 189.

He confirms the sentence of excommunication on the Lollards.

An anchoritess summoned before the archbishop.

Other Lollards recant.

[1] *cetum*, MS.

[2] *foverant*] fecerant, A., with foverant over it.

[3] *induxerat*, A.

fanis dogmatibus publicam pœnitentiam peregerunt. A.D. 1392.
[1] Willelmus Smyth de quo superius frequens sit mentio, Penance of William Smith.
forum Leycestriæ circumiit lineis tantum indutus in dextra portans crucem cum imagine crucifixi, in sinistra imaginem S. Katerinæ, eo quod quondam imaginem sanctæ Katerinæ secaverat et incenderat pro oleribus coquendis in sua esurie, sicut superius plenius dictum est, anno etc. octogesimo secundo. Libros etiam solemnes quos in materna lingua de evangelio, et de
Twys. col. 2737. epistolis et aliis episcopis [2] et doctoribus conscripserat, et ut fatebatur per annos octo studiose conscribere laboraverat archiepiscopo coactus tradidit. Prædictam pœnitentiam circa cimiterium ecclesiæ sanctæ Margaretæ Leycestrensis, Dominica sequenti antecedens et præcedens processionem adimplevit. Rogerus Dexter Also of Roger Dexter and his wife.
de Leycestria cum uxore sua forum [die] Sabbati Leycestriæ tantum lineis induti, ferentes cruces in manibus pœnitentiam agendo circuierunt. Et sic in magna parte publica audacia profanæ doctrinæ Lollardorum sive Wyclyvianorum timore potius archiepiscopi quam amore dei repressa est, cordis tamen perseverantia in antiquis delusionibus adhuc in occultis [3] prout audebant pullulante nimis.

Anno Domini MCCCXC. Circa festum sancti Petri A.D. 1390.
ad vincula Johannes dux [4] Lancastriæ fecit magnam A hunting party of the duke of Lancaster.
convocationem magnatum regni ad venandum apud Leycestriam in foresta et defensa et in omnibus parcis suis ibidem. Nam die Sabbati affuerunt ibi Rex et Regina, archiepiscopus Eboracensis, dux Eboracensis, Thomas Wodestoke dux Gloucestriæ, comes de Arundell, Johannes de Holande, comes Huntyngdoniæ, cum aliis episcopis, dominis et dominabus plurimis. Die Jovis sequente rex inde recedens versus Notyngamiam

[1] Here on both margin is *Penitentia Willelmi Smyth.*
[2] *epistolis*, A.
[3] oculis, MSS.
[4] Here on margin of A. is: *Dux fecit venationem apud Leycestriam.*

A.D. 1390. pernoctavit cum domino de Bewmonde[1] juxta Lowhteborowe.[2] Eodem tempore ad festum sancti Jacobi Wals. ii. 197.

The Earl of Derby goes with a troop into Prussia.

Henricus[3] comes Derbeyæ primogenitus Johannis ducis Lancastriæ cum armata manu mille electorum militum armigerorum et valettorum arripuit iter versus Pruciam et mense Aprilis rediit cum magni honoris tripudio et omnibus Christianis excellenti gaudiflua expeditione.

Great scarcity and want in England.

[4]Anno isto fuit magna egestas in omnibus partibus Angliæ, et ista egestas seu inopia bladorum incepit sub falce, et perduravit usque ad festum S. Petri[5] ad vincula, scilicit ad nova grana. Ista inopia multum oppressit populum, et præcipue communes et pauperes; nam videres infantes et pueros in viis et domibus pro fame ejulantes et clamantes, panem petentes, nec mater habuit unde eis frangere valuit. Wals. ii. 197. Sed et tanta fertilitas et frugum abundantia[6] per quam plures annos præcesserat, quod credebatur et dicebatur a multis œconomis[7] et terræ colonis, Si semen non spargeretur super terram, habita et recondita in horreis et granariis sufficerent ad alimentum totius populi per v. annos subsequentes. Sed causa istius egestatis penuria pecuniæ multum credebatur esse apud plures, nam pecunia multum defuit illis diebus et hujus[8] maxima causa fuit quia lanæ regni dormiebant apud quosdam per biennium, et apud quosdam per triennium absque emptore; nam statutum fuerat in quodam parliamento quod mercatores Angliæ non exirent regnum cum lanis et aliis mercimoniis, sed ea adducerent ad duodecim loca infra regnum ad hoc negotium deputata, ut mercatores alienigenæ cum suis mercimoniis ad dicta loca

There was no money to buy food.

Wool was not allowed to be sold

---

[1] *Bewmount*, MS.
[2] *Lughteborowe*, MS.
[3] Here on the margins is: *Henricus comes versus Pruciam.*
[4] Here on both margins is: *Caristia mirabilis in Anglia.*
[5] *Petri*, om. MS.
[6] *habundantia*, MSS.
[7] *yconomis*, MS.
[8] *hujus*] hujusmodi, MS.

confluerent, et sic per exambium nostra mercimonia abducerent suaque nostris dimitterent. Quam ob causam mercatores Angliæ ab emptione lanarum et aliis mercibus abstinuerunt, donec in proximo jam secundo parliamento concessum est eis cum suis mercimoniis transmeare quo volunt. Istis [1] diebus lana exilis reputationis fuit, nam una petra bonæ lanæ de collecta patriæ vendebatur pro iii. solidis, et in foro Leycestriæ quandoque pro ii. solidis vel xx. denariis. Twys. col. 2738. Ista egestas annonæ maxime invaluit in comitatu Leycestriæ et mediis partibus regni. Et licet egestas esset magna, pretium tamen bladorum non erat nimis excessivum. Nam quarterium frumenti in suo summo pretio vendebatur Leycestriæ pro xvi. solidis viii. denariis una vice, reliquo tempore pro una marca vel xiiii. solidis. Apud Londonias vero et in multis aliis locis regni quarterium frumenti vendebatur pro decem solidis, vel paulo majus vel paulo minus; nam confluebant xi. naves onustæ cum copia alimentorum ad diversa loca regni in relevamen populi. Sed et cives Londoniarum exponebant ii. milia marcarum in emptionem alimentorum de communi cista orphanorum. Et xxiiii. aldermanni [2] quilibet eorum apponebat xx. libras ad consimilem emptionem præ timore venturæ famis civitati et reponebant in diversis locis commodioribus et aptioribus pro populo, ut indigentes venirent et emerent sub certo pretio quantum sufficeret pro se et familia sua sustentanda, et qui non habebant pecuniam in præsenti solvere fidem facerent solutionis infra sequentem annum, sicque relevati sunt ne quis præ fame periret.

A.D. 1390. out of England. Wool was sold cheap. Corn was not dear. Purchase of food by the citizens and aldermen of London.

[3] Anno Domini MCCCXCI. Rex celebravit parliamentum apud Westmonasterium in crastino animarum. In isto parliamento data est licentia mercatoribus Angliæ

A.D. 1391. Parliament at Westminster.

[1] *Istis*] Istis vero, MS.
[2] *aldarmanni*, A.
[3] Here on margin of MS. only is: *Execrabile statutum contra ecclesias.*

A.D. 1391. exire regnum et abducere sua mercimonia quo volunt.

Statute against the holding of property in trust by ecclesiastics.

In isto parliamento editum est profanum statutum contra ecclesiam et ecclesiæ personas, videlicet, ne quævis personæ ecclesiasticæ possideant maneria glebas domos possessiones terras redditus quoscumque proventus per manus feoffatoris absque licentia regis et capitalium dominorum. Et istud statutum extendit se tam ad ecclesias parochiales, capellas, cantarias, quam ad abbathias, prioratus, seu quæcumque alia monasteria, similiter ad cives civitatum, et villicanos, atque burgenses burgorum et villarum hujusmodi redditus vel possessiones pro communi utilitate habentes. Nam homines in illis diebus qui volebant conferre redditus vel possessiones alicui ecclesiæ sive cuiquam communitati nec expensas possent effundere ut eos in manum mortuam reducerent sub licentia regis et capitalium dominorum, solebant feoffare certos homines in quibus habebant fiduciam, sub quorum nomine et defensione ecclesiasticæ personæ vel hujusmodi communitas rei commodo gauderent et utilitatem eorum possiderent. Et cautum est in eodem statuto, quod omnes et singuli tam personæ ecclesiasticæ quam parochiales, et cives atque burgenses, et villicani seu quicumque alii habentes hujusmodi redditus, possessiones, maneria seu quoscumque proventus in manibus talium feoffatorum sine licentia regis et capitalium dominorum, quod aut licentiam a rege et capitalibus dominis impetrarent in manum mortuam redigere vel venditioni talia exponere et suum commodum inde facere citra festum sancti Michaelis proximo sequens, vel illo festo peracto rex et capitales domini in sic non præordinatis et dispositis intrare et seisire, et ad suum placitum optinere.

Wals. ii. 200.

The way of escaping the Statute of Mortmain.

Such holders to obtain the king's licence.

A woman teaches her daughter

Illis diebus erat quædam matrona in civitate Londoniensi [1] quæ habebat unicam filiam quam instruxit

[1] Here on margin of MS. only is: *mulier celebravit missam Londoniis.*

ad celebrandum missam, et erexit altare in cubili suo secreto cum ornatu suo, sicque fecit filiam suam multis diebus vestire se more sacerdotis et ad altare accedere, et pro suo modo missam celebrare; sed cum venisset ad verba sacramenti prostravit se ante altare et sacramentum non confecit, sed cætera missæ surgens usque ad finem complevit matre ejus eam juvante et suam devotionem agente. Iste error multo tempore duravit donec per quandam vicinam ad talem missam secretius vocatam divulgaretur, et ad aures episcopi Londoniensis devenisset, qui eas ad præsentiam suam convocavit et de errore convenit et sacerdotissimam tonsuram comæ publice monstrare coegit, cujus caput nimis glabrosum inventum est; episcopus plorans nimis et ejulans de tali errore in ecclesia suo tempore contingente, multa lamenta emisit, et finem cum illis injuncta pœnitentia fecit.

A.D. 1391. to celebrate mass.

Twys. col. 2739.

The Bishop of London puts them to penance for the practice.

[1] Dux Geldriæ misit regi Angliæ literas laudabiles, et ad guerram, et militares actus, et ad regiæ nobilitatis exercitium multum allectivas, quarum tenor sub [2] sequenti forma patet.

Wals. ii. 206.

The duke of Gueldres sends a letter to the king of England.

Magnifice Princeps, innata vobis probitas et prudentum consilia, ut opinamur, simul agerent in effectum quod singula hæreditaria jura, quæ ex natalicio vestram magnificant regiam majestatem, temporibus vestræ discretionis altissima providentia munirentur illæsa, et si quævis oppugnaret violentia clypeo militari studeat regalis industria fortiter defendere sua jura. Et quia vestram regiam personam contingamus in affinitate, non valet deus ipse quin semper parati erimus vobis in vestris juribus defendendis assistere cum duobus milibus lancearum quando et quotiens dispo- nemini ad bellica convolare. Nec perire debeant jura propter verba aut promissa, quomodolibet ad hoc laborat versutia Gallicorum. Sane, serenissime princeps, in orbem volat fama nec ambigitur quod propter lanæ et innumerabilium vestra singularia commoda, sine quibus non vivit oriens

The letter urges the king to continue his war against France.

[1] Here on both margins is: *Epistola ducis Geldriæ.*

[2] *Sub, &c.*, subsequenter in hac forma, MS.

A.D. 1391. neque auster, regna singula in pecuniis vos salutant. In comparatione igitur ad alios reges vobis confert deus ipse divitias centuplatas. Probitas etiam militaris et arcuum asperitas sine pari taliter [1] hucusque extulere gentem magnanimam occidentis, quod timor non parvus vestros invadit adversarios, et ad hunc diem impariter victoriose dimicavit cum Gallicis Angliæ gens austera. In pusillanimitate igitur, potentissime princeps, contra naturam non obdormiat cor leonis, sed et quales vobis contulit vires natura ipsas applicare dignemini actibus bellicosis in defensionem reipublicæ, juris hæreditarii sustentationem, augmentumque meriti et incomparabiliter chronicabilem probitatem cordis magnanimi tanti regis.

Subsidies granted.

In parliamento præfato concessa est domino regi una dimidia decima a clero, et una quintadecima a populo in obsequium expensarum domini Johannis ducis Lancastriæ, qui in Quadragesima sequenti perrexit in Franciam apud civitatem de Amyas pro finali

Negotiations at Amiens.

pace inter regna Angliæ et Franciæ tractanda ubi occurrit ei rex Franciæ cum magno tripudio honoris et laudis præmittens primo in occursum dicti ducis cives equestres ejusdem civitatis numero pergrandi, deinde comites et barones quamplurimos, deinde avunculos suos duces. Postremo ipse rex venit ei obviam salutans eum et prænominans dignissimam personam militiæ totius Christianitatis, regali dignitate inuncta solummodo excepta; et idem dominus dux habuit xvii. dies ex conductu pro pacis forma tractanda. Deinde rediit habens in comitatu suo episcopum Dunelmiæ et filium ducis Eboracensis, comitem de Rutlondia, cum mille equitibus, ut dicebatur, mirabili apparatus elegantia refertis.[2]

Wals. ii. 206.

Grand reception of the duke of Lancaster.

He returns to England.

A.D. 1392. Council at Stamford.

Anno gratiæ MCCCXCII. rex celebravit grande concilium in crastino Trinitatis apud Stamfordiam pro negotiis regni erga Francos tractandis. In quo convocavit omnem senilem militiam regni, ut seniorum

Twys. col. 2740. Wals. ii. 208.

[1] *taliter*, om. MS. [2] *refartis*, MS.

consilio quid agendum esset in præfatis duceret in effectum. A.D. 1392.

Item, Rex habuit grande concilium apud Notyngamiam ad festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ, in quo convenire fecit majorem Londoniarum cum xxiiii. Aldermannis et duobus Vicecomitibus, et xxiiii. in secundo gradu potentioribus civitatis. In quo convicit eos forisfecisse contra quoddam obligatorium novem milium librarum et amissione privilegiorum suorum erga regem. Quod quidem obligatorium regi ante fecerant suis demeritis illud exigentibus. Rex autem novis delictis recitatis absolvit Majorem et duos Vicecomites cæterosque officiarios de officiis suis. Et misit Majorem et duos Vicecomites ad certa loca in custodiam exuens civitatem Londoniensem omni privilegiorum honore, ita quod magis non gauderet civis quam extraneus aliquo privilegio, præficiens dominum Edwardum Baleryge[1] custodem ad custodiendum leges regis et populum in civitate Londoniensi[2] donec disponeret aliter pro eis. Et præfixit eis diem ad respondendum regi et ejus consilio super objectis et objiciendis in festo sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ proximo sequenti apud Wyndesoram. Interim mediantibus quibusdam amicis mitigata est erga eos pro parte indignatio regis,[3] et dimisit Majorem et Vicecomites cæterosque omnes in domos suas, præficiens tamen eis novum custodem civitatis, reservans in manu sua omnia privilegia civitatis. Interea Dominica proxima post festum Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ omnes potentiores civitatis venerunt ad regem et submiserunt se et omnia bona sua regi, et tunc primo recepit eos in suam gratiam.[4] Die vero Mercurii sequenti rex dis-

Council at Nottingham.

Wals. ii. 207.

The mayor, sheriffs, aldermen, and chief citizens of London deprived of their offices,

Wals. ii. 208.

and imprisoned.

A.D. 1392.

Wals. ii. 209.

Sir Edward Balerynge made Warden of the city of London.

Wals. ii. 210.

The king's anger is appeased by the submission of the citizens.

Wals. ii. 208.

The king comes to London.

[1] Walsingham gives the name *Dalyngrugge*.

[2] *Londoniense* above the line in A.

[3] It is at this point that the scribe in A. has begun to write over again from *Captæ sunt treugæ* (p. 311).

[4] *gratiam suam*, MS.

A.D. 1392. posuit se venire Londonias, et occurrerunt ei cives equestres multitudine quasi innumerabili; et qui non habebant equos dederunt [se] ei obviam pedestres; mulieres quoque et infantes se ei monstraverunt. Episcopus quoque Londoniensis cum cœtu cleri totius civitatis nullo ordine vel gradu, aut conditione vel sexu ecclesiasticæ dignitatis excusato cum ingenti honoris tripudio, et regi et reginæ processit obviam. Fertur in illa processione plusquam quingentos pueros in superpelliciis extitisse. Insuper et cives ornaverunt facies domorum et camerarum suarum per omnes vicos, plateas, et stratas quo rex et regina transituri erant a sancto Georgio usque ad Westmonasterium, saltem in dignioribus ædificiis, vestibus cultioribus, aureis et argenteis, velvetis, syndonicis sicladibus, aliisque pretiosis prout possibilitas cujuscumque attingere poterat ut ubique aquæductu in Chepa vinum rubeum et album affluenter emanante, puero quoque in vestibus albis in forma angeli cum cupa aurea desuper stante, et vinum regi et reginæ ad bibendum offerente. Interea offerunt regi unam coronam auream magni pretii, et alteram coronam auream reginæ; et post pusillum procedentes conferunt regi unam tabulam auream de Trinitate ad pretium octingentarum librarum. Similiter et reginæ aliam tabulam auream de sancta Anna quam ipsa[1] in speciali devotione habebat, eo quod ipsamet Anna vocabatur; et tantos ac tales honores et mirabiles regi impenderunt quales nulli alii regi hujus regni retroactis temporibus meminimus impensos fuisse. Sicque progredientes perduxerunt regem et reginam in aulam Westmonasteriensem. Rege vero sedente in sede regali et omni populo coram eo stante, quidam ex ore regis regratiabatur populo de innumerositate magnifici honoris et immensæ

He is met by a grand procession.

Much decoration of the city.

Golden crowns offered to the king and queen.

The king and queen come to Westminster Hall.

Twys col. 2741.

[1] *quam ipsa*, om. MS.

munificentiæ ab eis regi impensa. Et quoad sua negotia incumbentia in proximo parliamento se debere habere finale responsum. A.D. 1392.

Wals. ii. 213. Hieme sequenti rediit curia regis, scilicet bancum de Eboraco et cancellaria de Notyngamia, usque Londonias. Rex celebravit parliamentum apud Wyntoniam, in quo concessa est regi una dimidia decima de clero, et una dimidia quintadecima de populo pro expensis pro futura pace tractanda inter regem Angliæ et regem Franciæ. In Quadragesima sequenti Johannes dux Lancastriæ, Thomas dux Gloucestriæ, magister Walterus Skirlowe episcopus Dunelmensis perrexerunt apud Calesiam ad tractandum de pace, ut supradictum est, inter regna, et circa festum Paschæ in Angliam redierunt. King's Bench and Chancery return to London. Embassy to Calais about peace.

Wals. ii. 213. Anno Domini MCCCXCIII. Johannes dux[1] Lancastriæ, Thomas dux Gloucestriæ cum supradictis sociis suis iterum secundo perrexerunt in æstate apud Calesiam pro pace tractanda; et ceperunt treugas cum Francis et Scotis pro quatuor annis et quatuor mensibus immediate sequentibus tam in mare quam in terris. A.D. 1393. A truce agreed on.

Wals. ii. 215. Anno Domini MCCCXCIV. in isto anno mortua est Anna regina, et sepulta est apud Westmonasterium in æstate. Eodem anno mortua est Constancia ducissa et uxor domini Johannis ducis Lancastriæ et apud Leycestriam Dominica proxima post festum apostolorum Petri et Pauli cum magno honore humata. Et in crastino, scilicet die Lunæ sequenti sepulta est Maria uxor domini Henrici comitis Derbeyæ filii ducis Lancastriæ in novo collegio apud Leycestriam. A.D. 1394. Death of Queen Anna.

Twys. col. 2742. In autumno sequenti dominus Johannes dux Lancastriæ perrexit in Acquitaniam cum grandi equitatu pro ducatu obtinendo, nam rex Ricardus ante fecerat eum ducem Wasconiæ et Acquitaniæ. Expedition of the duke of Lancaster to Acquitaine.

Wals. ii. 211. Rex restituit cives Londonienses ad sua pristina privilegia in isto parliamento. Circa festum sancti Privileges of the Londoners restored.

[1] *dux*, o.n. MS.

A.D. 1394. Michaelis proximo sequens rex Ricardus cum grandi exercitu perrexit in Hiberniam ad debellandum Hibernicos[1] sibi rebellantes. Et circa festum sancti Andreæ rex Ricardus celebravit parliamentum in Hibernia[2] apud Dubliniam,[3] et post Epiphaniam rex Ricardus misit dominum Thomas Wodestoke ducem Gloucestriæ in Angliam qui celebravit parliamentum nomine regis apud Westmonasterium, in quo concesserunt duas dimidias decimas de clero solvendas per vices. Eodem anno una dimidia quintadecima de populo. Wals. ii. 215. Wals. ii. 216.

Parliament in Ireland.

A.D. 1395. Anno Domini MCCCXCV. circa mensem Maii rex Ricardus rediit de Hibernia subpeditata terra in Angliam. Et dimisit in Hiberniam comitem Marchiæ cum multis aliis ad custodiendum terram. Et post natale Domini sequens dominus Johannes dux Lancastriæ rediit in Angliam de Vasconia et venit per Franciam. Wals. ii. 217.

The king returns from Ireland, and the duke of Lancaster from Gascony.

Rex Franciæ fecit convocationem de clero Franciæ ad investigandum potestatem duorum paparum quis eorum plenius jus haberet in cathedra Petri, nam schisma duorum paparum adhuc perseverat. Clerus vero scripsit pro Clemente papa suo Avinoniæ[4] et scriptum munierunt sigillo Parisiensis Universitatis. Quod quidem scriptum rex Franciæ Carolus transmisit Ricardo regi Angliæ ut in his dubiis delibareret cum consilio cleri sui. Igitur rex Ricardus fecit convocationem Oxoniæ de peritioribus theologis tam regentibus quam non regentibus totius regni. Qui scripserunt pro Urbano papa suo Romano, et scriptum signaculo Universitatis Oxoniensis fortificaverunt[5] regisque Ricardi, et transmiserunt Parisius regi Franciæ. Sed nihil ultra actum est de præmissis utroque papa sub umbraculo schismatis prævalentis justificante.

Assembly of French clergy to decide between the rival popes.

The French clergy declare for Pope Clement.

The theologians of Oxford declare for pope Urban.

[1] *Ibernicos*, A.
[2] *Ybernia*, MS.
[3] *Dunelmiam*, MSS.
[4] *suo Avinoniæ*, om. MS.
[5] MS. ends with *fortificaverunt*. In A. the original scribe adds the two next words, the remainder being in a different writing.

INDEX.

INDEX.

The variant spellings inserted in brackets are mainly due to a collation of Knigh to n text with Hamilton's edition of Hemingburgh.

A.

Abbeville, ii. 36, 37.
Abendoun, i. 6, 66.
Abrenythy, William, i. 469.
Accursius, i. 192.
Achaia, ii. 59.
Acre, i. 103, 135, 162, 163, 185, 259, 261, 264.
....., Ralph de, i. 465, 466.
Adam de Monte alto, i. 254.
Adelisa, wife of Roger, earl of Shropshire, i. 97.
Adelstan, i. 287, 315.
Adrian, Pope, i. 33, 135, 143, 144, 271, 291.
Africa, i. 21.
Agatha, daughter of the emperor Henry, i. 14.
....., mother of Edgar Atheling, i. 59.
Ageneys, ii. 88.
Agnes, sister of Ralph, earl of Chester, i. 211.
Aiguillon, ii. 40.
Alardus, lord, ii. 24.
Albanactus, i. 313.
Alberic the Cistercian, i. 107.
....., earl of Northumberland, i. 169.
Alberoche, ii. 32.
Albigenses, the, i. 185.
Alda, sister of Johannes Scoticus, i. 212.
Aldelm, St., i. 72.
Aldham, Franciscus de, i. 427, 438.
Aldred, bishop of York, i. 38, 41, 45, 46, 47, 51, 57, 58, 60, 61, 100, 102.
Alexander II., Pope, i. 60, 68, 71, 92.
... . III., Pope, i. 144, 150.
....., IV., Pope, i. 220, 221, 236.
Alexander, bishop of Lincoln, i. 62, 130, 131.
....., son of Malcolm of Scotland, i. 159.
....., king of Scotland, i. 210, 235, 283, 284, 287, 288, 318, 319, 401, 402, 474.
....., son of William of Scotland, i. 190, 284.
Alexandria, the patriarch of, i. 90.
Alfonsus, son of Edward I., i. 406.
Alfred, son of Ethelred, i. 8, 10, 53.
Alfritha (Elfritha), wife of K. Edgar, i. 5, 6, 7.
Alfwald, of Sherborne, i. 40.
Algar, son of Earl Leofric, i. 41, 44.
Algitha, wife of Harold, i. 57.
Alianor, daughter of king of Spain, i. 235.
..... (Eleanor), Queen of France, i. 141, 143, 147, 149, 160, 168.
....., sister of Arthur, niece of King John, i. 183.
....., daughter of Henry II., i. 141, 155.
....., daughter of King John, i. 65, 66, 184.
....., wife of Henry III., i. 212, 227.
....., wife of Edward I., i. 272, 284.
Allerdale (Allendale), i. 385.
Almannia, i. 45, 68, 86, 230, 233, 300, 461; ii, 37, 39, 69, 105.
Almaric, bishop, i. 175.
Alnett, ii. 68.
Alnoye, lord de, ii. 91.
Alnwick, i. 146.
Alquinus (Aquinas), Thomas, ii. 157.
Alspaye, Girard de, i. 429.
Alured, i. 36–41, 314.
Alvernia, i. 141.

Alwin, a monk, i. 102.
Alwyn, bishop of Winchester, i. 35.
Alythewerk, John de, ii. 29.
....., Emma, burned for murdering her husband, ii. 29.
Amaraduke, Reicius, i. 278.
Amaricus, i. 65, 66.
Ambresbury (Amesbury), i. 149.
Amicia, wife of Robert Bossu, i. 62–63, 147.
....., wife of Simon de Montfort, i. 63–64, 65.
Amiens, ii. 36, 49, 318.
Amisum, ii, 102.
Anacletus, i. 126.
Anandia, i. 375, 388, 389.
Anastasius, Pope, i. 135, 143.
Andover, i. 149.
Andrew, St. (patron of Rochester), 1, 8.
Angeres, duke of, ii. 121.
Anglesea, i. 105, 128, 276, 289.
Anjou, i. 131, 141, 149, 177, 181, 183, 197; ii. 113, 121.
....., Stephen, governor of, i. 169.
Anlaf, King of the Danes, i. 9.
Anna, daughter of king of Bohemia, wife of Richard II., ii. 150, 151, 294, 320, 321.
Anselm, i. 37, 73, 87, 98, 104, 109, 110, 113, 114, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 123.
Antioch, i. 223.
Antwerp, i. 478; ii. 4, 9, 13, 271.
Anysty, ii. 74.
Apocalypse, the, i. 46.
Apulia, i. 45, 46, 87, 104, 114, 115, 153, 229, 233, 236.
....., Robert, duke of, i. 72.
Aquilonares clerici, i. 267.
Aquitaine, i. 141, 429; ii. 21, 65, 113, 243, 321.
....., Seir de, i. 208.
Aragon, i. 278.
Aras, Robert, lord, ii. 91.
Arcubus, ecclesia de (St. Mary le Bow), i. 95.
Arden, Herandus of, i. 24, 25.
....., John de, ii. 112, 113.
Arderne, Ralph de, i. 252.
Are, town of, i. 375.
Argentan, ii. 87.
Argention, lord, ii. 92.
Argentyne, Giles de, i. 410.
Argum, Ralph, ii. 298.
Aristotle, i. 165.
Arlet, mother of William the Conqueror, i. 15, 16.
Armachanus (Armagh), i. 145.
....., Richard, archbishop, ii. 93, 115.
Armenak, Ermyngnac, count of, ii. 19, 32, 78, 111, 114.
Armenia, i. 223, 460.
Arras, ii. 7.
Arthur, king, i. 149, 150, 314.
....., nephew of K. John, i. 190, 199.
....., son of Geoffrey, i. 177, 181, 183.
Artois, ii. 49, 106.
....., count of, i. 362, 363; ii. 25, 26.
Arundel, Edmund, earl of, i. 436.
....., Hugh, earl of, i. 433.
....., countess of, ii. 31.
....., Thomas de, bishop of Ely, ii. 216, 220, 224, 245, 247, 272, 298.
....., earl of, i. 394, 427, 466; ii. 2, 25, 29, 76, 78, 224, 226, 232, 234, 241, 242, 245, 246, 249, 251, 255, 259, 271, 272, 273, 274, 286, 288, 289, 290, 313.
Asia Minor, i. 48, 49.
Asseles (Asthelle), earl of Athol, i. 306, 430, 468, 473, 474, 475.
Assure, count de, ii. 91.
Asteleye, Giles de, i. 410.
....., Nicholas de, i. 410.
Aston, John, ii. 171, 176, 264.
Astyngfeld, James de, ii. 14.
Athedell (Athol), earl of, i. 462.
Athelstane, i. 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 26, 27.
Aubeneye, lord, ii. 91.
Audeley, Hugh de. *See* Daudeleye.
Audulph, count of Boulogne, i. 20.
Augusta (Aosta), city of, i. 118.
Augustine, i. 68, 69, 70, 81, 126.
Aumale, count of, ii. 121.
....., countess of, ii. 36.
Aumartyn, count de, ii. 90.
Aungelmosia, ii. 114.
Aunservill, earl of, ii. 90.
Aurilions (Orleans), ii. 102, 111, 112.
Aurora, book of poems, i. 145.
Austin Friars, i. 225.

Australis (?), Rye, ii. 10.
Autry, ii. 108.
Auvergne, ii. 88.
Aversa, bishop of, in Apulia, i. 46.
Avignon, ii. 59, 77, 78, 102, 115, 129, 322.
Aycheburnham, Bartholomew de, i. 427, 438.
Aykwardus (abbas), i. 5.

B.

Babylon, ii. 154.
Badenough, John of, i. 375.
Baddysmere, Bartholomew de, i. 422, 427.
Baker, Thomas, ii. 131.
Baldoc, Robert de, i. 432, 436, 437, 439, 440.
Baldwin, count of Flanders, i. 37, 39, 131, 181.
Baldwyn, Cistercian prior, i. 142, 150, 151, 152, 156, 158, 166.
Baleferroynagg, earl of, ii. 90.
Balerynge, Edward, ii. 319.
Baliol, Edward, son of John Baliol, i. 293, 294, 299, 459, 461, 465, 470, 471, 473, 475, 477; ii. 30, 47, 85, 119.
....., Guy de, i. 255.
....., John, King of Scotland, i. 212, 285, 286, 289, 292, 294, 298, 299, 300, 302, 306, 308, 311, 312, 320, 321, 322, 338, 359, 459.
Balle, John, ii. 131, 139, 140, 150, 151, 170.
Bamborough Castle, i. 459, 475, ii. 44, 146.
Banaude, David, ii. 43.
Banastre, Adam de, i. 409, 410.
Banbury, i. 409.
Bancaster, John de, ii. 68.
Bannockburn, i. 409, 410.
Barbeflete, i. 124.
Bares, earl of, i. 284.
Barnardus, abbat, i. 143.
Barowe, ii. 193.
....., Richard, ii. 264.
Barrennus, archiepiscopus, ii. 128.
Barfleet, ii. 32.
Bartyn, Baldwin, ii. 106.
Barwe, ii. 199.
Basingwork, monastery of, i. 144.
Basset, Philip, i. 241, 242, 250.
....., de Drayton, Ralph, i. 222, 255, 430; ii. 244.
Bassett, de Weldon, Richard, i. 410.
Bath and Wells, i. 72.
....., John of, ii. 139.
Battle abbey, i. 54, 55, 77.
Bayonne, i. 342, 343, 361, 362, 363, 364.
Bealmont, count de, ii. 91.
....., Henry de, i. 440, 450, 451, 458, 462, 471.
Bealreu, lord of, ii. 68.
Bearne, Dascinum de, *v. s.* Biern.
Beatrice, daughter of Henry III, i. 227, 269.
Beauchamp, John de, i. 255, 256, 294; ii. 68.
....., William de, governor of Calais, ii. 206, 210, 212, 233, 243, 244, 251.
Beaumont, lord of, ii. 240, 241. *See also* Bewmont.
Beaumund, i. 43, 103.
Beaurepair, ii. 42.
Beche, Reginald de la, i. 463.
Bedford, castle, i. 130.
....., round table of, i. 449.
Bede, i. 60, 68.
....., monastery of, i. 60.
....., history of, i. 68.
Bek, Antony de, bishop of Durham, i. 346, 348, 356, 360, 396.
Bekherlewyn, i. 37.
Beler, Roger, i. 432.
Belgrave, ii. 96, 126.
Belismes, Robert de, i. 116.
Belknappe, Robert, ii. 211, 237, 258, 292, 294, 296.
Bella Landa (Byland), monastery of, i. 428.
Bellere, Robert, ii. 46.
Bellum Mariscum (Beaumaris), i. 289.
Belvill, ii. 44 113.

Belynus, i. 314.
Benedictus, Pope, 45, 60, 106, 107.
..... III., Pope, i. 332, 333.
..... IX., i. 18.
..... XII., Pope, i. 471; ii. 23, 83.
Bentley, Walter de, ii. 73.
Beorn, Count, i. 38, 40.
Bereldus, Albinensis, i. 354.
Berengaria, daughter of the King of Navarre, i. 161.
Berengarius, archdeacon, i. 45, 46, 89, 90.
Berewode, ii. 112.
Berfelde, Roger de, i. 425, 437.
Berford, Baldwin, ii. 257.
Berforde, Simon de, i. 432, 453, 458.
Berithеforde (Betrithforde), i. 27, 28.
Berkeley castle, i. 42, 443, 444, 452, 455, 458.
....., Thomas of, i. 444.
Bernarde, Frons, i. 460.
Bermondsey, i. 77.
Bernardus, abbat of Clairvaux, i. 135, 136.
Bernyrers (Bernerys), James, ii. 256, 294.
Berry, ii. 88.
Bertham, Roger, i. 243.
Bertram, Gurdon, i. 176, 342.
Berwick, i. 209, 311, 358, 371, 377, 383, 394, 395, 398, 400, 464, 468, 471; ii. 23, 47, 57, 81, 84, 85, 98.
....., surrendered to English, i. 470.
Beverley, ii. 43, 44, 233.
....., John of, i. 60, 315.
Bevosina (Beauce), ii. 112.
Bervall, lord, ii. 91.
Bewmont, lord, ii. 257, 260, 309, 314.
Biern, Gaston de, i. 209.
Bigot, Hugh, i. 248.
....., John, Marshal, ii. 109.
....., Roger, i. 178, 391.
Bingham, Oliver de, i. 453.
Birkelanus, king of Denmark, i. 19.
Bishopthorpe, ii. 206.
Bishops wood, ii, 242.
Black death, pestilence, ii. 58.
Blackheath, gathering on, ii. 131.
Blackholme, i. 439.
Blackstone, Thomas de, ii. 194.
Blake, John, ii. 240, 276, 284, 292, 294.
Blakelowe, near Warwick, i. 409.
Blakhamore, i. 428.
Blancburgh, ii. 17.
Blanche, daughter of Henry Earl of Lancaster, ii. 134.
....., daughter of King of France, i. 332.
Blaunceo, lord de, ii. 91.
Blaunchemeyne, Robert, i. 62, 63, 64.
Blayne (Blaye), i. 341, 343, 344, 360.
Blesens (Blois), duchess of, i. 138.
Bleynes, Bernard de, i, 209.
Bloys, Charles de, duke of Brittany, ii. 24, 25, 29, 49, 55, 77, 86, 95, 121.
....., Humphrey de, ii. 43.
....., John, ii. 291.
Bluet, Robert, i. 96, 97.
Bodenyll, i. 477.
Bohemia, King of, ii. 12, 34, 37, 38, 54, 56, 124, 150.
Bolonia (Boulogne), ii. 9, 68, 110, 210.
Bolton, John de, ii. 209.
Boniface, archbishop of, Canterbury, i. 268.
....., VIII., Pope, i. 283, 290, 291, 298, 312, 324, 332, 353, 360, 396, 397, 399, 401, 403, 405.
Bononia (Bologna), i. 135, 192.
Boothull, i. 459.
Borogwas (Borgwash), Bartholomew de, ii. 76, 108.
Borowasch, Henry, i. 451.
Borogwas, Henry de, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 2, 5, 17.
Boroughbridge, i. 425.
Borowe, William, ii. 258.
Bossu, Robert of (son of Robert Mellent), i. 62, 63, 147.
Botoler, Edmund, i. 450.
Botolph's, St. (Boston), i. 280, 281.
Boun, Edward de, i. 471.
....., Humphrey de, i. 208, 240, 246, 390, 421.
....., William de, i. 478.
Bourbon, duke of, ii. 78.
....., James de, ii. 71, 90.
Bourg, i. 340, 341, 343, 344, 360.
Boutevilayn (Untevilayn), Robert, i. 243.
Bowne, ii. 129.

Bowne, William, earl of Northampton, ii. 4.
Bowsers, lord le, ii. 210.
Boyde, Thomas, ii. 44.
Boyland, Richard de, judge, i. 279.
Boys, Humphrey de, i. 468.
....., Richard de, i. 341.
Boyt, Roger, i. 468.
Boyth, Robert, i. 469.
Brabant, ii. 6, 39, 105.
....., duke of, i. 284; ii. 6, 10, 11, 13, 19, 34, 99.
Brackley, hospital, i. 64.
Bradwardyn, Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 63.
Brakemont, lord, ii. 109.
Brandenburgh, marquis of, ii. 11.
Breaus (Bruce), William de, i. 190, 211, 225.
Brechin, i. 307.
Brechnor, i. 97.
Brembre, Nicholas de, ii. 138.
Brembylle, Nicholas, ii. 236, 241, 242, 249, 257, 272, 273, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 282, 283, 284, 285, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 293.
Brennus, i. 314.
Breut, Faulco de (Fulk de Breauté), i. 209.
Brest, ii. 24, 26, 208, 209, 234, 240, 286.
Bret, lord of, ii. 13, 22.
Breteuil, ii. 86.
Bretigny, terms of peace of, ii. 113.
Bribi (Scriby), Philip de, i. 243.
Bricius (sanctus), i. 9.
Briggerake, ii. 32.
Brightwell, Nicholas, ii. 258.
....., Thomas, ii. 264.
Bristhwoldus, bishop of Wilton, i. 15.
Bristol, i. 39, 47, 183, 199, 249, 432, 433; ii. 61, 179, 256.
Britons, i. 58.
Brittany, i. 16, 226; ii. 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 31, 49, 55, 67, 74, 77, 86, 96, 121, 129, 208, 234, 240.
....., duchess of, ii. 132.
....., duke of, ii. 129, 200, 208.
....., earl of, i. 396.
....., John of, i. 224, 340, 341, 364.
Brok, Louis, ii. 92.
Bromeleygh, i. 43.
Bruce, Alexander de, i. 463.
....., David, i. 476, 477; ii. 22, 46, 69.
....., Edward, brother of Robert Bruce, i. 409, 411, 412.
....., Peter de, i. 267.
....., Robert, i. 212, 224, 241, 247, 285, 301, 310, 332, 333, 359, 399, 404, 405, 409, 411, 412, 413, 447; ii. 23.
....., Robert, earl of Karyng, i. 463.
....., Robert the Younger, i. 372, 452.
....., Nele, brother of Robert, i. 404, 463.
....., William le, i. 63.
Bruer, William de la, earl Ferrers, i. 208.
Bruges, i. 370; ii. 60, 105.
Brun, lord of, ii. 88, 92.
Bruno, i. 75.
Brunswick, duke of, ii. 69, 70, 72.
Brusse, viscount de, ii. 91.
Brussegardus, lord de, ii. 88, 92. Also written Bricius Gauth.
Brutus, i. 313.
Bryant, lord of, ii. 49.
Brythyne, Patrick de, i. 470.
Buckingham, John, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 160, 164, 167, 192, 193, 197.
Bughun (Bughan), John de, i. 375.
Bulloc, Sir William, i. 473.
Bulloun, duke of, ii. 91.
Burborghe, ii. 199, 200.
Burdegalum (Bordeaux), i. 278, 341, 360, 361; ii. 88, 92, 94, 99.
Burdun, Maurice, i. 122, 123.
Burgh, John de, i. 246.
....., William de, ii. 237, 292, 294.
....., abbat of, ii. 104.
....., monastery of (Peterborough), i. 99.
Burgilli, i. 58.
Burgundy, i. 17, 106, 135; ii. 110.
....., duke of, ii. 40, 110.
....., marshal of, ii. 88, 92.
Burle, Richard de, ii. 207.
Burleigh, Thomas de, i. 434.
Burley, Simon, ii. 256, 294.
Burnelle, lord le, ii. 257.
Burstalle, ii. 126.
Burton-on-Trent, i. 422, 423.

Burways (Borogwas), Bartholomew de, i. 434.
Buttore, Baldwin de, ii. 108.
Bychet, Nicholas, ii. 18.
Bymeswelle, ii. 126.
Byrgum, i. 360.

C.

Cadomus, i. 115.
Cäerlaverock, i. 472 ; ii. 47.
Caphai, port of, i. 163.
Calabria, i. 75, 144, 161, 236.
Calais, ii. 39, 41, 42, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 58, 60, 68, 71, 76, 78, 81, 82, 84, 100, 105, 113, 114, 117, 120, 210, 243, 244, 250, 260, 270, 286, 308, 321.
Caldecote, Robert de, i. 469.
Calgeserz, ii. 28.
Cambowe, William de, i. 470.
Cambray, ii. 9, 10, 11.
Cambridge, parliament at, ii. 298, 299.
Cambridgeshire, ii. 141.
Cambron, John de, i. 470.
Camne, John, ii. 207.
Camodum (Caen), ii. 33, 34, 35, 76.
Camoys, Thomas, ii. 257.
Campbell, Duncan, i. 469.
Candyche, John de, ii. 140, 150.
Canevile, Gerard, i. 196.
Canterbury, i. 69, 70, 110, 183, 216 ; ii. 125, 165.
....., gun of, ii. 199.
....., Robert, archbishop of, i. 53, 60.
....., Stephen of, i. 156.
....., storm at, i. 267.
....., Thomas of, i. 144, 145, 148, 152, 154, 207, 210.
....., William, Archbishop of, ii. 226, 232, 245.
..... William of, i. 129.
Canute, king of Denmark, i. 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19, 27, 28, 29, 42, 60, 74, 76, 86, 287, 316.
Caours (Caurs), ii. 113.
Cardiff, i. 127, 145.
Carentan, ii. 33, 87.
Careter, Patrick, i. 469.
Carlisle, i. 97, 129, 384, 388; ii. 33, 47, 81, 203, 205, 298.
....., John of, i. 469.
Carmelites, the, ii. 59, 163.
Carnarvon, i. 277, 349.
Carr, John, ii, 288, 292, 294, 296.
Carrick, ii. 57.
....., earl of, i. 372, 468, 469 ; ii. 43.
Carter, Jack, ii. 138, 139.
Carthusian order, i. 75, 149.
Cassanus, King of Tharsis, i. 460.
Casselys, ii. 199.
Cassilia (Cashel), i. 145.
Castellon (Castlenau), i. 340.
Castile, ii. 122.
Catenesia, ii. 111.
Cateneys (Caithness), i. 403.
....., duke of, ii. 91.
Catherine, daughter of Henry III., i. 269.
....., daughter of John duke of Lancaster, ii. 208.
....., St., image of, burnt to make a fire, ii. 182, 184.
Catynggam (Cothingham), i. 399.
Caumbrezyne, ii. 10, 11.
Caurs (Cahors), ii. 114.
Caux, Ballivus de, ii. 109.
....., John de, i. 273.
Celestinus II., Pope. i. 133, 159, 160, 175.
..... IV., i. 213, 217, 283.
..... V., Pope, i. 290, 300.
Celius, mount, near Ephesus, i. 48.
Cenomania (Le Mans), i. 16, 141, 153, 171, 177, 181, 183.
Cernay, ii. 107.
Cestrensis (=Higden), i. 2, 10.
Chalons, ii. 110.
....., battle of, i. 266.
Chamberlain, Robert, i. 280.
Champagne, ii. 106.
Chandos, John, ii. 107, 121, 122.
Charent, river, ii. 113.
Charles, King of France, ii. 199, 200, 211, 214.
..... the Great, i. 20, 133.

Charles, brother of King of France, i. 218, 221, 233, 234, 258, 294, 298, 299, 336, 340, 345, 448.
Charleton, John de, i. 436.
Charnell, William, i. 426, 438.
Charnelies, Eymerus de, ii, 24.
Charnys, Geoffrey, ii. 25, 26, 89, 91.
Chartres, ii. 112.
Chasteleyn, John de, ii. 73.
Chateau neuf, ii. 39.
Chaungger, Robert, lord, ii. 92.
Cheapside, ii. 320.
..... aqueduct in, i. 270.
Cherbourg, ii. 286.
Chester, i. 57, 98, 117, 125, 127, 211, 213, 277, 289; ii. 75, 76, 126, 213, 250.
....., Hugh, earl of, i. 98, 105, 116.
....., Ranulph, earl of, i. 65, 186, 208, 209, 210, 211.
....., Richard, earl of, i. 124, 125.
Chesterfield, i. 255.
Chesulden, William, ii. 264.
Chichester, Thomas bishop of, ii. 240.
Chilkham, i. 474.
Chiltecumba, i. 25.
Chipping Norton, ii. 252.
Christ Church, priory, i. 110.
Christiana, sister of Edgar Atheling, i. 75.
Christofora, ship, ii. 18.
Cistercian, Order, i. 106, 107, 135, 209, 234.
Citha, wife of Godwin, i. 59.
Clare, Gilbert de, Earl of Gloucester, i. 240, 246, 284, 359.
....., Richard de, i. 220, 221.
....., Robert de, i. 251.
....., Thomas de, i. 224.
Clarence, Clara, duchess of, ii. 119.
....., Lionel, duke of, ii. 123.
Clavelle, John, i. 469.
Clement, antipope, ii. 129, 173, 178, 198.
....., Pope, i. 75.
..... II., Pope, i. 18.
..... III., Pope, i. 152, 189.
..... IV., Pope, i. 223, 224, 234, 251, 256, 258, 267, 271, 291.
..... V., Pope, i. 125, 333, 411.
..... VI., Pope, ii. 23, 73, 83, 322.
Clene, Reginald, i. 468.
Clerkenwell, ii. 136, 254.
....., prior of, i. 135.
Clermont, John, Marshal of France, ii. 71, 73, 91.
....., Robert, Marshal of Flanders, ii. 89, 96.
Clifford, ii. 256, 257.
....., Louis, ii. 181.
....., Robert de, i, 388, 410.
....., Roger de, i. 224, 241, 275, 422, 426, 434.
Clynton, William de, i. 478.
Clyssons, ii. 206.
Clyssons, Lord de, ii. 28. 211.
Clyve, forest of, ii. 118.
Cloune, Cornelius, ii. 163.
Clowne, William de, abbat of Leicester, ii. 117, 125, 127.
Cobbeham, John, lord of, ii. 234, 226, 232, 243.
Cobham, Reginald de, ii. 18, 36.
....., Thomas de, i. 409.
Cockefelde, Robert de, i. 345.
Cocodale (valley of Coquet), i. 304.
Coinage, a new, ii. 30.
Cok, Thomas, seneschal of Gascony, ii. 57.
Cokerham, burning of, i. 476.
Cokermewe (Cockermouth), i. 385.
Colibrand, giant, i. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27.
Colne, ii. 114.
Cologne, i. 45, 478; ii. 56, 58, 69, 70.
....., archbishop of, ii. 55.
....., Ralph, bishop of, i. 145, 149.
Colpeir, Thomas, i. 427.
Columpna (Colonna), i. 291.
Colvyll, lord, ii. 102.
Combrenouth, i. 473.
Comestor, Petrus, i. 144.
Comet, a (Stella comata), i. 49, 103.
Compyn, ii. 7.
Comyn, John, i. 241, 247, 404.
....., de Badenhauth, John, i. 306, 312, 333.
....., de Loughmaban, John, i. 301.
....., Walter, i. 465.
Condre, Robert de, i. 470.
Conrad, duke of Bavaria, i. 130, 133, 135.

Conrad, marquis of Tyre, i. 162, 163, 164.
Constance, daughter of King of Spain, ii. 123.
....., sister of the King of France, i. 130.
....., widow of Geoffrey, wife of Ralph, earl of Chester i. 152, 181.
....., daughter of Rudulph de Fengere, wife of Ranulph, earl of Chester, i. 181.
Constantin, island of, ii. 86.
Constantine, Emperor of Rome, his sword, i. 20, 24.
Constantinople, i. 17.
Constantinus, King of Scotland, i. 315.
Conway, i. 290.
Copeland, John, ii. 44, 117.
Corbella, abbat of, ii. 38.
Correbrig, Thomas de, archbishop of York, i. 400, 403.
Cordon, Adam de, i. 469.
Corinth, ii. 59.
Cornisgate, i. 6.
Cornwall, William, earl of, i. 116.
Cosynton, Stephen de, ii. 122.
Coucy, lord of, ii. 121.
Courmassy (Cormicy), ii. 108.
Courtemantel, Henry, i. 127.
Courtenay, earl of Devonshire, ii. 25.
....., Hugo de, i 478.
....., William, ii. 311.
Courthous, Robert, i. 72, 124.
Coventry, i. 43, 44, 209; ii. 150, 198.
....., court at, ii. 235.
....., Robert of, i. 74.
Coweswath, ii. 97.
Crabbe, John, i. 464.
Cranforde, John de, ii. 43.
Creke, i. 128.
Creshyngham, Hugh de, i.371, 379, 382.
Cressentius, i. 71.
Cressy, ii. 37, 41, 54, 56, 124.
Cricklade, i. 99.
Cristinus de Harde, i. 470.
Cromwell, John, i. 431.
Crotoye, ii. 36.
Crowland, monastery, i. 72.
Croxton Abbey, i. 433.
Croydon, i. 250.
Crudworthe, ii. 112.
Cumberland, i. 385.
Cumburmer (Combermere), priory of, i. 127.
Cundy, John de, ii. 18.
Cuthbert, St., i. 40, 41, 109, 117, 385.
Cynerinum (St. Sarini), i. 342, 345.
Cyninges, i. 83.
Cyprus, i. 161, 162, 165; ii. 60.
Cyprus, king of, ii. 118.
Cyret, Hugh, admiral, ii. 18.

D.

Dacia (Denmark), i. 10, 13, 15, 19, 22, 23, 27, 37, 58, 74, 86, 287.
Dacres, lord, ii. 309.
Dadyngton, i. 409.
Daedalus, i. 49.
Dagworthe, Nicholas, ii. 121, 256.
....., Thomas, i. 49, 55, 67, 77.
Dalby, ii. 119, 126.
Dalneys, ii. 88.
Damietta, i. 206, 207, 209, 218.
....., capture of, i. 207, 208.
Damme, i. 371; ii. 200, 214.
Dammeroy, i. 422, 427.
Dancastria (Doncaster), ii. 119.
Danegeld, i. 82, 83, 129.
Danelaga, i. 84.
Danes, the, i. 8, 9, 10, 11, 19, 24, 26, 28, 29, 30, 36, 37, 40, 60, 76, 97.
D'Angely, ii. 115.
Dangill, Gychard, ii. 122.
Darcy, John, ii. 25.
....., Lord Admiral, ii. 211.
Darenhale, i. 212.
Darnergoil (Devergoil), daughter of Alan de Glewy, i. 212.
Dars, Richard, lord, ii. 91.
Daudeleye, Hugh, i. 422, 427, 438, 450, 458, 478; ii. 31.
..... Nicholas, i. 306.
David, king of Scotland, i. 128, 129, 130, 132, 139; ii. 25, 41, 43, 56, 75, 76, 95, 98, 117.
....., king of Tartary, i. 181.

David, count, of Scotland, i. 210, 211, 213, 287, 317, 318.
....., earl of Huntingdon, i. 285.
....., son of Griffin, i. 220, 234, 273, 274, 275, 277.
....., son of Malcolm, King of Scotland, i. 59.
Dayne (d'Aigne), ii. 108.
Daynill (Dayvill), John, i. 255, 256.
Deerne, count of, ii. 122.
Denbigh, i. 277.
Derby, Henry, earl of, ii. 4, 17, 23, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 39, 54, 79, 129, 132, 207, 252, 253, 271, 274, 290, 314, 321.
Dermouth (Dartmouth), ii. 309.
Despenser, Hugh, i. 222, 240, 254, 306, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 439, 440.
....., Hugh, junior, i. 443, 446; ii. 31, 235.
D'Eu, Eawe, count, ii. 33, 76, 90.
Devereux, John, ii. 226, 232.
Devonshire, earl of, ii. 234.
Dexter, Roger, ii. 313.
Deyncourte, lord, ii. 42, 102.
Deyvile, Gosellinus, i. 426.
Diatim, i. 1.
Diceto, Ralph de, i. 287.
Dicsmyt, ii. 199.
Dieulacres, abbey, of, ii. 75.
Dingeley, John, ii. 119.
Dives, Edward, i. 213.
Dominican order, the, i. 183, 191.
Dondena, marshal, ii. 79, 91.
Dormoys, ii. 107, 108.
Dorsetania (Dorsetshire), i. 10.
Dorobernia, i. 110.
Douay, i. 370.
Douglas, Archibald, i. 464, 465, 466, 468, 473; ii. 297.
....., Henry, ii. 203.
....., James, i. 445, 460, 468, 469.
....., William, i. 305, 371, 373, 376, 377, 467, 468, 469, 475; ii. 23, 42, 43, 85, 86.
....., ..., brother of William Douglas, i. 43.
....., earl of, ii. 147.
Dover, i. 38, 199, 205, 250, 352; ii. 223, 256.
....., Richard, prior of, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 148, 150.
Downs, the, ii. 80.
Drayton, i. 222.
....., Simon de, ii. 104.
Dromundes (ships), i. 422.
Dryngham, castle of, ii. 199.
Dublin, ii. 322.
....., marquis of, ii. 205, 215.
....., Robert, archbishop of, ii. 240.
Dunbar, i. 306, 307; ii. 2, 4.
....., earl of, ii. 147.
Duncan, son of Malcolm, i. 91, 98, 316.
Dunchurch, ii. 199.
Dundalk, i. 412.
Dunfermline, i. 462.
Dunkeld, Matthew, bishop of, i. 292, 294.
Dunmore, i. 222.
Dunstan, St., i. 5, 6, 7, 8, 93.
Dunwald, brother of Malcolm, i. 97, 98.
Dunwallus, i. 314.
Durham, i. 73; ii. 22, 41, 42, 117.
....., monks of, ii. 42, 43.
....., John, bishop of, ii. 240.
....., Ranulph, bishop of, i. 113.
....., William, bishop of, i. 109.
....., Walter, bishop of, i. 109.
Durvayl, lord of, ii. 49.
Dygham (Ingham), Oliver de, seneschal of Gascony, ii. 1.
Dysenay, Guy, son of king John, i. 202.
Dyvelyn (Dublin), ii. 91.

E.

East Anglia, i. 13, 38.
..... Saxony, i. 38.
Eawe, *v. s.* D'Eu.
Edgar Atheling, i. 42, 50, 51, 57, 59, 71, 75, 95.
....., Duke of Devonshire, i. 5.
....., son of Malcolm of Scotland, i. 59, 317.

Edgar, king of England, i. 4, 5, 7, 50, 287, 315.
Edgiva, daughter of Ethelred, i. 8.
Edinburgh, ii. 85, 147, 204, 205.
Edith, queen, wife of King Edward, i. 67.
....., daughter of King Edgar, i. 5.
Edmenis, monk of Canterbury, i. 118.
Edmund of Abendon, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 212, 213, 214, 218, 226, 228.
Edmund of Canterbury, i. 65.
....., son of King Edgar, i. 5.
....., son of Henry III., i. 66.
....., son of Edward I., earl of Kent, i. 332, 401, 406, 427, 431, 444, 452 456.
....., son of Edward III., ii. 123.
..... Ironside, i. 8, 10, 13, 27, 41, 51, 155, 316.
....., king of England, i. 4, 20.
....., count of Leicester, son of Henry III., i. 227, 236, 263, 269, 289, 332, 337, 338, 350, 352, 360, 361, 362.
..... of Woodstock, i. 444.
Edred, king, i. 315.
Edric, earl of Salisbury, i. 9, 10, 11, 12, 14.
Edsius, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 35, 38.
Edward (son of Emma), i. 30, 35, 36, 37, 38.
....., son of Malcom, i. 97.
....., King (the Martyr), i. 5, 6, 7.
....., the Confessor, i. 3, 8, 10; ii. 215.
....., I., King, i. 41, 42, 47, 48, 49, 50, 53, 66, 102, 127, 213. 219, 222, 224, 227, 253, 242, 246, 247, 248, 249, 251, 252, 253, 254, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 269, 271, 272, 273, 274, 276, 277, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 298, 299, 300, 302, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 328, 331, 332, 333, 334, 337, 339, 346, 351, 353, 365, 369, 373, 389, 393, 395, 397, 398, 400, 402, 404, 405, 406, 446, 449.
....., II., son of Edward I., i. 228, 277, 332, 334, 366, 389, 392, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 410, 423, 428, 429, 435, 442, 444, 446, 448, 453; ii. 10.
Edward III. i. 409, 429, 430, 431, 433, 441, 442, 443, 448, 451, 452, 459, 461, 466, 470, 472, 477, 478, 479; ii. 1, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 23, 26, 27, 28, 29, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 39, 40, 41, 44, 46, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 60, 67, 75, 80, 83, 85, 88, 94, 98, 101, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 115, 119, 120, 124, 136, 218, 224, 299.
....., IV., i. 459.
....., Prince of Wales (the Black Prince), ii. 34, 37, 52, 75, 79, 84, 87, 88, 89, 93, 116, 117, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127.
Edwardstowe, i. 7.
Edwy, King of England, i. 45.
Edwyn, Duke of Mercia, i. 52, 57, 59, 66.
....., brother of Edmund, i. 13, 20.
....., son of Ethelred, i. 8.
Egelfleda, wife of King Edgar, i. 5.
Egelnotus, Archbishop of Canterbury, i. 15.
Egelredus (Ethelred) King of England, i. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 14, 298, 299, 316.
Egelwold, King, i. 18.
Egelwyn, bishop of Durham, i. 66.
Egermorth (Aiguesmortes), i. 258.
Egidius, lord, brother of King of Navarre, ii. 73.
Egiva, i. 38.
Eierent, Facundus de, i. 197.
Eleanor, daughter of Edward II., i. 448 461.
Elferus, i. 6, 7.
Elfredus (son of Emma), i. 30.
Elfritha = Alfritha.
Elfwordus, bp. of London, i. 36.
Elgiva, wife of Canute, i. 28, 29.
Elman, William, ii. 256.
Elmsbrigge, Roger de, i. 427, 438.
Elphegus, bishop of Winchester, i. 9.
Eltham, ii. 215, 216.
....., John de, i. 434, 449, 477.
Ely, i. 30, 66, 439; ii. 224.
....., Hervey, bishop of, i. 118.
....., Nigel, bishop of, i. 130.
....., William, bishop of, i. 157, 158, 169, 160, 165, 171, 172, 173.
Emanuel of Constantinople, i. 144.

Emma, wife of Canute, i. 28, 29, 30, 35, 39, 53.
....., wife of King Ethelred, i. 8, 9, 10, 14.
Enendus, i. 472.
Engan, John de, ii. 104.
Enguesham monastery, i. 96.
Enposte, Chastel de, ii. 90.
Ephesus, i. 48.
Erdyngton, Thomas de, ii. 241.
Ermin street, i. 83.
Ermyngnat, John, count of. *See* Armenac.
Erne (the river), i. 462.
Espec, Walter, i. 106.
Essex, ii. 140.
Estaples, ii. 39, 68.
Esthonia (Estlandia), ii. 66.
Estirlinges, merchants, ii. 105.
Estreby, Philip de, i. 146.
Ethelgiva, wife of King Ethelred, i. 8.
Ethelred, i. 38.
Ethelstanus, son of Ethelred, i. 8.
Ethelwaldus, i. 5.
Eton, i. 62, 63, 147.
Ettrick forest, ii. 86.
Eugenia, wife of Lucian, i. 44.
Eugenius, King of Cumberland, i. 315.
....., III., Pope, i. 133, 135.
Eurose, John de, ii. 224, 243.
Eustace, count of Boulogne, son of k. Stephen, i. 38, 59, 130.
....., abbot of Flay, i. 182, 183.
Eva, ii. 184.
Evesham, i. 36.
....., battle of, i. 222.
....., monastery of, i. 44, 66.
Exeter, i. 110, 129.
....., Thomas bishop of, i. 224, 226, 232.
Exseldesham (Hexham), i. 385, 386, 387.
Exton, Nicholas de, Mayor of London, ii. 216, 255.
Eyre, le (the court of justice), ii. 75.
Ezabell, daughter of Malcolm King of Scots, i. 64.

F.

Facunberge, ii. 7, 11.
Falconer, John, ii. 203.
Falkirk, battle of, i. 399.
Fanketon (Franketon), Stephen de, i. 276.
Faricius, abbat of Abindon, i. 120.
Faversham, monastery of, i. 136, 138.
Felicia, daughter of the earl of Warwick, i. 21.
Fengere, Ralph de, i. 181.
Ferers, John earl, i. 64.
....., Margaret countess, i. 64.
....., Robert earl, i. 64, 222, 223.
....., William de, earl of Derby, i. 211, 243.
Fernymouth, i. 462.
Ferrerys, Henry de, i. 462.
Fife, earl of, i. 465, 469; ii. 43, 46, 297.
Finchampstead, i. 105.
Fitzgilbert, Walter, i. 469.
Fitzpayne, Robert, i. 473.
Fitz-ralph, Richard, archbishop of Armagh, ii. 93, 115.
Fitzrobert, John, i. 276.
Fitz-walter, Robert, i. 208, ii. 207.
Fitzwareyne, Fulk de, ii. 462.
Flanders, i. 29, 38, 39, 40, 48, 52, 59, 115, 117, 167, 367, 368, 369, 375, 392, 405, 479; ii. 14, 16, 17, 21, 48, 52, 60, 66, 105, 178, 198, 199, 200, 212, 235.
....., count of, i. 331, 370; ii. 7, 14, 17, 73, 105, 234.
....., Robert of, i. 74.
Flanyolys, lord of, ii. 13.
Flaxflete, manor of, ii. 222.
Fleming, Malcolm, ii. 43.
Flemish, the, ii. 7, 14, 17, 19, 34, 39, 60, 105, 215, 270, 271.
Flenymgerie, ii. 12.
Flint, castle of, i. 271, 275.
Florence, monk of Worcester, i. 122.
Fobhyngges, ii. 131.
Fodresham, i. 274.
Fogges, Thomas, ii. 109.
Folbourne, John de, i. 345.

Folvyle, Eustace de, i. 432 ; ii. 46.
....., John de, ii. 97.
Forest charter the, i. 390.
....., the New, in Hampshire, i. 76, 111.
Forne, ii. 199.
Fornesia, i. 428.
Fortham, John de, bishop of Durham, ii. 220, 257, 298.
Fosseway, i. 83 ; ii. 97.
Fouthechirche (Falkirk), i. 298, 399.
Fowyk, ii. 309.
Foy, count de, ii. 111, 114.
Franc, castle of, ii. 27.
France, Charles X. of, ii. 243, 322. *See* Charles.
Francia, i. 71, 76.
Francus, John, so called, ii. 35.
Frederic, i. 1, 135, 144, 153, 159, 175, 202, 212, 218, 229, 230, 233, 234 ; ii. 1, 181.
Fremund, abbey of St., ii. 87.
Friars Minor, i. 185, 192, 193 ; ii. 82, 83, 93.
Frigeland, ii. 32.
Frons Bernarde, i. 460.
Fronsake, viscount of, ii. 22.
Frysell, Alexander, i. 468.
....., Bernard, i. 469.
....., James, i. 468.
....., Simon, i. 305, 468.
Frysby, Roger de, ii. 194.
Frysleye, William de, i. 469.
Fulbert, bishop, i. 46.
Fulco, priest, i. 174.
....., count of Andegavia (Anjou), i. 123, 124.
Fulk, bishop of Toulouse, i. 191.
Fulthorp, Roger, ii. 237, 258, 292, 294, 296.
Fythfolk, i. 462.
Fytz-Roberd, David, ii. 44.

G.

Gaddesby, William de, ii. 25.
Gaitanus, John (=Gelasius ii.), i. 122.
Galewallia, i. 375.
Galfrid, bishop of York, i. 202.
Galicia, ii. 210.
....., James de, ii. 200.
Gallicana, Ecclesia, i. 45.
Galtrehill, ii. 143.
Galwood, i. 459.
Gareyne, William, i. 469.
Gascony, 1, 141, 209, 221, 228, 235, 266, 278, 279, 283, 284, 328, 330, 334, 337, 338, 340, 343, 346, 360, 400, 403, 415, 424, 429, 430, 456, 478 ; ii. 1, 9, 13, 20, 21, 31, 38, 50, 57, 76, 77, 78, 79, 84, 88, 96, 111, 113, 117, 123, 321, 322.
Gaskmore, i. 462.
Gaston de Biern, i. 209.
Gaunt (Ghent), ii. 223, 271.
....., John, of, son Edward III. Earl of Richmond, ii, 67, 80, 115, 122, 123, 134.
Gaveressiche, i, 408.
Gaveston, Piers, i. 334, 405, 408, 409, 410 ; ii. 31.
Gaytan, Benedictus, i. 397.
Gedworthe (Jedworth), i. 304.
Geldres, duke of, ii. 271, 317.
Gemeticus, Robert, bishop of London, i. 35, 38, 40.
Geoffrey, son of Henry II., i. 146, 147, 153, 155, 158, 160, 177.
....., bishop of Worcester, i. 281.
....., archbishop of York, i. 236, 256.
Gerebert, pseudo pope, i. 169.
Gerle (Geldres), count of, ii. 5, 6, 11.
....., Geoffrey, count of, i. 461.
Germons, Ranulph of, i. 125, 126, 136.
Geronde, harbour of, ii. 79.
Gerondona, abbey of, i. 63.
Gervase, St., i. 459.
Geynes, i. 466.
Ghent, i. 370, ii. 14, 17, 201, 214, 223.
Giffard, John, i 248, 343, 392, 422, 426.
....., Walter, i. 345.
....., William, archbishop of York, i. 256.
Gilbert, i. 16.
Giraldus Cambrensis, i. 56, 152.
....., of York, i. 114, 117, 118.
Girrum (Jarrow), i. 60.
Glasgow, bishop of, ii. 2.
Glastonbury (Glastonia), i. 5, 149.

Glawlton, i. 469.
Gledesmore, i. 459.
Glewy (Galloway), Alan de, i. 212.
Gloucester, i. 38, 73, 74, 77, 97, 131, 132, 144, 156, 203, 204, 208, 423, 427; ii. 178.
....., Edward II. buried at, i. 448.
....., Gilbert, Earl of, ii. 17, 30.
....., Robert count of, i. 131, 132.
....., Thomas de Woodstock, duke of, ii. 241, 242, 244, 245, 246, 249, 251, 253, 255, 256, 259, 271, 272, 273, 274, 284, 286, 289, 290, 309, 313, 321, 322.
Goda, sister of King Edward, i. 38.
Godard, son of Havelec, i. 19.
Godfrid, i. 43.
Godgiva, wife of Leofric, i. 43, 44.
Goditha, daughter of Godwin and wife of Edward, i. 35, 39, 50.
Godric, duke, i. 18.
Godwin, i. 30, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 50, 55, 59.
Golanus, King of Norway, i. 21, 24.
Goldusbourgh, daughter of Egelwold, i. 18, 19.
Golofre, John, ii. 243, 256, 296.
Gorges, Ralph de, i. 344.
Gormund, son of Havelec, i. 19.
Gower, in Wales, ii. 77.
Gracianus (Gregory VI.), i. 31, 32.
Graflinge (Gravelines), ii. 199.
Graham, John de, i. 468.
....., Patrick de, i. 306.
Grahamseneth, Patrick de, i. 469.
Granegranche, James, i. 469.
Grant, Alan, i. 469.
....., John, i. 469.
Grantsone, Otho de, i. 224.
Gratianus of Tuscany, i. 135.
Grauntmene, Hugo of, i. 62, 63.
Graveling Castle, ii 270.
Gray, Alexander de, i. 469.
Greece, i. 169.
Gregory, Pope, i. 43, 68, 69, 70, 71.
..... VI., i. 18.
..... VII. (Maurice Burdun), i. 122, 148.
..... VIII. Pope, i. 152.
Gregory IX. Pope, i. 182, 211, 213, 225, 265, 318.
..... X. Pope, i. 224, 267, 270, 271; ii. 128.
Grene, Henry, ii. 104, 121.
Grenefylde, William de, archbishop of York, i. 403.
Gretton, John de, i. 469.
Gretyng, John de, i. 344.
Grey, Reginald de, i. 366, 392.
....., Walter de, i. 202, 235.
Greye de Codonoure, Nicholas, i. 430.
....., Richard, i. 430.
Griffin, King of Wales, i. 38, 42, 44, 47, 220.
Grimsby, i. 19; ii. 126.
Groby, ii. 236.
Grongne, ii. 18.
Grosseteste, Robert, bishop of Lincoln, i. 219, 220, 226, 234, 235.
Grouth (son of Godwin), i. 39.
Groyne, la, ii. 210.
Grimbaldus, physician, i. 126.
Grym of Grimmisby, i. 19.
Gualo, papal legate, i. 199, 204, 208.
Gubyon, Hugo, i. 243.
Guernsey, ii. 21.
Guesclin, le, Bertrand, ii. 121.
Guido, king of Jerusalem, i. 162.
Guienne, ii. 20.
Guildford, i. 30.
Guinevere, Queen, i. 150.
Gula Sathanæ, flumen, i. 153.
Gundulph, monk, i. 94.
Gurdon, John, i. 463.
Gurth. *See* Grouth, son of Godwyn, i. 42, 55.
Guy of Warwick, i. 19, 20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27.
....., son of Earl of Warwick, i. 394, 409.
Gyldisland (Giloland), ii. 309.
Gyllingham, i. 10.
Gynes, ii. 68, 69, 70, 71, 84, 114, 243.
....., bishop of, ii. 90.
Gynwelle, John de, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 104.

H.

Hackney, ii. 242.
Hacun, i. 47.
Hadyngton, i. 467.
Hagustald (Hexham), monastery, i. 130.
Hainault, country of, ii. 9, 19, 39, 105.
....., count of, ii. 6, 32, 37.
....., John of, i. 445, 472.
Hainaulters, i. 445, 446, 459.
Halidon, i. 459.
Halughton, ii. 195.
Halyburton, William, ii. 44.
Halys, Bobert de, ii. 133, 136.
Hammes, ii. 114.
Harald Harefoot, i. 28, 29, 37.
Harborough, ii. 142.
Hardecnute, i. 14, 28, 29, 30, 34, 316.
Hardeshill, John de, ii. 29.
Hareburgh, ii. 195.
Harecourt, Louis de, ii. 73, 109.
Harfager, Harold, King of Norway, i. 52.
Harkleye, Andrew de, i. 424, 425, 427, 429, 437, 440.
Harold, i. 3, 38, 39, 41, 42, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 60.
Harold, son of King Harold, i. 105.
....., son of Canute, i. 316.
Haryngton, Philip de, i. 410.
Hastings, i. 52, 54.
....., battle of, i. 52.
....., harbour, ii. 9.
....., Henry de, i. 212, 223, 240, 256, 285.
....., Hugh, ii. 35.
Haubark, Laurence, ii. 97.
Haunsard, Gilbert, i. 255.
Haurestham, Nicholas de, i. 243.
Havelec, son of King of Denmark, i. 18, 19, 27.
Hawys, sister of Ralph, earl of Chester, i. 211.
Haxaiholm (Axeholme), island of, i. 256.
Haye, David de la, ii. 43.
. ....., John de la, i. 222.
....., William de la, ii. 43.
Heddyng, ii. 71.
Helenora, wife of Edward I. *See* Alianor.
Heleregard (Belegarde), i. 363, 364.
Helianora, wife of David of Wales, i. 275.
Helias, i. 105.
Henande, John de, i. 432; ii. 19.
Henry II., emperor, i. 18, 41, 56.
..... III., emperor, i. 43, 71, 117.
..... IV., emperor, i. 108, 117, 122, 124, 125, 129.
..... V., emperor, i. 153, 159, 166, 175.
....., son of Simon de Montfort, i. 222.
..... III., king of France, i. 16, 49.
....., son of king of Germany, i. 246, 248, 258.
....., son of count Galfrid, i. 139.
....., the Bastard, brother of Peter, King of Spain, ii. 122, 125, 206.
..... I., King, son of William the Conqueror, i. 59, 62, 77, 86, 88, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 120, 121, 122, 123, 126, 127, 128, 129, 132, 138, 317.
..... II., i. 31, 140, 141, 142, 143, 146, 148, 149, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 317.
..... III., i. 65, 66, 184, 202, 203, 204, 206, 207, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 224, 225, 228, 235, 236, 254, 257, 267, 269, 271, 287, 401, 402.
....., earl of Lancaster, ii. 15, 85.
Henstelet (Hestelee), Thomas de, i. 255.
Heraclius, patriarch, i. 151.
Hereford, i. 6, 42, 44, 48.
....., earl of, i. 330, 331, 366, 389, 399; ii. 79.
....., bishop of, ii. 160, 224.
....., Nicholas of, ii. 170, 172, 173, 264.
....., Robert of, i. 96, 98.
....., Roger, earl of, i. 72, 76, 87, 97.
....., St. Thomas of, ii. 64.
....., William, bishop of, i. 67.
Heremites, ii. 59.
Herfastus, i. 91.
Herlewin, abbot of Bec. i. 37, 89, 91, 119.

Herle, Robert de, ii. 97.
Hermann, i. 45.
Hertyshorne, ii. 126.
Heryng, Paton, ii. 44.
Hesdin, ii. 84.
Heton (Hothom), William of, i. 395.
Highbury Manor, ii. 136.
Hilda, sister of Athelstan, i. 20, 21.
Hildebert, bishop, i. 46.
Hildebrand, Pope, i. 43, 46, 71, 74.
Holande, John de, ii. 206, 207, 313.
....., Robert de, i. 425, 449, 451.
....., Thomas de, ii. 34, 116.
....., William de, i. 233, 410.
Holm (in Norfolk), i. 27.
Holt, John, ii. 237, 258, 292, 294, 296.
Honorius, II., Pope, i. 125.
..... III., Pope, i. 181, 183, 192, 199, 202, 225, 230.
..... IV., Pope, i. 277, 290.
Honyflet, (Honfleur), ii. 96, 109, 110.
Hotham, William of, i. 356.
Hotspur, Harry, ii. 240, 297.
Hovdeyn (Howden), Roger de, i. 287, 288.
Howne, i. 30.
Howneher, army of, i. 30.
Hoxne, i. 27.
Hubert, archbisbop of Canterbury, i. 184.
Hugh, son of the Earl of Richmond, i. 427.
....., bishop of Lincoln, i. 193, 207.
....., cardinal, i. 218.
....., Carthusian prior, i. 142, 149.
....., Cluniacensis, i. 109.
..... the Good, King of France, i. 20.
..... II., son of Ralph de Gernons, i. 136, 151.
Humber, river, i. 70.
Humberston, ii. 74, 126.
Hungary, i. 14, 41, 50, 133, 213.
Hungurton, ii. 74, 126.
Huntingdon, ii. 141.
....., Henry of, i. 287.
....., earl of, ii. 8, 17, 25, 205.
Huse, Baldwin de la, ii. 109.
Hyde, monastery of, i. 120.
Hylton, Reginald de, ii. 181.
Hyncley, i. 63, 65, 66.
Hyngylby, Thomas de, ii. 113.
Hynkeleye, John de, ii. 194.
Hyrbotyf (Harbottle), i. 304.
Hythe, harbour of, i. 351.

I.

Ikenild Way, i. 83.
India, i. 181; ii. 58.
Ingarsby, ii. 126.
Ingelwood, forest of, i. 385.
Ingham. *See* Dygham.
Innocent II., Pope, i. 126, 133.
....., III., Pope, i. 183, 184, 185, 188, 191, 192, 193, 199, 202, 229, 230, 233.
..... IV., Pope, i. 212, 213, 217, 218, 219, 220, 229.
..... V., Pope, i. 271, 291.
..... VI., Pope, ii. 73, 83.
Ipswich harbour, i. 431.
Ireland, i. 39, 40, 69, 137, 141, 142, 145, 187, 188, 267, 408, 409, 456; ii. 294, 322.
....., rising in, ii. 45, 81.
Irewyn, i. 376, 379.
Iricius, King of the Scots, i. 315.
Irish, the, i. 37.
....., clergy, i. 267.
Isabella, daughter of Edward I., i. 406.
....., daughter of Edward III., i. 461; ii. 121.
....., mother of Edward III., ii. 10, 100.
....., daughter of Johannes Scoticus, i. 212.
....., daughter of earl of Lancaster, ii. 31.
....., daughter of King of France, wife of King John, i. 181, 184.
....., daughter of King John, i. 184, 212.
....., daughter of Philip King of France, wife of Edward II., i. 405, 408, 430, 431, 438, 444, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 452, 453, 454, 461.
....., wife of Robert of Mellent, i. 62.

J.

James, earl of Cornwall, ii. 4, 8.
Jaspes, Amirandus de, i. 262.
Jedworth, i. 304.
Jersey, ii. 21.
Jerusalem, i. 15, 16, 17, 40, 45, 49, 64, 83, 115, 123, 150, 151, 164; ii. 118.
Jews, the, ii. 58.
Joachim, abbat, i. 144.
Joanna, daughter of King John, i. 184, 210.
....., daughter of Charles of Valence, i. 299.
....., daughter of King Edward I., i. 359, 406.
....., daughter of King Edward II., i. 447, 448, 461.
....., daughter of Edward III., ii. 55.
....., daughter of Henry II., i. 141, 155.
John, King, son of Henry II., i. 58, 142, 143, 144, 149, 152, 155, 160, 165, 167, 168, 177, 178, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 187, 189, 190, 191, 193, 195, 197, 198, 199, 201, 202, 207, 208, 288, 318, 319; ii. 98.
....., son of Edward I., i. 406.
....., son of Edward II., earl of Cornwall, i. 448.
....., XXII., Pope, ii. 82, 83.
....., of Rome, i. 125.
....., Pope, i. 270, 271, 407, 411, 449, 472, 476.
....., St. John, i. 44, 340, 342, 364, 430.
....., son of John, earl of Athol, i. 306.
....., son of David duke of Scotland, i. 210.
....., King of Jerusalem, i. 210.
....., of the Friars Minor, ii. 133.
...., archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 4, 7.
Johannes de Temporibus, i. 133.
..... Scoticus, i. 211, 212.
Johar, William, lord, ii. 92.
Joye, John de, ii. 24.
Judith, daughter of Baldwin, i. 39.
Julers, Marquis of, ii. 56.
Julius Firmicus, codex of, i. 114.
Juny, count of, ii. 88, 92.

K.

Kalixtus, Pope, i. 116, 117, 122, 123, 125.
Kareless, William abbat of, i. 73.
Keith, Edmund de, ii. 44.
....., Edward de, i. 470; ii. 43.
....., Robert de, i. 470.
....., William de, i. 459, 468.
Kelshow (Beleshewe), i. 394.
Kenenanz, earl of, i. 469.
Kenilworth, i. 65, 222, 252, 253, 434, 443, 444, 454.
Kenred, i. 105.
Kent, i. 38, 87, 136; ii. 130, 131.
....., Edmund, earl of, ii. 116.
...., Joan, daughter of Edmund earl of, ii. 116.
Kilwarby, Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 323.
Kinadius, King of Scots, i. 287.
King's Bench and Exchequer, i. 403.
Kingston, castle of, i. 245.
Kingston-on-Hull, ii. 222.
Kirkby Malory, ii. 126.
Kirkpatrick, Reginald, ii. 44.
....., Roger de, i. 468.
Knaresborough, ii. 144.
Knighton, plan of his work, i. 1, 2.
Knights Templars, i. 333, 407.
Knolles, Robert, ii. 96, 99, 102, 103, 138.
Knyghton, lord of, ii. 49.
Koran, the, ii. 187.
Kyldronny, i. 475.
Kynalda, King of Scotland, i. 315.
Kynebeth (Tynebech), i. 290.
Kyngtorne (Kincorne), i. 462.
Kynyngham, Dr., ii. 163.
Kynsius, archbishop of York, i. 46.
Kyrkeby Bellere, i. 432.
....., Walter de, i, 470.

L.

Labourers, statute of, ii. 74.
Laburkyn, Stephen de, ii. 18.
Lacy, Gilbert de, i. 140.
....., Henry de, i. 289, 362.
....., Hugo de, i. 190.
La Grant Companye, ii. 115, 123.
La Hogue, ii. 33.
Lambeth, i. 34.
Lancaster, ii. 213.
....., Blanche, daughter of duke of, ii. 115, 208.
....., Catharine, daughter of John, earl of, ii. 208.
....., Constance, duchess of, ii. 144, 206, 208.
....., Henry, earl of, i. 31, 38, 39, 40, 41, 45, 46, 49, 50, 60, 65, 66, 67, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 75, 76, 78, 80, 85, 86, 87, 93, 94, 99, 105, 107, 108, 111, 112, 114, 115, 118, 435, 436, 447, 449, 450, 460, 478; ii. 134, 208.
....., John, duke of, ii. 132, 134, 143, 148, 151, 157, 172, 193, 203, 204, 206, 207, 208, 210, 286, 313, 314, 321, 322.
....., Thomas, earl of, i, 408, 409, 410, 412, 413, 415, 423, 424, 425, 427, 429, 436, 437, 444, 449, 450, 455.
Lameslaye (Lamley) i. 305.
Land, William de, i. 470.
Lanercost, i. 305.
Lanfranc, abbat, i, 37, 46, 61, 62, 68, 69, 72, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 102, 119.
Langgon, i. 361.
Langham, Robert, ii. 264.
Langhon, castle of, ii. 32.
Langley, Edmund de, earl of Cambridge, duke of York, ii. 205, 206, 224.
Langton, Stephen, i. 179, 184, 185, 203, 211.
....., Walter de, bishop of Chester, i. 406.
Larence, John, de Belgrave, ii. 96, 97.
Larneys, Alexander, i. 469.
Latimer, Thomas, ii. 181.
....., William, i. 340, 342.
Launde, John, ii. 138.
Laura, daughter of William le Breus, i. 63.
Layburn, Roger de, i. 241, 244, 344.
Lee, William de, i. 410.
Leek, i. 150.
Leg, John, ii. 130, 133, 134.
Legys (Liége), ii. 9.
...., bishop of, ii. 34.
Leicester, abbey of, i. 4, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 412, 435, 446, 447, 450; ii. 29, 30, 74, 114, 115, 119, 121, 142, 143, 145, 149, 151, 164, 175, 176, 182, 189, 190, 193, 197, 204, 213, 264, 273, 312, 313, 321.
....., abbat of, lawsuit with Belgrave, ii. 96, 97.
....., articles agreed on at, i. 413.
....., death at, i. 411.
....., fires at, ii. 257.
....., freedom of election of abbot of, ii. 117, 127.
....., grant of liberties to, ii. 112.
....., Henry, earl of, ii. 74.
....., judges at, i. 279.
....., King visits, ii. 233, 240.
....., park made at, ii. 74.
....., pre-emption of wool at, ii. 2, 4, 52, 53.
....., prices at, ii. 235, 315.
....., sickness in, ii. 22, 61.
....., Robert, earl of, i. 147.
Lemyston, William de, ii. 43.
Lennox, lord, i. 382, 468.
Lenter (Kentyr), i. 404.
Leo IV., Pope, i. 37.
Leof monasterium (Leominster), i. 6.
Leofric (earl of Chester), i. 29, 35, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 74.
Leofwyn, abbat of Coventry, i., 39, 41.
....., duke of Mercia, i. 43.
Leonensis (monastery), i. 44.
Levenay (Levenax), earl of, i. 378, 382.
Lewes, i. 245, 246, 250.
Lewlin, son of Godwyn, i. 50.
Lexinton, Henry de, i. 235.
Leyhyhak, lord of, ii. 49.

Lichfield, i. 68, 423.
Limosin, ii. 88.
Lincoln, i. 59, 68, 112, 118, 178, 182, 195, 197, 208, 235; ii. 5, 121, 193, 196, 211.
....., battle at, i. 204.
....., cathedral church of, ii. 192, 193, 194, 195.
....., council at, i. 402.
....., Henry, bishop of, i. 453; ii. 58, 61.
....., Hugh of, i. 235.
....., Oliver, bishop of, i, 281, 329, 348.
....., Richard, dean of, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 211, 212.
....., Robert, bishop of, i. 202.
....., St. Hugh of, i. 120.
....., St. Mary of, ii, 183.
....., visitation of, ii. 311.
Lindesey (pt. of Lincolnshire), i. 10.
Lindsay, David, i. 469.
....., William de, i. 276.
Lionel, son of King Edward, ii. 31, 80, 85.
Livingius, bishop, i. 35.
Llewellyn, King of Wales, i. 65, 66, 184, 191, 209, 210, 211, 220, 225, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277.
Locrinus, i. 313, 314.
Lodowic (Louis), King of France, i. 116, 219, 227, 241, 258, 268.
....., son of Philip of France, i. 118, 122, 133, 134, 139, 141, 147, 196, 203, 204, 205, 208, 209.
..... brother of King of France, i. 199.
Lokton, John de, ii. 237, 258, 292, 294, 296.
Loire, the, ii. 88.
Lollards, the, ii. 155, 174, 179, 183, 184, 193, 260, 312, 313.
Lombardy, ii. 115.
....., Peter of, i. 175.
London, i. 9, 10, 11, 13, 27, 29, 34, 58, 69, 76, 129, 151, 156, 157, 171, 182, 190, 196, 227, 239, 244, 273, 276, 355, 368, 389, 423, 432, 453, 458; ii. 142, 143, 164, 213, 242, 254, 255, 315, 320, 321.
....., Black Prince enters, ii. 93.
..... Bridge, i. 441.
London, council at, i. 72, 116, 126.
....., four Kings meet at, ii. 118.
....., parliament at, i. 338, 461, 471, 478; ii. 3, 8, 28, 29, 30, 54, 55, 69, 86.
....., procession through, ii. 163.
....., storm in, i. 95.
....., tower of, i. 113, 114, 160, 277, 429, 433, 434; ii. 30, 35, 46, 55, 69, 95, 110, 132, 133, 211, 255.
....., wool-staple established at, ii. 74.
....., bishop of, ii. 164, 165, 167.
....., Maurice, bishop of, i. 74, 113.
....., Robert, bishop of, *v. s.* Gemeticus.
Longarete, William de, seneschal of France, i. 291.
Longinus, i. 20.
Loreyne, Eustace de, i. 473.
Lorraine, Roynels, duke of, ii. 19.
Loryngia, earl of, ii. 12, 37, 38.
Losinga, Herbert, bishop of Thetford, i. 106.
Lotaringus, Robert, i. 67, 68.
Loughborough, ii. 193, 195, 314.
Loughmaban, William, i. 466.
Louis of Bavaria, ii. 56.
Lovell, John, ii. 243, 257.
Lucan, i. 74.
Lucian, i. 44.
Lucius III., Pope, i. 133, 150, 151.
Lucy, Anthony, i. 466, 467.
....., Geoffrey de, i. 240.
Lugdunum (Lyons), i. 229.
Lundy, Richard, i. 376, 379.
Lutterworth, ii. 151.
Lyas, in Armenia, i. 460.
Lychedard, viscount de, ii. 91.
Lycia, i. 40.
Lyle, lord de, ii. 92.
....., Thomas de, bishop of Ely, ii. 103.
....., Warinus de, i. 422.
Lymbergh, Tydeman de, ii. 222.
Lymesheye, John de, ii. 43.
Lyndeseye, i. 52.
Lyndeshey, David de, i. 469.
Lyndesleye, Alexander de, i. 469.
....., John de, i. 469.
Lyngesia (Limoges), ii. 114.
Lyngiston, William de, i. 469.

Lynliscou (Linlithgow), William de, i. 468.
Lynsey, James, ii. 298.
Lyonnes, Richard, ii. 136.
Lyons, council of, i. 270.
....., Henry, lord of, ii. 23, 24.
Lysmay, castle of, ii. 45.

M.

Mabel, sister of Ralph, earl of Chester, i. 211.
Macaire, St., i. 361.
Madoc, son of Morgan, i. 289.
Magdalen, ii. 59.
Magnus, king of Norway, i. 105.
Mahomet, ii. 187.
Makanter (Makant), i. 340.
Malatret, John, ii. 209.
Malcherus, count, i. 48.
Malcolm, king of Scots, i. 41, 52, 59, 60, 64, 67, 71, 95, 97, 98, 114, 128, 155, 287, 315, 316, 317.
Malestroit (Malegrayte), ii. 27.
Maletorth, ii. 117.
Maletretter, lord of, ii. 49.
Malgerus, archbishop, i. 77.
Malmesbury, abbey, i. 27.
....., William of, i. 118, 287.
Malogria (Majorca), king of, ii. 37, 38, 122, 124.
Malo Lacu, Peter de, i. 177.
Malvern, i. 102.
Malyns (Malines), ii. 6.
Manfrid, son of Emperor Frederic, i. 218, 221, 233, 234.
Manduth, Thomas, i. 426.
Mangeleyre, lord, ii. 91.
Manlay, John de, i. 360.
....., Robert de, i. 360.
Manle, Henry de, i. 208.
Mansel, Robert, ii. 276.
Mantalent, Robert, ii. 43.
March, earl of, ii. 107, 108, 208, 297.
Marche, Patrick count de la, i. 310.
Mardoch, i. 382.
Marescal, Richard, i. 226.
....., William, i. 184, 202, 208, 226.
Mareschal, David, i. 473.
Margaret, daughter of Alexander of Scotland, i. 284.
....., daughter of Edward I., i. 406.
....., sister of king of France, wife of Edward I., i. 332, 400.
....., daughter of Henry III., i. 227, 235, 269, 284, 288.
....., sister of Johannes Scoticus, i. 212.
....., wife of Malcolm of Scotland, i. 59.
....., daughter of Robert Petronell, i. 65.
....., queen of Scotland, i. 14, 42, 97, 114, 155.
....., wife of Saer de Quinci, i. 63, 64.
Margoth, i. 252.
Maria, wife of count Eustace, i. 59.
Marianus Scotus, i. 68, 287.
Markonna, ii. 10.
Marlborough, statutes of, i. 257.
Marmion, John de, ii. 207.
....., Philip, i. 241.
Marre, David de, i. 470.
Marseilles, ii. 59, 82.
Marshalsea, prison, the, ii. 132.
Marteb, William, ii. 109.
Mategriphum (castellum ligneum), i. 161.
Matilda, anchoritess, ii. 312.
Matilda, daughter of Henry I., i. 125, 126, 128, 131, 155.
....., daughter of Henry II., i. 141, 155.
....., daughter of Malcolm, wife of King Henry, i. 114, 123, 128, 138.
....., Empress, i. 59, 317.
....., daughter of Johannes Scoticus, i. 212.
....., Queen, i. 14.
....., sister of Ralph, earl of Chester, i. 211.
....., wife of William, i. 77.
Matildis, Queen, i. 60.
....., daughter of the Earl of Lancaster, ii. 68, 69.
....., wife of Henry I., i. 59.
....., wife of King Stephen, i. 59.

Maulay *v.* Manlay, Morley.
Maundeble (Mandevile), William de, i. 255.
Maunsel, Thomas, i. 243.
Mauron, battle of, ii. 73.
Mautravers, John, i. 444, 473; ii. 35.
Mawnee (Manny), Walter de, ii. 9, 47, 105.
Maydestoke, ii. 131.
Maydut, Thomas, i. 438.
Maynet, sir Maurice de, ii. 91.
Medeforde, a clerk ii. 256.
Meldrome, Patrick de, i. 469.
Meletus, Golias, lord de, ii. 123.
Mellent, Robert earl of, i. 62, 64.
Mellenty, ii. 36.
Melrose Abbey, i. 428; ii. 23, 85, 205.
Melton, ii. 193.
Melton Mowbray, ii. 195, 240.
Mendicant Friars, ii. 104, 155, 174, 188.
Mental maladies, mysterious, ii. 81.
Menteith, Alexander earl of, i. 306, 463, 468; ii. 43, 46.
Mercia, i. 13.
Merevale, abbey of, i. 64; ii. 120.
Merk, ii, 114.
Merlin, the seer, i. 273.
Merschewodenale, i. 473.
Merton, statute of, i. 226.
Meryngton, ii. 44.
Meschines, Ralph II. de, i. 126, 131, 133.
Meuran, ii. 108.
Michael, St., i. 54.
Middleburgh, ii. 308.
Milner, Jack, ii. 138.
Miners, Alexander de, i. 470.
Mirrea, i. 87.
Missenden, ii. 126.
Modewile, John de, i. 345.
Mogentinus (of Mainz), Sigefrid, i. 71.
Mogoncia (Mainz), i. 68, 120.
Moine, Eustace le, i. 205.
Moleynes, John, ii. 35.
Molyneux, Thomas, ii. 251, 253, 254.
Molynews, lady, ii. 257.
Mona (Anglesey), i. 105.
Monbote, (manslaughter), i. 84.
Monkyskirkeby, ii. 120.
Monlaon, lord de, ii. 92.
Monpelers (Montpelier), ii. 59.
Monstrellum, (Monstreuil sur la mer), ii. 114.
Montague, earl, i. 466, 472, 473, 478.
Montagu, lord, ii. 91, 92.
Monte Alto, Adam de, i. 254.
Monteburgh, ii. 86, 87.
Montensy, William de, i. 246.
Montermer, Ralph, de, i. 359.
Montfort, Guy de, i. 246, 250, 258.
....., Hemericus de, i. 250.
....., Henry de, i. 246, 250, 254, 422, 438.
....., John de, i. 410; ii. 31.
....., Peter de, i. 222, 242, 243.
....., Ralph de, i. 62, 72; ii. 49.
....., Simon de, i. 63, 65, 184, 202, 220, 222, 223, 237, 240, 244, 246, 248, 252, 254, 255, 258, 401.
....., ..., the younger, i. 223, 241, 242, 244, 250, 257.
Montgomery, Roger de, i. 116.
Moray, i. 309.
Morcar, duke of Northumbria, i. 52, 57, 59, 66, 76.
Morens (Morancez), ii. 112.
Moresth de Glawlton, William, i. 469.
Morgan of Wales, i. 289, 290.
Morholme, i. 466.
Morley, Robert de, i. 479; ii. 8, 10, 112.
Moravia, Andreas de, i. 386
Morre, John de la, ii. 43.
Morreus, Thomas de, ii. 107.
Morteyn, ii. 9.
Mortimer, Geoffrey, i. 453.
....., lord, ii. 253.
....., Roger de, i. 222, 241, 250, 251, 253, 255, 341, 421, 429, 430, 431, 433, 434, 444, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 461, 470.
....., ..., the younger, earl of March, ii. 77.
Morton, earl, i. 116.
Motsfonde, ii. 126.
Moun (Manny), Walter de, ii. 23, 24, 26. *See* also Mawnee.
Moune, lady, ii. 257.
Mouseleye, ii. 126.
Mowbray, Alexander, i. 473, 474.

Mowbray, Geoffrey, i. 473.
....., John de, i. 422, 425, 465; ii. 77, 80, 113.
....., Philip, ii. 411, 473.
....., William, ii. 43, 44.
Moygrave, Adam, ii. 44.
Murray, earl of, ii. 43, 297.
....., Donald, earl of, i. 463, 468, 475.
....., Maurice de, ii. 43.
Muskburgh, i. 465.
Mydelton, Gilbert de, i. 413.
....., John de, i. 413.
Myldron, Philip de, ii. 43.
Myltros, ii. 133.
Myners, Robert de, i. 470.
Mysa, marquis of, ii. 11.

N.

Naples, ii. 173.
....., earthquake at, ii. 60.
Navarre, king of, ii. 10, 71, 73, 80, 82, 83, 86, 99, 100, 122.
....., queen of, i. 338.
Nazar, (Najara) battle of, ii. 122.
Nazareth, i. 163, 261.
Nerbon, Viscount de, ii. 91.
Nesowe, count de, ii. 90.
Neustria, i. 35, 87.
Neuton, Robert de, i. 243.
Nevers, ii. 88.
Neville, Alexander, archbishop of York, ii. 233, 236, 240, 241, 242, 249, 250, 257, 259, 271, 272, 275, 278, 279, 282, 283, 284, 285, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294.
....., earl of, ii. 33.
Nevil's Cross, battle of, ii. 42.
Nevyll, Paroyel, i. 466.
Newark, Henry of, archbishop of York, i. 328, 360, 400.
Newbottle, ii. 205.
Newcastle-on-Tyne, i. 139, 302, 383, 387, 394, 459, 472, 474; ii. 22, 75, 84, 297.
Newmarche, Adam de, i. 243.
Newport, ii. 199.
Neye, bishop of, ii. 38.
Nicena, synodus, i. 71.
Nicholaa, wife of Gerard Canevile, i. 196.
Nicholas, Pope, i. 102, 449.
....., II. Pope, i. 45.
....., III, i. 270, 272.
..... IV, Pope, i. 277.
Nigel, i. 127.
Ninevites, i. 49.
Norfolk, ii. 130, 140.
....., earl of, ii. 460.
Normannia (Normandy) i. 10, 15, 16, 30, 34, 35, 36, 37, 39, 46, 47, 49, 50, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, 59, 60, 61, 71, 73, 74, 77, 86, 87, 88, 89, 91, 99, 104, 106, 112, 113, 114, 116, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 154, 156, 157, 167, 169, 183, 190, 197, 198, 221, 236, 334, 335; ii. 32, 33, 40, 80, 81, 82, 86, 99, 109.
Normans, the, i, 17, 55, 56, 58, 87, 99, 101; ii. 38, 10, 18.
Northampton, i. 241, 250.
....., parliament at, i. 255, 285; ii. 4, 5.
....., earl of, ii. 17, 25, 27, 36, 37, 56, 76, 111.
Northbert, i. 123.
Northborgh, Michael de, ii. 76.
Northumberland, earl of, ii. 145, 148, 211, 244.
Northumbria, i. 9, 13, 60, 66.
Northwales, i. 20.
Northwyche, i. 439.
Norton, priory, i. 127.
Norwegia (Norway), i. 18, 19, 21, 24, 284.
Norwegians, the, i. 18, 19, 36, 37, 52.
Norwich, i. 110.
....., taxation of, i. 256.
....., Walter, bishop of, i. 256; ii. 76.
....., Henry, bishop of, ii. 19.
Nottingham, ii. 149, 236, 237, 256, 259, 297, 313, 318, 321.
....., council at, i. 453; ii. 240.
....., earl of, ii. 234, 235, 251, 255, 256, 259.
Nychol (Lincoln), i. 439.
Nytfon, Adam de, ii. 43.

O.

Odo, monk, i. 59, 76, 87, 103.
....., brother of Henry, King of France, i. 16.
Odomar, i. 370.
Olavus, King of Denmark, i. 18, 21, 23, 37, 52, 105.
Oleeston, monastery of, i. 432.
Oliver, lord, ii. 24.
....., monk of Malmesbury, i. 49.
Olnester (Ulster), earl of, i. 467; ii. 30.
....., Edmund de, ii. 31.
Orcades, the, i. 105.
Orgayle, John de, ii. 25.
Orkney, earl of, ii. 297.
....., island of, i. 284.
Orleans, duke of, ii. 89, 121.
Ornesby (Ormesby), William, i. 371.
Orroy, ii. 121.
Osbert, Duke, i. 53.
Osmund, i. 96.
Osonay, i. 227.
Oswald, King, i. 109, 117.
Otho, i. 175, 227.
....., emperor, i. 229, 230.
Ottobonus, papal legate, i. 212, 213, 220, 223, 224, 225, 255, 256, 257.
Owynus, i 137.
Oxford, i. 15, 29, 38, 147, 227, 237, 242, 472; ii. 160, 175, 252, 254, 258, 309, 312, 322.
....., parliament at, i. 15, 240.
....., earl of, ii. 79, 205, 215.
....., William de Berton, chancellor of, ii. 168.
Oxoniæ (Exoniæ) episcopus, i. 433, 434.
Oye, ii. 114.
Oyze, ii. 11.

P.

Pagore, cardinal of, ii. 94.
Pakeman, Simon, ii. 97.
Palestrina, i. 264.
Palumbus, i. 45.
Pandulf, papal legate, i. 185.
Pannonia, i. 213.
Paragors (Perigord), ii. 113.
....., count de, ii. 114.
Paris, i. 134, 163, 266, 322, 395; ii. 36, 71, 84, 100, 111.
Parma, i. 233.
Paschalis, pope, i. 108, 122.
Paternus, monk, i. 45.
Patricius (S. Patrick), abbat, i. 137, 138.
Patrick, earl, i. 464, 465, 470, 475.
Paul's St. (London), i. 10, 76.
Paulus, duke of the Orcades, i. 52.
Peccham, John, i. 267, 272, 277, 289.
..... (Mapham), Richard de, i. 270.
Pecche, John, ii. 181.
Pembroke, earl of, ii. 31, 46.
..... Elizabeth, countess of, ii. 208.
Penrith, ii. 203.
Penygrene, ii. 97.
Perches, count of, i. 208.
Percy, Henry, v.s. Hotspur.
....., ..., i. 306, 375, 376, 379, 392, 404, 470; ii. 33, 42, 44, 47, 210.
....., Thomas de, ii. 207.
....., countess of, i. 124.
Perforade (Perforarde), i. 363, 364.
Peronne, ii. 11.
Pesches, le, i. 257.
Peter the Cruel, King of Spain, ii. 122, 125, 206, 208.
Peterborough, ii. 140.
Petronell, Robert, i. 63, 64.
Petronilla, St., ii. 210.
Petronilla, daughter of Hugo de Grauntmene, i. 62, 63, 64.
Pevensey, i. 54, 248.
Peyters (Poitiers), ii. 45, 88, 113, 124.
....., ..., count of, ii. 90.
....., ..., governor of, ii. 91.
Peyters, Louis de, ii. 27.
Phalesia (Falaise), i. 15, 115.
Philip, son of John, King of France, ii. 30, 102.
....., bishop of Durham, i. 178.
....., brother of Henry V. i. 175.
....., king of France, 118, 161, 166, 168, 258, 292, 293, 299, 339, 337, 343, 354, 397, 400, 405, 451; ii. 6, 7, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17, 19, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 48, 49, 50, 51, 124.

Philippa, wife of Edward III., i. 431, 446; ii. 124.
....., daughter of John Earl of Lancaster, ii. 208.
Philpot, John, ii. 138.
Picards, the, i. 58, 340, 341.
Picardy, ii. 49, 243, 286.
Pictavia (Poitou), i. 141, 149, 181, 183.
Pictavensis, Richard, i. 152, 153.
Piers Plowman, ii. 139.
Pilnesdon (Pilvesdon), Thomas de, i. 246.
Plantagenet, Galfrid (Geoffrey of Anjou), i. 125, 126, 139, 140, 142, 143.
Ploërmel, ii. 27.
Plontplanttoyt, Eymerus de, ii. 24.
Plumeneye, i. 340.
Plymmouth, ii. 207, 210.
Poissy, ii. 36.
Pole, Michael de la, Earl of Suffolk, ii. 201, 206, 211, 215, 216, 220, 221, 236, 241, 242, 246, 249, 250, 257, 259, 271, 272. 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294.
....., William de la, ii. 9.
Polles, i. 382.
Polonia, i. 73.
Pont Audemer, ii. 86.
Pontefract, i. 130, 410, 422, 423, 425, 426; ii. 144.
....., Peter of, i. 198.
Pontica, province, i. 47.
Pontlyon, ii. 210.
Pontyf (Ponthieu), ii. 27, 50, 114.
....., count of, ii. 90.
Ponyngus (Poynings), lady, ii. 257.
....., lord, ii. 207.
Popryne, ii. 199.
Portsmouth, i. 115, 340, 368; ii. 26.
....., burnt, ii. 3.
Portugal, king of, ii. 207, 208.
Pouncevolt, Grimbald de, i. 243.
Pounez, Reginald de, ii. 91.
Pownte, Eymerus de, ii. 24.
Poyse, ii. 36.
Prendersoit, William de, i. 470.
Pudesach (Podensac), i. 343.
Purvey, John, ii. 178, 179.
Pype, James de, ii. 99, 100.
Pyrenees, the, i. 141.
Pythagoras, i. 105.

Q.

Quincy, Robert de, i. 64, 211.
....., Roger de, i. 164.
....., Saer (vel Seirus) de, i. 63, 64, 65, 66.

R.

Raby, i. 158.
Radeclyffe, Ralph de, ii. 251.
Radecote, ii. 252.
Rading (Reading), monastery of, i. 127.
Radulph, bishop of Chichester, i. 104, 114, 120, 121, 126.
Radyngton, Baldwin de, ii. 206, 211.
Ramsay, Alexander de, i. 470.
Ramsey, monastery of, i. 75.
....., William de, ii. 43, 44.
Randekyn, ii. 103.
Randulphus (Roberti Knolles socius), ii. 96.
Ranulph III., son of Hugh, i. 150, 153, 181.
Reading, ii. 149.
Rees (Resus), king of Wales, i. 97, 174, 175.
Remigius of Dorchester, i. 68, 96.
Remund, i. 95.
Rennes, ii. 93, 94, 95.
Reresby, i. 433.
Reuthesbury, forest of, i. 383
Reynalde, Walter, i. 409
Reynes (Rheims), i. 75; ii. 106, 107, 110.
Richard, 3rd duke of Normandy, i. 8, 9, 10.
....., 4th duke of Normandy, 1, 9.

Richard, son of William the Conqueror, i. 77.
....., son of Hugh of Cestria, i. 116.
....., bishop of Hergerd, i. 281.
....., Cœur de Lion, son of Henry II., i. 64, 124, 135, 142, 146, 149, 155, 156, 158, 159, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 174, 175, 176, 177, 184, 202, 222, 224, 226, 236, 288, 319.
....., II., King, ii. 117, 127, 131, 204, 207, 224, 225, 231, 237, 242, 249, 256, 258, 292, 311, 322.
Richeflaundres, lord, ii. 91.
Richeperone, ii. 27.
Richmond, duke of, ii. 107, 108.
Rippelmond, Eustace de, ii. 91.
Robert, duke of Normandy, i. 15, 17.
....., son of William the Conqueror, i. 76, 77, 83, 86, 87, 88, 95, 103, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 127.
....., steward of Scotland, i. 473.
Rochebernard, castle of, ii. 27.
Rocheford, lord of, ii. 49.
Rochelle, ii. 114.
Rochester castle, ii. 257.
Rockyngam, forest of, ii. 118.
Roderayn, Rochedarrayn, ii. 49.
Rodesya, ii. 114.
Roffense (Rochester), monasterium, i. 94.
Roger, of Scotland, Bishop of St. Andrew's, i. 63, 64.
Rohan, ii. 27.
Rollo, i. 17.
Romanus, John, archbishop of York, i. 348, 359.
Rome, i. 17, 31, 40, 44, 46, 68, 72, 75, 106, 108, 332, 333; ii. 172, 173.
Rome, general absolution at, ii. 65.
Rome-Scot, i. 82.
Romerentyn, castle of, ii. 88, 92.
Rone, cardinal of, ii. 94.
Rongy, lord of, ii. 49.
Ros, Geoffrey de, i. 473
....., John de, i. 432, 470; ii. 2, 69.
....., Robert of, i. 251, 303, 305.
....., William de, i. 303, 306.
Rosamond, i. 147, 149.
Rosemadek, Ralph de, ii. 24.
Rosselayne, i. 431, 450, 451, 458.
Rotomagus (Rouen), i. 115, 177.
Roule, Roger de, i. 255.
Rowhan (Rohan), viscount, ii. 27, 49.
Roxburgh, i. 303, 304, 307, 377, 394, 398, 471, 477; ii. 23, 85.
Roynels, duke of Lorraine, ii. 19.
Russye, count de, ii. 90.
Ruthelon (Rhuddlan), i. 47, 276.
Rye harbour, ii. 9, 10.
....., lord de, ii. 22.
Ryens (Rions), i. 341, 342, 343, 345, 350, 361.
Rynele, ii. 10.
Rypon, John, ii. 240.
Ryton, village of, i. 387.

S.

Sabrinum Mare, i. 37.
Sacrilege, acts of, ii. 120.
St. Agar, lord of, ii. 91.
St. Albans, ii. 141, 150.
....., abbot of, ii. 94.
St. Bartholomew's, ii. 138.
St. Denys, ii. 119.
St. George, festival of, ii. 99.
St. James, ii. 209, 210.
St. Jean, ii. 45.
St. John's town, ii. 47.
St. Leonard's, Leicester, ii. 61.
St. Lo, ii. 33.
St. Macaire, i. 361.
St. Margaret's, Leicester, ii. 61.
St. Nicholas, ii. 73.
Saintonge, ii. 45, 113.
St. Omer, ii. 34, 53, 60, 70, 84.
....., seneschal of, ii. 91.
St. Paul's Cathedral, i. 72.
St. Riquiers, ii. 39.
Saladin, i. 162, 165.
Salisbury, i. 110, 330, 449.
....., parliament at, i. 330, 448.
....., earl of, ii. 2, 4, 9, 17, 73, 111, 116.
....., bishop of, ii. 160.

Salisbury, Hubert bishop of, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 165, 171, 172, 177, 178, 182.
....., John of, ii. 256, 286, 294.
....., Osmund, bishop of, i. 109.
....., Roger, bishop of, i. 130.
Salle, Robert, ii. 140.
Sancheron, (Saintogne), i. 228.
Sanches (Saintes), i. 228.
Sancto Amore, William de, ii. 152, 155.
Sandegate, ii. 114.
Sandwich, i. 54, 167; ii. 2, 9.
Sapcote, ii. 213.
Saracens, the, i. 17, 48, 49, 90, 91, 154, 155, 185, 207, 257, 261; ii. 58, 123.
Sardyne, Humphrey de, i. 467.
Saunsiver, John, ii. 92.
Savoy, ii, 115, 118.
....., palace, attack on the, ii. 134.
....., Annis, count of, ii. 19.
Saxony, Lotharius duke of, i. 126, 130.
Say, William de, i. 249.
Saye, Gilbert de, 470.
Scharshull, William de, ii. 75, 104.
Schene, ii. 311.
Schepyng-Norton, ii. 252.
Scherlynghong, Jock of, i. 469.
Scherlynghowe, John of, i. 468.
Schureburn, (Sherborne), i. 40.
Schypwith, William, ii. 121.
Scintillorum, liber, i. 46.
Sclus, le, ii. 66, 206, 212, 213.
Scone, i. 292, 299.
....., Baliol crowned at, i. 465.
Scotch, ravages, ii. 97, 308.
Scotherland, earl of, i. 468.
Scotia, i. 13, 41, 59.
Scrope, Geoffrey, ii. 4.
....., Richard, bishop of Lichfield, ii. 213.
....., Richard le, ii. 224, 226, 232.
Secana (Seine) the, i. 88, 89.
Sees, Degarius de, ii. 210.
Segrave, John de, i. 394, 403, 430.
....., Nicholas de, i. 240, 246.
....., Stephen de, i. 429.
Seirus, earl of Winchester, i. 209.
Seland, William, duke of, ii. 68, 69.
Selfchyrche (Selkirk), forest of, ii. 63.
Sewallus, archbishop of York, i. 235, 236.
Sewlfus, i. 102.
Sey, archbishop of, ii. 38.
Seyfon, castle, lord of, ii. 92.
Seyntclere, Seynthillere, John, ii. 43, 44.
Shaftesbury (Septonia), i. 6.
Sheep, mortality among, ii. 61.
Sherwood, ii. 118.
Shropshire, Hugh, earl of, i. 105, 125.
Sicily, i. 191, 165, 233, 236, 259.
Simon, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 451.
....., Hamptoniensis, i. 131.
....., of Præneste, bishop, i. 354.
....., son of Robert of Lincoln, i. 128.
....., son of Simon de Montfort, i. 65, 66.
Sinclair, John, ii. 43.
....., Oliver de, i. 470.
....., William, i. 306.
Sineric (Emeric), of St. Edmund, i. 344.
Siricius (archbishop), i. 8.
Siward, duke of Northumbria, i. 38, 41, 42, 55.
Skambskynell, monastery of, i. 378.
Skipwith, William, ii. 121, 211, 236, 240, 258, 297.
Skyrlowe, Walter de, bishop of Bath, ii. 213, 298, 321.
Slake, a clerk, ii. 256.
Sluys, ii. 235.
....., battle of, ii. 18.
Smith, William, ii. 180, 182, 190, 191, 313.
Smithfield, ii. 137.
Snotinggam, castle of, i. 59.
Snowdon, mount, i. 234, 235, 275.
Solivago, i. 170.
Solway, the, i. 388.
Somerton, castle of, ii. 102, 110.
Soot, William, i. 470.
Sore, river, ii. 29, 97.
Sorell, mount, i. 195, 196.
Sotherey, ii. 131, 132.
Soules, John de, i. 292, 294, 410.
Southampton, i. 10; ii. 8, 61.
Southland, earl of, i. 470.
Sowcle, lord le, ii. 257.
....., William le, bishop of York, ii. 42.

Spain, ii. 28, 56, 122, 123, 207, 208, 210.
....., Charles of, ii. 55, 76, 80.
Spaniards, the, ii. 66, 67.
Spanish fleet, ii. 28.
Spenser, Henry le, bishop of Norwich, ii. 140, 160, 178, 198, 200.
Spira (Spires), i. 125.
Spruce (Prussia), ii. 27, 69.
Stafford, Ralph, Baron, ii. 25, 31, 40, 47, 67, 75, 76, 106, 209.
....., son of earl of, ii. 206.
Stamford, ii. 318.
....., parliament of, i. 401.
Standyche, Ralph, ii. 137, 138.
Stenefortbrugg (Stamfordbridge), i. 52.
Stephen, king, i. 129, 130, 131, 133, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 317.
Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 40, 47, 49, 55, 58, 59, 60, 61, 100.
Stiliolum, i. 2.
Stirling, i. 307, 377, 378, 379, 382, 400, 403, 410, 460, 471, 477; ii. 30.
....., John de, i. 468; ii. 26.
Stokking, le (a field), ii. 96.
Stomps, Herdingus, vel Hardingus Stephanus, i. 106, 108.
Stonenay (Scotenay), Walter de, i. 239.
Story, Richard, ii. 181.
Strabulgy, David de, i. 473.
Stragy, Alexander, ii. 43.
Stratherne, earl of, i. 468, 470, ii. 43, 297.
Straw, Jack, ii. 137, 138.
Stretton, Adam de, judge, i. 279.
Styward, Adam, i. 469.
....., Alan, ii. 43.
....., James, i. 468, 469.
....., John, i. 411; ii. 43.
....., Walter, i. 468.
Swanus (Sweyn), King of Denmark, i. 10, 28, 29, 36, 37, 38, 39, 42.
Suavi, i. 13.
Suffolk, ii. 140.
....., earl of, ii. 17, 79, 240.
Sullee, William, i. 437.
Sulwath (the Solway), i. 471, 472.
Sutbyry (Sudbury), Simon de, archbp. of Canterbury, i. 132.
Sutheleye, William de, i. 425.
Suthlande, earl of, ii. 43.
Suthwell, Nichol, ii. 285.
Swineshead, monastery of, i. 199.
Swithin, St., i, 36.
Swynarton, Robert de, ii. 209.
Swyndurby, William de, ii. 189, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197.
Swyne, harbour of, i. 369, 370; ii. 14, 16, 18.
Swynforde, Catherine, ii. 147.
Syreham, Stephen, ii. 193.
Syria, i. 49, 161.
Syroches Brigge, vel Sotesbrygge, i. 412, 421.

T.

Tabor, mount, i. 185.
Tailefer, i. 56.
Talbot, Richard de, i. 462, 471.
Talouns, Viscount de, ii. 91.
Tankerville, Camerarius de, ii. 33, 34.
Tankyrwyle, earl of, ii. 73, 90.
Tanneye, Lucas de, i. 276.
Tarbe, ii. 114.
Tartars, the, i. 181.
Tartary, i. 181.
Tanchanloyt, (Tonnay-Charente?) ii. 45.
Tedy, William, i. 468.
Templars, order of the, i. 125.
Templiston, i. 398.
Terouanne, ii. 34.
Teway, Ralph, i. 344.
Teye (Tay) river, i. 464.
Thames, i. 15, 28, 29, 42, 247; ii. 80, 110, 242, 253.
....., frozen, i. 135.
Tharsis, ii. 58, 59.
Theobald, abbot of Bec, i. 130, 132, 144.
....., count of Campania, i. 130.
Thobse, harbour, ii. 14.
Thomas, son of Edward I., i. 332, 406.
....., earl Marshal, brother of Edward II., i. 427.
Thorney, island, i. 39.
Thornton, abbey of, ii. 120.
Thorold, son of Havelec, i. 19.

Thurstan, archbishop of York, i. 120, 121, 130, 139.
Thurstinus, abbot of Glastonbury, i. 73, 74.
Tikehul (Tickhill), i. 116.
Tochet, William, i. 426, 438.
Toker, Thomas, i. 469.
Tornacum, i. 479.
Torney, Thomas de, i. 177.
Tortyngton, ii. 126.
Tostius, i. 39, 42, 46, 47, 48, 52.
Toulouse, i. 363, 364; ii. 65.
Tour, lord de la, ii. 91.
Tournaments, ladies at, ii. 57.
Tournay, ii. 19.
..... conference of, i. 396.
Tours, ii. 87.
Tovart, ii. 113.
Tower Hill, ii. 134, 293, 294.
Transubstantiation, ii. 177.
Trapani, i. 259, 264.
Traylbaston, inquiry, i. 333, 404, 460; ii. 75, 116.
Trent, ii. 42.
Tresgalenenk, fortress, ii. 24.
Tresilian, Robert, ii. 150, 235, 236, 237, 242, 246, 249, 257, 259, 272, 273, 275, 276, 279, 282, 283, 284, 285, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 296.
Trewman, Jack, ii. 138, 139.
Tristan, island of, ii. 77.
Troja minor (London), ii. 293.
Trowan, ii. 68.
Troy, ii. 293.
Trussell, John, ii. 181.
....., William, i. 431, 437, 441, 443, 451.
Tryvett, Thomas, ii. 199, 200, 256.
Tryplynton, Hugo de, i. 411, 453.
Turbevyle, Thomas de, i. 345, 350, 351, 352, 353.
Tunbridge, i. 245, 249.
Turks, the, i. 49, 65, 87.
Tutbury, i. 413, 422, 427; ii. 145.
Tybetofte (Typtoft), Robert, i. 278.
Tybtoft, Payn de, i. 410.
Tyburn, ii. 293, 294.
Tyeys, Henry, i. 422, 427, 438.
Tyler, Wat, ii. 137.
Tylers, earl of, i. 432.
Tyne, river, i. 52.
Tyrannus, Robert, i. 424.
Tyroill, Peter, ii. 297.
Tyrrel Walter, i. 101, 111.
Tyrwan, fair of, ii. 39.
Tweed, the, i. 117.
Twenge, Marmaduke de, i. 380, 381.
Twyford, Nicholas, ii. 138.

U, V.

Ufforde, Robert de, i. 478; ii. 67.
Ulvester, i. 306.
Umframvile (Umfravile), Ingram de, i. 292, 294.
Umfranwe, William de, i. 469.
Umsmavile, Gilbert de, i. 310.
Unglancia, river, ii. 28.
Urban II., pope, i. 75, 87, 95, 104, 107, 110.
..... III., Pope, i. 151, 152.
..... IV., Pope, i. 221, 223, 233, 236, 251.
..... VI., Pope, ii. 128, 129, 173, 199, 201, 260, 322.
Uske, Thomas, ii. 276, 294.
Usur, earl of, ii. 88, 92.
Vagien, de la, lord, ii. 49.
Valence, ii. 10.
....., Emeric de, i. 404.
....., Guy of, i. 248.
....., Omerus (Aylmer) of, i. 427, 436.
....., William de, i. 241, 246, 248.
Valogne, ii. 33.
Valoys, John, son of K. Philip of France, ii. 39, 40, 41, 47, 48, 50, 67, 79, 89, 90, 93, 95, 110, 113, 119, 124, 125.
Valyngfort (Wallingford), i. 133.
Vannes, ii. 27, 121.
Vaus, John, i. 209, 435.
Vecta, (Isle of Wight) i. 52.
Venice, i. 165.
Vendoyn, count of, ii. 90.
Ventadurn, count of, ii. 90.
Venus, Goddess, i. 44, 45.
Verdon, Emilius de, i. 411.

Verdon, Theobald de, ii. 30.
Verdoun, John de, i. 224.
Vere, Robert, duke of Ireland, ii. 236, 240, 241, 242, 246, 249, 250, 252, 253, 254, 259, 271, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 294.
Vergia, (Rovergne), ii. 114.
Verneuil, ii. 86.
Vernon, Ralph, ii. 251.
Vernyll, John de, ii. 22.
Vesey, John, i. 224, 240, 263.
....., William de, i, 362.
Veson, William de, i. 469.
Vespounte, Robert de, i. 240.
Vessy, Eustace de, i. 194, 196.
....., John de, i. 209.
Veys, Thomas de, i. 470.
Vicetus (Nicetus), emperor, of Constantinople, i. 48.
Victor, Hugo de S., monk, i. 134, 159, 158, 182.
Victor, Pope, i. 74.
Vienna, Dauphin of, ii. 89, 100, 109.
....., John, duke of, ii. 51, 53, 204, 211.
Viterbo, i. 258, 271.
Vortigern, ii. 62.
Vulsius, bishop of Lichfield, i. 41.
Vynelef, Martylet de, ii. 204.

W.

Wake, Baldwin de, i. 222, 243.
....., Nicholas de, i. 243.
....., Thomas, i. 450, 458, 462.
....., Lady, ii. 103, 104.
Wale, ii. 114.
Walericus, i. 53.
Wales, i. 20, 38; ii. 212, 213.
Wallace William, King of Scotland, i. 190, 298, 317, 218, 319, 332, 371, 372, 374, 377, 378, 384, 385, 386, 403, 404.
Wallingford, i. 211.
Wallnotus, son of Godwin, i. 39.
Walkalinus, i. 94.
Walkerus bp. of Durham, i. 67, 73.
Walsyngham, St. Mary of, ii. 183.
Waltef, count, i. 72.
Walter, Abbat of Evesham, i. 94.
Waltham, monastery of, i. 56, 57, 149; ii. 242.
..... Cross, ii. 272.
....., abbat of, ii. 224.
Walton, John, ii. 298.
Walworth, John de, ii. 137, 138.
Walysse, John, ii. 204.
Wandalici, i. 15, 32, 33.
Wandemont, count de, ii. 90.
Warde, Robert de, i. 468.
....., William, i. 467.
Warenne, earl of, i. 244, 246, 248, 269, 306, 371, 375, 376, 377, 393, 395, 427, 438, 473; ii. 62.
Warinus, earl of Shropshire, i. 73.
Warram (Warham), i. 6.
Warwick, ii. 113, 213.
....., Guy, son of duke of, ii. 80, 112.
....., Henry, count of, i. 113.
....., Thomas, son of duke of, ii. 80.
....., Thomas, earl of, ii. 33, 36, 37, 39, 47, 53, 75, 77, 79, 80, 89, 90, 117.
....., Thomas, earl of, ii. 241, 242, 246, 249, 251, 255, 259, 271, 272, 273, 286, 289, 290.
Watervyle, Hengeramus de, i. 243.
Watling Street, i. 83.
Waytestaythe, Richard, ii. 182.
Weland, Thomas de, judge, i. 279.
Wellowe abbey, i. 128; ii. 126.
Welsh, the, i. 38, 47, 116, 207, 234, 235, 349; ii, 4.
Wendemer, count de, ii. 91.
Wenloc, i. 44, 73.
Werburgh, St. i. 44.
Wercell, i. 45.
Werwell, monastery of, i. 35, 39.
Wesnam, John, ii. 110.
Westminster, i. 29, 48, 49, 50, 77, 106, 110, 113, 123, 151, 155, 177, 268, 269, 362; ii. 124, 150, 272, 292, 320.
....., parliament at, i. 271; ii. 133, 204, 206, 258, 310, 315.
...., reception at, ii. 248.

West Saxony (Wessex), i. 38, 50.
Wetton, i. 473.
Whitesand, ii. 50.
Whytham, i. 149.
Wibert, bishop of Ravenna, i. 72.
Wiccii, the province of the, i. 10.
Widomarus, i. 175.
Wigmore, castle of, i. 251.
Wigton, earl of, ii. 43.
Willelmus bastardus, i. 3.
William the Conqueror, duke of Normandy, i. 15, 39, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 67, 68, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 86, 87, 92, 102, 112, 138, 287, 316.
....., Rufus, i. 73, 76, 77, 83, 86, 88, 91, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 103, 104, 105, 106, 110, 112, 113, 114, 119, 316.
....., king of Scotland, i. 141, 146, 148, 178.
....., bishop of Thetford, i. 74.
....., king of Sicily, i. 141, 144.
....., son of K. Henry, i. 122, 123, 124, 155.
....., son of K. John, i. 202.
....., the Leper, i. 63, 64.
....., of Malmesbury, i. 118.
Willoughby, Richard de, i. 460, 461; ii. 75.
Wilnot, son of Godwyn, i. 42, 47, 48, 55.
....., son of Harold, i. 76.
Wilton, i. 45.
Wiltshire, i. 473.
Winchelsea, ii. 109, 212.
....., Robert of, Archbishop of Canterbury, i. 327, 365, 389, 406, 408, 409.
Winchester, i. 21, 22, 28, 30, 34, 35, 40, 41, 60, 76, 77, 109, 110, 112, 118, 168, 189, 238, 433.
....., parliament at, i. 452; ii. 321.
....., bishop of, ii. 224.
Windsor, i. 41, 48, 409, 427; ii. 95, 121, 220, 319.
....., Thomas de, ii. 56.
Wirus, river (the Wear), i. 60.
Wolstan, bishop of Worcester, i. 45, 47, 61, 86, 87, 99, 100, 102.
Wolveshead (outlawry), i. 80.
Woodstock, i. 125, 147.
Woodstock, Thomas of, Duke of Gloucester, ii. 79, 129, 205, 215, 224.
Worcester, i. 44, 45, 61, 68, 87, 100, 101, 201, 253, 409.
....., bishop of, ii. 160.
Wradburne, Henry, i. 426, 438.
Wrangill, ii. 112.
Wyarde, John, i. 454.
....., Richard, i. 306.
Wybert, i. 110.
Wyclif, John, ii. 151, 156, 157, 163, 164, 167, 170, 176, 179, 184, 187, 188, 190, 191, 264, 312.
....., heresies of, ii. 158, 159, 160.
....., disciples of, ii. 187, 188, 191, 260, 312.
Wygornesia, (Bigorre) ii. 114.
Wyllington, Henry de, i. 422, 427, 438.
Wylwes (willows) the, ii. 97.
Wylynger, John de, i. 422.
Wymes, David de, i. 469.
....., Michael le, i. 468.
Wymundus, monk, i. 46.
Wynchcumbe, church of, i. 95.
Wynkeburne, Walter, ii. 119.
Wyntringham, vicar of, ii. 211.
Wyrmyngton, John de, i. 411.
Wysman, Gilbert, i. 469.
Wyther, Robert le, i. 469.
....., Thomas, i. 449, 451.

Y.

Yarmouth, harbour, ii. 98.
....., sailors from, i. 369.
Yle, Warinus de, i. 426.
Yleward, Patrick de, i. 469.
York, i. 171, 235, 393, 425, 426; ii. 149, 209, 233.
....., court held at, ii. 116.
....., parliament at, i. 393, 409, 466.
....., Roger, archbishop of, i. 148.

York, bishop of, ii. 224.
....., Thomas of, i. 61, 62, 68, 69, 71, 96, 111.
Ypres, i. 370; ii. 199, 271.
....., William of, i. 132.
Yriskin, William, i. 469.

Z.

Zealand, Matilda, duchess of, ii. 115, 116.
....., William, duke of, ii. 115.
Zolston, ii. 297.

CATALOGUE

(*Revised to 24th June* 1895)

OF

ENGLISH, SCOTCH, AND IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS,

REPORTS OF THE HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION,

AND

ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPERS OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS, ENGLAND AND IRELAND,

Printed for

HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,

And to be purchased,

Either directly or through any Bookseller, from

EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, East Harding Street, Fleet Street, E.C.; or

JOHN MENZIES & Co., 12, Hanover Street, Edinburgh, and 90, West Nile Street, Glasgow; or

HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., Limited, 104, Grafton Street, Dublin.

CONTENTS.

Page

Calendars of State Papers, &c. - - - - - 3

Public Record Office, Lists and Indexes - - - - 8

Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages - - - - - - - 9

Publications of the Record Commissioners, &c. - - - 20

Works Published in Photozincography - - - - 22

Historical Manuscripts Commission - - - - - 24

Reports of the Deputy Keeper of the Public Records - - 29

Scotch Record Publications - - - - - - 33

Irish Record Publications - - - - - - 34

Reports of the Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, Ireland - 35

ENGLAND.

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[Imperial 8vo., cloth. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized "world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical "and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to "the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published in this Series:—

Calendarium Genealogicum; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* Charles Roberts, Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

Syllabus, in English, of Rymer's Fœdera. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Records. Vol. I.—1066–1377. *(Out of print.)* Vol. II.—1377–1654. Vol. III., Appendix and Index. 1869–1885.

Descriptive Catalogue of Ancient Deeds, preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. 1890–1894.

Calendar of the Patent Rolls of the Reign of Edward I., preserved in the Public Record Office, prepared under the superintendence of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. Vol. II. 1281–1292. 1893.

Calendar of the Patent Rolls of the Reign of Edward II., preserved in the Public Record Office, prepared under the superintendence of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. Vol. I. 1307–1313. 1894.

Calendar of the Patent Rolls of the Reign of Edward III., preserved in the Public Record Office, prepared under the superintendence of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. 1891–1893.

Vol. I.—1327–1330. | Vol. II.—1330–1334.

Calendar of the Close Rolls of the Reign of Edward II., preserved in the Public Record Office, prepared under the superintendence of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. 1892–1894.

Vol. I.—1307–1313.
Vol. II.—1313–1318. | Vol. III.—1318–1323.

U 88739. Wt 2057.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, and elsewhere in England. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London (Vols. I.–IV.); and *by* JAMES GAIRDNER, an Assistant Record Keeper (Vols. V.–XII.). 1862–1894.

Vol. I.—1509–1514. (*Out of print.*)
Vol. II. (in two Parts)—1515–1518. (*Part I. out of print.*)
Vol. III. (in two Parts)—1519–1523.
Vol. IV.—Introduction.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524–1526.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526–1528.
Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529–1530.
Vol. V.—1531–1532.
Vol. VI.—1533.
Vol. VII.—1534.
Vol. VIII.—1535, to July.
Vol. IX.— 1535, Aug. to Dec.
Vol. X.— 1536, Jan. to June.
Vol. XI.—1536, July to Dec.
Vol. XII., Part 1.—1537, Jan. to May.
Vol. XII., Part 2.—1537, June to Dec.
Vol. XIII., Part 1.—1538, Jan. to July.
Vol. XIII., Part 2.—1538, Aug. to Dec.
Vol. XIV., Part 1.—1539, Jan. to July.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, F.S.A. (Vols. I. and II.), *and by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN (Vols. III.–XII.). 1856–1872.

Vol. I.— 1547–1580.
Vol. II.— 1581–1590.
Vol. III.—1591–1594. (*Out of print.*)
Vol. IV.—1595–1597.
Vol. V.— 1598–1601.
Vol. VI.— 1601–1603, with Addenda, 1547–1565.
Vol. VII.— Addenda, 1566–1579.
Vol. VIII.—1603–1610.
Vol. IX.— 1611–1618.
Vol. X.— 1619–1623.
Vol. XI.— 1623–1625, with Addenda, 1603–1625,
Vol. XII.— Addenda, 1580–1625.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, F.S.A. (Vols. I.–XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A. (Vol. XIII.); and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A. (Vols. XIV.–XXII.). 1858–1893.

Vol. I.— 1625–1626.
Vol. II.— 1627–1628.
Vol. III.— 1628–1629.
Vol. IV.— 1629–1631.
Vol. V.— 1631–1633.
Vol. VI.— 1633–1634.
Vol. VII.— 1634–1635.
Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. IX.— 1635–1636.
Vol. X.— 1636–1637.
Vol. XI.— 1637.
Vol. XII.— 1637–1638.
Vol. XIII.— 1638–1639.
Vol. XIV.— 1639.
Vol. XV.— 1639–1640.
Vol. XVI.— 1640.
Vol. XVII.— 1640–1641.
Vol. XVIII.—1641–1643.
Vol. XIX.— 1644.
Vol. XX.— 1644–1645.
Vol. XXI.— 1645–1647.
Vol. XXII.— 1648–1649.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1875–1885.

Vol. I.— 1649–1650.
Vol. II.— 1650.
Vol. III.— 1651.
Vol. IV.— 1651–1652.
Vol. V.— 1652–1653.
Vol. VI.— 1653–1654.
Vol. VII.—1654.
Vol. VIII.—1655.
Vol. IX.— 1655–1656.
Vol. X.— 1656–1657.
Vol. XI.— 1657–1658.
Vol. XII.— 1658–1659.
Vol. XIII.—1659–1660.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS:—COMMITTEE FOR THE ADVANCE OF MONEY, 1642–1656. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Parts I.–III., 1888.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS:—COMMITTEE FOR COMPOUNDING, &c., 1643–1660. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Parts I.–V., 1889–1892.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1895, *and by* F. H. BLACKBURNE DANIELL, M.A., 1895.

Vol. I.— 1660–1661.
Vol. II.— 1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
Vol. VII.—1667.
Vol. VIII.—1667–1668.
Vol. IX.—1668–1669.
Vol. X.—1670 and Addenda 1660–1670.
Vol. XI.—1671.

CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, an Assistant Record Keeper, 1878–1879. Vol. III. *Edited by* RICHARD ARTHUR ROBERTS, Barrister-at-Law. 1881.

Vol. I.—1760 (25 Oct.)–1765.
Vol. II.—1766–1769.
Vol. III.—1770–1772.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, an Assistant Record Keeper. 1868–1889.

Vol. I.— 1557–1696.
Vol. II.— 1697–1702.
Vol. III.—1702–1707.
Vol. IV.—1708–1714.
Vol. V.— 1714–1719.
Vol. VI.—1720–1728.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, 1509–1589.
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, in the Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, B.A., Barrister-at-Law (Ireland); *continued by* GUSTAVUS FREDERICK HANDCOCK. 1875–1886.

Vol. I.— 1171–1251.
Vol. II.— 1252–1284.
Vol. III.—1285–1292.
Vol. IV.—1293–1301.
Vol. V.— 1302–1307.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, F.S.A. 1860–1890, *and by* E. G. ATKINSON, 1893.

Vol. I.— 1509–1573.
Vol. II.— 1574–1585.
Vol. III.—1586–1588.
Vol. IV.—1588–1592.
Vol. V.— 1592–1596.
Vol. VI.—1596–1597.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in the Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Barrister-at-Law. 1872–1880.

Vol. I.— 1603–1606.
Vol. II.— 1606–1608.
Vol. III.—1608–1610.
Vol. IV.—1611–1614.
Vol. V.— 1615–1625.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN. 1867–1873.

Vol. I.— 1515–1574. (*Out of print.*)
Vol. II.— 1575–1588.
Vol. III.—1589–1600.
Vol. IV.—1601–1603.
Vol. V.— Book of Howth Miscellaneous.
Vol. VI.—1603–1624.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, late an Assistant Record Keeper. 1860–1894.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616. (*Out of print.*)
Vol. III.— ,, ,, ,, 1617–1621. (*Out of print.*)
Vol. IV.— ,, ,, ,, 1622–1624.
Vol V.—America and West Indies, 1661–1668.
Vol. VI.—East Indies, 1625–1629.
Vol. VII.—America and West Indies, 1669–1674.
Vol. VIII.—East Indies and Persia, 1630–1634.
Vol. IX.—America and West Indies, 1675–1676, and Addenda, 1574–1674.

These volumes deal with Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in the Public Record Office. 1547–1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in the Public Record Office. 1553–1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in the Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A. (Vols. I.–VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, M.A., Barrister-at-Law (Vols. VIII.–XI.). 1863–1880.

Vol. I.— 1558–1559.
Vol. II.— 1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.
Vol. IV.— 1561–1562.
Vol. V.— 1562.
Vol. VI.— 1563.
Vol. VII.— 1564–1565.
Vol. VIII.—1566–1568.
Vol. IX.— 1569–1571.
Vol. X.— 1572–1574.
Vol. XI.— 1575–1577.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH, (Vols. I. and II.) 1862–1868, *and* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS (Vols. III. to VI.) 1873–1895.

Vol. I.— 1485–1509.
Vol. II.—1509–1525.
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.
Vol. III., Part 1.—1525–1526.
Vol. III., Part 2.—1527–1529.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—1529–1530.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1531–1533.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1531–1533. *continued.*
Vol. V., Part 1.— 1534–1535.
Vol. V., Part 2.— 1536–1538.
Vol. VI., Part 1.— 1538–1542.
Vol. VI., Part 2.— 1542–1543.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND STATE PAPERS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved principally in the Archives of Simancas. *Edited by* MARTIN A. S. HUME, F.R.Hist.S. 1892–1894.

Vol. I. 1558–1567.
Vol. II. 1568–1579.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN. 1864–1884, *by* RAWDON BROWN and the Right Hon. G. CAVENDISH BENTINCK, M.P., 1890, *and by* HORATIO F. BROWN, 1895.

Vol. I.— 1202–1509.
Vol. II.— 1509–1519.
Vol. III.—1520–1526.
Vol. IV.—1527–1533.
Vol. V.— 1534–1554.
Vol. VI., Part I.— 1555–1556.
Vol. VI., Part II.— 1556–1557.
Vol. VI., Part III.—1557–1558.
Vol. VII.— 1558–1580.
Vol. VIII.— 1581–1591.

CALENDAR of entries in the PAPAL REGISTERS, illustrating the history of Great Britain and Ireland. *Edited by* W. H. BLISS, B.C.L., Papal Letters. 1893–1895.

Vol. I.—1198–1304.
Vol. II.—1305–1342.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE RECORDS upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price* 2*s*. 6*d*.

GUIDE TO THE PRINCIPAL CLASSES OF DOCUMENTS IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE. *By* S. R. SCARGILL BIRD, F.S.A. 1891. *Price* 7*s*. [*Reprinting*.]

ACTS OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, New Series. *Edited by* JOHN ROCHE DASENT, M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1890–95. *Price* 10*s*. *each*.

Vol. I. —1542–1547.	Vol. VI. —1556–1558.
Vol. II. —1547–1550.	Vol. VII.—1558–1570.
Vol. III.—1550–1552.	Vol. VIII.—1571–1575.
Vol. IV.—1552–1554.	Vol. IX.—1575–1577.
Vol. V.—1554–1556.	Vol. X.—1577–1578.

In the Press.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF ANCIENT DEEDS, preserved in the Public Record Office. Vol. III.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT ROLLS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD I. Vol. III. 1292–1301.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT ROLLS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD III. Vol. III. 1334, &c.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT ROLLS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD II. Vol. I. 1377–1381.

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT ROLLS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD IV. Vol. I.

CALENDAR OF THE CLOSE ROLLS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II. Vol. IV. 1323–1327.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, late an Assistant Record Keeper. Vol. XIV. Part 2.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* HORATIO F. BROWN. Vol. IX.

CALENDAR of entries in the PAPAL REGISTERS, illustrating the history of Great Britain and Ireland. *Edited by* W. H. BLISS, B.C.L. Papal Letters. Vol. III. 1343, &c.

CALENDAR of entries in the PAPAL REGISTERS, illustrating the history of Great Britain and Ireland. *Edited by* W. H. BLISS, B.C.L. Petitions to the Pope.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* E. G. ATKINSON.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I. Vol. XXIII. Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II. *Edited by* F. H. BLACKBURNE DANIELL.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF WILLIAM III. *Edited by* W. J. HARDY.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, late an Assistant Record Keeper.

CALENDAR OF INQUISITIONES POST MORTEM, Henry VII.

ACTS OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, New Series, Vol. XI. *Edited by* JOHN ROCHE DASENT, M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF ANCIENT CORRESPONDENCE preserved in the Public Record Office.

PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE.

LISTS AND INDEXES.

The object of these publications is to make the contents of the Public Record Office more easily available. In conjunction with the Calendars, they will, in course of time, form a catalogue of the National Archives, as explained in the Fifty-first Report of the Deputy Keeper of the Records (page 10).

No. I. Index of Ancient Petitions of the Chancery and the Exchequer. 1892. 9*s.* 6*d.*

No. II. List and Index of the Declared Accounts from the Pipe Office and the Audit Office. 1893. Price 15*s.*

No. III. List of volumes of State Papers (Great Britain and Ireland), Part I., A.D. 1547–1760. 1894. Price 6*s.* 6*d.*

No. IV. List of Plea Rolls. 1894. Price 7*s.*

No. V. List and Index of Ministers' Accounts. Part I. 1894. Price 16*s.*

In the Press.

No. VI. List and Index of Court Rolls.

No. VII. Index of Chancery Proceedings, Series II., A.D. 1558–1579.

In Progress.

Index of Early Chancery Proceedings.

List of Ancient Accounts.

List of Enrolled Accounts.

List of Surveys, Rentals, &c.

List of Sheriffs.

List and Index of Ministers' Accounts. Part II.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published "under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honour- "able to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of "historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore "humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to "give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, "for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians "of this realm."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A. 1858.

   Capgrave's Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

   This Chronicle traces the history of the monastery from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I. The author had access to the title deeds of the house, and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom.

3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

   The first is a poem in Norman French, probably written in 1245. The second is an anonymous poem, written between 1440 and 1450, which is mainly valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written between 1066 and 1074.

4. Monumenta Franciscana. Vol. I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. II.—De Adventu Minorum; re-edited, with additions. Chronicle of the Grey Friars. The ancient English version of the Rule of St. Francis. Abbreviatio Statutorum, 1451, &c. *Edited by* Richard Howlett, Barrister-at-Law. 1858, 1882.

   The first volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of St. Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers. The second volume contains materials found since the first volume was published.

5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

This work gives the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards.

6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this version.

7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A. 1858.

The first part relates only to the history of the Empire from the election of Henry I. the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, from the accession of Henry I. in 1100, to 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, B.A. 1858–1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of Malmesbury, about the year 1367. A continuation carries the history of England down to the year 1413.

10. Memorials of Henry the Seventh: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* James Gairdner. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet Laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest are given in an appendix.

11. Memorials of Henry the Fifth. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* Charles A. Cole. 1858.

12. Munimenta Gildhallæ Londoniensis; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the 12th, 13th, 14th, and early part of the 15th centuries. The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled in the early part of the 14th century during the reign of Edward II. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the 12th, 13th, and early part of the 14th centuries.

13. Chronica Johannis de Oxenedes. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa, it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and comes down to 1292. It is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the Kingdom.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, M.A. 1859–1861.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c. of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana; 449–1298; necnon ejusdem Liber de Achiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, 1859.

17. Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

This work, written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. 1399–1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Churchill Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. His work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards, and it has great value for the philologist.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commenced in 447, and come down to 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I.–IV. *Edited by* the Rev. J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V.–VII. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. Vol. VIII. *Edited by* George F. Warner, M.A., of the Department of MSS., British Museum. 1861–1891.

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable for the anecdotes which they contain.

The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland, the first in 1183, the second in 1185-6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about 1188, and may be regarded rather as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ;* and Vol. VII., the lives of S. Remigius and S. Hugh. Vol. VIII. contains the Treatise *De Principum Instructione*, and an Index to Vols. I.–IV. and VIII.

22. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

23. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* Benjamin Thorpe, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography.

24. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* James Gairdner. 1861–1863.

The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III., correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. Letters of Bishop Grosseteste. *Edited by* the Rev. Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The letters of Robert Grosseteste range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. Vol. III.; 1200–1327. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Records. 1862–1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which original portions are distinguished from mere compilations. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, D.D., Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

28. Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—1. Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales, 1259-1307. 3. Johannis de Trokelowe et Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica et Annales, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. 4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Thoma Walsingham, regnante Ricardo Secundo, ejusdem Ecclesiæ Præcentore, compilata; Vol. I., 793–1290: Vol. II., 1290–1349: Vol. III., 1349–1411. 5. Johannis Amundesham, Monachi Monasterii S. Albani, ut videtur, Annales; Vols. I. and II. 6. Registra quorundam Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, qui Sæculo XV^mo^ floruere; Vol. I., Registrum Abbatiæ Johannis Whethamstede, Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Albani, iterum susceptæ; Roberto Blakeney, Capellano, quondam adscriptum: Vol. II., Registra Johannis Whethamstede, Willelmi Albon, et Willelmi Walingforde, Abbatum Monasterii Sancti Albani, cum Appendice, continente quasdam Epistolas, a Johanne Whethamstede Conscriptas. 7. Ypodigma Neustriæ a Thoma Walsingham, quondam Monacho Monasterii S. Albani, conscriptum. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1876.

In the first two volumes is a History of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans.

In the 3rd volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, who lived in the reign of Edward I.: an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol, 1291–1292, also attributed to William Rishanger but on no sufficient ground: a short Chronicle of English History, 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand: a short Chronicle Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi, Regis Angliæ, with Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: and fragments of three Chronicles of English History, 1285 to 1307.

In the 4th volume is a Chronicle of English History, 1259 to 1296: Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, and a continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henry de Blaneforde: a full Chronicle of English History, 1392 to 1406; and an account of the Benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the 15th century.

The 5th, 6th, and 7th volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham: with a Continuation.

The 8th and 9th volumes, in continuation of the Annals, contain a Chronicle, probably by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The 10th and 11th volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford.

The 12th volume contains a compendious History of England to the reign of Henry V., and of Normandy in early times, also by Thomas Walsingham, and dedicated to Henry V.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from about 690 to 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863–1869.

Richard of Cirencester's history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. It gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book ii. c. 3.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 20–21, 21–22, 30–31, 32–33, and 33–35 Edw. I; and 11–12 Edw. III. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Barrister-at-Law. Years 12–13, 13–14, 14, 14–15, and 15, Edward III. *Edited and translated by* Luke Owen Pike, M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1891.

The "Year Books" are the earliest of our Law Reports. They contain matter not only of practical utility to lawyers in the present day, but also illustrative of almost every branch of history, while for certain philological purposes they hold a position absolutely unique.

32. Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy, 1449–1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault dû Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A. 1863.

33. Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1867.

34. Alexandri Neckam de Naturis Rerum libri duo; with Neckam's Poem, De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, M.A. 1863.

In the *De Naturis Rerum* are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century.

35. Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A. 1864–1866.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. Vol. III.:—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297. Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432. Vol. IV.:—Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377. Vol. V.:—Index and Glossary. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection embraces chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work is valuable, not only as a biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I.:—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II.:—Epistolæ Cantuarienses; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London.

In letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury.

39. Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. Vol. I. Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. Vol. III., 1422–1431. *Edited by* William Hardy, F.S.A. 1864–1879. Vol. IV., 1431–1447. Vol. V., 1447–1471. *Edited by* Sir William Hardy, F.S.A., and Edward L. C. P. Hardy, F.S.A. 1884–1891.

40. A Collection of the Chronicles and ancient Histories of Great Britain, now called England, by John de Waurin. Vol. I., Albina to 668. Vol. II., 1399–1422. Vol. III., 1422–1431. (Translations of the preceding Vols. I., II., and III.) *Edited and translated by* Sir William Hardy, F.S.A., and Edward L. C. P. Hardy, F.S.A. 1864–1891.

41. Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge Vols. III.–IX. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Rawson Lumby, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity, Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865–1886.

This chronicle begins with the creation, and is brought down to the reign of Edward III. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth.

42. Le Livere de Reis de Brittanie e Le Livere de Reis de Engletere. *Edited by* the Rev. John Glover, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treaties are valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians. Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonised French.

43. Chronica Monasterii de Melsa ab anno 1150 usque ad annum 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* Edward Augustus Bond, Assistant Keeper of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866–1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country.

44. Matthæ Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067–1253. *Edited by* Sir Frederick Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Manuscript Department of British Museum. 1866–1869.

45. Liber Monasterii de Hyda: a Chronicle and Chartulary of Hyde Abbey, Winchester, 455–1023. *Edited by* Edward Edwards. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde

Chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify the statements, which, in substance, he adopts.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and mediæval English.

46. CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the earliest times to 1135; and SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. *Edited, with Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, M.R.I.A. 1866.

47. THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A. 1866–1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first, is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum;" in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, to the death of Henry III.; in the third, a history of the reign of Edward I. The language is a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, or THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN. *Edited, with a Translation, by* the Rev. JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University of Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an ancient original. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas.

49. GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169–1192, known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

50. MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

51. CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOUEDENE. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868–1871.

The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds to some extent with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49). From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work.

52. WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS MONACHI DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI QUINQUE. *Edited by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

53. HISTORIC AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN, &c. 1172–1320. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

54. THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM 1041 to 1590. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, M.R.I.A. 1871.

55. MONUMENTA JURIDICA. THE BLACK BOOK OF THE ADMIRALTY, WITH APPENDICES, Vols. I.–IV. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871–1876.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy.

56. MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VI.:—OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., AND BISHOP OF BATH AND WELLS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

57. Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. Vol. III. A.D. 1216 to A.D. 1239. Vol. IV. A.D. 1240 to A.D. 1247. Vol. V. A.D. 1248 to A.D. 1259. Vol. VI. Additamenta. Vol. VII. Index. *Edited by* the Rev. Henry Richards Luard, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872–1884.

58. Memoriale Fratris Walteri de Coventria.—The Historical Collections of Walter of Coventry. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872–1873.

The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable.

59. The Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by* Thomas Wright, M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres). 1872.

60. Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII., from original Documents preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Campbell, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. 1873–1877.

61. Historical Papers and Letters from the Northern Registers. *Edited by* the Rev. James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1873.

62. Registrum Palatinum Dunelmense. The Register of Richard de Kellawe, Lord Palatine and Bishop of Durham; 1311–1316. Vols. I.–IV. *Edited by* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Records. 1873–1878.

63. Memorials of Saint Dunstan, Archbishop of Canterbury. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1874.

64. Chronicon Angliæ, ab Anno Domini 1328 usque ad Annum 1388, Auctore Monacho quodam Sancti Albani. *Edited by* Edward Maunde Thompson, Barrister-at-Law, Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

65. Thómas Saga Erkibyskups. A Life of Archbishop Thomas Becket, in Icelandic. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary by* M. Eiríkr Magnússon, M.A., Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875–1884.

66. Radulphi de Coggeshall Chronicon Anglicanum. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A. 1875.

67. Materials for the History of Thomas Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury. Vols. I.–VI. *Edited by* the Rev. James Craigie Robertson, M.A., Canon of Canterbury. 1875–1883. Vol. VII. *Edited by* Joseph Brigstocke Sheppard, LL.D. 1885.

The first volume contains the life of that celebrated man, and the miracles after his death, by William, a monk of Canterbury. The second, the life by Benedict of Peterborough; John of Salisbury; Alan of Tewkesbury; and Edward Grim. The third, the life by William Fitzstephen; and Herbert of Bosham. The fourth, anonymous lives, Quadrilogus, &c. The fifth, sixth, and seventh, the Epistles, and known letters.

68. Radulfi de Diceto Decani Lundoniensis Opera Historica. The Historical Works of Master Ralph de Diceto, Dean of London. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1876.

The abbreviationes Chronicorum extend to 1147 and the Ymagines Historiarum to 1201.

69. Roll of the Proceedings of the King's Council in Ireland, for a Portion of the 16th Year of the Reign of Richard II. 1392–93. *Edited by* the Rev. James Graves, A.B. 1877.

70. Henrici de Bracton de Legibus et Consuetudinibus Angliæ Libri Quinque in Varios Tractatus Distincti. Vols. I.–VI. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L. 1878–1883.

71. The Historians of the Church of York, and its Archbishops. Vols. I.–III. *Edited by* the Rev. James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1879–1894.

72. Registrum Malmesburiense. The Register of Malmesbury Abbey; Preserved in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. J. S. Brewer, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield; *and* Charles Trice Martin, B.A. 1879–1880.

73. Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c. 1879, 1880.

74. Henrici Archidiaconi Huntendunensis Historia Anglorum. The History of the English, by Henry, Archdeacon of Huntingdon, from A.D. 55 to A.D. 1154, in Eight Books. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, M.A. 1879.

75. The Historical Works of Symeon of Durham. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, M.A. 1882–1885.

76. Chronicle of the Reigns of Edward I. and Edward II. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. William Stubbs, D.D., Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, &c. 1882, 1883.

The first volume of these Chronicles contains the *Annales Londonienses* and the *Annales Paulini:* the second I.—*Commendatio Lamentabilis in Transitu magni Regis Edwardi.* II.—*Gesta Edwardi de Carnarvan Auctore Canonico Bridlingtoniensi.* III.—*Monachi cujusdam Malmesberiensis Vita Edwardi II.* IV.—*Vita et Mors Edwardi II., conscripta a Thoma de la Moore.*

77. Registrum Epistolarum Fratris Johannis Peckham, Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis. Vols. I.–III. *Edited by* Charles Trice Martin, B.A., F.S.A., 1882–1886.

78. Register of S. Osmund. *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. Rich Jones, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon. Vols. I. and II. 1883, 1884.

This Register derives its name from containing the statutes, rules, and orders made or compiled by S. Osmund, to be observed in the Cathedral and diocese of Salisbury.

79. Chartulary of the Abbey of Ramsey. Vols. I.–III. *Edited by* William Henry Hart, F.S.A., and the Rev. Ponsonby Annesley Lyons. 1884–1893.

80. Chartularies of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin, with the Register of its House at Dunbrody, County of Wexford, and Annals of Ireland, 1162–1370. *Edited by* John Thomas Gilbert, F.S.A., M.R.I.A. Vols. I. and II. 1884, 1885.

81. Eadmeri Historia Novorum in Anglia, et opuscula duo de Vita Sancti Anselmi et quibusdam Miraculis ejus. *Edited by* the Rev. Martin Rule, M.A. 1884.

82. Chronicles of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II., and Richard I. Vols. I.–IV. *Edited by* Richard Howlett, Barrister-at-Law. 1884–1890.

Vol. I. contains Books I.–IV. of the *Historia Rerum Anglicarum* of William of Newburgh. Vol. II. contains Book V. of that work, the continuation of the same to A.D. 1298 and the *Draco Normannicus* of Etienne de Rouen.

Vol. III. ontains the *Gesta Stephani Regis*, the Chronicle of Richard of Hexham, the *Relatio de Standardo* of St. Aelred of Rievaulx, the poem of Jordan Fantosme, and the Chronicle of Richard of Devizes.
Vol. IV. contains the Chronicle of Robert of Torigni.

83. Chronicle of the Abbey of Ramsey. *Edited by* the Rev. William Dunn Macray, M.A., F.S.A., Rector of Ducklington, Oxon. 1886.

84. Chronica Rogeri de Wendover, sive Flores Historiarum. Vols. I.–III. *Edited by* Henry Gay Hewlett, Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue. 1886–1889.

This edition gives that portion only of Roger of Wendover's Chronicle which can be accounted an original authority.

85. The Letter Books of the Monastery of Christ Church, Canterbury, *Edited by* Joseph Brigstocke Sheppard, LL.D. Vols. I.–III., 1887–1889.

The Letters printed in these volumes were chiefly written between 1296 and 1333.

86. The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester. *Edited by* William Aldis Wright, M.A., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Parts I. and II., 1887.

The date of the composition of this Chronicle is placed about the year 1300. The writer appears to have been an eye witness of many events which he describes. The language in which it is written was the dialect of Gloucestershire at that time.

87. Chronicle of Robert of Brunne. *Edited by* Frederick James Furnivall, M.A., Barrister-at-Law. Parts I. and II. 1887.

Robert of Brunne, or Bourne, co. Lincoln, was a member of the Gilbertine Order established at Sempringham. His Chronicle is described by its editor as a work of fiction, a contribution not to English history, but to the history of English.

88. Icelandic Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. Vol. I. Orkneyinga Saga, and Magnus Saga. Vol. II. Hakonar Saga, and Magnus Saga. *Edited by* Gudbrand Vigfusson, M.A. 1887. Vols. III. and IV. Translations of the above by Sir George Webbe Dasent, D.C.L.

89. The Tripartite Life of St. Patrick, with other documents relating to that Saint. *Edited by* Whitley Stokes, LL.D., D.C.L., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford; and Corresponding Member of the Institute of France. Parts I. and II. 1887.

90. Willelmi monachi Malmesbiriensis de Regum Gestis Anglorum libri V.; et Historiæ Novellæ, libri III. *Edited by* William Stubbs, D.D., Bishop of Oxford. Vols. I. and II. 1887–1889.

91. Lestorie des Engles solum Geffrei Gaimar. *Edited by* the late Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Records; *continued and translated by* Charles Trice Martin, B.A., F.S.A. Vols. I. and II. 1888–1889.

92. Chronicle of Henry Knighton, Canon of Leicester. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Rawson Lumby, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity. Vol. I. 1889.

93. Chronicle of Adam Murimuth, with the Chronicle of Robert of Avesbury. *Edited by* Edward Maunde Thompson, LL.D., F.S.A. Principal Librarian and Secretary of the British Museum. 1889.

94. Chartulary of the Abbey of St. Thomas the Martyr, Dublin. *Edited by* John Thomas Gilbert, F.S.A., M.I.R.A. 1889.

95. Flores Historiarum. *Edited by* the Rev. H. R. Luard, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. Vol. I. The creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067-1264. Vol. III. A.D. 1265–1326. 1890.

96. Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, M.A., Fellow of the Royal University of Ireland. Vols. I. and II. 1890.—1892.

97. Charters and Documents, illustrating the History of the Cathedral and City of Sarum, 1100–1300; forming an Appendix to the Register of S. Osmund. *Selected by* the late Rev. W. H. Rich Jones, M.A., F.S.A., *and edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., F.S.A., Rector of Ducklington. 1891.

98. Memoranda de Parliamento, 25 Edward I. 1305. *Edited by* F. W. Maitland, M.A. 1893.

In the Press.

Year Books of the Reign of Edward III. *Edited and translated by* Luke Owen Pike, M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

Ranulf de Glanvill; Tractatus de legibus et consuetudinibus Angliæ, &c. *Edited and translated by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L.

Chronicle of Henry Knighton, Canon of Leicester, to the death of Richard II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Rawson Lumby, D.D. Vol. II.

The Red Book of the Exchequer. *Edited by* Hubert Hall, F.S.A., of the Public Record Office. Parts I., II., and III.

Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey. *Edited by* Thomas Arnold, M.A. Vol. III.

PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

[In boards or cloth. Volumes not mentioned in this list are out of print.]

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Hen. III.–Edw. III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD. 2 Vols. folio (1805–1810). 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), 18*s.*

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH. 1 Vol. folio (1811), 18*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). 21*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4). 21*s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY and WM. ELLIOTT. Vols. 10 and 11, folio (1824–1828). Indices, 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 5 to 6, folio (1825–1834). 25*s.* each. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FŒDERA, New Edition, folio. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE. Vol. 4, 1377–1383 (1869). 6*s.*

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3. Calendar to Pleadings, &c., Hen. VII.—13 Eliz. Part 4, Calendar to Pleadings, to end of Eliz. (1827–1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN. Folio. Part 4 (or Vol. 3), 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, ELIZ.; with Examples of Proceedings from Ric. II. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY. Vol. 3 (1832), folio, 21*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. Vol. 2, 1224–1227. 18*s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Ric. II.—33 Hen. VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834–1837). 14*s.* each. (*Vol.* 1 *out of print.*)

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1201–1216. *Edited by* T. DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. folio (1835), 31*s.* 6*d.* The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 9*s.*

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. Vol. 2 royal 8vo. (1835). 14*s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1200–1205; 1417–1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 12*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI, temp. Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 18*s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216–1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836); Vol. 1, 14*s.* Vol. 2, 18*s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM: SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835–1844); Vol. 1, 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, 2*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; with Documents illustrating its History. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836). 42*s.*

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and Transactions between Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837).

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1190–1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 30*s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831–1837. 1 Vol. fol. (1837). 8*s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838). 31*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, with Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry I.; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE. 1 Vol. folio, 40*s*. 2 Vols. royal 8vo., 30*s*. (*Vol.* 1 *is out of print.*)

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good, modified by Regulations prior to the Conquest by Edward I.; and anomalous Laws, principally of Institutions which continued in force. With translation. Also, Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN. 1 Vol. folio (1841), 44*s*. 2 Vols. royal 8vo., 36*s*.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6*s*.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3 ,4 HEN. II., 1155–1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 4*s*. 6*d*.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189–1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6*s*.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, from the Records of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844). 45*s*. 6*d*.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846). 2*s*. 6*d*.

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REG. SCOT. in Archivis Publicis asservatum. Vol. 1, 1306–1424. (*For continuation see p.* 33.) *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON. Folio (1814). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. Folio (1814–1875). *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES. Vol. 1, 42*s*. Vols. 5 and 6 (in three Parts), 21*s*. each Part; Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, 10*s*. 6*d*. each; Vol. 12 (Index), 63*s*. Or, 12 Volumes in 13, 12*l*. 12*s*.

ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466–1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON. Fol. (1839). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII). 1478–1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON. Folio (1839). 10*s*. 6*d*.

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer, containing Payments out of the Revenue, 44 Edw. III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON. 1 Vol. royal 8vo., 25*s*.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, James I.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), 30*s*. Or, royal 8vo., 21*s*.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, Henry III.—Henry VI.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON. 1 Vol. royal 8vo., 30*s*.

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853). 12*s*.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. Henry VIII.—Anne (1509–1714). A Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856). 40*s*.

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols. 4to. (1830–1852), 10*s*. 6*d*. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

REPORTS ON THE UTRECHT PSALTER.

THE ATHANASIAN CREED IN CONNEXION WITH THE UTRECHT PSALTER; being a Report to the Right Honourable Lord Romilly, Master of the Rolls, on a Manuscript in the University of Utrecht, by Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1872. 4to. 44 pp. 2 fac-similes half bound. *Price* 20*s*.

FURTHER REPORT ON THE UTRECHT PSALTER; in answer to the Eight Reports made to the Trustees of the British Museum, and edited by the Dean of Westminster. By Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, 1874. 4to. 80 pp. half bound. *Price* 10*s*.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, by Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, under the Superintendence of W. BASEVI SANDERS, an Assistant Record Keeper. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861–1863), boards.

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester, and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book.

Title.	Price.			Title.	Price.		
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
In Great Domesday Book.				Brought forward -	7	17	0
Bedfordshire - -	0	8	0	Middlesex -	0	8	0
Berkshire - - -	0	8	0	Nottinghamshire - -	0	10	0
Buckingham - -	0	8	0	Northamptonshire -	0	8	0
Cambridge - -	0	10	0	Oxfordshire - -	0	8	0
Cheshire and Lancashire -	0	8	0	Rutlandshire (bound with Leicestershire) -	—		
Cornwall - - -	0	8	0	Shropshire - -	0	8	0
Derbyshire - -	0	8	0	Somersetshire - -	0	10	0
Devonshire - -	0	10	0	Staffordshire - -	0	8	0
Dorsetshire - -	0	8	0	Surrey - - -	0	8	0
Gloucestershire - -	0	8	0	Sussex - - -	0	10	0
Hampshire - -	0	10	0	Warwickshire - -	0	8	0
Herefordshire - -	0	8	0	Wiltshire - -	0	10	0
Hertfordshire - -	0	10	0	Worcestershire - -	0	8	0
Huntingdonshire - -	0	8	0	Yorkshire - - -	1	1	0
Kent - - - -	0	8	0				
Lancashire (*see* Cheshire and Lancashire) -	—			*In Little Domesday Book.*			
Leicestershire and Rutlandshire - -	0	8	0	Norfolk - - -	1	3	0
Lincolnshire - -	1	1	0	Suffolk - - -	1	2	0
				Essex - - -	0	16	0
Carried forward -	7	17	0	Total - -	£17	3	0

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, an Assistant Record Keeper. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16*s*.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865. (*Out of print.*)

Part II. (Henry VII. and Edward VI.). 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters, and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580–3.

Fac-similes of Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Lieut-General J. Cameron, R.E., C.B., F.R.S., and edited by W. Basevi Sanders, an Assistant Record Keeper. Part I. *Price* 2*l.* 10*s.*

The Anglo-Saxon MSS. represented in this volume from the earlier portions of the collection of archives belonging to the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury, and consist of a series of 25 charters, deeds, and wills, commencing with a record of proceedings at the first Synodal Council of Clovestho in 742, and terminating with the first part of a tripartite chirograph of the sixth year of the reign of Edward the Confessor.

Fac-similes of Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Major-General A. Cooke, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. Basevi Sanders. an Assistant Record Keeper. Part II. *Price* 3*l.* 10*s.*

(Also, separately. Edward the Confessor's Charter. *Price* 2*s.*)

The originals of the Fac-similes contained in this volume belong to the Deans and Chapters of Westminster, Exeter, Wells, Winchester, and Worcester; the Marquis of Bath, the Earl of Ilchester, Winchester College, Her Majesty's Public Record Office, Bodleian Library, Somersetshire Archæological and National History Society's Museum in Taunton Castle, and William Salt Library at Stafford. They consist of charters and other documents granted by, or during the reigns of, Baldred, Æthelred, Offa, and Burgred, Kings of Mercia; Uhtred of the Huiccas, Ceadwalla and Ini of Wessex; Æthelwulf, Eadward the Elder, Æthelstan, Eadmund the First, Eadred, Eadwig, Eadgar, Eadward the Second, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Eadward the Confessor, and William the Conqueror, embracing altogether a period of nearly four hundred years.

Fac-similes of Anglo-Saxon Manuscripts. Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Colonel R. H. Stotherd, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. Basevi Sanders, an Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part III. *Price* 6*l.* 6*s.*

This volume contains fac-similes of the Ashburnham collection of Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., including King Alfred's Will. The MSS. represented in it, range from A.D. 697 to A.D. 1161, being charters, wills, deeds, and reports of Synodal transactions during the reigns of Kings Wihtred of Kent, Offa, Eardwulf, Coenwulf, Cuthred, Beornwulf, Æthelwulf, Ælfred, Eadward the Elder, Eadmund, Eadred, Queen Eadgifu, and Kings Eadgar, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Henry the First and Henry the Second. In addition to these are two belonging to the Marquis of Anglesey, one of them being the Foundation Charter of Burton Abbey by Æthelred the Second with the testament of its great benefactor Wulfric.

Public Record Office,
June 1895.

HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION.

REPORTS OF THE ROYAL COMMISSIONERS APPOINTED TO INQUIRE WHAT PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS BELONGING TO PRIVATE FAMILIES AND INSTITUTIONS ARE EXTANT WHICH WOULD BE OF UTILITY IN THE ILLUSTRATION OF HISTORY, CONSTITUTIONAL LAW, SCIENCE AND GENERAL LITERATURE.

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. d.
1870 (Reprinted 1874.)	First Report, with Appendix - - Contents:— England. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Abingdon and other Corporations, &c. Scotland. Advocates' Library, Glasgow Corporation, &c. Ireland. Dublin, Cork, and other Corporations, &c.	f'cap	[C. 55]	1 6
1871	Second Report, with Appendix and Index to the First and Second Reports - - - - - - Contents:— England. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Oxford Colleges; Monastery of Dominican Friars at Woodchester, Duke of Bedford, Earl Spencer, &c. Scotland. Aberdeen and St. Andrew's Universities, &c. Ireland. Marquis of Ormonde; Dr. Lyons, &c.	"	[C. 441]	3 10
1872	Third Report, with Appendix and Index - - - - - - Contents:— England. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Stonyhurst College; Bridgewater and other Corporations; Duke of Northumberland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Marquis of Bath, &c. Scotland. University of Glasgow; Duke of Montrose, &c. Ireland. Marquis of Ormonde; Black Book of Limerick, &c.	"	[C. 673]	[*Is being reprinted.*]
1873	Fourth Report, with Appendix. Part I. - - - - - - Contents:— England. House of Lords; Westminster Abbey; Cambridge and Oxford Colleges; Cinque Ports, Hythe, and other Corporations, Marquis of Bath, Earl of Denbigh, &c. Scotland. Duke of Argyll, &c. Ireland. Trinity College, Dublin; Marquis of Ormonde.	"	[C. 857]	6 8

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price. s. d.
1873	FOURTH REPORT. PART II. INDEX -	f'cap	[C.857i.]	2 6
1876	FIFTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. Contents:— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Dean and Chapter of Canterbury; Rye, Lydd, and other Corporations, Duke of Sutherland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Reginald Cholmondeley, Esq., &c. SCOTLAND. Earl of Aberdeen, &c.	„	[C.1432]	7 0
„	DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -	„	[C. 1432 i.]	3 6
1877	SIXTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - Contents:— ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Lambeth Palace; Black Book of the Archdeacon of Canterbury; Bridport, Wallingford, and other Corporations; Lord Leconfield, Sir Reginald Graham, Sir Henry Ingilby, &c. SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, Earl of Moray, &c. IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde.	„	[C.1745]	8 6
(Reprinted 1893.)	DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -	„	[C.2102]	1 10
1879 (Reprinted 1895.)	SEVENTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. - - - - - Contents:— House of Lords; County of Somerset; Earl of Egmont, Sir Frederick Graham, Sir Harry Verney, &c.	„	[C.2340]	7 6
(Reprinted 1895.)	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents:— Duke of Athole, Marquis of Ormonde, S. F. Livingstone, Esq., &c.	„	[C. 2340 i.]	3 6
1881	EIGHTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - Contents:— List of collections examined, 1869–1880. ENGLAND. House of Lords; Duke of Marlborough; Magdalen College, Oxford; Royal College of Physicians; Queen Anne's Bounty Office; Corporations of Chester, Leicester, &c. IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde, Lord Emly, The O'Conor Don, Trinity College, Dublin, &c.	„	[C.3040]	8 6
1881	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents:— Duke of Manchester.	„	[C. 3040 i.]	1 9
1881	DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX Contents:— Earl of Ashburnham.	„	[C. 3040 ii.]	1 4

Date.		Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. d.
1883	NINTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - - Contents:— St. Paul's and Canterbury Cathedrals; Eton College; Carlisle, Yarmouth, Canterbury, and Barnstaple Corporations, &c.	f'cap	[C.3773]	[*Is being reprinted.*]
1884	DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX - Contents:— ENGLAND. House of Lords, Earl of Leicester; C. Pole Gell, Alfred Morrison, Esqs., &c. SCOTLAND. Lord Elphinstone, H. C. Maxwell Stuart, Esq., &c. IRELAND. Duke of Leinster, Marquis of Drogheda, &c.	„	[C. 3773 i.]	6 3
1884	DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - - - Contents:— Mrs. Stopford Sackville.	„	[C. 3773 ii.]	1 7
1883 (Reprinted 1895.)	CALENDAR OF THE MANUSCRIPTS OF THE MARQUIS OF SALISBURY, K.G. (or CECIL MSS.). PART I. - - - -	8vo.	[C.3777]	3 5
1888	DITTO. PART II. - - -	„	[C.5463]	3 5
1889	DITTO. PART III. - - -	„	[C. 5889 v.]	2 1
1892	DITTO. PART IV. - -	„	[C.6823]	2 11
1894	DITTO. PART V. - - -	„	[C.7574]	2 6
1885	TENTH REPORT - - - - This is introductory to the following:—	8vo.	[C.4548]	0 3½
1885 (Reprinted 1895.)	(1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - Earl of Eglinton, Sir J. S. Maxwell, Bart., and C. S. H. D. Moray, C. F. Weston Underwood, G. W. Digby, Esqs.	„	[C.4575]	3 7
1885	(2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Family of Gawdy.	„	[C. 4576 iii.]	1 4
1885	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - Wells Cathedral.	„	[C. 4576 ii.]	2 0
1885	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Earl of Westmorland; Capt. Stewart; Lord Stafford; Sir N. W. Throckmorton; Sir P. T. Mainwaring, Lord Muncaster, M.P., Capt. J. F. Bagot, Earl of Kilmorey, Earl of Powis, and others, the Corporations of Kendal, Wenlock, Bridgnorth, Eye, Plymouth, and the County of Essex; and Stonyhurst College.	„	[C.4576]	3 6
1885 (Reprinted 1895.)	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - The Marquis of Ormonde, Earl of Fingall, Corporations of Galway, Waterford, the Sees of Dublin and Ossory, the Jesuits in Ireland.	„	[4576 i.]	2 10

Date.	——	Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price. s.	Price. d.
1887	(6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Marquis of Abergavenny, Lord Braye, G. F. Luttrell, P. P. Bouverie, W. Bromley Davenport, R. T. Balfour, Esquires.	8vo.	[C.5242]	1	7
1887	ELEVENTH REPORT - - - - This is introductory to the following:—	„	[C. 5060 vi.]	0	3
1887	(1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - H. D. Skrine, Esq., Salvetti Correspondence.	„	[C.5060]	1	1
1887	(2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - House of Lords. 1678–1688.	„	[C. 5060 i.]	2	0
1887	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Corporations of Southampton and Lynn.	„	[C. 5060 ii.]	1	8
1887	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Marquess Townshend.	„	[C. 5060 iii.]	2	6
1887	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Earl of Dartmouth.	„	[C. 5060 iv.]	2	8
1887	(6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Duke of Hamilton.	„	[C. 5060 v.]	1	6
1888	(7.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Duke of Leeds, Marchioness of Waterford, Lord Hothfield, &c.; Bridgwater Trust Office, Reading Corporation, Inner Temple Library.	„	[C.5612]	2	0
1890	TWELFTH REPORT - - - - This is introductory to the following:—	„	[C.5889]	0	3
1888	(1.) APPENDIX - - - - Earl Cowper, K.G. (Coke MSS., at Melbourne Hall, Derby). Vol. I.	„	[C.5472]	2	7
1888	(2.) APPENDIX - - - - Ditto. Vol. II.	„	[C.5613]	2	5
1889	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Ditto. Vol. III.	„	[C. 5889 i.]	1	4
1888	(4.) APPENDIX - - - - The Duke of Rutland, G.C.B. Vol. I.	„	[C.5614]	3	2
1891	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Ditto. Vol. II.	„	[C. 5889 ii.]	2	0
1889	(6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - House of Lords, 1689–1690.	„	[C. 5889 iii.]	2	1
1890	(7.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - S. H. le Fleming, Esq., of Rydal.	„	[C. 5889 iv.]	1	11
1891	(8.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Duke of Athole, K.T., and the Earl of Home.	„	[C.6338]	1	0
1891	(9.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - The Duke of Beaufort, K.G., the Earl of Donoughmore, J. H. Gurney, W. W. B. Hulton, R. W. Ketton, G. A. Aitken, P. V. Smith, Esqs.; Bishop of Ely; Cathedrals of Ely, Gloucester, Lincoln, and Peterborough; Corporations of Gloucester, Higham, Ferrers, and Newark; Southwell Minster; Lincoln District Registry.	„	[C. 6338 i.]	2	6

Date.		Size.	Sessional Paper.	Price.
				s. *d.*
1891	(10.) APPENDIX - - - - - The First Earl of Charlemont. Vol. I. 1745–1783.	8vo.	[C. 6338 ii.]	1 11
1892	THIRTEENTH REPORT - - - - This is introductory to the following:—	„	[C.6827]	0 3
1891	(1.) APPENDIX - - - - - The Duke of Portland. Vol. I.	„	[C.6474]	3 0
	(2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. Ditto. Vol. II. - - -	„	[C. 6827 i.]	2 0
1892	(3.) APPENDIX. J. B. Fortescue, Esq., of Dropmore. Vol. I. - - - -	„	[C.6660]	2 7
1892	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - Corporations of Rye, Hastings, and Hereford. Capt. F. C. Loder-Symonds, E. R. Wodehouse, M.P., J. Dovaston, Esqs., Sir T. B. Lennard, Bart., Rev. W. D. Macray, and Earl of Dartmouth (Supplementary Report).	„	[C.6810]	2 4
1892	(5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. House of Lords, 1690–1691 - -	„	[C.6822]	2 4
1893	(6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. Sir W. Fitzherbert, Bart. The Delaval Family, of Seaton Delaval; The Earl of Ancaster; and General Lyttelton-Annesley.	„	[C.7166]	1 4
1893	(7.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. The Earl of Lonsdale - -	„	[C.7241.]	1 3
1893	(8.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. The First Earl of Charlemont. Vol. II. 1784–1799.	„	[C.7424.]	1 11
	FOURTEENTH REPORT. This will be introductory to the following:—			
1894	(1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. The Duke of Rutland, G.C.B. Vol. III.	„	[C.7476.]	1 11
1894	(2.) APPENDIX. The Duke of Portland. Vol. III. -	„	[C.7569]	2 8
1894	(3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. The Duke of Roxburghe; Sir H. H. Campbell, Bart.; The Earl of Strathmore; and the Countess Dowager of Seafield.	„	[C.7570]	1 2
1894	(4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX. Lord Kenyon - - - -	„	[C.7571]	2 10
	(5.) APPENDIX. J. B. Fortescue, Esq., of Dropmore. Vol. II.	*In the Press.*		
	(6.) HOUSE OF LORDS, 1692, &c. - -	*In the Press.*		
1895	(7.) APPENDIX. The Marquess of Ormonde - -	„	[C.7678]	1 10

Stationery Office,
June 1895.

ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS.

REPORTS Nos. 1-22, IN FOLIO, PUBLISHED BETWEEN 1840 AND 1861, ARE NO LONGER ON SALE. SUBSEQUENT REPORTS ARE IN OCTAVO.

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents.	Sessional No.	Price. s.	Price. d.
1862	23	Proceedings - - - -	C. 2970	0	4
1863	24	Proceedings - - - -	C. 3142	0	7½
1864	25	Calendar of Crown Leases, 33-38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Bills and Answers, &c., Hen. VIII.–Ph. & Mary, for Cheshire and Flintshire.—List of Lords High Treasurers and Chief Commissioners of the Treasury, from Hen. VII.	C. 3318	0	8
1865	26	List of Plans annexed to Inclosure Awards, 31 Geo. II.–7 Will. IV.—Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., for Cheshire and Flintshire, Hen. VI.–Eliz.—Calendar of Writs of General Livery, &c., for Cheshire, Eliz.–Charles I. — Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. III. and Edw. I.	C. 3492	0	7
1866	27	List of Awards of Inclosure Commissioners.—References to Charters in the Cartæ Antiquæ and the Confirmation Rolls of Chancery, Ethelbert of Kent–James I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. II.	C. 3717	1	6
1867	28	Calendar of Fines, Cheshire and Flintshire, Edw. I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. III. Table of Law Terms, from the Norman Conquest to 1 Will IV.	C. 3839	0	10½
1868	29	Calendar of Royal Charters.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls Richard II.–Henry VII.—Durham Records, Letter and Report.	C. 4012	0	9
1869	30	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory. —Durham Records, Inventory.—Calendar of Deeds, &c. on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Decrees of Court of General Surveyors, 34-38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Royal Charters. —State Paper Office, Calendar of Documents relating to the History of, to 1800.—Tower of London. Index to Documents in custody of the Constable of.—Calendar of Dockets, &c., for Privy Seals, 1634–1711.—Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Venetian Ciphers.	C. 4165	3	0

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents.	Sessional No.	Price.
				s. d.
1870	31	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Royal Charters.—Durham Records, Calendar of Chancery Enrolments; Cursitors' Records.—List of Officers of Palatinate of Chester, in Cheshire and Flintshire, and North Wales.—List of Sheriffs of England, 31 Hen. I. to 4 Edw. III.	[C. 187]	[*Out of print.*]
1871	32	Part I.—Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Calendarium Genealogicum, 1 & 2 Edw. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.	[C. 374]	2 2
1871	—	Part II.—Charities; Calendar of Trust Deeds enrolled on the Close Rolls of Chancery, subsequent to 9 Geo. II.	[C. 374 I.]	5 6
1872	33	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Venetian Transcripts.—Greek copies of the Athanasian Creed.	[C. 620]	1 10
1873	34	Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitors' Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.	[C. 728]	1 9
1874	35	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—Palatinate of Lancaster; Inventory and Lists of Documents transferred to the Public Record Office.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitors' Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Second Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.	[C. 1043]	1 6
1875	36	Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—Report upon Documents in French Archives relating to British History.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, to end of reign of Hen. IV.	[C. 1301]	4 4
1876	37	Part I.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—List of French Ambassadors, &c., in England, 1509–1714.	[C. 1544]	1 2

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents.	Sessional No.	Price.
				s. *d.*
1876	—	Part II.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester; Hen. V.–Hen. VII.	[C. 1544 I.]	4 4
1877	38	Exchequer Records, Catalogue of Special Commissions, 1 Eliz. to 10 Vict., Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, 1 Eliz. to end of James I.—List of Representative Peers for Scotland and Ireland.	[C. 1747]	4 3
1878	39	Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, 1 Hen. VIII.–11 Geo. IV. — Exchequer Records, Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Lancashire Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Third Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—List of Despatches of French Ambassadors to England, 1509–1714.	[C. 2123]	[*Out of print.*]
1879	40	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, Commonwealth–James II.—Miscellaneous Records of Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Calendar of Duchy of Lancaster Patent Rolls, 5 Ric. II.–21 Hen. VII.	[C. 2377]	3 0
1880	41	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, William and Mary to George I.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part I.—List of Calendars, Indexes, &c. in the Public Record Office on 31st December 1879.	[C. 2658]	4 8
1881	42	Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, George II.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part II. and Glossary.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 1 Edw. I. Transcripts from Paris.	[C. 2972]	4 0
1882	43	Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., 1–7 Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Court Rolls, Hen. III.–Geo. IV., Calendar of Privy Seals, Ric. II.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 2 Edw. I.—Fourth Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report on Libraries in Sweden.—Report on Papers relating to English History in the State Archives, Stockholm.—Report on Canadian Archives.	[C. 3425]	3 10
1883	44	Calendar of Patent Rolls, 3 Edw. I.—Durham Records, Cursitors' Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Calendar of French Rolls, 1–10 Hen. V.—Report from Venice.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report from Rome.	[C. 3771]	3 6

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents.	Sessional No.	Price.
				s. *d.*
1884	45	Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Ministers' and Receivers' Accounts, Edw. I.–Geo. III.—Durham Records, Cursitors' Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Calendar of Diplomatic Documents.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome and Stockholm.—Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Transcripts from Venice.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 4 Edw. I.	[C. 4425]	4 3
1885	46	Presentations to Offices on the Patent Rolls, Charles II.—Transcripts from Paris. Reports from Rome.—Second Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Edw. I.—Catalogue of Venetian Manuscripts bequeathed by Mr. Rawdon Brown to the Public Record Office.	[C. 4746]	2 10
1886	47	Transcripts from Paris.—Third Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—List of Creations of Peers and Baronets, 1483–1646.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 6 Edw. I.	[C. 4888]	2 2
1887	48	Calendar of Patent Rolls, 7 Edw. I.—Calendar of French Rolls, Henry VI.—Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., 8–11 Charles I.—Calendar of Diplomatic Documents.—Schedules of Valueless Documents.	[C. 5234]	3 0
1888	49	Calendar of Patent Rolls, 8 Edw. I.—Index to Leases and Pensions (Augmentation Office).—Calendar of Star Chamber Proceedings.	[C. 5596]	3 3
1889	50	Calendar of Patent Rolls, 9 Edw. I. -	[C. 5847]	1 2
1890	51	Proceedings - - - -	[C. 6108]	0 2
1891	52	Proceedings - - - -	[C. 6528]	0 1½
1892	53	Proceedings - - - -	[C. 6804]	0 2½
1893	54	Proceedings - - - -	[C. 7079]	0 1½
1894	55	Proceedings - - - -	[C. 7444]	0 1½
1895	56	Proceedings - - - -	*In the Press.*	
		Indexes to Printed Reports, viz.:—		
		Reports 1–22 (1840–1861) - -	—	4 0
		„ 23–39 (1862–1878) - -	—	2 0

Public Record Office,
June 1895.

SCOTLAND.

CATALOGUE OF SCOTTISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS
PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF
THE LORD CLERK REGISTER OF SCOTLAND.

[OTHER WORKS RELATING TO SCOTLAND WILL BE FOUND AMONG THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, *see* pp. 21–22.]

1. CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS, AND OTHER EARLY MEMORIALS OF SCOTTISH HISTORY. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Edited by* WILLIAM F. SKENE, LL.D. (*Out of print.*)
2. LEDGER OF ANDREW HALYBURTON, CONSERVATOR OF THE PRIVILEGES OF THE SCOTCH NATION IN THE NETHERLANDS (1492–1503); TOGETHER WITH THE BOOKS OF CUSTOMS AND VALUATION OF MERCHANDISES IN SCOTLAND, *Edited by* COSMO INNES. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Price* 10*s.*
3. DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND FROM THE DEATH OF KING ALEXANDER THE THIRD TO THE ACCESSION OF ROBERT BRUCE, from original and authentic copies in London, Paris, Brussels, Lille, and Ghent. In 2 Vols. royal 8vo., half bound (1870). *Edited by* the REV. JOSEPH STEVENSON. (*Out of print.*)
4. ACCOUNTS OF THE LORD HIGH TREASURER OF SCOTLAND. Vol. I., A.D. 1473–1498. *Edited by* THOMAS DICKSON. 1877. *Price* 10*s.*
5. REGISTER OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND. *Edited and arranged by* J. H. BURTON, LL.D. Vol. I., 1545–1569. Vol. II., 1569–1578. Vol. III., A.D. 1578–1585. Vol. IV., A.D. 1585–1592. Vol. V., 1592–1599. Vol. VI., 1599–1604. Vol. VII., 1604–1607. Vol. VIII., 1607–1610. Vol. IX., 1610–1613. Vol. X., 1613–1616. Vol. XI., 1616–1619. Vol. XII., Vol. XIII. (*In the press.*) *Edited by* DAVID MASSON, LL.D.. 1877–1887. *Price* 15*s. each.*
6. ROTULI SCACCARII REGUM SCOTORUM. THE EXCHEQUER ROLLS OF SCOTLAND. Vol. I., A.D. 1264–1359. Vol. II., A.D. 1359–1379. *Edited by* JOHN STUART, LL.D., and GEORGE BURNETT, Lyon King of Arms. 1878–1880. Vol. III., A.D. 1379–1406. Vol. IV., A.D. 1406–1436. Vol. V., A.D. 1437–1454. Vol. VI., 1455–1460. Vol. VII., 1460–1469. Vol. VIII., A.D. 1470–1479. Vol. IX., 1480–1487, Addenda, 1437–1487. Vol. X., 1488–1496. Vol. XI., 1497–1591. Vol. XII., 1502–1507. Vol. XIII., 1508–1513. Vol. XIV., 1513–1522. *Edited by* GEORGE BURNETT, 1878–1893. *Price* 10*s. each.* Vol. XV. (*in the press*).
7. CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS RELATING TO SCOTLAND, preserved in the Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN. Vol. I. (1881). Vol. II., 1272–1307 (1884). Vol. III., 1307–1357 (1887). Vol. IV., 1357–1509 (1888). *Price* 15*s. each.*
8. REGISTER OF THE GREAT SEAL OF SCOTLAND. Vol. I., A.D., 1306–1424 (*see p.* 21). Vol. II., A.D. 1424–1513. Vol. III., A.D. 1513–1546. Vol. IV., A.D. 1546–1580. Vol. V., A.D. 1580–1593. Vol. VI., A.D. 1593–1609. Vol. VII., A.D. 1609–1620. Vol. VIII., A.D. 1620–1623. Vol. IX. (*In the press.*) *Edited by* JAMES BALFOUR PAUL and J. M. THOMSON, 1882–1890. *Price* 15*s. each.*
9. THE HAMILTON PAPERS. Letters and Papers illustrating the Political Relations of England and Scotland in the XVIth century. Formerly in the possession of the Duke of Hamilton, now in the British Museum. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN, F.S.A. Scot. Vol. 1, A.D.1532–1543 (1890). Vol. 2, A.D. 1543–1590. *Price* 15*s. each.*
10. BORDERS OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND. Calendar of. Letters and Papers relating to the Affairs of the. Preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN. Vol. I., A.D. 1560–1594. *Price* 15*s.*

FAC-SIMILES OF THE NATIONAL MSS. OF SCOTLAND. Parts I., II., and III. (*Out of print.*)

Stationery Office.

IRELAND.

CATALOGUE OF IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS.

1. Calendar of the Patent and Close Rolls of Chancery in Ireland. Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, and for the 1st to the 7th year of Charles I. *Edited by* James Morrin. Royal 8vo. (1861–3). Vols. I. II, and III. *Price* 11*s. each.*

2. Ancient Laws and Institutes of Ireland.
Senchus Mor. (1865–1880.) Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Price* 10*s. each.* Vol. V. and VI. *in progress.*

4. Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. Unbound. *Price* 25*s.*
,, ,, ,, With Supplement.
Half morocco. *Price* 35*s.*

5. Annals of Ulster. Otherwise Annals of Senat; a Chronicle of Irish Affairs from A.D. 431 to A.D. 1540. With a translation and Notes. Vol. I., A.D. 431–1056. Vol. II., A.D. 1057–1131; 1155–1378. Half morocco. *Price* 10*s. each.*

6. Chartæ, Privilegia et Immunitates, being transcripts of Charters and Privileges to Cities Towns Abbeys and other Bodies Corporate. 18 Henry II. to 18 Richard II. (1171 to 1395). Printed by the Irish Record Commission, 1829–1830. Folio, 92 pp. Boards (1889). *Price* 5*s.*

Fac-similes of National Manuscripts of Ireland, from the earliest extant specimens to A.D. 1719. *Edited by* John T. Gilbert, F.S.A., M.R.I.A. *Part* I. *is out of print.* Parts II. and III. *Price* 42*s. each.* Part IV. 1. *Price* 5*l.* 5*s.* Part IV. 2. *Price* 4*l.* 10*s.*

This work forms a comprehensive Palæographic Series for Ireland. It furnishes characteristic specimens of the documents which have come down from each of the classes which, in past ages, formed principal elements in the population of Ireland, or exercised an influence in her affairs. With these reproductions are combined fac-similes of writings connected with eminent personages or transactions of importance in the annals of the country to the early part of the eighteenth century.

The specimens have been reproduced as nearly as possible in accordance with the originals, in dimensions, colouring, and general appearance. Characteristic examples of styles of writing and caligraphic ornamentation are, so far as practicable, associated with subjects of historic and linguistic interest. Descriptions of the various manuscripts are given by the Editor in the Introduction. The contents of the specimens are fully elucidated and printed in the original languages, opposite to the Fac-similes—line for line—without contractions—thus facilitating reference and aiding effectively those interested in palæographic studies.

In the work are also printed in full, for the first time, many original and important historical documents.

Part I. commences with the earliest Irish MSS. extant.

Part II.: From the Twelfth Century to A.D. 1299.

Part III.: From A.D. 1300 to end of reign of Henry VIII.

Part IV. 1.: From reign of Edward VI. to that of James I.

In Part IV. 2.—the work is carried down to the early part of the eighteenth century, with Index to the entire publication.

Account of Fac-Similes of National Manuscripts of Ireland. In one Volume; 8vo., with Index. *Price* 10*s.* Parts I. and II. together. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.* Part II. *Price* 1*s.* 6*d.* Part III. *Price* 1*s.* Part IV. 1. *Price* 2*s.* Part IV. 2. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Stationery Office.

ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS, IRELAND.

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Sessional No.	Price.
				s. *d.*
1869	1	Contents of the principal Record Repositories of Ireland in 1864.—Notices of Records transferred from Chancery Offices.—Irish State Papers presented by Philadelphia Library Company.	[C. 4157]	2 3
1870	2	Notices of Records transferred from Chancery, Queen's Bench, and Exchequer Offices.—Index to Original Deeds received from Master Litton's Office.	[C. 127]	1 0
1871	3	Notices of Records transferred from Queen's Bench, Common Pleas, and Exchequer Offices.—Report on J. F. Furguson's MSS.—Exchequer Indices, &c.	[C. 329]	2 0
1872	4	Records of Probate Registries - -	[C. 515]	0 2½
1873	5	Notices of Records from Queen's Bench Calendar of Fines and Recoveries of the Palatinate of Tipperary, 1664–1715.—Index to Reports to date.	[C. 760]	0 8
1874	6	Notices of Records transferred from Chancery, Queen's Bench, and Common Pleas Offices.—Report respecting "Facsimiles of National MSS. of Ireland."—List of Chancery Pleadings (1662–1690) and Calendar to Chancery Rolls (1662–1713) of Palatinate of Tipperary.	[C. 963]	0 7½
1875	7	Notices of Records from Exchequer and Admiralty Offices.—Calendar and Index to Fiants of Henry VIII.	[C. 1175]	0 7
1876	8	Calendar and Index to Fiants of Edward VI.	[C. 1469]	1 3
1877	9	Index to the Liber Munerum Publicorum Hiberniæ.—Calendar and Index to Fiants of Philip and Mary.	[C. 1702]	[*Out of print.*]
1878	10	Index to Deputy Keeper's 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th Reports.	[C. 2034]	0 3½
1879	11	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth (1558–1570)	[C. 2311]	1 4
1880	12	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1570–1576).	[C. 2583]	1 3
1881	13	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1576–1583).	[C. 2929]	1 5

Date.	Number of Report.	Chief Contents of Appendices.	Sessional No.	Price.
				s. *d.*
1882	14	Report of Keeper of State Papers containing Catalogue of Commonwealth Books transferred from Bermingham Tower.	[C. 3215]	0 6½
1883	15	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1583–1586).—Index to Deputy Keeper's 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, and 15th Reports.	[C. 3676]	1 0
1884	16	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1586–1595).	[C. 4062]	1 6
1885	17	Report on Iron Chest of attainders following after 1641 and 1688.—Queen's Bench Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1596–1601).	[C. 4487]	1 6
1886	18	Calendar to Fiants of Elizabeth, continued (1601–1603).—Memorandum on Statements (1702) and Declarations (1713–14) of Huguenot Pensioners.	[C. 4755]	1 1
1887	19	Notice of Records of Incumbered and Landed Estates Courts.—Report of Keeper of State Papers, containing Table of Abstracts of Decrees of Innocence (1663), with Index.	[C. 5185]	0 6
1888	20	Calendar to Christ Church Deeds in Novum Registrum, 1174–1684. Index to Deputy Keeper's 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, and 20th Reports.	[C. 5535]	0 8½
1889	21	Index to Calendars of Fiants of the reign of Queen Elizabeth. Letters A– C.	[C. 5835]	1 0
1890	22	Catalogue of Proclamations, 1618–1660 -	[C. 6180]	0 2½
		Index to Fiants of Elizabeth. D—Z. -	[C. 6180 i.]	2 0
1891	23	Catalogue of Proclamations, 1661–1767.—Calendar to Christ Church Deeds, 1177–1462.—Schedule of Places of Custody of Parish Registers.	[C. 6504]	1 1
1892	24	Catalogue of Proclamations, 1767–1875. Contents of the Red Book of the Exchequer. Calendar to Christ Church Deeds, 1462–1602.	[C. 6765]	0 9½
1893	25	Regulations respecting State Papers. Instructions for Parochial Custodians. Index to Twenty-first to Twenty-fifth Reports.	[C. 7170]	0 3
1894	26	Abstract of Antrim Inquisition, 3 James I., Bankruptcy Records, 1857–1872; Early Plea Rolls to 51 Edward III.	[C. 7489]	0 3½